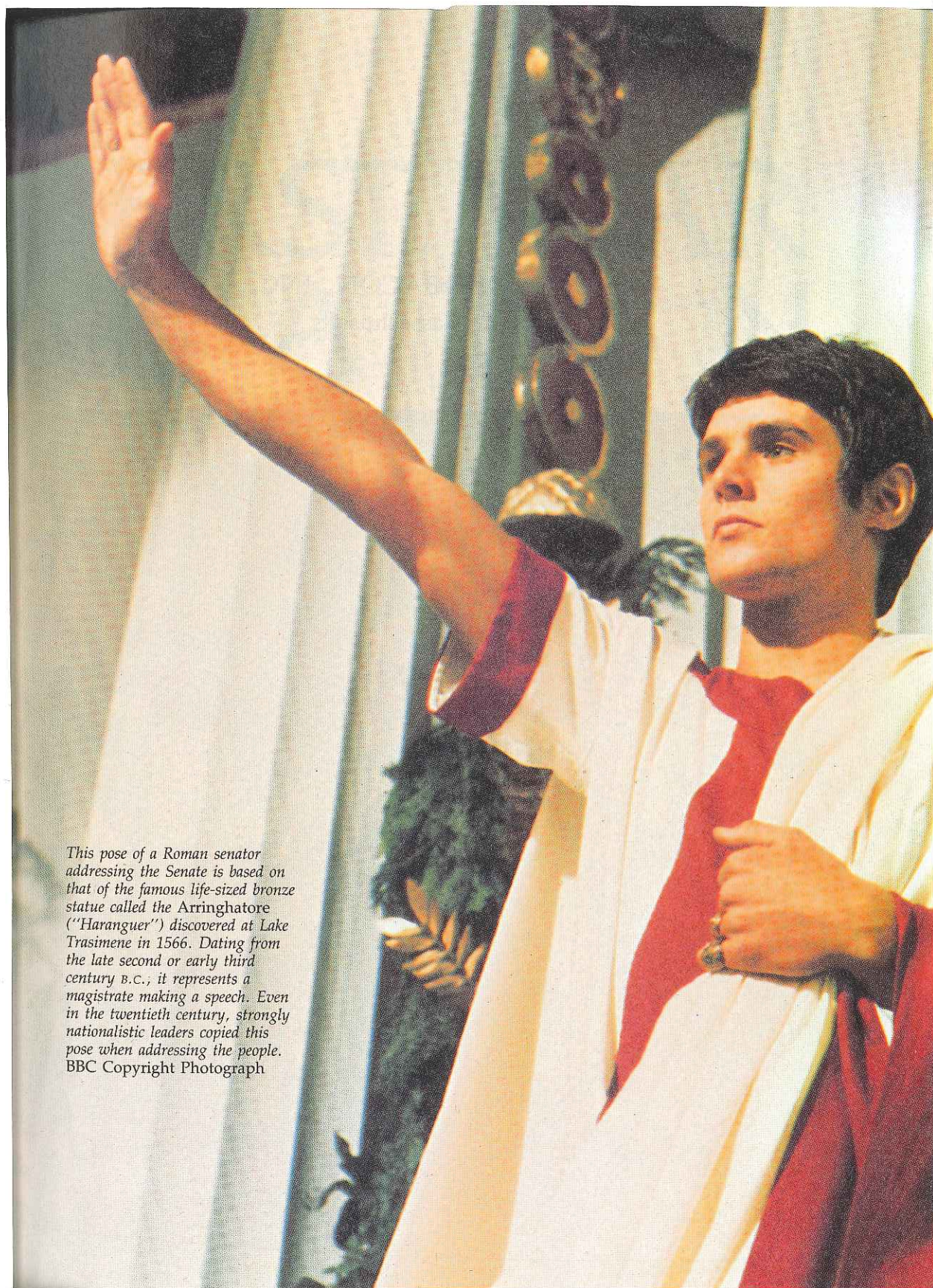


Jenney's

FHS Latin

FIRST YEAR LATIN





This pose of a Roman senator addressing the Senate is based on that of the famous life-sized bronze statue called the Arringatore ("Haranguer") discovered at Lake Trasimene in 1566. Dating from the late second or early third century B.C.; it represents a magistrate making a speech. Even in the twentieth century, strongly nationalistic leaders copied this pose when addressing the people. BBC Copyright Photograph

CONTENTS

	INTRODUCTION	<i>xiii</i>
1	First Declension; Nominative Case	1
2	Present Tense; Agreement of Verbs; Direct Object	8
3	Conjugation of Sum; Uses of Sum; Ablative of Place Where; Questions	14
4	Second Declension; Genitive of Possession	19
	REVIEW 1 (Lessons 1-4)	24
5	Second Declension, Neuter; Accusative of Place to Which, Ablative of Place from Which	27
6	Adjectives; Agreement of Adjectives; Adjectives as Substantives	32
7	Imperfect Tense, Future Tense	37
8	Adjectives in -er; Dative of Indirect Object	42
	REVIEW 2 (Lessons 5-8)	48
9	Imperfect of Sum; Future of Sum; Ablative of Means or Instrument	51
10	Principal Parts of Verbs; Interrogative Particles	55
11	Formation of Adverbs; Perfect Tense	59
12	Pluperfect Tense; Future Perfect Tense	65
	REVIEW 3 (Lessons 9-12)	69
13	Imperative Mood; Vocative Case	72
14	Third Declension	77
15	Third Declension, Neuter; Ablative of Manner	81
16	Third Declension I-Stems	86
	REVIEW 4 (Lessons 13-16)	91

- 17** Second Conjugation 94
- 18** Third Declension Adjectives; Ablative of Accompaniment 98
- 19** Passive Voice, First Conjugation 103
- 20** Second Conjugation Passive; Ablative of Personal Agent 108
- REVIEW 5** (Lessons 17–20) 114
- 21** Numerals 117
- 22** Third Conjugation; Apposition 122
- 23** Third Conjugation Passive; Objective Genitive 127
- 24** Third Conjugation I-Stem; Ablative of Separation 132
- REVIEW 6** (Lessons 21–24) 137
- 25** Demonstratives Is, Hic, Ille; Ablatives of Time 140
- 26** Personal Pronouns 145
- 27** Relative Pronoun 150
- 28** Interrogative Pronoun; Interrogative Adjective 155
- REVIEW 7** (Lessons 25–28) 160
- 29** Fourth Declension; Partitives 162
- 30** Fourth Conjugation; Accusative of Extent of Space; Accusative of Duration of Time 168
- 31** Fifth Declension; Formation of Adverbs 174
- 32** Inquam; Possum; Infinitives 178
- SUMMARY OF CASE USES** 183
- REVIEW 8** (Lessons 29–32) 185
- 33** Comparison of Adjectives; Quam; Ablative of Comparison 188

- 34** Comparison of Adjectives in -er, -eus, -ius, -ilis; Dative with Adjectives 193
- 35** Irregular Comparison of Adjectives 198
- 36** Comparison of Adverbs; Ablative of Degree of Difference; Temporal and Causal Clauses 202
- REVIEW 9** (Lessons 33-36) 207
- 37** Demonstratives Ipse, Idem; Irregular Adjectives; Ablative of Specification 210
- 38** Subjective and Objective Infinitives 216
- 39** Indirect Statement; Tenses of Infinitives; Ablative of Cause 222
- 40** Reflexives; Dative of Reference; Dative of Purpose; Double Dative 228
- REVIEW 10** (Lessons 37-40) 234
- 41** Participles 237
- 42** Subjunctive Mood 244
- 43** Hortatory Subjunctive 250
- 44** Adverbial Clause of Purpose; Relative Clause of Purpose 254
- REVIEW 11** (Lessons 41-44) 259
- 45** Indirect Commands 262
- 46** Clauses after Verbs of Fearing; Sequence of Tenses 266
- 47** Indirect Questions 272
- 48** Result Clauses 276
- REVIEW 12** (Lessons 45-48) 280
- 49** Cum Clauses 283
- 50** Deponent Verbs; Locative Case; Special Place Constructions 288

51	Ablative Absolute; Genitive and Ablative of Description	294
52	Ferō and Eō	300
	REVIEW 13 (Lessons 49–52)	304
53	Volō, Nōlō, Mālō; Dative of Possession; Negative Commands	308
54	Fīō; Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	313
55	Review of Indirect Statement, Indirect Commands, Indirect Questions	318
56	Impersonal Verbs	324
	REVIEW 14 (Lessons 53–56)	329
57	Dative with Intransitive Verbs; Dative with Compound Verbs	334
58	Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives; Relative Clause of Characteristic	339
59	Future Passive Participle; Gerundive; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent	345
60	Passive Periphrastic; Gerund; Supine	351
	REVIEW 15 (Lessons 57–60)	357
	SUMMARY OF CASE USES	361
	SUMMARY OF CONSTRUCTIONS WITH VERBS	363
	SUPPLEMENTARY READINGS	365
	<i>The Story of Perseus</i>	365
	<i>The Story of Ulysses</i>	367
	ROMAN CIVILIZATION THROUGH ART	379
	LATIN EXPRESSIONS	425

APPENDIX 431

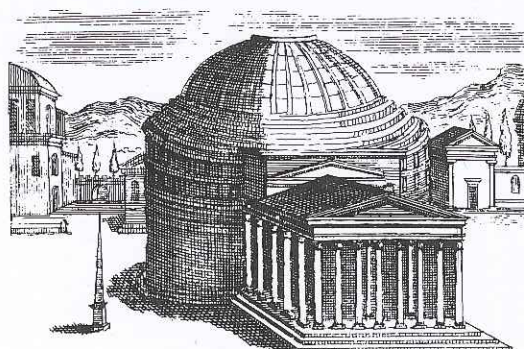
Inflections 433

Word Formation 467

VOCABULARIES 469

Latin-English 471

English-Latin 497

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 515**GRAMMATICAL INDEX 519**



Wall with garden from House of Livia, Terme Museum, Rome

INTRODUCTION

Both Latin and English, as well as most modern European languages, the Slavic languages, and some Near Eastern languages, are descendants of the same parent-language; this parent-language is usually called *Indo-European*. But although the two languages are basically similar in structure, the differences between them far outweigh the similarities. There are two reasons for this: one is that Latin represents a much earlier stage of development; the other is that the Latin which we read is a highly artificial creation developed by the Romans for literary and political purposes and is consequently somewhat different in construction from any language used for everyday purposes.

INFLECTION

It is characteristic of the older languages of the Indo-European group that they express the relation of words to each other (syntax) by changes in the endings of the words rather than, as in English and other younger languages, by word order and the use of prepositions and auxiliary verbs. These changes of endings are called *inflection*. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*, that of verbs *conjugation*.

English words are inflected very little: a normal English verb has only three forms, e.g. *make, makes, made* (all other uses are dealt with by the use of such auxiliaries as *is, was, will, has, should* and *might*). An English noun has four forms, e.g. *boy, boy's, boys, boys'*. A regular transitive verb in Latin has more than a hundred forms; a regular noun has twelve.

CASES OF NOUNS

A Latin noun has six cases; their basic uses are as follows:

1. The **Nominative** names the subject of the sentence, i.e. whatever the statement or question is about: The *boy* runs.
2. The **Vocative** is the case of direct address: Look, *Marcus*!
3. The **Genitive** is used to enable a noun to qualify another noun in some way; most of its uses are represented in English by prepositional phrases with *of*: the gardens *of Caesar*; part *of the army*; love *of life*; a man *of distinction*.

4. The **Dative** expresses the object indirectly affected by the action of a verb or by the quality of an adjective (*to* or *for* in English): I gave a book *to him*. He did it *for you*. She is unfriendly *to me*. This is suitable *for warfare*.

5. The **Accusative** limits the action of the verb in various ways, i.e. it tells how far the action of the verb extends: She went *home*. I ran *a mile*. He saw *a bird*. I stayed *three days*.

6. The **Ablative**, having taken over the functions of three separate cases of the parent Indo-European language, has three basic uses: It expresses separation (*from*): He comes *from New York*. She fainted *from hunger*. This book was written *by* (i.e. comes *from*) *Dickens*. It expresses location, either in space or in time (*in, on, at*): *at seven o'clock*; *on Tuesday*; *in Italy*. It expresses the instrument by which, or the circumstances under which, an action takes place (*with*): She jumped *with joy*. We dig *with shovels*. He came *with his father*.

GENDER OF NOUNS

In English, gender is determined by sex: words naming males are nouns of the masculine gender, words naming females are nouns of the feminine gender, and words naming things are nouns of the neuter gender. In Latin, too, nouns naming males and females are masculine and feminine respectively, and many names of things are neuter. There are also, however, a great many names of things, inanimate objects, abstract qualities, names of actions, etc., which are not neuter, but masculine or feminine.

TENSES OF VERBS

A Latin verb has six tenses, one of which, the perfect, is used in two different ways. Here are the uses of the tenses:

Present tenses: The *present* describes an action as going on in the present, or as generally true: *He is sleeping*. *A rolling stone gathers no moss*. The *perfect* describes an action as completed by the present time: *We have come to see the city*.

Past tenses: The *perfect* is also used, like the English past tense, merely to state that an action took place in the past, without further qualifying it: *I arrived yesterday*. The *imperfect* describes an action as going on (not completed) at some time in the past: *When I arrived, he was leaving*. The *pluperfect* describes an action as already completed by some time in the past: *When I arrived, he had left*.

Future tenses: The *future* describes an action as taking place in the future: *He will refuse to go*. The *future perfect* describes an action as completed by some time in the future: *By this time tomorrow I shall have met my friend*. The future and future perfect tenses are much more common in Latin than in English. "I'm going when the sun sets" must be changed to "I shall go when the sun will have set" in order to be translated into Latin.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

The Alphabet. The Latin alphabet is like the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. The division of the letters into vowels and consonants is the same as in English, except that *i*, when it occurs between vowels or before a vowel at the beginning of a word, is a consonant. The letter *y* is always a vowel, and occurs only in words of Greek origin.

Vowels. Each vowel in Latin has two sounds, long and short. The quantity of a vowel is indicated by a line (called a *macron*) above it if it is long; short vowels are unmarked. The vowels are pronounced as follows:

LONG

ā as in *father*

ē as in *obey*

ī as in *machine*

ō as in *note*

ū as in *rule* (never as in *pupil*)

SHORT

a as in *idea*

e as in *bet*

i as in *sit*

o as in *omit*

u as in *put*

The letter *y* is pronounced like the French *u* or the German *ü* (form the lips as if to say *oo*, but say *ee* instead).

Diphthongs. Latin has six diphthongs (combinations of two vowels to make a single sound), pronounced as follows:

ae like *aye*

au like *ow* in *now*

ei as in *neighbor*

eu like *ay-oo*, said as one syllable

oe like *oy* in *joy*

ui like *uee* in *queen*

Consonants. The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:

bs is pronounced like *ps*

bt is pronounced like *pt*

c is always hard, as in *came* (never soft, as in *city*)

ch is pronounced as in *character*

g is always hard, as in *go* (never soft, as in *gem*)

gu before a vowel is pronounced as in *anguish*
i (when a consonant) is like *y* in *youth*
ph is pronounced as in *philosophy*
s is pronounced as in *sit* (it never has the *z* sound, as in *busy*)
su before a vowel is sometimes pronounced like *sw*, as in *suave*
th is pronounced as in *thick* (not as in this)
v is pronounced like *w*
z is like *dz* in *adze*

The letters *x* and *z* are called *double consonants* (as representing *ks* and *dz*). Every consonant must be sounded in pronouncing a Latin word; doubled consonants should not be run together but pronounced separately.

Syllabification. Each Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. Consonantal *i* is not counted as a vowel, nor is *u* when it has the sound of English *w* after *g*, *q*, and sometimes *s*.

ae di fi' ci um du o dē vī gin'tī gau'di um iu'be ō
lin'gua per suā'de ō su'us

The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are:

1. A consonant between two vowels or diphthongs is pronounced with the following syllable: *dē'li gō nu'me rus o'cu lus Trō iā'nus*
2. In a group of two or more consonants, only the last consonant is pronounced with the following syllable; but if the last consonant in the group is *h*, *l*, or *r*, preceded by *c*, *g*, *p*, *b*, *d*, or *t*, both these consonants are usually pronounced with the following syllable:

a gri'co la am'plus ap pro pin'quō Co rin'thus
dif fi cul'tās quat tu or'de cim tem pes'tās

3. Of the double consonants, *x* goes with the preceding syllable, *z* with the following: *aux i'li um gā'za*
4. In a compound word the prefix is separated from the rest of the word: *cōn scri'bō in ter'e ō*

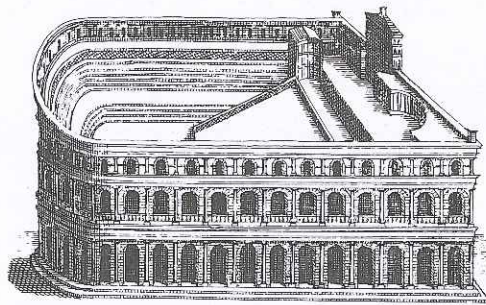
The last syllable of a Latin word is called the *ultima*, the next to last the *penult*, and the one before that the *antepenult*.

Length of Syllables. Syllables are classified as long or short, depending on the length of time it takes to pronounce them. The Romans thought that it took twice as long to pronounce a long syllable as it did a short one. Since we are used to making such distinctions in length of syllables only in singing, it is difficult for us to reproduce this pronunciation; but we must learn to identify long syllables in order to accent words correctly. A syllable which contains a long

vowel or a diphthong is said to be *long by nature*. A syllable whose vowel is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant (*x* or *z*) is said to be *long by position*. Other syllables are *short*. If a short vowel is followed by two consonants, the first of which is *c*, *g*, *p*, *b*, *d*, or *t*, and the second of which is *l* or *r*, the syllable is *common*: i.e., it may be treated as either long by position or short.

Accents. A word of two syllables is accented on the first. In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the penult if it is long (either by nature or by position); if the penult is short the accent falls on the antepenult. Except in monosyllables the ultima is never accented.

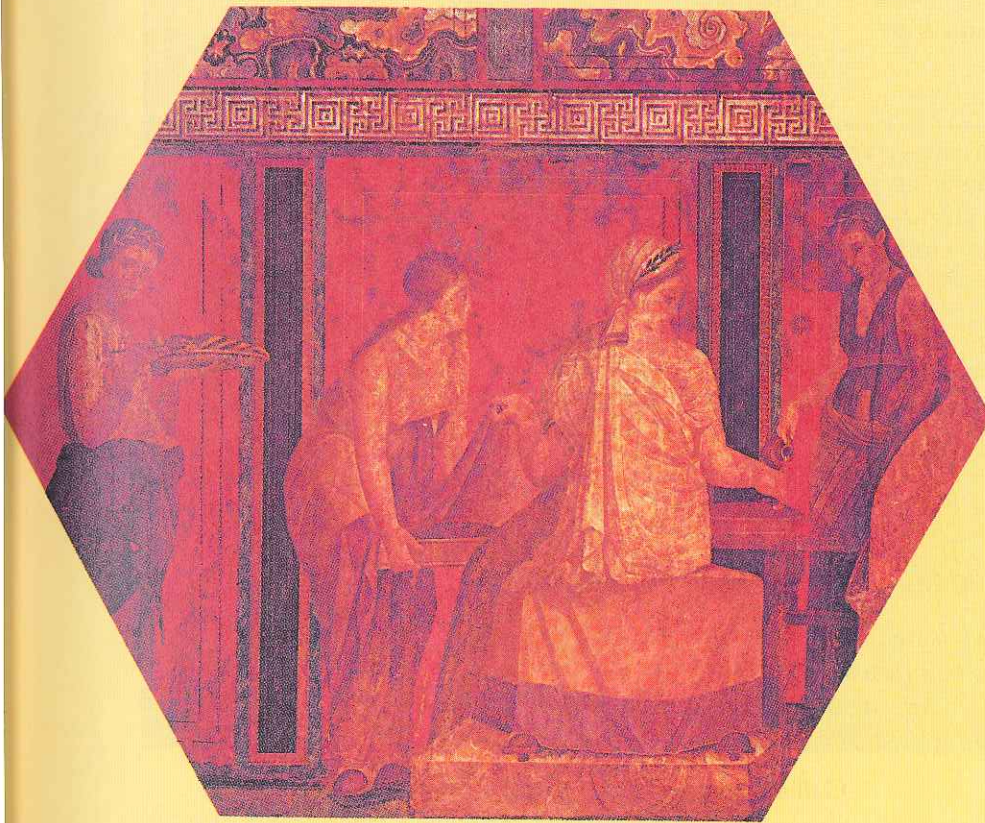
ca la'mi tās fa cul'tās ge'nus oc'ci dō oc cī'dō





1

First Declension Nominative Case



Villa of the Mysteries, Pompeii

Ipsa scientia potestas est.
Knowledge itself is power.—BACON

—Forms—

THE FIRST DECLENSION

Nouns whose stem ends in *-ā* belong to the first declension; they may be recognized by the *-ae* ending of the genitive singular. First declension nouns are declined like *puella*, *girl*.

CASES		SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE:	puel'la	<i>a girl (the girl)</i>	<i>-a</i>
GENITIVE:	puel'lae	<i>of a girl (the girl)</i>	<i>-ae</i>
DATIVE:	puel'lae	<i>to (for) a girl (the girl)</i>	<i>-ae</i>
ACCUSATIVE:	puel'lam	<i>a girl (the girl)</i>	<i>-am</i>
ABLATIVE:	puel'lā	*	<i>-ā</i>
PLURAL			
NOMINATIVE:	puel'lae	<i>girls (the girls)</i>	<i>-ae</i>
GENITIVE:	puellā'rum	<i>of girls (the girls)</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
DATIVE:	puel'lis	<i>to (for) girls (the girls)</i>	<i>-is</i>
ACCUSATIVE:	puel'lās	<i>girls (the girls)</i>	<i>-ās</i>
ABLATIVE:	puel'lis	*	<i>-is</i>

* Because of its many uses no standard translation can be given for the ablative case.

The base of a first declension noun is found by dropping the *-ae* ending of the genitive singular; the endings are then added to this base.

—Syntax—

THE NOMINATIVE CASE

Subject. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.

Predicate Nominative. A noun used with a linking verb to define or make a statement about the subject is in the nominative; such a noun is called a *predicate nominative*.

Gallia est prōvincia. *Gaul is a province.*

— Vocabulary —

agri'cola, -ae, m., *farmer*

a'qua, -ae, f., *water*

fē'mina, -ae, f., *woman*

fortū'na, -ae, f., *fortune, chance*

Gal'lia, Gal'liae, f., *Gaul*

in'sula, -ae, f., *island*

Īta'lia, Īta'liae, f., *Italy*

lin'gua, lin'guae, f., *tongue,*
language

lit'tera, -ae, f., *letter (of alphabet)*

in plural, letter (epistle), letters

memo'ria, -ae, f., *memory*

nātū'ra, -ae, f., *nature*

poē'ta, -ae, m., *poet*

prōvin'cia, -ae, f., *province*

puel'la, -ae, f., *girl*

sil'va, -ae, f., *forest*

vī'ta, -ae, f., *life*

est, is, there is

sunt, are, there are

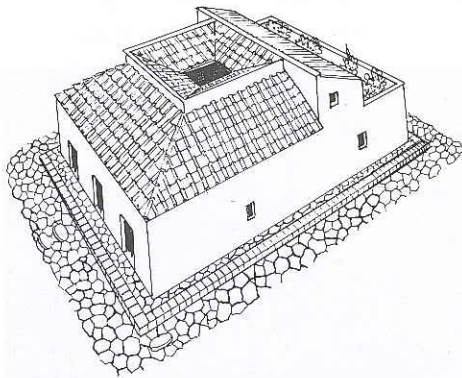


House of Poseidon and Amphitrite, Herculaneum

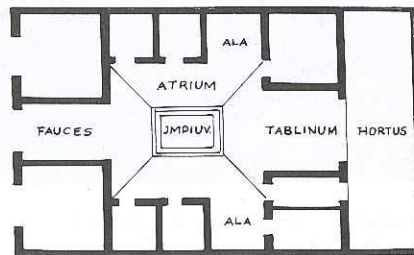
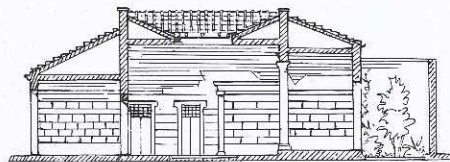
Helps and Hints. In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is given after the nominative to show the declension: "m." stands for masculine gender, "f." for feminine.

—Word Study—

Latin has no articles (i.e., no words for *a*, *an*, or *the*); consequently **puella** may be translated by *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*, depending on the context.



Design of an atrium house. On either side of the entrance there were often shops. The rooms went off the atrium or main court, in the center of which was an impluvium, a square basin into which rainwater was received through an overhead skylight. The Tablinum, the repository of family images and records, might serve as an office for the head of the family.



Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless, like **agricola** and **poëta**, they are the terms for male beings.

—Exercises—

A. Decline each of the nouns in the vocabulary like **puella**.

B. Pronounce, give case and number, and translate.

1. *fēminis* (*dative*) 2. *Ītalia* 3. *puellae* (*three ways*) 4. *memoriam* 5. *silvās* 6. *linguārum* 7. *īnsulam* 8. *Poëtae sunt agricolae*. 9. *Sunt litterae*. 10. *Gallia est prōvincia*.

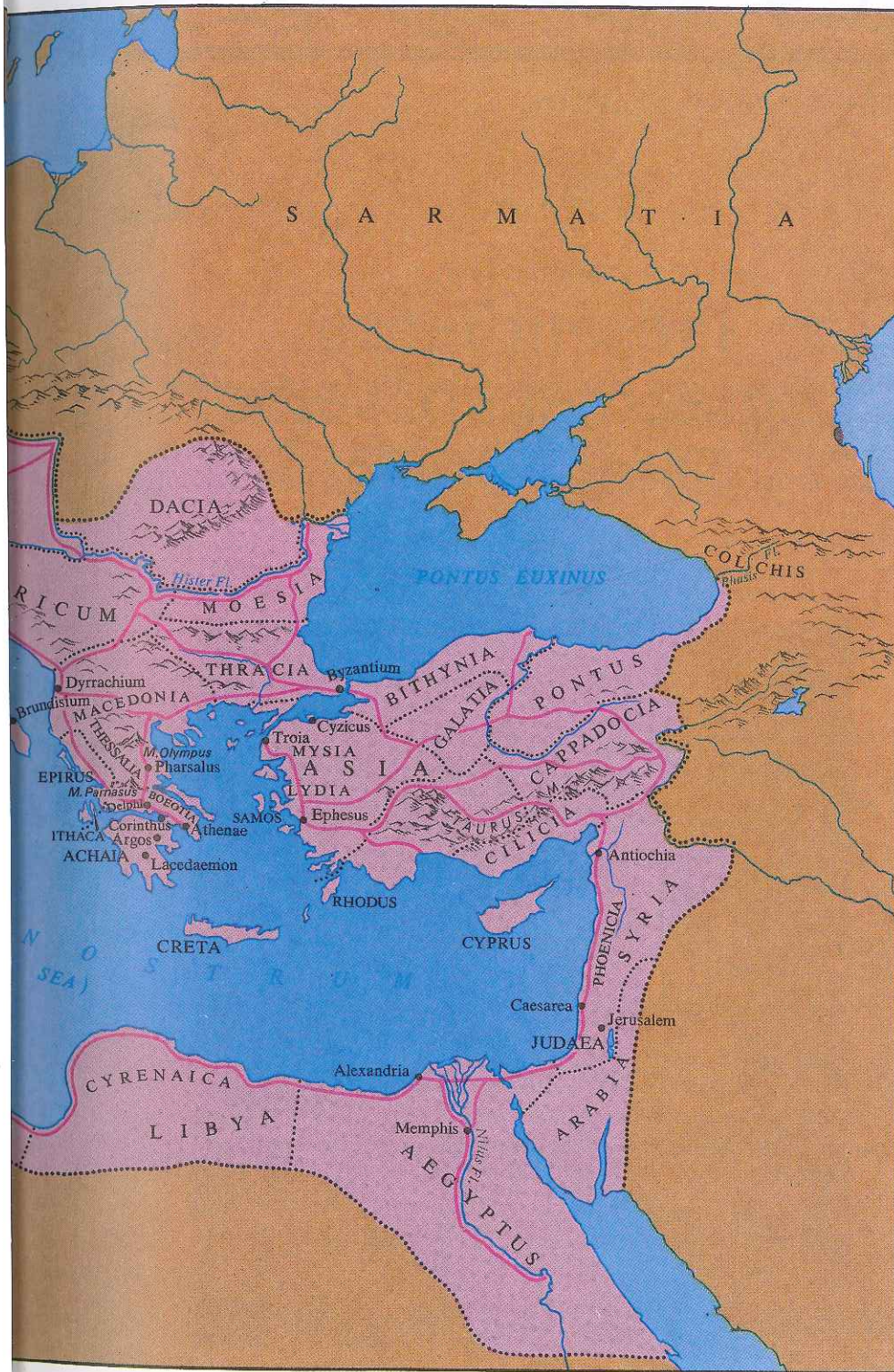
C. Translate, giving case and number.

1. *nature* (*accusative*) 2. *of the women* 3. *for the girl* 4. *of fortune* 5. *of life* 6. *letter* (*four ways*) 7. *for the poets* 8. *There is water*. 9. *The province is Gaul*. 10. *The farmers are poets*.

Fountain in the garden of a Pompeian house. Note the artificial cascade and the stone masks into which lanterns could be put at night.

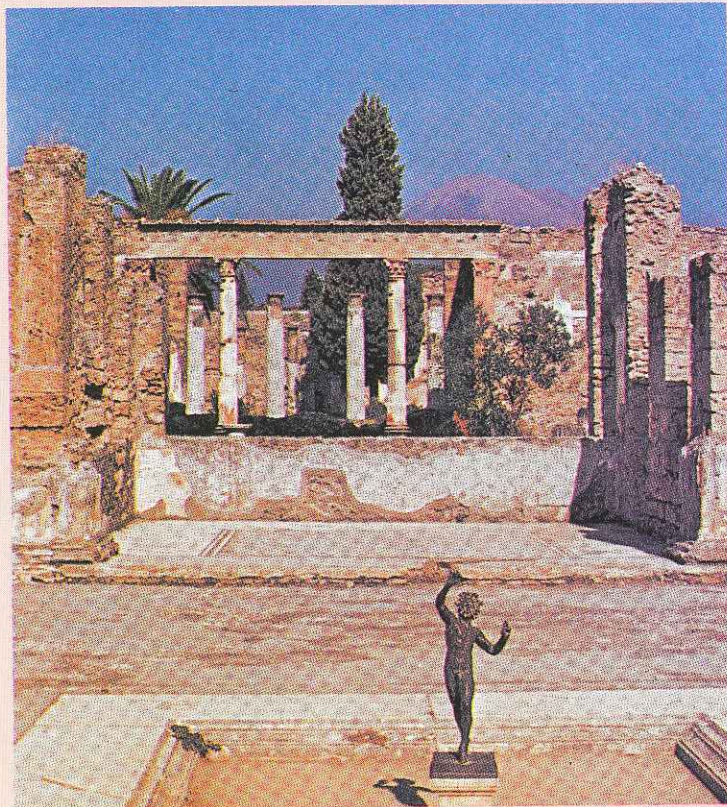






2

Present Tense Agreement of Verbs Direct Object



A view from the atrium of the House of the Faun at Pompeii

Gutta cavat lapidem.
Dripping hollows out rock.—OVID

—Forms—

VERBS

English shows the person and number of a verb by a pronoun subject. In Latin these are shown by the personal endings of the verb, the pronoun subject being expressed only when it shows emphasis or contrast. The personal endings of the active voice are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PERSON	-ō or -m, I	-mus, we
2D PERSON	-s, you	-tis, you
3D PERSON	-t, he, she, it	-nt, they

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

Verbs whose present stem ends in -ā belong to the first conjugation. First conjugation verbs are conjugated in the present tense as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PERSON	vo'cō, I call	vocā'mus, we call
2D PERSON	vo'cās, you call	vocā'tis, you call
3D PERSON	vo'cat, he, she, it calls	vo'cant, they call

Helps and Hints. In translating a Latin verb whose subject is not expressed, a glance at the personal ending will show you which English pronoun to choose as subject.

vocās = -s, you + vocā-, call

vocāmus = -mus, we + vocā-, call

—Syntax—

VERBS

Latin has no special progressive or emphatic forms. *Vocō* means *I call*, *I am calling*, or *I do call*, whichever sounds best in the sentence.

AGREEMENT

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

Agricola puellam amat. *The farmer loves the girl*
Agricolae pugnant. *The farmers are fighting.*

DIRECT OBJECT

The direct object of a verb (that which receives the action of a verb) is in the accusative case.

Poētās laudāmus. *We praise poets.*
Fēminam spectō. *I look at the woman.*

Longitudinal section of the House of the Tragic Poet in Pompeii. The east side.
(l. to r.) The fauces, atrium, tablinum, and peristyle.



— Vocabulary —

amīci'tia, -ae, f., friendship
 pa'tria, -ae, f., country, native
 land

a'mō, I love, I like

dō, I give

lau'dō, I praise

nā'vigō, I sail

oc'cupō, I seize, I capture

pa'rō, I prepare, I prepare for

por'tō, I carry

pug'nō, I fight

spec'tō, I look at

vo'cō, I call

nōn, (adverb) not

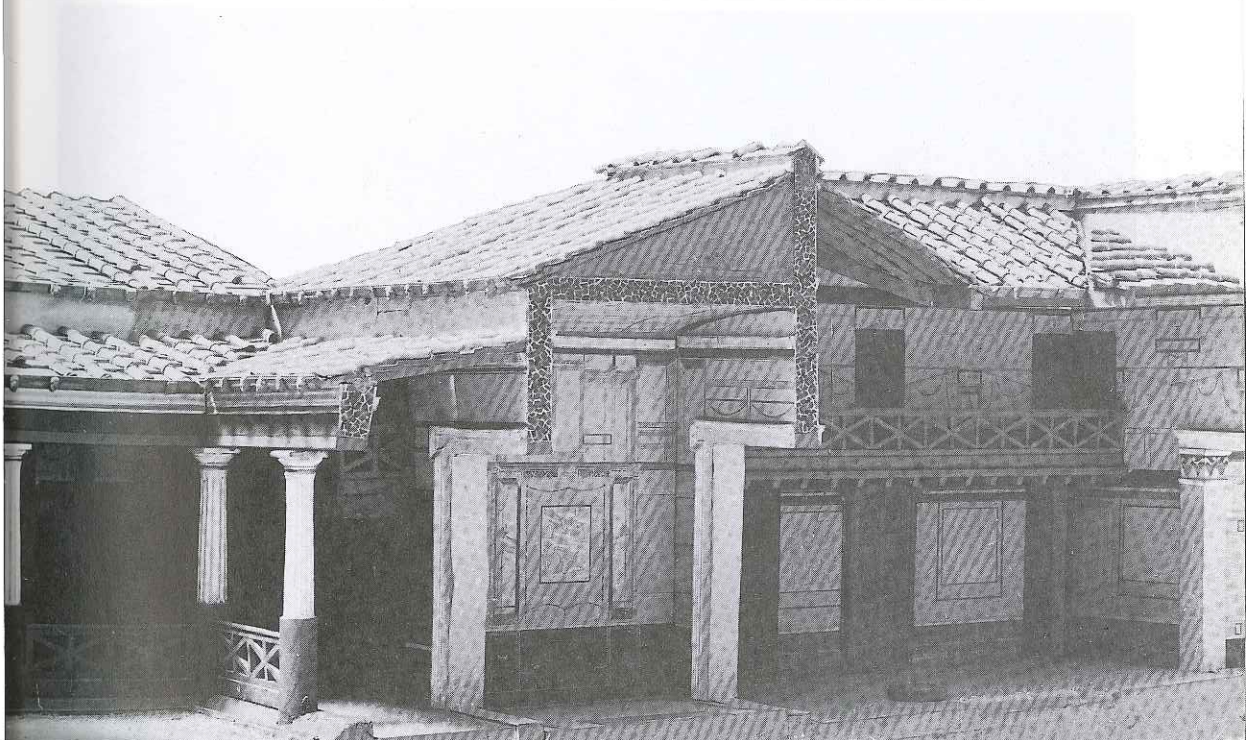
et, (conjunction) and

sed, (conj.) but

ad, towards, to

cum, with

The west side. Note the funnel-like roofing which collected water for the cistern whose wellhead is seen near the impluvium in the atrium.



—Exercises—

A. Pronounce and translate.

1. vocāmus 2. spectātis 3. parās 4. occupō 5. amant
6. pugnat 7. portant 8. laudāmus 9. parant 10. vocātis
11. spectant 12. occupāmus 13. occupātis 14. dō 15. laudant

B. Translate.

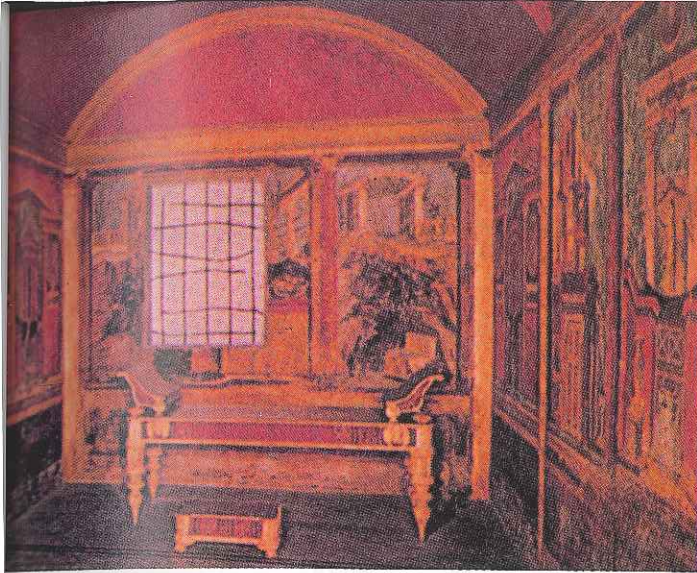
1. you (*pl.*) love 2. we carry 3. I am calling 4. they are seizing
5. you (*sing.*) prepare 6. we are praising 7. they are looking at
8. you (*pl.*) are calling 9. he is fighting 10. we prepare
11. she loves 12. he is seizing 13. they call 14. we carry 15. he fights

C. Give the construction (i.e., the case and the use in the sentence) of each noun, and translate.

1. Poëta patriam amat. 2. Litterās nōn portāmus. 3. Amicitiam puellae laudant. 4. Fēminae amant silvam. 5. Galliam laudant.

Artificial Island Pavilion, Hadrian's Villa, Tivoli





Bedroom of a villa excavated at Boscoreale (near Pompeii).

6. *Ītaliām amāmus.* 7. *Prōvinciām occupātis.* 8. *Litterās parātis.* 9. *Portat puella aquam.* 10. *Silvām spectās.*

In general, changing the order of the words in a Latin sentence does not alter its meaning. In English we identify the subject and the direct object of a verb by their location in the sentence: "The girl looks at the farmer" is not the same as "The farmer looks at the girl." In Latin the syntax of a noun is shown by its case endings. The following sentences all mean exactly the same thing, but with a different emphasis in each sentence.

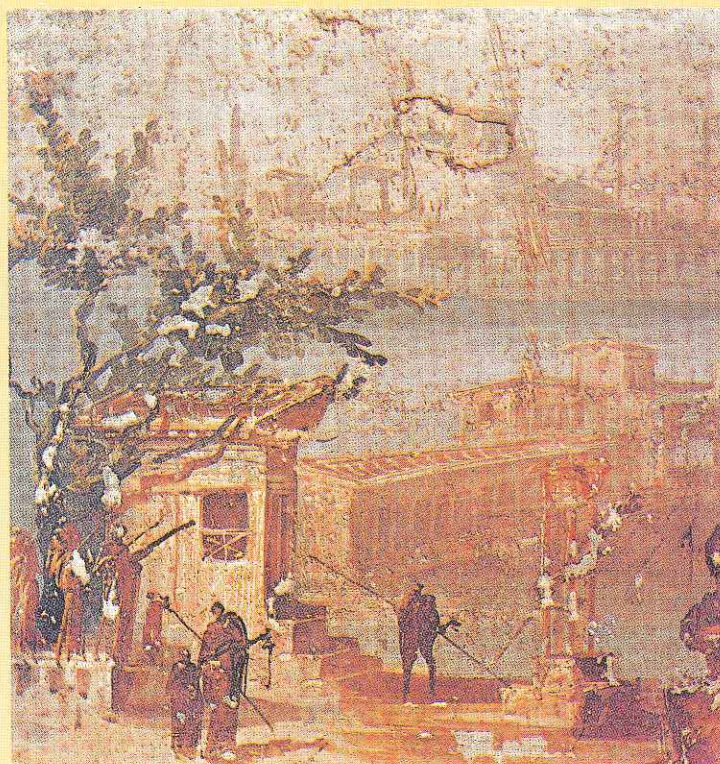
Puella agricolam spectat. Puella spectat agricolam. Agricolam puella spectat. Agricolam spectat puella. Spectat puella agricolam. Spectat agricolam puella.

D. Translate (words in parentheses are to be omitted from the Latin).

1. We praise the poets. 2. The woman and the farmer are looking at the forest. 3. The girls do not carry water. 4. You (*sing.*) seize the province. 5. The poet praises (his) country. 6. Girls do not fight. 7. The woman is looking at the island. 8. The farmer and the poet love (their) native land. 9. Poets praise friendship. 10. The farmer is calling the girls.

3

Conjugation of Sum Uses of Sum Ablative of Place Where Questions



Fresco with seaside villas, National Museum, Naples

In virtute sunt multi ascensus.
In excellence there are many degrees.—CICERO

—Forms—

THE VERB SUM

The present stem of **sum** is irregular, but it takes the regular personal endings.

SINGULAR		PRESENT TENSE	
		PLURAL	
sum,	<i>I am</i>	sumus,	<i>we are</i>
es,	<i>you are</i>	estis,	<i>you are</i>
est,	<i>he, she, it is, there is</i>	sunt,	<i>they are, there are</i>

—Syntax—

THE USES OF SUM

Sum is ordinarily used as a linking verb, connecting its subject with a predicate nominative, or with some other kind of predicate.

Gallia est prōvincia. *Gaul is a province.*
 Gallia est in Eurōpā. *Gaul is in Europe.*

In the third person it may also be translated by *there is* or *there are*.

Est aqua. *There is water.*
 Sunt litterae. *There is a letter.*

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

Location *on* or *in* is shown by the ablative case with the preposition **in**.

In silvā est. *He is in the forest.*
 In insulā pugnāmus. *We are fighting on the island.*

QUESTIONS

To turn a statement into a question which has a *yes* or *no* answer, add the enclitic **-ne** to the first word.

Galliane est prōvincia? *Is Gaul a province?*
 Suntne litterae? *Are there letters?*

If the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, **-ne** is not used.

Quid puellae spectant? *What are the girls looking at?*
 Ubi sunt fēminae? *Where are the women?*

An enclitic (the word is derived from the Greek for "leaning on") must be attached to the end of another word: **suntne, villaque**. When an enclitic has been attached to a word, the accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, whether long or short.

Helps and Hints. Since Latin has no words for *yes* and *no*, questions with the enclitic **-ne** must be answered by a statement or part of a statement:

Spectantne agricolae silvam? *Are the farmers looking at the forest?*
 Spectant. *Yes.*
 Nōn spectant. *No.*
 Nautae, nōn agricolae, silvam spectant.
No, the sailors are looking at the forest.
 Villam, nōn silvam, spectant. *No, they are looking at the farmhouse.*

— Vocabulary —

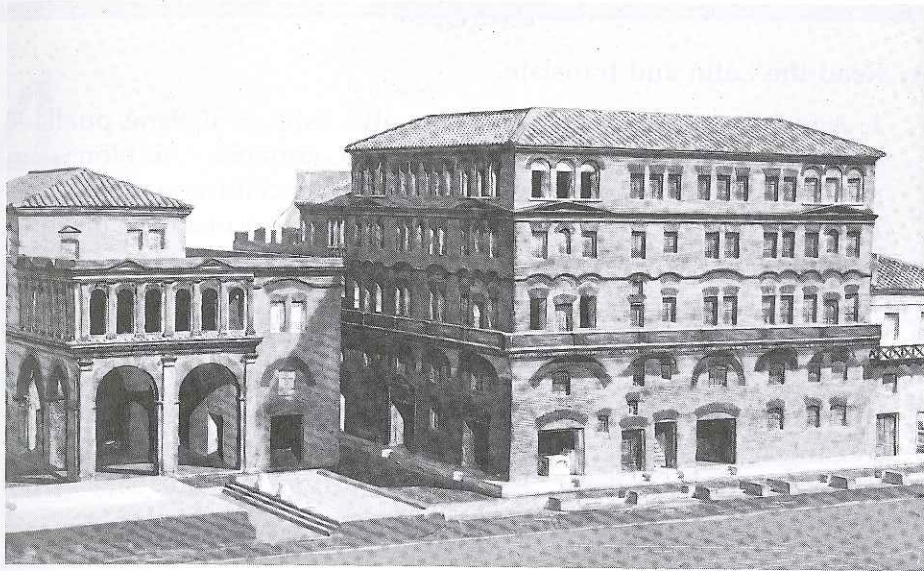
Eurō'pa, -ae, f., *Europe*
 Germā'nia, -ae, f., *Germany*
 Hispā'nia, -ae, f., *Spain*
 nau'ta, -ae, m., *sailor*
 por'ta, -ae, f., *gate*
 Rō'ma, -ae, f., *Rome*
 ter'ra, -ae, f., *earth, land*
 tu'ba, -ae, f., *trumpet*
 vi'a, -ae, f., *road, way*
 vīl'la, -ae, f., *farmhouse*

quid?, (interrogative pronoun)
what?

ubi?, (interrogative adverb)
where?

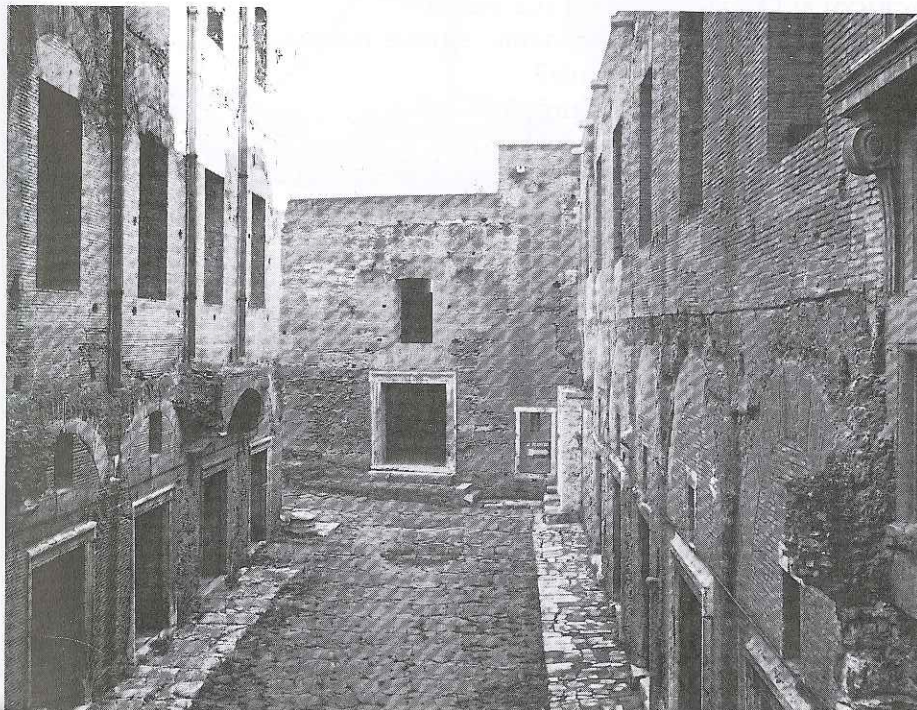
-ne, (enclitic interrogative
 particle)

-que, (enclitic conjunction) *and*
 (connects words of like syntax;
 must be translated before the
 word to which it is attached)



(above) Ostian apartment house. These complexes had about four or five stories usually with shops on the ground floor facing the street. Staircases led from the street to the upper floors and many had inner courtyards.

(below) Street in Trajan's market erected in c. 110 A.D. to replace the shops with living lofts which were destroyed to make room for Trajan's Forum and Basilica.



—Exercises—

A. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Agricolae sumus. 2. Fēmina in silvā est. 3. Estisne puellae?
4. Nauta in īsulā est. 5. Sumus in Germāniā. 6. Nōn sum
puella. 7. Suntne fēminae in silvā? 8. Spectantne nautae fēmi-
nās? 9. Nōn sunt portae in villā. 10. Agricolae fēminaeque
īsulam spectant.

B. Translate.

1. The women are in Spain. 2. Are you a farmer? 3. We are in
the farmhouse. 4. Is the girl in the province? 5. The sailor is
looking at the trumpet. 6. Are the farmers carrying water? 7. The
sailors are on the island. 8. Are you (*pl.*) in the forest? 9. They
are not on the road. 10. The girls are not in the farmhouse.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

A SAILOR IN ITALY

In viā sunt nautae. Agricolae nautās spectant. Agricola nautam vocat.

AGRICOLA: O nauta, ubi est tua patria?

NAUTA: Mea patria est Germānia; sumus nautae.

AGRICOLA: Ubi est Germānia?

NAUTA: Germānia est in Eurōpā.

AGRICOLA: Estne Hispānia in Eurōpā?

NAUTA: Hispānia etiam est in Eurōpā, sed nōn est prope Germāniam.

Hodiē ad Hispāniam nāvigāmus, et postea ad Germāniam. Pa-
triam nostram amāmus. Valē.

4

Second Declension Genitive of Possession



Bronze lampstand and lamp from Pompeii

Salus populi suprema lex.
The safety of the people is the highest law.—CICERO

—Forms—

THE SECOND DECLENSION

There are five declensions of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular. Nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-ae* belong to the first declension (*puella, -ae*). Second declension nouns end in *-ī* in the genitive singular. They are usually masculine if they end in *-us* or *-er* in the nominative singular.

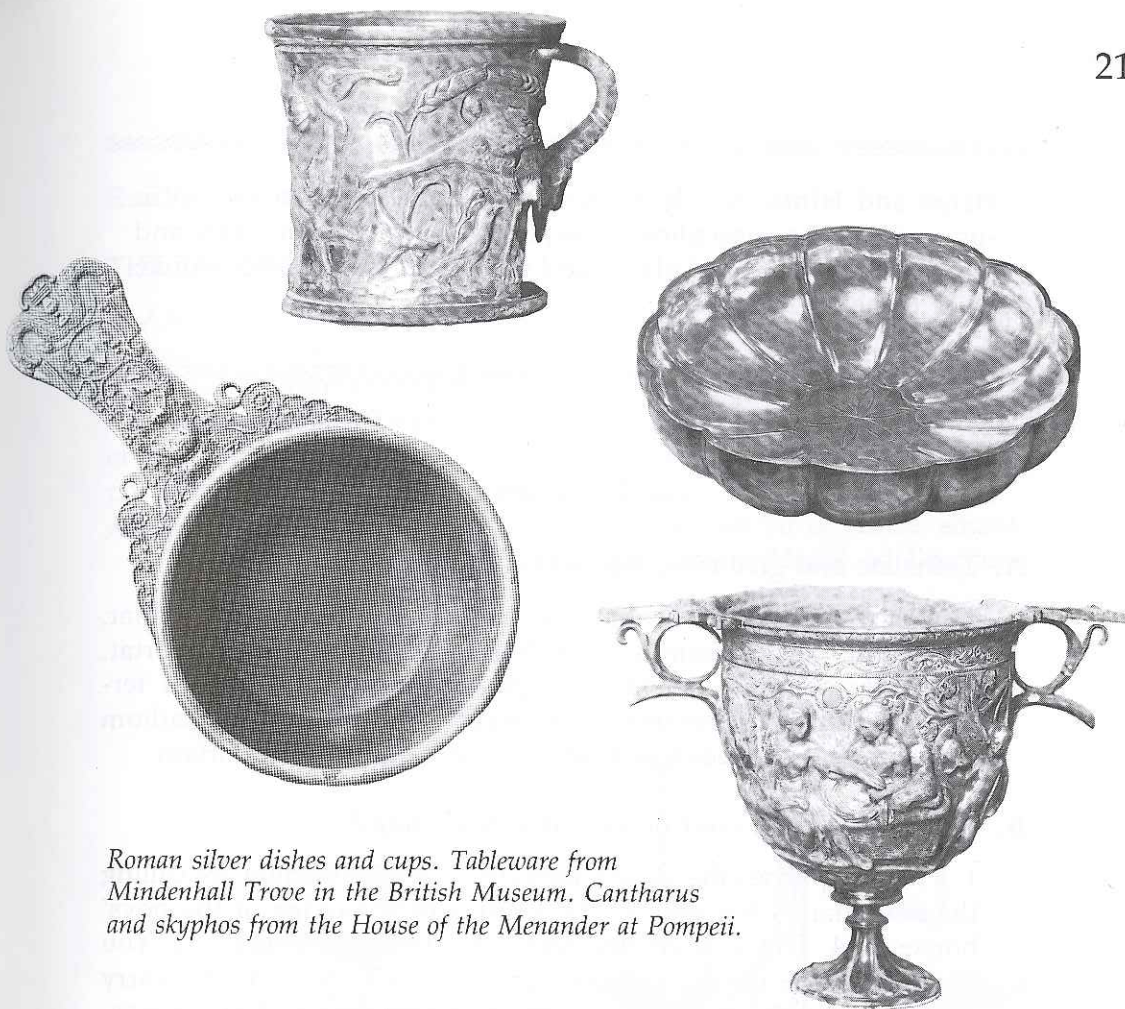
SINGULAR					ENDINGS
NOM.	amī'cus	fi'lius	pu'er	a'ger	-us, —
GEN.	amī'cī	fi'lī	pu'erī	a'grī	-ī
DAT.	amī'cō	fi'liō	pu'erō	a'grō	-ō
ACC.	amī'cum	fi'lium	pu'erum	a'grum	-um
ABL.	amī'cō	fi'liō	pu'erō	a'grō	-ō
PLURAL					
NOM.	amī'cī	fi'lī	pu'erī	a'grī	-ī
GEN.	amīcō'rum	fi'liō'rum	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	-ōrum
DAT.	amī'cīs	fi'liīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	-īs
ACC.	amī'cōs	fi'liōs	pu'erōs	a'grōs	-ōs
ABL.	amī'cis	fi'liīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	-īs

—Syntax—

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

The genitive case is used to show possession (*of, -'s, or -s'* in English).

agricolae ager *the farmer's field, the field of the farmer*
 agricolārum ager *the farmers' field, the field of the farmers*



Roman silver dishes and cups. Tableware from Mindenhall Trove in the British Museum. Cantharus and skyphos from the House of the Menander at Pompeii.

— Vocabulary —

a'ger, a'grī, m., field, territory
 amī'cus, -ī, m., friend
 an'nus, -ī, m., year
 cam'pus, -ī, m., field, plain
 de'a, -ae, f., goddess*
 de'us, -ī, m., god
 e'quus, e'quī, m., horse
 fī'lia, -ae, f., daughter*
 fī'lius, fī'lī, m., son

gla'dius, gla'dī, m., sword
 lēgā'tus, -ī, m., envoy; lieutenant
 lū'dus, -ī, m., game; school
 nūn'tius, nūn'tī, m., messenger,
 message
 pu'er, pu'erī, m., boy
 ser'vus, -ī, m., slave
 vir, vi'rī, m., man; husband

* In the dative and ablative plural **dea** and **filia** have the irregular forms **deābus** and **filiābus**, to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of **deus** and **filius**.

Helps and Hints. Nearly all nouns of the second declension in **-us** and **-er** are masculine. Exceptions are names of cities and towns in **-us**, names of plants and gems, and a few other words; all of these are feminine.

— Exercises —

A. Translate and give the construction of each noun.

1. Virī agrōs agricolārum occupant. 2. Fīliās nūntī amat.
3. Equum fili vocāmus. 4. Servus tubam lēgātī portat.
5. Nūntius fēminās vocat. 6. Agricolārum amīcī occupant ter-
ram. 7. Agrōs in prōvinciā nōn parant. 8. Puerī amīcus gladium
spectat. 9. Fēminae deās laudant. 10. Equī nūntiōs portant.

B. Translate. Watch your noun and verb endings!

1. The boy praises the slave's memory. 2. The women are calling
the lieutenant's friend. 3. The lieutenant is looking at the boys'
horses. 4. The lieutenants seize the farmer's fields. 5. You
(*sing.*) love the messenger's daughter. 6. The boys do not carry
the messenger's trumpets. 7. We love the gods and goddesses.
8. The messengers carry the letter. 9. The slave of the lieutenant
is calling the boy. 10. Are the men fighting in the plains?

Helps and Hints. To avoid ambiguity, do not place a genitive of possession between two nouns.

Servus agricolae equum laudat = *The slave praises the farmer's horse* or *The farmer's slave praises the horse*. To avoid this confusion, the sentence meaning *The slave praises the farmer's horse* should be written: Servus equum agricolae laudat, *The farmer's slave praises the horse* should be: Agricolae servus equum laudat.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

THE TROJAN WAR

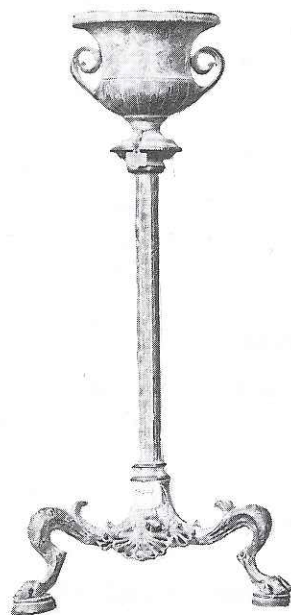
In Asiā est vir clārus. Vir est Anchīsēs. Dea Anchīsēn (*accusative*) amat. Aenēās est fīlius deae et Anchīsae. Aenēae fēmina est Creūsa. Creūsa Aenēāsque fīlium vocant Ascānium.

Aenēae patria est Trōia. Trōia nōn est in Eurōpā, sed in Asiā. Graeci et viri Trōiae pugnant. Graeci Trōiam occupant. Aenēās Anchīsēn portat. Creūsam fīliumque vocat.

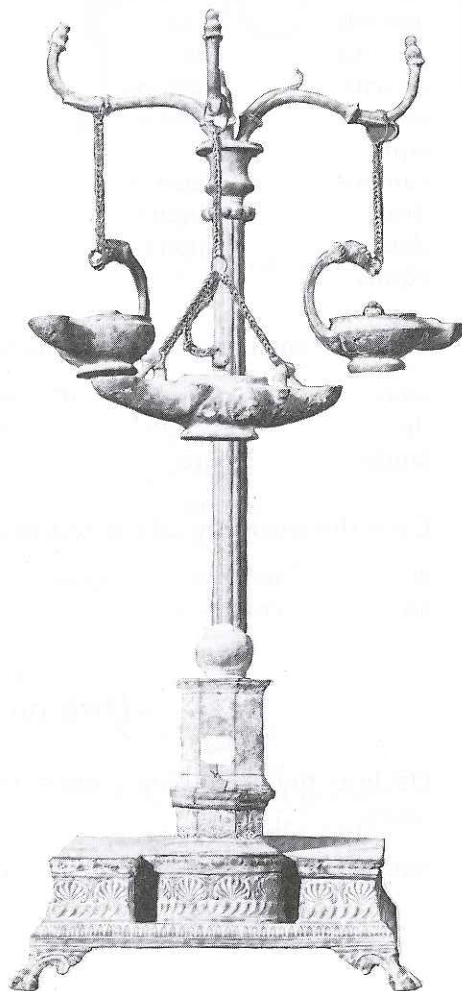
AENĒAS: "Nōn iam est Trōia. Sed deī deaeque virōs Trōiae amant.

Etiam fēminās et puerōs puellāsque amant. Hodiē ad Eurōpam nāvigāmus."

Lamp holder from Herculaneum



Standing lamp



Aspirat primo Fortuna labori.
Fortune smiles upon our first effort.—VERGIL

REVIEW 1 (LESSONS 1-4)

—Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

ager	fēmina	lūdus	puella
agricola	filia	memoria	puer
amīcitia	filius	nātūra	servus
amīcus	fortūna	nauta	silva
annus	gladius	nūntius	terra
aqua	īnsula	patria	tuba
campus	lēgātus	poēta	via
dea	lingua	porta	villa
deus	littera	prōvincia	vir
equus			vīta

B. Give the meanings of the following verbs.

amō	nāvigō	portō	sum
dō	occupō	pugnō	vocō
laudō	parō	spectō	

C. Give the meaning of the following words.

et	nōn	quid	sed	ubi
ad	cum			

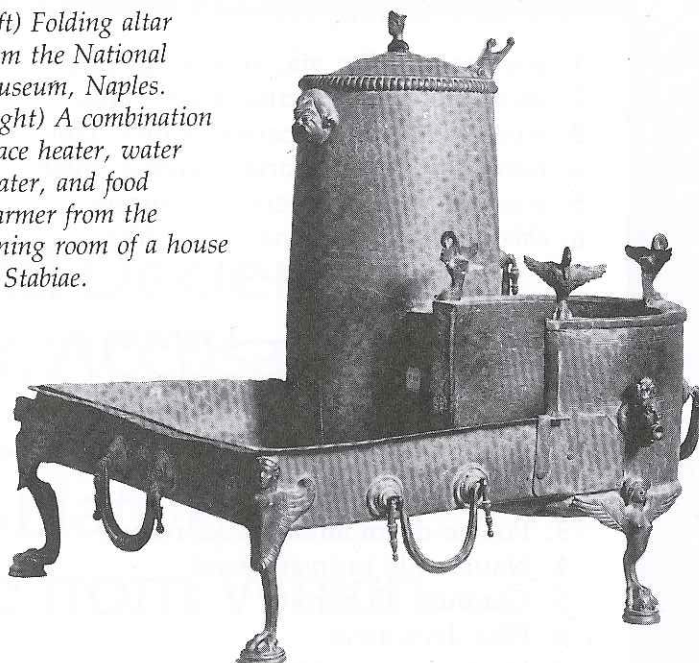
—Drill on Forms—

A. Decline the following nouns in the singular and plural. Name cases.

nauta	lēgātus	filius
-------	---------	--------



(left) Folding altar
from the National
Museum, Naples.
(right) A combination
space heater, water
heater, and food
warmer from the
dining room of a house
at Stabiae.



B. Conjugate the following verbs in the present tense. Give meanings.

pugnō

sum

C. Translate the following verb forms.

1. laudant

2. nāvigās

3. portat

4. damus

5. spectant

6. parās

7. pugnātis

8. amō

9. occupāsne?

10. vocātis

D. Give the Latin for the following.

1. we are carrying

2. they sail

3. he is fighting

4. you (pl.) love

5. she gives

6. we look at

7. I am seizing

8. you (sing.) praise

9. do you (pl.) call?

10. they prepare

E. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: via, amīcus, gladius.
2. *dative singular*: amīcitia, puer, filius.
3. *accusative singular*: patria, equus, ager.
4. *nominative plural*: porta, nūntius, puer.
5. *accusative plural*: littera, vir, annus.
6. *ablative plural*: fortūna, deus, filia.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Fēminae puellaeque nōn nāvigant.
2. Nūntī amīcus est in silvā.
3. Poētae deam amant laudantque.
4. Nautae filiī in īnsulā sunt.
5. Gladium fili portat.
6. Filia deōs amat.
7. In campō pugnāmus.
8. Vir in villā est, sed puer est in agrō.
9. In agrīs estis.
10. Puerī in lēgātī prōvinciā sunt.

B. Translate.

1. We look at the lieutenant's sword.
2. The messengers are in Germany.
3. You (*pl.*) praise the nature of women.
4. He is preparing a letter.
5. The horses carry the boys.
6. We love the gods.
7. They are seizing the man's field and farmhouse.
8. They look at the horses.
9. We are calling the friends.
10. The sailors praise the goddess.

5

Second Declension, Neuter; Accusative of Place to Which Ablative of Place from Which



Children carrying implements used in elaborate Roman wedding ceremonies

Ab ovo usque ad mala.
From the egg right to the fruits.—HORACE
 (From soup to nuts.)

—Forms—

THE SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER

Neuter nouns of the second declension end in **-um** in the nominative singular. They are declined like **verbum**, *word*.

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS	PLURAL	ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE:	ver'būm	-um	ver'ba	-a
GENITIVE:	ver'bī	-ī	verbō'rum	-ōrum
DATIVE:	ver'bō	-ō	ver'bīs	-īs
ACCUSATIVE:	ver'būm	-um	ver'ba	-a
ABLATIVE:	ver'bō	-ō	ver'bīs	-īs

Helps and Hints. In all neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions, the nominative is always the same as the accusative; and in the plural the ending of these two cases is always **-a**.

—Syntax—

THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

The accusative is used with the prepositions **ad to**, **in into**, and **sub up to**, to indicate *place to which*, i.e., the goal toward which the action of the verb is directed.

Agricola filium in villam vocat.

The farmer calls his son into the farmhouse.

Aquam sub oppidum portāmus.

We are carrying water up to the town.

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

The ablative is used with the prepositions *ā*, *ab* *away from*, *dē* *down from*, and *ē*, *ex* *out of*, to indicate *place from which*, i.e., the point from which motion takes place.

Frūmentum ex agrīs portant. *They carry grain from the fields.*

Nāvigātis ab īnsulā. *You are sailing from the island.*

— Vocabulary —

bel'lum, -ī, neuter, *war*

cae'lum, -ī, n., *sky*

dō'num, -ī, n., *gift*

frūmen'tum, -ī, n., *grain*

op'pidum, -ī, n., *town*

perī'culum, -ī, n., *danger, risk*

rēg'num, -ī, n., *kingdom; kingship*

ver'bum, -ī, n., *word*

ā, *ab*, (preposition with the ablative) *from, away from*

ad, (preposition with the accusative) *to, toward, near*

dē, (prep. with abl.) *from, down from, about, concerning*

ē, *ex*, (prep. with abl.) *from, out of*

in, (prep. with acc. of place to which) *into, against; (with abl. of place where) in, on*

sub, (prep. with acc. of place to which) *under, up to, to the foot of; (with abl. of place where) under, at the foot of*

Sarcophagus relief showing child from infancy to first schooling



—Word Study—

The prepositions listed in the vocabulary may also be used as prefixes on verbs. Certain combinations of letters are hard to pronounce. Many of these occur when a preposition is prefixed to a verb, and often they are changed slightly for the sake of easier pronunciation. It is easier to say "import" than "inport," "support" than "subport," "appello" than "adpello." This is true in both English and Latin. This change for the sake of easier pronunciation is called *assimilation*.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. ē periculō 2. in oppidō 3. ad Italiā 4. dē caelō 5. sub silvam 6. ā patriā 7. sub rēgnō 8. ad servum 9. in insulam 10. ā campō

B. Translate.

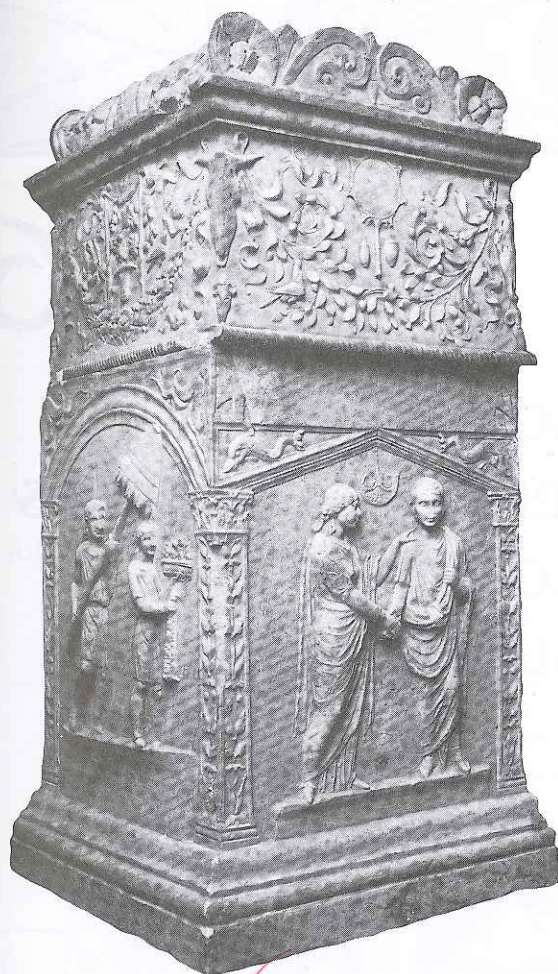
1. away from the gate 2. into the water 3. to Europe 4. under the sky 5. from the kingdom 6. up to the town 7. down from the road 8. to school 9. in the field 10. out of the farmhouse

C. Pronounce and translate.

1. Fēminae bellum nōn amant. 2. Frūmentum ex agrīs ad villam portāmus. 3. Occupant insulam et oppida. 4. Virīne puellās in viā spectant? 5. Puerum ad caelum portat deus. 6. Nūntī filius in silvam amicum vocat. 7. Lēgātī gladiōs in rēgnum portant. 8. Est bellum in Eurōpā. 9. Agricolaē servī laudant frūmentum. 10. Ab Italiā ad insulam nāvigātis.

D. Translate.

1. The lieutenants seize the kingdom and (its) towns. 2. The farmer's slaves carry water into the farmhouse. 3. The gods love the gifts of men and women. 4. There is danger of war in Italy. 5. The sailors are sailing from Spain to the islands. 6. The men are calling the boys out of the forest. 7. The girls do not like the words of the messenger. 8. Are the sons of the lieutenant in danger? 9. The farmer's daughters are carrying grain from the field to the road. 10. The men from the province are fighting.



Altar showing wedding scenes: Note the joining of hands at the conclusion of the marriage service, the children taking part in the procession to the bridegroom's house carrying an umbrella and an offering for the sacrifice.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

AENEAS SAILS TO CARTHAGE

Post longum bellum in Asiā, Aenēās cum amīcīs ab Asiā ad Eurōpam nāvigat. Sed perīculum est in Eurōpā. Ab Eurōpā ad Āfricā nāvigat. Est magnum oppidum in Āfricā. Elissa* est rēgīna oppidī. Elissa frūmentum et dona Aenēae amīcīs (*dative*) dat. Elissa Aenēan (*accusative*) amat. Deī Aenēan rēgīnamque dē caelō spectant.

Nautae Aenēae et virī fēminaeque in oppidō sunt amīcī. Sed perīculum est in Āfricā.

* Elissa of Tyre, usually known by her nickname Dido, was the foundress of Carthage in North Africa.

6

Adjectives Agreement of Adjectives Adjectives as Substantives



Portrait in fresco of a husband and wife from a bakery in Pompeii

Nullum magnum ingenium sine mixtura dementiae fuit.
There has not been any great talent without an element of madness.

—SENECA

—Forms—

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** belong to the first and second declensions.

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOMINATIVE:	ma'lus	ma'la	ma'lum
GENITIVE:	ma'li	ma'lae	ma'li
DATIVE:	ma'lō	ma'lae	ma'lō
ACCUSATIVE:	ma'lum	ma'lam	ma'lum
ABLATIVE:	ma'lō	ma'lā	ma'lō
	PLURAL		
NOMINATIVE:	ma'li	ma'lae	ma'la
GENITIVE:	malō'rum	malā'rum	malō'rum
DATIVE:	ma'lis	ma'lis	ma'lis
ACCUSATIVE:	ma'lōs	ma'lās	ma'la
ABLATIVE:	ma'lis	ma'lis	ma'lis

—Syntax—

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

An adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. This is why a Latin adjective must have forms for all genders, as well as for the cases and numbers. However, an adjective will not necessarily have the same ending as the noun it modifies.

Agricolae sunt mali. *The farmers are bad.*
 Fēminae sunt bonae. *The women are good.*

Helps and Hints. Adjectives may either precede or follow the noun modified. In any phrase, the determining and most significant word comes first. In general, numeral adjectives, adjectives of quantity, and interrogative pronouns tend to precede the words to which they belong. When *sum* is used as the substantive verb, it regularly stands first, or at any rate before its subject.

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

In Latin any adjective may be used as a noun; its translation will depend on its gender.

<i>malus,</i>	<i>a bad man</i>	<i>malī,</i>	<i>bad men, the wicked</i>
<i>mala,</i>	<i>a bad woman</i>	<i>malae,</i>	<i>bad women</i>
<i>malum,</i>	<i>a bad thing</i>	<i>mala,</i>	<i>bad things, evils</i>

In English this use of the adjective is mostly restricted to certain plurals: "The good die young." "The poor you have always with you."

—Vocabulary—

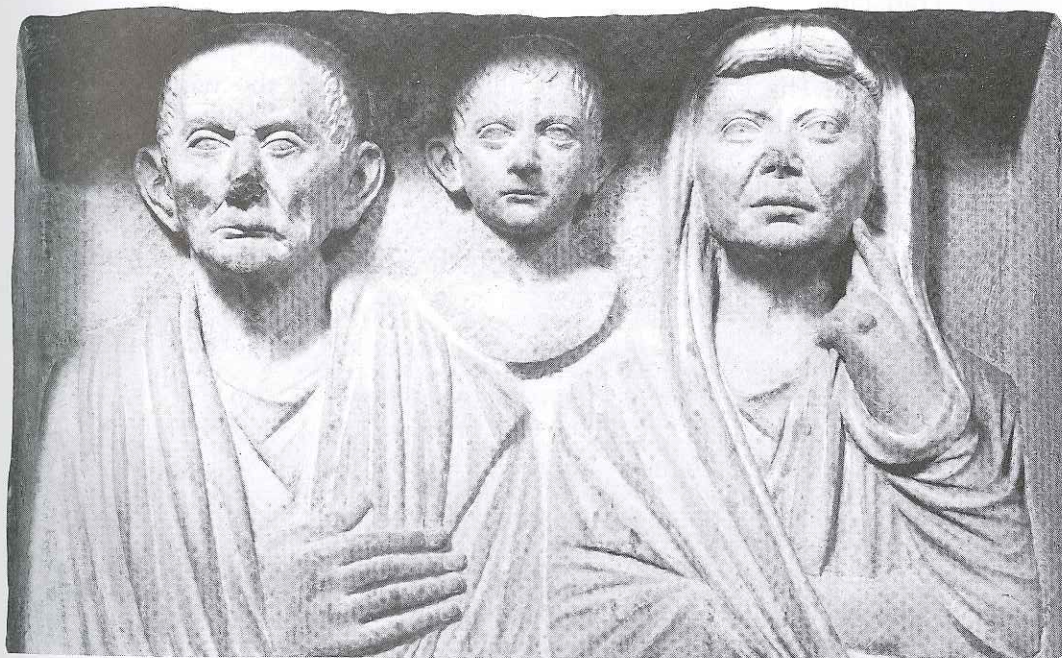
<i>al'tus, al'ta, al'tum, high; deep</i>	<i>mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, much</i>
<i>bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, good</i>	<i>(pl., many)</i>
<i>fe'rus, fe'ra, fe'rum, wild, fierce,</i>	<i>par'vus, par'va, par'vum, small,</i>
<i>savage</i>	<i>little</i>
<i>lā'tus, lā'ta, lā'tum, wide, broad</i>	<i>tu'us, tu'a, tu'um, your, yours</i>
<i>lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, long</i>	<i>(when speaking to one</i>
<i>mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num,</i>	<i>person)</i>
<i>large, great</i>	<i>cum, (prep. with abl.) with</i>
<i>ma'lus, ma'la, ma'lum, bad</i>	<i>sine, (prep. with abl.) without</i>
<i>me'us, me'a, me'um, my, mine</i>	

— Word Study —

Cum (in the forms **co-**, **com-**, **con-**) is, like the prepositions in Lesson 5, also used as a verb prefix. **Co- (com-, con-)** means *together*, *completely*, or *forcibly*. Note the meanings of the following compounds:

collaudō	<i>I praise highly</i>
comparō	<i>I put together, I arrange; I prepare eagerly</i>
comportō	<i>I carry together, I bring together</i>
convocō	<i>I call together, I summon</i>

A grave monument in the Vatican Museum showing a family portrait



EVIBIVS L F TRO VECILIA D LILAE
L VIBIVS FELICIO F IX VII A L L PRIMA

—Exercises—

A. Decline the following.

ager lātus bellum magnum filia parva nauta bonus

B. Translate, giving reasons for the ending of each adjective.

1. Agrī lātī in magnā īnsulā sunt. 2. Bonīne sunt puerī parvī?
 3. Deī malōs nōn amant. 4. Puer parvus equōs ferōs vocat ex agrō.
 5. Multī nāvigant ad Ītaliā. 6. Mea filia est parva, nōn magna.
 7. Multum frūmentum bonī servī portant. 8. Tua patria nōn est magna.
 9. Viae longae nōn sunt. 10. Multa bella mala sunt.

C. Translate.

1. Is the good farmer in the small field? 2. Many people like large gifts.
 3. The bad messenger calls the men into the wide plain.
 4. A good poet praises great men. 5. Are you sailing to your large island?
 6. Your daughters are looking at the wild horse.
 7. There is a large gate in the small town. 8. Are you fighting with your friends in my farmhouse?
 9. The good boys are carrying much water into the big forest. 10. Where are they preparing the long roads?

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

THE GODS CALL AENEAS TO ITALY

Rēgnum Elissae in Āfricā est. Rēgnum est lātum et oppidum est magnum altumque. Ferī Āfricānī rēginam nōn amant. Bellum parant, sed rēginae oppidum nōn occupant.

Aenēās cum amīcīs ā Siciliā ad Āfricā nāvigat. Elissa Aenēan amat et vocat: "Meum rēgnum est tuum. Āfricānī meum rēgnum nōn amant; in magnō periculō sumus. Troiānīs meam patriam dō."

Sed deī Troiānōs in Ītaliā vocant. Aenēās: "Tuum rēgnum est magnum et bonum et pulchrum, et Āfricānī sunt malī. Tē et tuum rēgnum laudō, et tē amō. Sed deī Troiānōs ad Ītaliā vocant."

7

Imperfect Tense Future Tense



Sarcophagus showing a woman's funeral

Excitabat fluctus in simpulo.
He was stirring up billows in a ladle.—CICERO
(He was raising a tempest in a teapot.)

—Forms—

Two other tenses besides the present are formed on the present stem of a verb, the *imperfect* tense and the *future* tense.

THE PRESENT TENSE

The present tense is formed by adding the personal endings **-ō**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, and **-nt** to the present stem of the verb, omitting the **-ā** of the stem before **-ō**, and shortening it before **-t** and **-nt**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
vo'cō,	<i>I call</i>	vocā'mus,	<i>we call</i>
vo'cās,	<i>you call</i>	vocā'tis,	<i>you call</i>
vo'cat,	<i>he, she, it calls</i>	vo'cant,	<i>they call</i>

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

To form the imperfect tense we add the tense-sign **-bā-** to the present stem, and then add the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, and **-nt**, shortening the **-ā** of **-bā-** before **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
vocā'bam,	<i>I was calling</i>	vocābā'mus,	<i>we were calling</i>
vocā'bās,	<i>you were calling</i>	vocābā'tis,	<i>you were calling</i>
vocā'bat,	<i>he, she, it was calling</i>	vocā'bant,	<i>they were calling</i>

THE FUTURE TENSE

The future tense is formed by adding the tense-sign **-bi-** to the present stem of the verb, then the personal endings **-ō**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, and **-nt**, omitting the **-i-** of **-bi-** before **-ō** and changing it to **-u-** before **-nt**.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
vocā'bō,	<i>I shall call</i>	vocā'bimus,	<i>we shall call</i>
vocā'bis,	<i>you will call</i>	vocā'bitis,	<i>you will call</i>
vocā'bit,	<i>he, she, it will call</i>	vocā'bunt,	<i>they will call</i>

— Syntax —

USE OF TENSES

The Latin imperfect does not have the same meaning as the English past tense; in fact, English has no tense which is the equivalent of the imperfect tense in Latin. The imperfect tense describes an action as incomplete (**imperfectum**, *uncompleted*), i.e., as going on, at some time in the past. There are several ways of translating the imperfect into English: the standard translation of **vocābat** is *he was calling*; but it could also mean *he used to call*, or, very rarely, *he called*. The translation you choose will depend on the context.

The Latin future tense, like the future tense in English, merely states that an action will take place in the future: **vocābō**, *I shall call*, **vocābis**, *you will call*, etc.

Funerary relief showing a butcher shop. Hanging are various cuts including a calf's head. To the left are scales.



— Vocabulary —

appel'lō, I call, I name	nār'rō, I tell, I relate
con'vocō, I call together, I assemble, I summon	nūn'tiō, I announce, I report
exspec'tō, I await, I wait for	su'perō, I surpass, I defeat
ha'bitō, I live, I dwell	vo'lō, I fly
labō'rō, I labor, I suffer, I am hard pressed	vul'nerō, I wound

— Exercises —

A. Analyze each form and translate.

1. appellābam, nūntiābis, convocātis 2. occupat, labōrāmus, expectābunt 3. nāvigāmus, vocābat, volābunt 4. vulnerābis, superābant, nārrāmus 5. spectābit, portābimus, habitābunt 6. laudābās, pugnābātis, parābimus 7. dant, amābit, superābunt 8. vulnerō, appellābit, vocābunt 9. expectābit, habitābant, volāmus 10. amābō, portābitis, nūntiābās

B. Translate.

1. they will tell, I was laboring, we shall look at 2. we are sailing, he will seize, I am calling together 3. they prepare, they are praising, they were fighting 4. you (*sing.*) were giving, we shall sail, they wound 5. I shall surpass, you (*pl.*) are flying, they will praise 6. he was summoning, we shall call, they carry 7. you (*pl.*) relate, we were fighting, I shall live 8. they will seize, he names, you (*sing.*) were preparing 9. we shall suffer, they were looking at, she was loving 10. I shall wait for, he announces, you (*pl.*) will give

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Bonam fortūnam tuam nūntiābō. 2. Agricolaē labōrābant in agrīs. 3. Fēminae puerōs puellāsque convocābunt. 4. Meōs filiōs nōn superābitis. 5. Nauta servum in viā vulnerābit. 6. Deī deaeque in caelō habitābant. 7. Multī lēgātōrum amīcī expectābant nūntiōs. 8. In villā parvā habitābāmus. 9. Spectābam equum meum in campō lātō. 10. Virī in magnā silvā labōrābunt.

D. Translate.

1. We shall sail to the small island. 2. The good sailor will not wound the friend of the girl. 3. They were assembling the men and women. 4. The horses will carry water into the town. 5. The good farmer used to live in a large farmhouse. 6. The boys were preparing the letter. 7. Will you (*pl.*) carry much grain into the road? 8. The messenger's son was looking at my gifts. 9. I was laboring in your fields. 10. The lieutenants used to carry many swords.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

THE FALL OF TROY

DIDŌ: "Meōs tuōsque amīcōs convocābō. Nārrābisne malam fortūnam Trōiae?"

AENĒAS: "Nārrābō. Cum meō parvō filiō et fēminā, Creūsā, in oppidō meō habitābam. Vitam bonam Trōiānōrum laudābāmus. Nūntiū bellum nūntiābant: 'Graeci ad Asiam nāvigābunt.' Trōiānī bellum parābant et Graecōs expectābant. Bellum in patriam meam portābant Graeci. Graecōrum gladii multōs Trōiānōs vulnerābant. Trōiānī labōrābāmus: Graeci Trōiānōs superābant. Cum Graecis feris pugnābam et multōs vulnerābam. Ō, mala nārrō! Graeci meum oppidum altum occupābant!"

Funerary relief showing a dealer in poultry and vegetables. The monkeys are probably pets brought by sailors.



8

Adjectives in -er Dative of Indirect Object



Relief from a sarcophagus showing a greengrocer's shop in Ostia

Nullum saeculum magnis ingeniis clausum est.
To great talents no era is closed.—SENECA

—Forms—

ADJECTIVES IN -ER

Some adjectives of the first and second declension end in **-er** in the masculine nominative singular. These are declined like **miser** *wretched* or **sacer** *sacred*.

	MASCULINE	SINGULAR FEMININE	NEUTER
NOMINATIVE:	mi'ser	mi'sera	mi'serum
GENITIVE:	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'serī
DATIVE:	mi'serō	mi'serae	mi'serō
ACCUSATIVE:	mi'serum	mi'seram	mi'serum
ABLATIVE:	mi'serō	mi'serā	mi'serō
PLURAL			
NOMINATIVE:	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
GENITIVE:	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
DATIVE:	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
ACCUSATIVE:	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
ABLATIVE:	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
SINGULAR			
NOMINATIVE:	sa'cer	sa'cra	sa'crum
GENITIVE:	sa'crī	sa'crae	sa'crī
DATIVE:	sa'crō	sa'crae	sa'crō
ACCUSATIVE:	sa'crum	sa'cram	sa'crum
ABLATIVE:	sa'crō	sa'crā	sa'crō
PLURAL			
NOMINATIVE:	sa'crī	sa'crae	sa'cra
GENITIVE:	sacrō'rum	sacrā'rum	sacrō'rum
DATIVE:	sa'crīs	sa'crīs	sa'crīs
ACCUSATIVE:	sa'crōs	sa'crās	sa'cra
ABLATIVE:	sa'crīs	sa'crīs	sa'crīs

Helps and Hints. There is no new difficulty in the declension of these adjectives. The masculine is like **puer** and **ager**, the rest like **magnus**.

Note that **liber** and **miser** retain the **e**, like **puer**; **pulcher** and **vester** drop it, like **ager**. To remember which words drop the **e** and which keep it, think of English derivatives: *liberate*, *miserable*, *puerile*, *agrarian*, and *pulchritude*. Most second declension adjectives in **-er** drop the **e**. **Libe**r and **mise**r are the commonest ones that do not.

—Syntax—

INDIRECT OBJECT

The indirect object is put in the dative. It shows *to* or *for* whom or which something is said, given, shown, or done. Notice that in English we often omit the preposition *to* or *for*. The indirect object usually comes before the direct in Latin.

Agricola puerō aquam dat. *The farmer gives the boy water. (water to the boy.)*
Equō frumentum parat. *He is preparing grain for the horse.*

Relief showing a banquet scene with the guests around the banquet table. On the left notice the servants pouring beverages and serving food. On the right are pictured the kitchen and bakery of a Roman house.



Helps and Hints. Do not confuse the dative of the indirect object with the accusative of place to which, which must be used with verbs of motion.

Dōnum puellae dabō. *I shall give a gift to the girl.*
 Aquam ad puellam portābō. *I shall carry water to the girl.*

— Vocabulary —

lī'ber, lī'bera, lī'berum, *free*
 mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum,
wretched, unfortunate, poor
 nos'ter, nos'tra, nos'trum, *our,*
ours
 pul'cher, -chra, -chrum,
beautiful; noble, fine
 sa'cer, -cra, -crum, *sacred, holy*
 ves'ter, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*
(when speaking to more than
one person)

an'te, (prep. with acc.) *before, in*
front of
 con'trā, (prep. with acc.) *against*
 in'ter, (prep. with acc.) *between,*
among
 ob, (prep. with acc.) *because of,*
on account of
 per, (prep. with acc.) *through*
 post, (prep. with acc.) *after,*
behind
 prop'ter, (prep. with acc.)
because of, on account of
 trāns, (prep. with acc.) *across,*
over



— Word Study —

The prepositions **ante**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, and **trāns** are also used as prefixes on verbs, with the following meanings:

ante-, before, forwards
inter-, between, at intervals, to pieces
ob-, towards, to meet, in opposition to
per-, through, completely
trāns-, trā-, across, over, through and through

— Exercises —

A. Decline the following.

agricola miser

puella pulchra

verbum sacrum

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Verba deōrum sacra sunt. 2. Equī nostrī sunt parvī pulchrīque. 3. Vestrumne frūmentum servīs dabit? 4. Propter perīcula ad Germāniam nōn nāvigābimus. 5. Pugnābuntne nostrī in Germāniae campīs? 6. Sunt inter fēminās memoriae amīcitiae magnae. 7. Tua filia pulchra caelum spectat. 8. Deīs dōna multa et pulchra dabimus. 9. Amīcī nostrī sunt miserī. 10. Nautae tuum filium parvum vulnerant.

~~~~~

Since adjectives are freely used as nouns in Latin, we often find **nostrī**, *our men*, especially in military historians like Caesar. So also **tuī**, *your friends, your family, etc.*

In Latin, as in English, two adjectives modifying the same noun may or may not be connected by a conjunction, depending on the meaning.

Magnum equum pulchrum spectō.

*I am looking at a big beautiful horse.*

Equum magnum et pulchrum spectō.

*I am looking at a large and beautiful horse.*



But Latin usage differs from English in one respect: we seldom connect *many* with another adjective by a conjunction; Latin nearly always says **multī et . . .**

Equōs multōs et pulchrōs spectō.  
*I am looking at many beautiful horses.*

C. Translate.

1. On account of the war, we are without grain. 2. Is our native land free? 3. Our men were fighting in Europe. 4. We shall look at the games with our friends. 5. You (*pl.*) were carrying grain across the fields. 6. We are without water, and we shall suffer. 7. I used to give many beautiful gifts to the goddess. 8. Your poor slaves were laboring in the broad plains. 9. You used to dwell among good friends. 10. Our friends were looking at the beautiful girls.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

**AENEAS AT THE CAPTURE OF TROY**

Aenēās miseram fortūnam Trōiānōrum pulchrae rēgīnae narrābat.

AENĒAS: "Graeci Trōiam occupābant. Nostrōs virōs fēmināsque cum amicīs ad oppidī portam convocābam. Propter perīculum sacra deōrum ad portam portābāmus, et Anchīsae dabāmus. Meī servi frūmentum et aquam parābant. Meīs amicīs servisque gladiōs dābam.

"Anchīsēs deōs invocābat: 'Amābātis Trōiam Trōiānōsque. Ubi estis? Spectātisne nostra perīcula? Inter multa perīcula labōrāmus. Nōne amant deī nostram patriam?'"



Saepe creat molles aspera spina rosas.  
*Often the prickly thorn produces tender roses.*—OVID

## REVIEW 2 (LESSONS 5–8)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

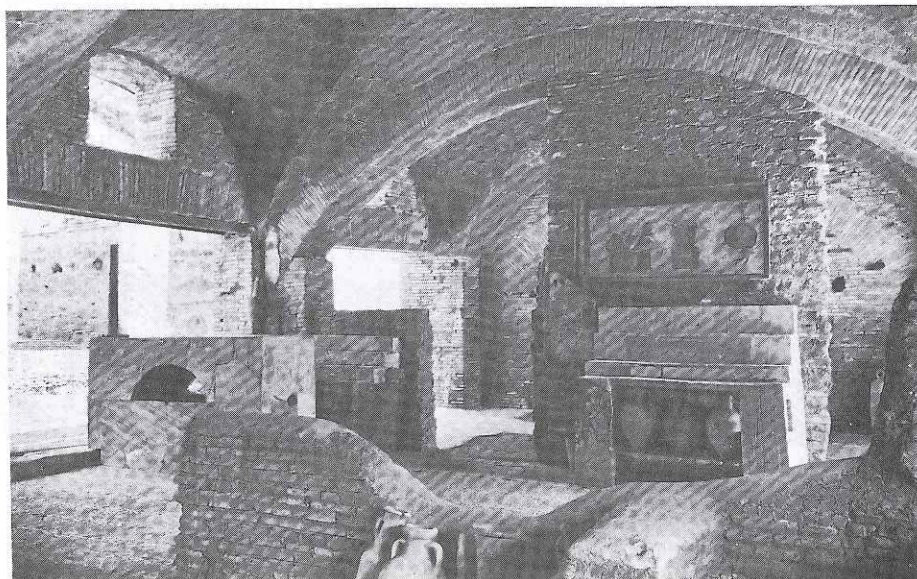
A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|        |           |           |        |
|--------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| bellum | dōnum     | oppidum   | rēgnum |
| caelum | frūmentum | periculum | verbum |

B. Give the other nominative singular forms, and the meaning, of the following adjectives.

|       |        |        |         |
|-------|--------|--------|---------|
| altus | longus | miser  | pulcher |
| bonus | magnus | multus | sacer   |
| ferus | malus  | noster | tuus    |
| lātus | meus   | parvus | vester  |
| liber |        |        |         |

*Thermopolium at Ostia, a tavern where food and drinks were served. It is located in what was a populous section of the city.*





## C. Give the meanings of the following verbs.

|          |        |        |         |
|----------|--------|--------|---------|
| appellō  | habitō | nārrō  | superō  |
| convocō  | labōrō | nūntiō | volō    |
| exspectō |        |        | vulnerō |

## D. Give the meaning of the following prepositions, and the case or cases with which each is used.

|        |       |       |         |
|--------|-------|-------|---------|
| ā, ab  | cum   | inter | propter |
| ad     | dē    | ob    | sine    |
| ante   | ē, ex | per   | sub     |
| contrā | in    | post  | trāns   |

## —Drill on Forms—

## A. Decline the following.

oppidum liberum, periculum magnum, donum pulchrum

## B. Decline the following adjectives in all genders, singular and plural.

altus miser sacer

C. Conjugate the verb **narrō** in the present, imperfect, and future, giving meanings.

## D. Translate the following verb forms.

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. exspectābis | 6. appellābātis |
| 2. vulnerābunt | 7. labōrābāmus  |
| 3. superābant  | 8. convocābat   |
| 4. volābam     | 9. nārrābimus   |
| 5. nūntiābitis | 10. habitābō    |

## E. Give the Latin for the following.

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I shall name                  | 6. they were waiting for              |
| 2. we shall assemble             | 7. I was reporting                    |
| 3. he used to live               | 8. you ( <i>pl.</i> ) used to surpass |
| 4. we were telling               | 9. they will fly                      |
| 5. you ( <i>pl.</i> ) will labor | 10. you ( <i>sing.</i> ) will wound   |

—Drill on Syntax—

Translate.

1. in your (*one person*) farmhouse
2. on the large island
3. at the foot of the beautiful forest
4. toward my kingdom
5. into the broad field
6. out of your (*more than one person*) province
7. up to the small town
8. down from the long road
9. away from our fatherland
10. to the free land

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Mea filia linguam poētārum bonōrum amat.
2. Nostrī tuam patriam superābunt.
3. Fēminae bonae deōs deāsque laudābant.
4. Pulchrae puellae bonōs puerōs exspectābunt.
5. Lēgātī nūntiōs ad parvum oppidum convocābant.
6. Lūdōsne puerōrum in campō lātō spectābimus?
7. Dabisne virō multa et pulchra dōna?
8. Est villa magna in oppidō.
9. Nautae labōrant; sunt sine aquā.
10. Aqua est alta et perīculum magnum.

B. Translate.

1. Our field is broad and your forest is large.
2. The messengers will report our good fortune to the lieutenant.
3. Many boys used to sail to the long island.
4. We were carrying many letters through the great forest.
5. The sons and daughters of the good sailor live in the province.
6. The kingdom of God is large and wide.
7. On account of the danger, your small son will carry a sword.
8. The bad men and my friends were fighting.
9. Our men were wounding your friends on the road.
10. We are carrying many beautiful gifts toward the kingdom.



9

Imperfect of Sum  
Future of Sum  
Ablative of Means or  
Instrument



*Roman mosaic of a man milking a goat, Imperial Palace, Istanbul*

Medici graviores morbos asperis remediis curant.  
*Doctors cure the more serious diseases with harsh remedies.*

—CURTIUS RUFUS

—Forms—

THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF SUM

IMPERFECT TENSE

|        |                        |          |                  |
|--------|------------------------|----------|------------------|
| e'ram, | <i>I was</i>           | erā'mus, | <i>we were</i>   |
| e'rās, | <i>you were</i>        | erā'tis, | <i>you were</i>  |
| e'rat, | <i>he, she, it was</i> | e'rant,  | <i>they were</i> |

FUTURE TENSE

|        |                            |          |                     |
|--------|----------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| e'rō,  | <i>I shall be</i>          | e'rimus, | <i>we shall be</i>  |
| e'ris, | <i>you will be</i>         | e'ritis, | <i>you will be</i>  |
| e'rit, | <i>he, she, it will be</i> | e'runt,  | <i>they will be</i> |

*Relief from France showing a wine shop. Notice the large and small measures hanging over the counter on a rack.*





—Syntax—

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Notice that it is regularly used of *things*, not persons, and is usually translated by *with* or some other preposition meaning *by means of*.

Servus tubā signum dat. *A slave gives the signal on a trumpet.*

Deōs multis linguīs laudābunt. *They will praise the gods in many languages.*

—Vocabulary—

The following words are all adverbs.

|                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| be'ne, <i>well</i>                 | ma'le, <i>badly</i>                  |
| crās, <i>tomorrow</i>              | nunc, <i>now</i>                     |
| cūr (interrogative), <i>why?</i>   | post'eā, <i>afterwards</i>           |
| di'ū, <i>for a long time, long</i> | sae'pe, <i>often</i>                 |
| he'rī, <i>yesterday</i>            | sem'per, <i>always</i>               |
| ho'diē, <i>today</i>               | tum, <i>then, at that time</i>       |
| iam, <i>now, already</i>           | u'bi (relative), <i>where, when;</i> |
| i'bi, <i>there, in that place</i>  | (interrogative), <i>where?</i>       |
| in'terim, <i>meanwhile</i>         |                                      |

—Exercises—

A. Name the tense, person, and number, and translate.

1. convocābō, sunt, laudābam    2. erātis, dabimus, erat    3. nārrat, eris, nāvigābitis    4. erit, amābāmus, estis    5. nūntiābunt, es, appellāmus

B. Name the tense, person, and number, and translate.

1. you (*sing.*) were, they were flying, I am    2. you (*pl.*) used to seize, we shall be, she was wounding    3. I shall be, they are carrying, I was    4. it is, you (*sing.*) will fight, you (*pl.*) will be    5. he will defeat, we were, you (*pl.*) are waiting for

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Puerī semper erunt bonī amīcī. 2. Lēgātī gladiīs diū pugnābant. 3. Ubi erātis herī? Crās ubi eritis? 4. Bonī nautae bene nāvigābunt. 5. Dōna magna saepe dabant fēminīs. 6. Ītalia lībera semper erit. 7. Equī ferī erant in campō lātō. 8. Erit frūmentum in agrō ubi agricolae labōrant. 9. Cūr vocābās servōs in oppidum? 10. Virī aquam ad villam equīs portābunt.

## D. Translate.

1. Meanwhile the boys were awaiting the messenger for a long time. 2. Will your son always fight with a sword? 3. I was in Gaul yesterday; will you (*sing.*) be there tomorrow? 4. We often used to call our friends together with a trumpet. 5. The words of the gods and goddesses will always be sacred. 6. The unfortunate lieutenant was laboring for a long time. 7. Afterwards we shall sail to Italy. 8. I was small then; now I am big. 9. Today we shall seize the town with swords. 10. There were always many dangers in the great forest.

## —Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

## AENEAS AFTER THE FALL OF TROY

AENĒAS: "Bellum erat longum; diū labōrābāmus. Nunc nāvigābam ab Asiā cum Anchīsā Ascaniōque et sacrīs deōrum Trōiānōrum."

DĪDŌ: "Sed Creūsa ubi erat?"

AENĒAS: "Ō, nōn aderat! Miser eram sine fēminā meā. Sed interim ab Asiā nāvigābāmus ad Thrāciam."

DĪDŌ: "Ubi est Thrācia?"

AENĒAS: "In Eurōpā est. Sed ibi erat perīculum magnum, et deī Trōiānōs in altum (*the deep*) vocābant."

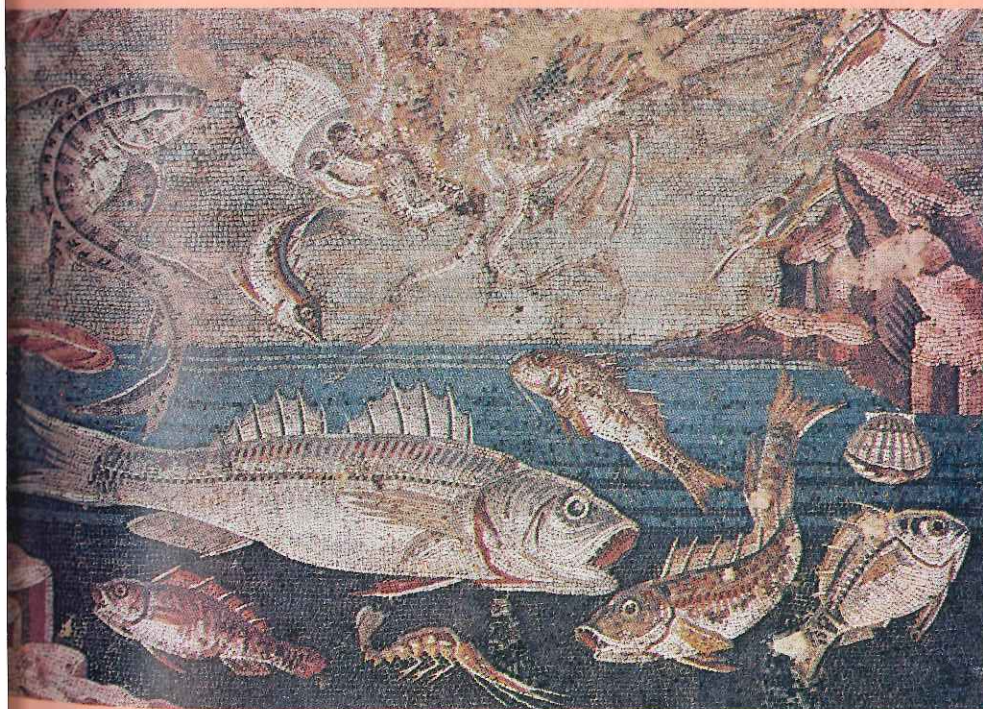
DĪDŌ: "Posteā ubi erātis?"

AENĒAS: "Est in altō īnsula sacra, īnsula deī. Ad īnsulam nāvigābāmus, et ibi deus Anchīsae bona verba dabat dē nostrā fortunā."



# 10

## Principal Parts of Verbs Interrogative Particles



*Mosaic of edible sea life, National Museum, Naples*

Num barbarorum Romulus rex fuit?  
*Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he? —CICERO*

—Forms —

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF A LATIN VERB

1. the present indicative, as **vocō**
2. the present infinitive, as **vocāre**
3. the perfect indicative, as **vocāvī**
4. the supine, as **vocātum**

The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called *stems*. Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, (*supine*) to be found in the last three principal parts.

present **vocā-**      perfect **vocāv-**      supine **vocāt-**

The first conjugation includes all verbs whose present stem ends in **-ā**. This is obtained by dropping the infinitive ending **-re**.

**Dō** and **sum** are irregular verbs. The principal parts of **dō** are **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**; those of **sum** are **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**.

—Syntax —

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

We have seen that to make the kind of question which may be answered by *yes* or *no* we add the enclitic **-ne** to the first word of the sentence. When a question expects the answer *yes*, some negative word, usually **nōn**, is placed first in the sentence and has the **-ne** attached to it.

Nōnne puella est pulchra?

*Isn't the girl beautiful? or The girl is beautiful, isn't she?*

When the answer *no* is expected the question is introduced by **num**.

Num puella est pulchra? *The girl isn't beautiful, is she?*



— Vocabulary —

am'bulō, ambulā're, ambulā'vī, ambulā'tum, *walk*

clā'mō, clāmā're, clāmā'vī, clāmā'tum, *shout*

cōnfir'mō, cōnfirmā're, cōnfirmā'vī, cōnfirmā'tum, *strengthen; encourage; declare*

dēmōn'strō, dēmōnstrā're, dēmōnstrā'vī, dēmōnstrā'tum, *show, point out*

lī'berō, liberā're, liberā'vī, liberā'tum, *free, set free*

oppug'nō, oppugnā're, oppugnā'vī, oppugnā'tum, *attack*

ser'vō, servā're, servā'vī, servā'tum, *guard, keep; save*

stō, stā're, ste'tī, stā'tum, *stand*

temp'tō, temptā're, temptā'vī, temptā'tum, *try, attempt*

Ā'frica, -ae, f., *Africa*

A'sia, -ae, f., *Asia Minor*

num, (interrogative particle used in questions expecting a *no* answer)

*Center section of Basilica mosaic showing marine life, Aquileia Museum*



## —Exercises—

## A. Answer these questions in complete Latin sentences.

1. Nōne lēgātī oppidum oppugnābunt gladiūs? 2. Num viae ad Germāniam longae erant? 3. Nostrīne in Āfricā erant multī? 4. Nōne deī erunt amīcī bonōrum? 5. Num ambulābātis herī in silvā?

## B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Fēminae per campōs cum puellīs ambulābant. 2. Puerī puellīs tubam nūntī dēmōstrant. 3. Dabisne deīs dōna multa et pulchra? 4. Nautaene nostrōs in insulā exspectant? 5. Galliae virōs nōn saepe superābāmus. 6. Fēminaene servōs liberābunt? 7. Num vir amīcum puerī vulnerat? 8. Gladius nostrī lēgātī longus est. 9. Laudābam agricolae equōs in agrō. 10. Post bellum clāmābant puerī.

## C. Translate.

1. You (*pl.*) are not carrying water to the farmhouse, are you? 2. Are you giving a gift to the sailors today? 3. They are defeating our men now. 4. Gaul, Africa, and Asia were not always provinces. 5. Does the farmer give much grain to (his) horse? 6. The good girl is calling the sailors together. 7. The lieutenants are waiting for a message today. 8. The boy will give many large gifts to (his) friend. 9. Will you (*sing.*) not free the slaves in your country? 10. The lieutenants were fighting with swords.

## —Reading—

## AENEAS CONTINUES HIS TALE

AENĒAS: "Tum ab insulā sacrā ad terram Crētā fortuna Trōiānōs vocābat. Ibi oppidum parābāmus; et nunc Anchīsēs cōfirmābat meōs, et clāmābat: 'In Crētā habitābimus. In Crētā stābunt sacra deōrum Trōiānōrum!'"

DĪDŌ: "Cūr hodiē in Crētā nōn estis?"

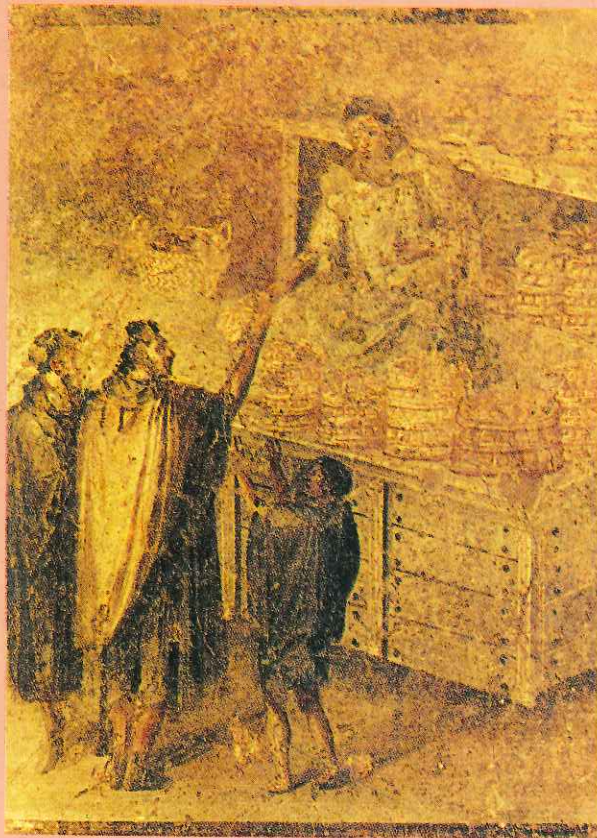
AENĒAS: "Dēerat\* frūmentum, et misera erat vīta. Et nunc deī Anchīsae viam dēmōstrābant in Ītaliā, ubi parābant rēgnum Trōiānīs."

\* from *dēsum*, *dēesse*, to be lacking



# 11

## Formation of Adverbs Perfect Tense



*Distribution of bread, fresco, Pompeii, National Museum, Naples*

Divina natura dedit agros, ars humana aedificavit urbes.  
*The divine nature produced the fields, human skill has built cities.*

—TIBULLUS

—Forms—

### THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are normally made from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base:

|                                |                                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| altē, <i>on high, deeply</i>   | longē, <i>far off, by far</i>          |
| lātē, <i>widely</i>            | miserē, <i>wretchedly, desperately</i> |
| liberē, <i>freely, frankly</i> | pulchrē, <i>beautifully, nobly</i>     |

Not all first and second declension adjectives have regularly formed adverbs. You have already learned that the adverbs of **bonus** and **malus** are **bene** and **male**, and you will see other irregular adverbs later.

~~~~~  
Helps and Hints. Do not be disturbed about adverbs formed from first and second declension adjectives ending in **-er**. They follow the rule given; for example, **liber**, *free*; **liberē**, *freely*. (base **liber** + *ē*).
 ~~~~~

### THE PERFECT TENSE

The perfect tense is the only tense which does not use the regular personal endings **-ō**, or **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, and **-nt**. Its endings are:

|             | SINGULAR     | PLURAL                       |
|-------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| 1ST PERSON: | <b>-ī</b>    | <b>-imus</b>                 |
| 2D PERSON:  | <b>-istī</b> | <b>-istis</b>                |
| 3D PERSON:  | <b>-it</b>   | <b>-ērunt</b> or <b>-ēre</b> |



These endings are added to the *perfect stem*, which is found by dropping the -ī from the third principal part of the verb: **vocāvī, vocāv-**.

vocā'vī, *I have called, I called*

vocāvis'tī, *you have called, you called*

vocā'vit, *he has called, he called*

vocā'vimus, *we have called, we called*

vocāvis'tis, *you have called, you called*

vocāvē'runt, *they have called, they called*

All regular verbs of the first conjugation are conjugated this way in the perfect tense.

|                                     |        |         |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| The perfect tense of <b>sum</b> is: | fuī    | fui     |
|                                     | fuistī | fuistis |
|                                     | fuit   | fuērunt |

|                                    |         |          |
|------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| The perfect tense of <b>dō</b> is: | dedī    | dedimus  |
|                                    | dedistī | dedistis |
|                                    | dedit   | dedērunt |



*Roman relief, grape treading, Archeological Museum, Venice*

## —Syntax—

## USE OF THE PERFECT TENSE

The perfect tense represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*I have prepared*) or merely as having occurred in the past time (*I prepared*). Contrast this with the imperfect, which expresses an action as continued in past time (*I was preparing*).

Frumentum nunc parāvī. *I have now prepared the grain.*

Dōnum puellae iam dedit.

*He has already given the gift to the girl.*

Tum frumentum parāvī. *I prepared the grain then.*

Dōnum puellae dedit herī. *He gave the gift to the girl yesterday.*

## —Vocabulary—

a'nimus, -ī, m., *mind; spirit*

ar'ma, -ō'rum, n., (pl.) *arms*

auxi'lium, auxi'lī, n., *help, aid*

auxi'lia, -ō'rum, n., (pl.)

*auxiliary troops, reinforcements*

captī'vus, -ī, m., *captive*

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., (pl.) *camp*

cōnsi'lium, cōnsi'lī, n., *plan,*

*advice*

cō'pia, -ae, f., *plenty, supply*

cō'piae, -ā'rum, f., (pl.) *forces,*

*troops*

fāma, -ae, f., *rumor, report,*

*reputation*

fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight*

impedīmen'tum, -ī, n., *hindrance*

impedīmen'ta, -ō'rum, n.,

(pl.) *baggage*

nu'merus, -ī, m., *number; group*

proe'lium, proe'lī, n., *battle*

sig'num, -ī, n., *sign, signal;*

*military standard*

tē'lum, -ī, n., *weapon*

## —Word Study—

In this lesson you are introduced to a number of words which occur frequently in military histories, particularly those of Caesar. Some of these deserve further explanation:

**Auxilia:** the plural of **auxilium** means *helps, aids, or sources of aid* in ordinary Latin; but as a technical military term it refers to all the non-legionary soldiery in an army, light-armed infantry, cavalry, archers, slingers, etc.



**Cōpiae:** this word, too, keeps its normal meanings in the plural, *supplies, riches, resources*; but in military terminology a general's resources are the forces at his disposal.

**Impedimenta:** from a tactical point of view the pieces of baggage which accompany an army are primarily *hindrances* to rapid maneuvering.

**Arma** and **castra** (like *trousers* and *scissors* in English) occur only in the plural. Remember to use a plural verb when **castra** is the subject:

*Castra sunt magna. The camp is large.*

**Arma** can be used of *arms* and *weapons* in general; but when contrasted with **tēla** it has more specific meanings:

**arma**, "defensive arms" as opposed to **tēla**, "offensive weapons," or **arma**, "weapons for close fighting," as opposed to **tēla**, "missiles."

### — Exercises —

A. Translate, giving both meanings for all perfects.

1. servāvistī, pugnābās, clāmābis
2. fuit, appellāvistis, stetērunt
3. ambulāvī, habitābō, portātis
4. cōfirmāvī, superābāmus, vocābis
5. nūntiat, nāvigāvērunt, liberāvistī

*Relief showing a silversmith's workshop. Notice the finished products, molds, crucible for melting silver, and scales.*



**B. Translate into Latin.**

1. we have tried, they will look at, he awaited 2. I have liked, they have prepared, you (*pl.*) called together 3. he has praised, she was giving, they were pointing out 4. we shall seize, you (*sing.*) will suffer, they attacked 5. he is relating, they will fly, we have wounded

**C. Read the Latin and translate.**

1. Equi sine aqua heri erant. 2. Dabisne litteras feminae cras? 3. Arma multa et bona nostris dedit. 4. Postea ad legatum portabit nuntium de periculis. 5. Telis pugnabimus cum Galliae copiis. 6. Cum puerum telo vulneravisti? 7. Diu cum meis amicis ambulavi. 8. Heri in castris nostris legatos diu exspectabamus. 9. Multas litteras pulchre paravistis. 10. Multi in Europa iam liberi sunt.

**D. Translate into Latin.**

1. Why were the boys and the slaves fighting in that place? 2. We have freed the small town with our swords. 3. The messengers called the big boys together with (their) trumpets. 4. We shall give gifts to the goddess tomorrow. 5. We were living in the farmhouse for a long time. 6. We carried grain to our friends yesterday. 7. The bad boys were without friends. 8. Many fine horses were standing on the road today. 9. Did you (*sing.*) wound the man with a weapon? 10. The poets were not unhappy.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

**AENEAS COMPLETES HIS TALE**

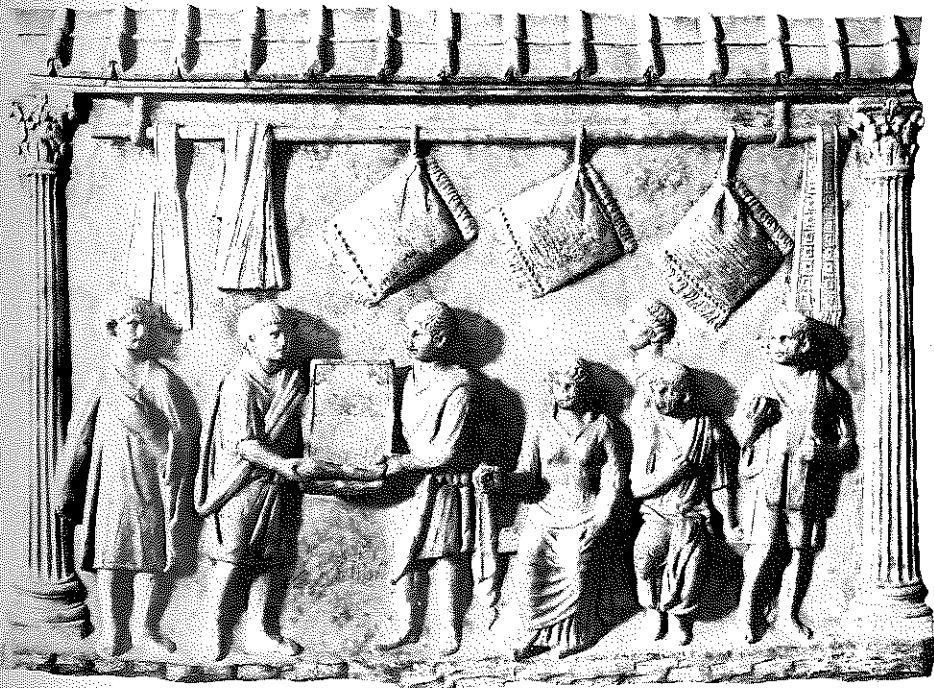
AENEAS: "Anchises animos nostros bonis verbis confirmavit: 'Dei signum dederunt; nostrum regnum est in Italia. Est longae ab Africa, sed post longam fugam et multos annos in Italiam navigabimus.'

Tum navigavimus in terram ubi habitabant vir feminaque, captivi Troiani, nostri amici. Iam liberi erant. Femina multa et pulchra dona dedit, et vir bonum consilium de nostro regno in Italia. Nautae nostri arma et copiam aquae frumentique ab oppido nostrorum amicorum portaverunt. Tum ad regnum tuum navigavimus."



# 12

## Pluperfect Tense Future Perfect Tense



*A relief showing a cloth merchant's shop*

Colossus magnitudinem suam servabit etiam si steterit in puteo.

*A giant will keep his size even though he will have stood in a well.*

—SENECA

—Forms—

**PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT**

Two other tenses besides the perfect are formed on the perfect stem: the pluperfect and the future perfect; these three tenses are called tenses of the *perfect system*.

**THE PLUPERFECT TENSE**

To form the pluperfect we add the tense-sign **-erā-** to the perfect stem, and then add the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, and -nt**, shortening the **-ā-** of **-erā-** before **-m, -t, and -nt**.

|             |                       |               |                        |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| vocā'veram, | <i>I had called</i>   | vocāverā'mus, | <i>we had called</i>   |
| vocā'verās, | <i>you had called</i> | vocāverā'tis, | <i>you had called</i>  |
| vocā'verat, | <i>he had called</i>  | vocā'verant,  | <i>they had called</i> |

**THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**

The future perfect tense is formed by adding the tense-sign **-eri-** to the perfect stem of the verb, then the personal endings **-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, and -nt**, omitting the **-i-** of **-eri-** before **-ō**.

|             |                             |               |                              |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| vocā'verō,  | <i>I shall have called</i>  | vocāve'rimus, | <i>we shall have called</i>  |
| vocā'veris, | <i>you will have called</i> | vocāve'ritis, | <i>you will have called</i>  |
| vocā'verit, | <i>he will have called</i>  | vocā'verint,  | <i>they will have called</i> |

—Vocabulary—

|                                                            |                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| audā'cia, -ae, f., <i>daring, boldness</i>                 | magis'ter, magis'trī, m., <i>master,</i><br><i>teacher</i> |
| car'rus, -ī, m., <i>wagon, cart</i>                        | poe'na, -ae, f., <i>punishment,</i><br><i>penalty</i>      |
| cū'ra, -ae, f., <i>care, anxiety</i>                       | po'pulus, -ī, m., <i>people, nation</i>                    |
| do'minus, -ī, m., <i>lord, master</i>                      | so'cius, so'cī, m., <i>ally, comrade</i>                   |
| ino'pia, -ae, f., <i>lack, want</i>                        |                                                            |
| ī'ra, -ae, f., <i>anger</i>                                |                                                            |
| li'ber, li'bri, m., <i>book</i>                            |                                                            |
| lo'cus, -ī, m. (lo'ca, locō'rum,<br>n., pl.), <i>place</i> |                                                            |



—Word Study—

**Dominus** and **magister** both mean *master*, but the two words are not interchangeable. **Dominus** is "master" in the sense of "owner," **magister** in the sense of "director."

**Populus**. The word **populus** in Latin is generally used in the singular, as in the phrase **populus Rōmānus**. It is used in the plural to mean *nations* or *tribes*. Note that *many people* is generally expressed by **multī**.

—Exercises—

A. Analyze each form and translate.

1. pugnāverat, labōrābunt, ambulāvistī
2. oppugnābat, spectāverunt, parat
3. portāvī, eram, vocāverit
4. volāvimus, narrant, dēmōnstrāverās
5. servābit, laudāvistī, stetērunt
6. occupābāmus, exspectāveritis, temptāvistis
7. clāmāverat, superāmus, cōfirmāverō
8. nāvigābāmus, habitāverint, appellāverunt
9. liberāvistī, nuntiāverās, dederit
10. convocābant, amāvērunt, vulnerābō

B. Translate.

1. I have wounded, you (*sing.*) were capturing, you (*pl.*) will look at
2. we shall have carried, he shouted, they had set free
3. you (*sing.*) had stood, they will have attacked, we are flying
4. they have praised, we shall name, he guards
5. they will have tried, I shall be, we walk
6. you (*pl.*) have declared, I had given, they told
7. they have fought, he waited for, you (*sing.*) will have called
8. they had surpassed, we shall labor, I have shown
9. you (*pl.*) have prepared, he had liked, we shall have sailed
10. I shall announce, they assembled, he had lived

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Meae filiae auxilium miserō servō dabant.
2. Ob bellī periculum multa tēla parāverant.
3. Lūdōsne in oppidō hodiē spectābātis?
4. Agricolaē magnam frūmentī cōpiam ex agrō portābant.
5. Num nautae miserī ab insulā nāvigāverint?
6. Fēminae puellās in campum saepe convocāverant.
7. Virīs signum proeli tubā iam dederō.
8. Crās puerī gladiīs servum malum vulnerābunt.

9. Tum lēgātus bonam fortūnam nostrōrum nūntiāverat.  
10. Nūntiū virōs in parvā villā herī exspectāvērunt.

**D. Translate.**

1. The peoples of Europe had not always been free. 2. Haven't the good boys given the poet's books to the teacher? 3. Tomorrow our camp will be in the great forest in Germany. 4. The little girl's books were not large, were they? 5. Won't the masters set (their) slaves free now? 6. Without weapons I shall have fought badly. 7. The farmer's son had already given grain and water to the horses. 8. The lieutenants encouraged our forces when they were being hard pressed for a long time. 9. A large number of our men had carried the baggage into the camp. 10. Do free people often walk with slaves?

—*Reading*—

Read aloud and translate.

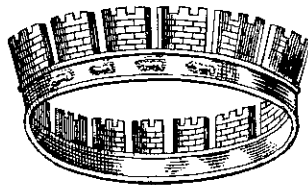
**AENEAS INCURS DIDO'S ANGER**

Ubi Aenēas Elissae perīcula Trōiānōrum narrāverat, rēgīna clāmāvit: "Magna est audācia tua! Ad multa loca et per perīcula magna nāvigāvistī! Multa dōna tuīs dedī, et nunc fugam ē meō rēgnō parātis."

Magna erat cūra Aenēae: rēginam amābat, sed deī Trōiānōs vocābant in Ītaliā.

Ubi fugam parāverat Aenēas magna erat ira rēgīnae. Misera clāmāvit: "Aenēan virum meum appellāvi, sed Trōiānus malus nōn amāvit miseram Elissam! Iam fugam parāvit; crās ab Āfricā nāvigābit. Semper stābit ira mea inter Trōiānōs et populum meum! Sociī nōn erunt: semper meī in armīs stābunt contrā Trōiānōs, et diū labōrābunt Trōiānī bellīs et proeliīs multīs!"

Sed interim Aenēas erat in altō; ad Ītaliā iam nāvigābat.





Qui non est hodie cras minus aptus erit.  
*He who is not prepared today will be less so tomorrow.*—OVID

## REVIEW 3 (LESSONS 9-12)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|          |              |          |          |
|----------|--------------|----------|----------|
| animus   | cōsilium     | inopia   | poena    |
| arma     | cōpia        | īra      | populus  |
| audācia  | cūra         | liber    | proelium |
| auxilium | dominus      | locus    | signum   |
| captīvus | fāma         | magister | socius   |
| carrus   | fuga         | numerus  | tēlum    |
| castra   | impedimentum |          |          |

B. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|          |           |         |        |
|----------|-----------|---------|--------|
| ambulō   | dēmōnstrō | oppugnō | sum    |
| clāmō    | dō        | servō   | temptō |
| cōnfirmō | liberō    | stō     |        |

C. Give the meanings of the following adverbs.

|      |         |        |        |
|------|---------|--------|--------|
| bene | hodiē   | male   | saepe  |
| crās | iam     | num    | semper |
| cūr  | ibi     | nunc   | tum    |
| diū  | interim | postea | ubi    |
| herī |         |        |        |

A *synopsis* of a verb consists of all the forms of a given person and number. The synopsis of **vocō** in the first person singular is:

|                |            |                                            |
|----------------|------------|--------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT        | vocō,      | <i>I call, I am calling, I do call</i>     |
| IMPERFECT      | vocābam,   | <i>I was calling, I called</i>             |
| FUTURE         | vocābō,    | <i>I shall call</i>                        |
| PERFECT        | vocāvī,    | <i>I have called, I did call, I called</i> |
| PLUPERFECT     | vocāveram, | <i>I had called</i>                        |
| FUTURE PERFECT | vocāverō,  | <i>I shall have called</i>                 |

—Drill on Forms—

A. Give a synopsis, with meanings, of the following verbs. (See p. 69.)

1. *dō* in the 2d person singular
2. *liberō* in the 3d person singular
3. *stō* in the 1st person plural
4. *vulnerō* in the 2d person plural
5. *sum* in the 3d person plural

B. Translate.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. temptābitis  | 6. dederis      |
| 2. dēmōnstrās   | 7. ambulāvimus  |
| 3. fueram       | 8. stetērunt    |
| 4. oppugnāvimus | 9. servāveritis |
| 5. cōfirmābant  | 10. clāmāverat  |

C. Translate.

- |                                  |                                                |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. she will stand                | 7. I walked                                    |
| 2. you ( <i>sing.</i> ) had been | 8. you ( <i>sing.</i> ) will have strengthened |
| 3. we were saving                | 9. we tried                                    |
| 4. they have shouted             | 10. you ( <i>pl.</i> ) had shown               |
| 5. they will have given          |                                                |
| 6. you ( <i>pl.</i> ) attack     |                                                |

—Drill on Syntax—

Translate the words in *italics*, giving the reason for each case.

1. Where are *the captives*?
2. These men are *captives*.
3. I like *the plan*.
4. What is the plan of *the auxiliary troops*?
5. He gave a sword to (*his*) *comrade*.
6. He carried a sword *to the place*.
7. They carried their baggage *in carts*.



8. They guarded their baggage *in the camp*.
9. They carried their baggage *into the camp*.
10. They carried their baggage *from the camp*.

— Exercises —

A. Translate.

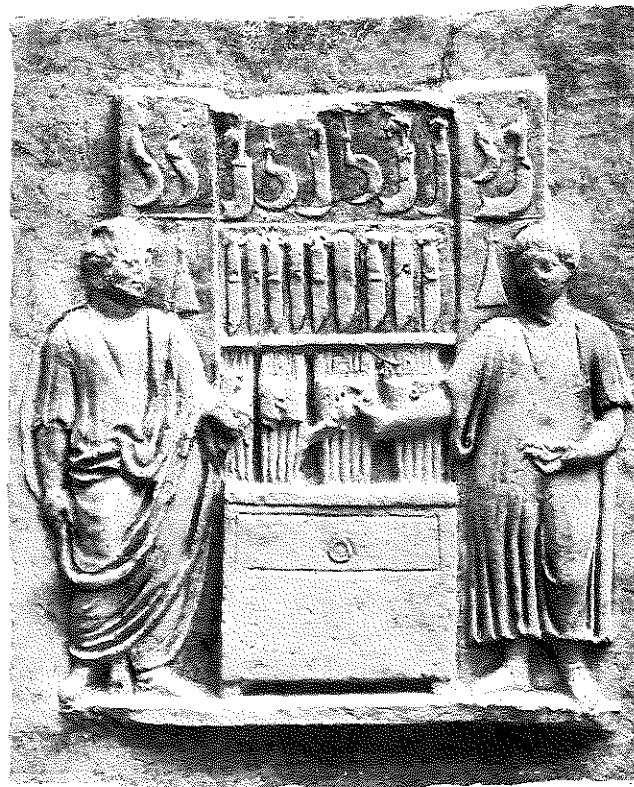
1. Nōne nostrōs superāvistis audāciā cōpiārum vestrārum?
2. Est in oppidō nostrō cōpia frūmentī sed aquae inopia.
3. Lēgātī arma servāverant longē ab castrīs.
4. Lēgātus populō cōsilia sociōrum libere nūntiāvit.
5. Captīvōrum cūra magna erat, sed animōs cōfirmāvimus.
6. Cūr nūntius signum proelī tubā dederit?
7. Fāma de sociōrum fugā lātē longēque volāverat.
8. Ibi erant castra magna nostrārum cōpiārum.
9. Magnae erunt irae deōrum in malōs.
10. Puer gladiō miserum servum altē vulnerāverat.

B. Translate.

1. After the battle signal our men shouted.
2. We shall carry a report far and wide concerning the great battle.
3. Not many people have walked through the forest, have they?
4. Where is the camp of our allies?
5. Did you (*pl.*) wound the unfortunate sailor deeply with your weapons?
6. Afterwards we shall have strengthened the spirits of our men with good words.
7. There was not a lack of water in our camp, but we were without grain.
8. The wretched captives freely pointed out the way to our camp.
9. The lieutenant had already attacked the small town without the help of the allies.
10. The baggage will be in the town, but we shall carry our arms into camp.

# 13

## Imperative Mood Vocative Case



*Relief of a knife-seller's shop*



Ora et labora.

*Pray and labor.*—ST. BENEDICT



—Forms—

## MOODS

Every Latin verb has five attributes: tense, voice, mood, person, and number. In the forms which you have learned you have seen examples of all six tenses (present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect), all three persons (first, second, and third), and both numbers (singular and plural); but so far you have learned only one voice, the active, and one mood, the indicative.

Latin verbs have three moods, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. The indicative, as you have seen, is used to make statements and to ask questions. The subjunctive (which you will learn later) is used to describe unreal actions. The imperative is used for commands.

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

The present imperative singular in Latin is regularly the same as the present stem, **vocā**, *call*. The plural adds **-te** to the singular, **vocāte**, *call*. The singular form is used when one person is addressed; the plural is used when more than one person is addressed. The imperatives of **sum** are **es** and **este**.

## THE VOCATIVE CASE

The vocative case is used for direct address. It is rarely the first word in a sentence and is usually set off by commas. The vocative case in Latin is the same as the nominative in all declensions, except for second declension singular nouns ending in **-us** or **-ius**. Nouns of the second declension singular ending in **-us** have **-e** as the vocative ending, as **amīce**, *O friend!* But **filius**, and proper nouns ending in **-ius**, have the vocative ending in **-ī**: **filī** *son*: **Iūli**, *Julius*.\*

\*The masculine vocative singular of **meus** is **mī**.

**Helps and Hints.** The imperative and vocative frequently occur in the same sentence. *Come here, boys. Fight hard, soldiers.* Usually the imperative comes first in the sentence and the vocative second. Remember that the plural of *all* Latin nouns has the vocative the same as the nominative.

—Vocabulary—

|                                                                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| cau'sa, -ae, f., <i>reason, cause</i>                                             | Iū'lius, -ī, m., <i>Julius</i>    |
| epis'tula, -ae, f., <i>letter, epistle</i>                                        | Lū'cius, Lū'cī, m., <i>Lucius</i> |
| fā'bula, -ae, f., <i>story</i>                                                    | Mār'cus, -ī, m., <i>Marcus</i>    |
| hō'ra, -ae, f., <i>hour</i>                                                       | pecū'nia, -ae, f., <i>money</i>   |
| Iū'lia, -ae, f., <i>Julia</i>                                                     | rēgī'na, -ae, f., <i>queen</i>    |
| al'bus, -a, -um, <i>white</i>                                                     |                                   |
| amī'cus, -a, -um, <i>friendly</i>                                                 |                                   |
| grā'tus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing, welcome; grateful</i>                              |                                   |
| inimī'cus, -a, -um, <i>unfriendly, hostile</i> (inimī'cus, -ī, m., <i>enemy</i> ) |                                   |
| nī'ger, nī'gra, nī'grum, <i>black</i>                                             |                                   |
| no'vus, -a, -um, <i>new</i>                                                       |                                   |
| parā'tus, -a, -um, <i>ready, prepared</i>                                         |                                   |
| vē'rus, -a, -um, <i>true</i>                                                      |                                   |

—Word Study—

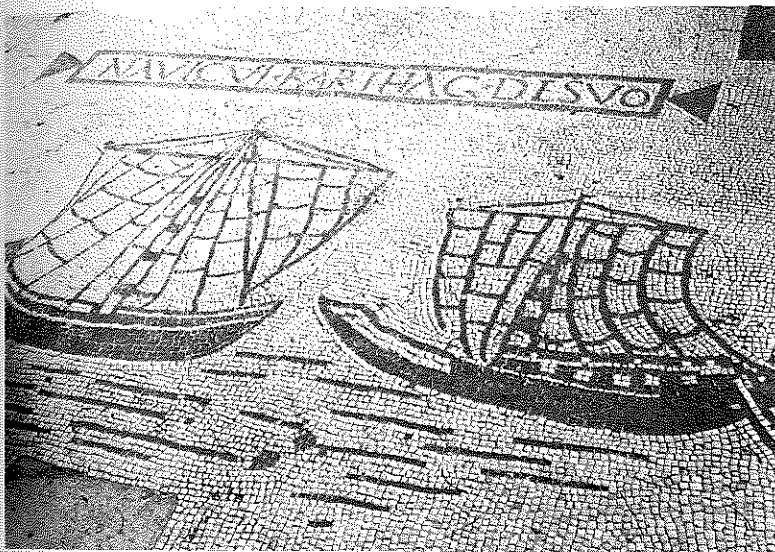
**Iūlia, Iūlius.** Iūlius is a Roman family name. A Roman girl was not given a name of her own, but was known simply by the family name in the feminine form. All the daughters of the Julius family would be called Julia. To distinguish between them they might be given nicknames or, if there were many of them, they were given numbers.

**Lūcius and Mārcius** are Roman first names. Because of the practice of naming boys after their fathers, grandfathers or paternal uncles, there were only 18 given names in use in the classical period, and only about half of these were common.



— Exercises —

- A. Give the present active imperative second person singular of:  
dō      nāvīgō      pugnō      spectō      dēmōnstrō
- B. Give the present active imperative second person plural of:  
portō      labōrō      clāmō      stō      pugnō



(top) Pavement  
mosaic indicating  
an office of  
Carthage  
shipowners.  
(bottom) The  
Square of the  
Corporations at  
Ostia.



## C. Give the vocative singular of:

|        |        |       |        |          |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|----------|
| vir    | Iūlia  | puer  | Lūcius | agricola |
| puella | Mārcus | nauta | filius | captīvus |

## D. Give the vocative plural of:

|         |        |        |        |         |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| rēgīna  | dea    | socius | amīcus | dominus |
| nūntius | fēmina | servus | poēta  | filia   |

## E. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Liberā, domine, servōs; bonī virī sunt. 2. Crās castra occupāverimus. 3. Dā, Iūlia, pecūniam servō amīcō. 4. Per silvam diū ambulāvimus. 5. Spectāte rēgīnam; pulchra est. 6. Multī nūntiō epistulās dederant. 7. Parāvistīne, mī filī, epistulam? 8. Crās, virī, nāvigābimus; parāte vestra arma. 9. Rēgīna puellis parvis pulchra dōna dabat. 10. Lēgātus tubā signum dedit.

## F. Translate.

1. Why are the letters not welcome, my queen? 2. Tell the story of your dangers, Marcus. 3. We are ready; sail to the island, sailors. 4. Lucius had walked with his friends through the forest for a long time. 5. My sons, give money to your friends. 6. They carried the money into the town yesterday. 7. Boys, carry water to the black horses. 8. Tomorrow we shall seize the camp and the town. 9. Julia was beautiful but unfriendly. 10. Julia, are you the daughter of Lucius Julius?

## —Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

## LAVINIA

Ubi Trōiānī in Ītaliā nāvigāverant, Amāta erat rēgīna Latīnōrum. Lāvīnia erat filia Amātae et Latīnī. Lāvīniam Aenēas amāvit, sed Turnus, dominus Rutulōrum et socius Latīnōrum, Lāvīniam diū amābat. Amātae Turnus grātus erat, Aenēas nōn grātus. Inter Troiānōs et Latīnōs erat longum bellum. Causa bellī erat Lāvīnia.

Latīnī castra Aeneadārum oppugnābant. Turnus clāmāvit: "Tua fāma, Aenēa (*vocative*), mī inimice, est magna. Nunc convocā tuōs sociōs et dēmōnstrā audāciam Troiānōrum."



# 14

## Third Declension



*Relief from France showing a fullery (cloth finishing and laundering establishment)*

Otium sine litteris mors est et hominis vivi sepultura.  
*Leisure without literature is death, or rather  
 the burial of a living man.*—SENECA

—Forms—

THE THIRD DECLENSION

All nouns and adjectives whose genitive singular ends in *-is* belong to the third declension.

|             | SINGULAR   |            | ENDINGS |
|-------------|------------|------------|---------|
| NOMINATIVE: | frā'ter    | so'ror     | —       |
| GENITIVE:   | frā'tris   | sorō'ris   | -is     |
| DATIVE:     | frā'trī    | sorō'rī    | -ī      |
| ACCUSATIVE: | frā'trem   | sorō'rem   | -em     |
| ABLATIVE:   | frā'tre    | sorō're    | -e      |
| PLURAL      |            |            |         |
| NOMINATIVE: | frā'trēs   | sorō'rēs   | -ēs     |
| GENITIVE:   | frā'trum   | sorō'rum   | -um     |
| DATIVE:     | frā'tribus | sorō'ribus | -ibus   |
| ACCUSATIVE: | frā'trēs   | sorō'rēs   | -ēs     |
| ABLATIVE:   | frā'tribus | sorō'ribus | -ibus   |

The vocative of the third declension is like the nominative.

—Vocabulary—

|                                                                              |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| cele'ritās, celeritā'tis, f.,<br><i>swiftness, speed</i>                     | mā'ter, mā'tris, f., <i>mother</i>               |
| cōn'sul, cōn'sulis, m., <i>consul</i>                                        | mī'les, mī'litis, m., <i>soldier</i>             |
| dux, du'cis, m., <i>leader</i>                                               | pa'ter, pa'tris, m., <i>father</i>               |
| frā'ter, frā'tris, m., <i>brother</i>                                        | rēx, rē'gis, m., <i>king</i>                     |
| imperā'tor, imperātō'ris, m.,<br><i>commander, general</i>                   | so'ror, sorō'ris, f., <i>sister</i>              |
| impe'rium, impe'rī, n., <i>command,</i><br><i>military power, government</i> | dēlec'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum,<br><i>please</i> |
|                                                                              | mox, adverb, <i>soon</i>                         |



— Word Study —

**Imperium.** Originally Rome was ruled by a king, who alone held the power to rule. This power was called the **imperium**, and was symbolized by the **fascēs**, a bundle of rods tied around an axe, representing the king's right to inflict corporal or capital punishment.

**Cōsul.** After the overthrow of the monarchy (509 B.C.) the **imperium** was given to elected officials, the consuls. Two consuls were elected annually. The word **imperium** came more and more to mean "the power to command armies," since the officials who held it also served as generals in war time.

**Imperātor.** Since Roman armies were led by consuls or praetors, Latin has no separate word for *general*. However, when a consul or a praetor by his successes showed clearly that he held the **imperium** (which was thought of almost as a magical power), he might be acclaimed **imperātor**, *wielder of the imperium*, by his troops. He was allowed to use **imperātor** as a title with his name. This title was later taken as a name by the Roman emperors. For convenience, **imperātor** may be translated merely as *general* or *commander*.



*Relief showing a smith and his assistant*

## —Exercises—

## A. Decline.

cōsul bonus

māter mea

dux novus

## B. Translate.

1. Ducēs novōs mīlitēs in castra mox vocābunt. 2. Lēgātus laudāvit cōsulis filiōs. 3. Pater meus amīcus erat cōsulum in Italiā. 4. Mīlitēs in agrō post castra diū pugnābant. 5. Narrā, Iūlia, fābulam tuō frātrī parvō. 6. Ubi imperātor cōpiās Galliae superāvit? 7. Multa et pulchra dōna dederāmus nostrae sorōrī. 8. Post proelium erit novus imperator. 9. Fāma dē nostrī imperātōris bonā fortūnā latē longēque volāverat. 10. In villā, māter, Iūliam exspectā; ad oppidum ambulābō.

## C. Translate.

1. The books of the great poet pleased my brother well. 2. Marcus is the leader of many soldiers. 3. The consul's sisters were looking at many broad fields. 4. Lucius called (his) brothers and sisters from the wide forest into the town. 5. The general used to fight in battle with (his) soldiers. 6. The people used to give the military power to the consuls. 7. Where was the consul's father? 8. The teacher gave (his) little sister beautiful gifts. 9. We shall soon sail to the kingdom of the great king. 10. The boys were praising (their) fathers and mothers.

## —Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

**TURNUS ASSEMBLES THE RUTULIANS**

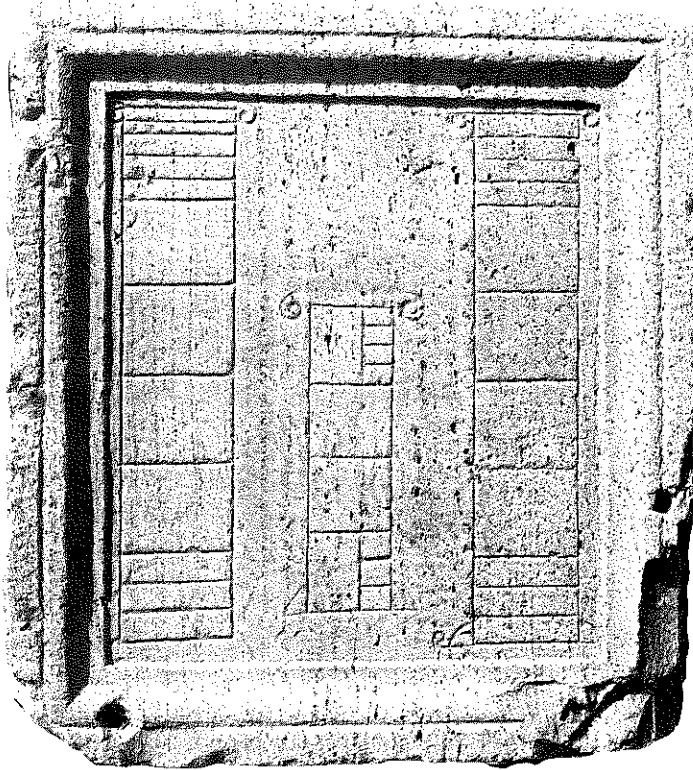
Turnus, dux Rutulōrum, in magnō oppidō Ardeā cum patre Daunō et sorōre Iūturnā habitābat. Tum alta et magna in agrō Latīnō Ardeā stābat. Postea oppidum parvum erat, sed Rōmānis sacrum. Saepe cōsulēs Rōmānī dona pulchra deīs Ardeae dabant.

Ubi Aeneadae in Italiā navigāverant, fāma dē Trōianōrum fugā longē latēque per Italiā volāverat, sed Turnum nōn dēlectāvit. Dux Rutulōrum populum convocāvit, animōs mīlitum cōfirmāvit et bellum parāvit.



# 15

## Third Declension, Neuter Ablative of Manner



*Chart of measures on one of the buildings in the market place, Leptis Magna*

Materiam superabat opus.  
*The workmanship was better than the subject matter.*—OVID

—Forms—

### THIRD DECLENSION NEUTER

Neuter nouns of the third declension, like all neuters in Latin, have the same form in the nominative and the accusative, the nominative and accusative plural ending in **-a**.

| SINGULAR    |             |             |             | ENDINGS |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------|
| NOMINATIVE: | nō'men      | i'ter       | tem'pus     | —       |
| GENITIVE:   | nō'minis    | iti'neris   | tem'poris   | -is     |
| DATIVE:     | nō'minī     | iti'nerī    | tem'porī    | -ī      |
| ACCUSATIVE: | nō'men      | i'ter       | tem'pus     | —       |
| ABLATIVE:   | nō'mine     | iti'nere    | tem'pore    | -e      |
| PLURAL      |             |             |             |         |
| NOMINATIVE: | nō'mina     | iti'nera    | tem'pora    | -a      |
| GENITIVE:   | nō'minum    | iti'nerum   | tem'porum   | -um     |
| DATIVE:     | nō'mi'nibus | itine'ribus | tempo'ribus | -ibus   |
| ACCUSATIVE: | nō'mina     | iti'nera    | tem'pora    | -a      |
| ABLATIVE:   | nō'mi'nibus | itine'ribus | tempo'ribus | -ibus   |

—Syntax—

### ABLATIVE OF MANNER

The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by the ablative with **cum**. If the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** may be omitted; if it is used, the word order must be: adjective, **cum**, noun:

|                                        |   |                                          |
|----------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------------|
| Litterās cum dīligentiā parāvit.       | } | <i>He prepared the letter with care.</i> |
| Litterās magnā dīligentiā parāvit.     |   | <i>He prepared the letter</i>            |
| Litterās magnā cum dīligentiā parāvit. |   | <i>with great care.</i>                  |



---

Do not confuse the Ablative of Manner with the Ablative of Means.

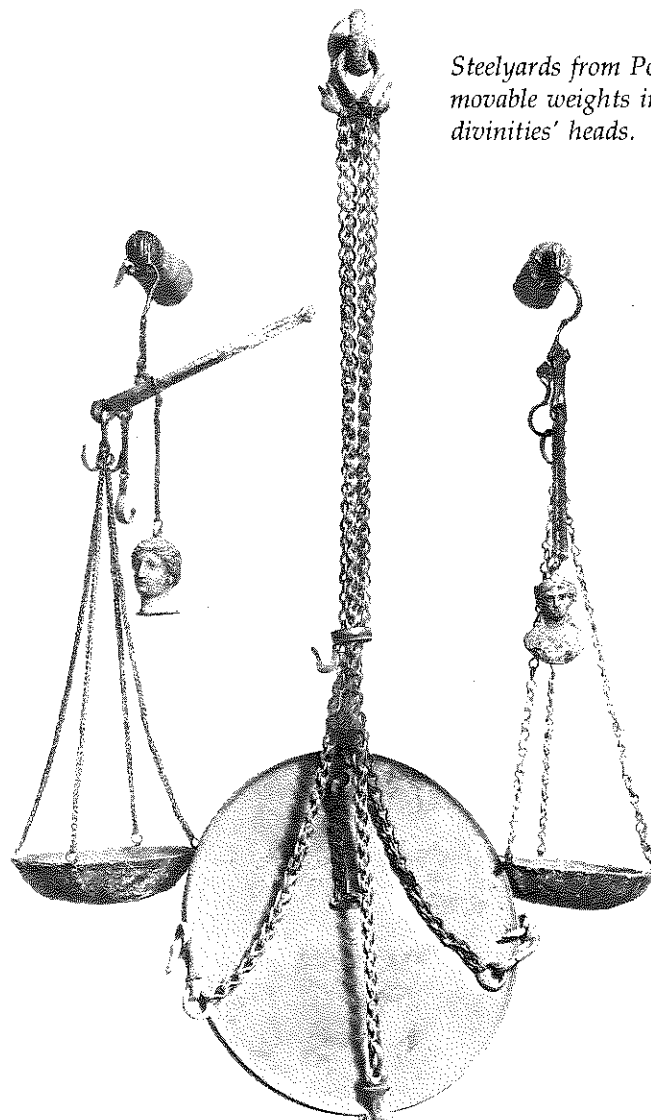
Cum audāciā pugnāvistī. *You fought with boldness.*

(ABLATIVE OF MANNER)

Tēlis pugnāvistī. *You fought with weapons.*

(ABLATIVE OF MEANS)

---

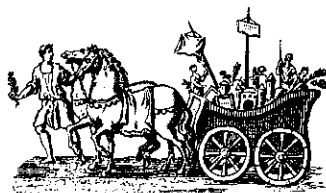


*Steelyards from Pompeii. Note the movable weights in the shapes of divinities' heads.*

## —Vocabulary—

Cae'sar, Cae'saris, m., *Caesar*  
 ca'put, ca'pitis, n., *head*  
 car'men, car'minis, n., *song,*  
     *poem*  
 cor'pus, cor'poris, n., *body*  
 dīlīgen'tia, -ae, f., *diligence, care*  
 flū'men, flū'minis, n., *river, stream*  
 i'ter, iti'neris, n., *march, journey;*  
     *route*  
 nō'men, nō'minis, n., *name*  
 tem'pus, tem'poris, n., *time*  
 vul'nus, vul'neris, n., *wound*

Germā'nus, -a, -um, *German*  
 Grae'cus, -a, -um, *Greek*  
 Hispā'nus, -a, -um, *Spanish*  
 Rōmā'nus, -a, -um, *Roman, of*  
     *Rome*



## —Word Study—

**Caesar.** Most Roman men had three names, the **praenōmen**, the **nōmen** and the **cognōmen**. The **praenōmen** is the *first name* or *given name*, e.g., **Lūcius, Mārcus**. The **nōmen** is the *family name*, e.g., **Iūlius**. The **cognōmen** is a kind of *nickname*, designating the branch of the family to which the man belonged. It often described some physical characteristic or commemorated some famous deed. Caesar is a cognomen of the Julius family; the full name of the famous Caesar was Gaius Julius Caesar.

**Rōmānus.** The genitive of **Rōma** is not used to indicate possession; *Rome's* or *of Rome* is expressed by the adjective **Rōmānus**:

|                |                           |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| mīles Rōmānus  | <i>a soldier of Rome</i>  |
| cōpiae Rōmānae | <i>the forces of Rome</i> |

**Populus Rōmānus** means either the Roman nation as a whole, or the common people as distinguished from the senatorial nobility. Decrees, etc., were issued in the name of the Senate and the Roman People (**Senātus Populusque Rōmānus**, abbreviated **S.P.Q.R.**).

## —Exercises—

A. Decline the following.

corpus magnum

carmen vērum

caput meum



**B.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Caesar erat imperātor magnus in Galliā. 2. Germānī magnā cum audāciā nostra castra oppugnābunt. 3. Mīlitēs cum dīligentiā in oppidō arma parābant. 4. Mātrum carmina filiās dēlectāverint. 5. Nautae Graecī nōn nāvigābant magnā celeritāte. 6. Nōne flūmen erat lātum et longum et pulchrum? 7. Lūcī Iūli Caesaris filiae nōmen erit Iūlia. 8. Populus Rōmānus imperium cōsulibus grātē dedit. 9. Corpora Rōmānōrum magna nōn erant. 10. Post bellum nōmen novum cōsulī dabimus.

**C.** Translate.

1. The teachers did not often look at the boys with great friendliness. 2. Men of Rome, fight with great diligence! 3. Did the messenger give the battle signal on a trumpet? 4. There was a horse's body on the road. 5. The Spanish always used to fight with great boldness. 6. A great king in Germany was a friend and ally of the Roman People. 7. The German forces had fought in the camp of the Romans. 8. The journey to the Spanish town is long, but we shall walk with great speed. 9. The troops of Rome attacked the German camp with long weapons. 10. Why did you carry the grain to town in a wagon, Marcus?

—*Reading*—

Read aloud and translate.

**ROMAN SCHOOLS**

In lūdō Rōmānō erant puerī sed nōn multae puellae. Sī lūdus bonus erat, puerī magistrō pecūniam dabant. Magister saepe erat servus fidus. Docēbat puerōs grammaticam, rhētoricam, arithmēticam. Laudābat puerōs sī discipulī bonī erant. Puerōs malōs et nōn studiōsōs castigābat. Paedagōgus puerōs exspectābat et librōs portābat. Fortūna puerōrum nōn mala erat sī puerī bonī erant.

Puellae domī erant. Mātrēs puellās artēs domesticās docēbant. Nōne vīta puellārum bona erat?

Hodiē in patriā nostrā puerī et puellae in lūdō sunt. In multīs lūdīs cīvēs librōs comparant. Fortūna vestra bona est. Nunc magna cōpia librōrum bonōrum est sed tum librī paucī erant.

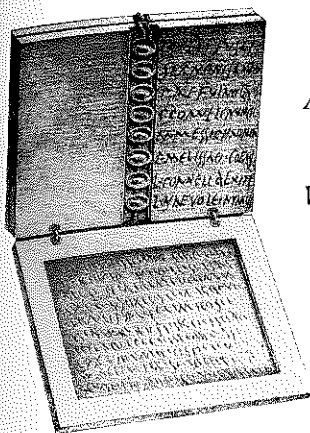
# 16

## Third Declension, I-Stems



(l.) Silver Denarius of Hadrian (r.) Bronze Sestertius of Hadrian





O praeclarum custodem ovium lupum!  
*An excellent protector of sheep, the wolf!*—CICERO

*Wax tablet from Pompeii*

—Forms—

### THIRD DECLENSION I-STEMS

A group of nouns which have **-ium** instead of **-um** in the genitive plural are called i-stem nouns of the third declension. Also some neuter nouns of the third declension have **-ī** in the ablative singular instead of **-e**, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural. I-stems include the following:

#### Masculine or feminine nouns

1. ending in **-ēs** or **-is** in the nominative singular and having the same number of syllables in the genitive singular

hostis, hostis, m., *enemy*  
 caedēs, caedis, f., *murder*

2. ending in **-ns** or **-rs** in the nominative singular

īfāns, īfantis, m., *baby*  
 mors, mortis, f., *death*

3. of one syllable in the nominative singular whose base ends in two consonants

nox, noctis, f., *night*

#### Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns ending in **-al** or **-e** in the nominative singular (like **animal** and **mare**): these show the **-i-** of the stem in the ablative singular **-ī**, the nominative and accusative plural **-ia**, and the genitive plural **-ium**.

## DECLENSION OF I-STEMS

|             |          |          |          | ENDINGS |       |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|---------|-------|
|             |          |          |          | M. & F. | NEUT. |
| SINGULAR    |          |          |          |         |       |
| NOMINATIVE: | ig'nis   | urbs     | ma're    | —       | —     |
| GENITIVE:   | ig'nis   | ur'bis   | ma'ris   | -is     | -is   |
| DATIVE:     | ig'nī    | ur'bī    | ma'rī    | -ī      | -ī    |
| ACCUSATIVE: | ig'nem   | ur'bem   | ma're    | -em     | —     |
| ABLATIVE:   | ig'ne    | ur'be    | ma'rī    | -e      | -ī    |
| PLURAL      |          |          |          |         |       |
| NOMINATIVE: | ig'nēs   | ur'bēs   | ma'ria   | -ēs     | -ia   |
| GENITIVE:   | ig'nium  | ur'bium  | ma'rium  | -ium    | -ium  |
| DATIVE:     | ig'nibus | ur'bibus | ma'ribus | -ibus   | -ibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | ig'nēs   | ur'bēs   | ma'ria   | -ēs     | -ia   |
| ABLATIVE:   | ig'nibus | ur'bibus | ma'ribus | -ibus   | -ibus |

## —Vocabulary—

|                                          |                                          |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| a'nimal, animā'lis, n., <i>animal</i>    | ig'nis, ig'nis, m., <i>fire</i>          |
| cī'vis, cī'vis, m. or f., <i>citizen</i> | ma're, ma'ris, n., <i>sea</i>            |
| fi'nis, fi'nis, m., <i>end, boundary</i> | mōns, mon'tis, m., <i>mountain, hill</i> |
| fi'nēs, fi'nium, m., <i>territory</i>    | mors, mor'tis, f., <i>death</i>          |
| gēns, gen'tis, f., <i>family, clan</i>   | nā'vis, nā'vis, f., <i>ship</i>          |
| gēns, gen'tis, f., <i>family, clan</i>   | pā'nis, pā'nis, m., <i>bread</i>         |
| gēns, gen'tis, f., <i>family, clan</i>   | pōns, pon'tis, m., <i>bridge</i>         |
| gēns, gen'tis, f., <i>family, clan</i>   | urbs, ur'bis, f., <i>city</i>            |
| hos'tis, hos'tis, m., <i>enemy</i>       |                                          |

## —Word Study—

**Hostis.** Both **hostis** and **inimicus** (the adjective used as a noun) mean *enemy*. **Hostis** is an enemy of the state or a public enemy, and **inimicus** is a personal enemy. In English we often use "enemy" in the singular as a collective noun, to designate a hostile army or nation. Such a collective use should be translated by the Latin plural.

Hostēs oppidum oppugnant. { *The enemy is attacking the town.*  
*The enemy are attacking the town.*



—Exercises—

A. Decline.

mare nostrum                  mōns altus                  nāvis longa

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Per multās terrās mariaque portāvimus nostrōs deōs ad Ītāliam. 2. Nōne dederās pānem multīs cīvibus Rōmānīs? 3. In marī multae nāvēs frūmentum ad insulam portābant. 4. In flūmine erat pōns ab insulā ad urbem. 5. Erunt semper Caesaris proeliōrum memoriae in Galliā. 6. In agrō Rōmānō erant viae ā montibus ad mare. 7. In hostium castrīs erant multī cīvēs vestrī. 8. Est semper in proeliō periculum mortis. 9. In Galliae finibus erant multī populī. 10. Suntne multa animālia in marī?

C. Translate.

1. There is a long bridge on a beautiful river in Germany. 2. Horses are good and friendly animals. 3. The ships were sailing through the sea toward the land. 4. There was a beautiful city in the territory of the Greeks. 5. On the bridge was a soldier on a white horse. 6. The mountains in Gaul are high and beautiful. 7. Marcus often used to call our fellow citizens into the city. 8. The soldiers will carry (their) weapons from the gates of the city. 9. They attacked the enemy's city with fire. 10. Were you (*pl.*) looking at the fires on the mountain?

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

**APPIUS CLAUDIUS**

Olim erat vir Rōmānus, Appius Claudius nōmine. Magnum et longum aquaeductum aedificāvit. Rōmānī aquaeductum ab nōmine Appī appellāverunt. Aquaeductus bonam aquam in urbem Rōmam portāvit.

Appius Claudius etiam longam et bonam viam ad oppidum Ītaliae Capuam aedificāvit. Rōmānī viam "Appiam" appellāverunt. Erant multae aliae viae in Ītaliā sed Via Appia praecipuē clāra erat.

In Viā Appiā multī Rōmānī ambulābant. Agricolaē frūmentum portābant et amīcōs salūtābant. Inter fēminās et virōs erant puerī et puellae; cum amīcīs in viā clāmābant. Magnus numerus agricolārū in villīs prope Viam Appiam habitābat. Diū labōrābant, et multum frūmentum carrīs ad villās portābant. Vīta agricolārū erat bona.

Appius Claudius patriam amābat et cum hostibus Rōmānōrum semper pugnābat. Via et aquaeductus in Italiā hodiē manent.

*An olive press from Pompeii. The olives were bruised in a mill. The oil from the first pressing was used for perfumes and cosmetics; from the second, cooking; and from the third, illumination.*





Tarditas et procrastinatio odiosa est.  
*Delay—putting things off until tomorrow—is hateful.*—CICERO

## REVIEW 4 (LESSONS 13–16)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

- A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|           |            |           |         |        |
|-----------|------------|-----------|---------|--------|
| animal    | diligentia | hōra      | mīles   | pōns   |
| caput     | dux        | hostis    | mōns    | rēgina |
| carmen    | epistula   | ignis     | mors    | rēx    |
| causa     | fābula     | imperātor | nāvis   | soror  |
| celeritās | finis      | imperium  | nōmen   | tempus |
| cīvis     | flūmen     | iter      | pānis   | urbs   |
| cōsul     | frāter     | mare      | pater   | vulnus |
| corpus    | gēns       | māter     | pecūnia |        |

- B. Give the nominative singular forms, and the meaning, of the following adjectives.

|        |          |       |         |
|--------|----------|-------|---------|
| albus  | grātus   | niger | parātus |
| amīcus | inimīcus | novus | vērū    |

- C. Give the meanings of the following words.

|         |         |        |      |
|---------|---------|--------|------|
| amīcē   | grātē   | mox    | vērē |
| dēlectō | inimīcē | parātē |      |

### —Drill on Forms—

- A. Give the following forms.

1. *vocative singular*: Mārcus, tempus, Iūlius
2. *genitive singular*: imperium, vulnus, nāvis
3. *dative singular*: deus, diligentia, celeritās
4. *accusative singular*: iter, vir, dux
5. *ablative singular*: mare, gēns, pecūnia

6. *vocative plural*: nūntius, animal, flūmen
7. *genitive plural*: cīvis, māter, fābula
8. *dative plural*: epistula, gladius, rēx
9. *accusative plural*: caput, imperator, causa

B. Give a synopsis in the active indicative and imperative (where applicable), with meanings of:

1. dēlectō in the third person singular
2. dō in the third person plural
3. sum in the second person singular
4. vulnerō in the second person plural
5. stō in the first person plural

C. Decline throughout.

animal nigrum                      rēx amīcus                      celeritās nova

### —Drill on Syntax —

Translate the words in italics, giving the reason for each case.

1. The sailors are *in a ship*.
2. We carried our grain to Africa *in a ship*.
3. The messenger gave the signal *on a trumpet*.
4. The messenger gave the signal *on the mountain*.
5. The Germans fought *with boldness*.
6. The Germans fought *with weapons*.
7. They gave gifts *to the cities*.
8. They carried water *to the cities*.
9. The road *to Germany* is long.
10. Where are you, *son*?

### —Exercises —

A. Translate.

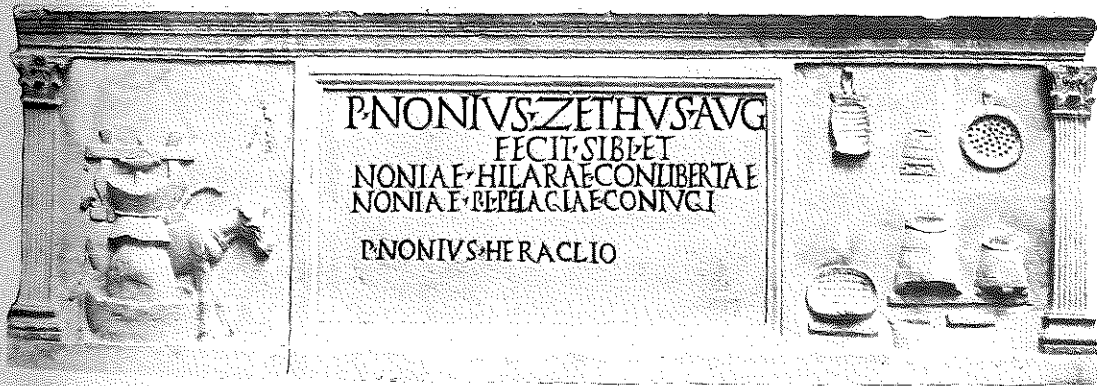
1. Cīvēs gladiīs in proeliō contrā milītēs pugnāvērunt.
2. Puerī Rōmānī magnā cum diligentīā hodiē epistulās parant.
3. Pulchrae erant filiae nostrī imperātōris.
4. Rēx bonus servīs pecūniam dōnaque dabat.



5. Captīvōs Rōmānōs in castrīs servābāmus.
6. Crās, frāter, nāvigābis trāns mare ad patriam nostram.
7. Occupāvistīne equum meum in itinere?
8. Post proelium militēs cum celeritāte ad castra arma portāvērunt.
9. Sorōrēs ducis in viā diū ambulābant.
10. Imperātor spectābat hostium castrā in monte.

**B. Translate.**

1. The songs of the soldiers in the Roman camp pleased the leaders.
2. Will the Roman people soon give a new name to our king?
3. Where did you seize my friend's new horses?
4. The envoy will carry to the German king the message about the danger of war.
5. The journey from Germany to Italy is long.
6. Carry your swords to the camp now, Marcus and Lucius.
7. Caesar often used to fight against the enemy in Gaul.
8. We walked toward the wide river for a long time.
9. Have you not looked at the many weapons of the lieutenant?
10. Our camp is always in a large field.



*Sarcophagus of P. Nonius Zethus, a miller, showing a grain mill worked by a donkey, and various measures, sieve, and scoop.  
Aug. (Augustalis) indicates member of a priesthood for an imperial cult of freedmen.*

# 17

## Second Conjugation



*A funeral urn showing an oculist examining one of his patients*



Quos amor verus tenuit, tenebit.  
*Those whom true love has held, it will go on holding*  
 —SENECA.

—Forms—

### THE SECOND CONJUGATION

Verbs whose present stem (found by dropping **-re** from the second principal part) ends in **ē** belong to the second conjugation. They are conjugated like **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, advise, warn:**

| INDICATIVE MOOD      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| PRESENT TENSE        |                   |
| SINGULAR             | PLURAL            |
| mo'neō               | monē'mus          |
| mo'nēs               | monē'tis          |
| mo'net               | mo'nent           |
| IMPERFECT TENSE      |                   |
| monē'bam, etc.       | monēbā'mus, etc.  |
| FUTURE TENSE         |                   |
| monē'bō, etc.        | monē'bimus, etc.  |
| PERFECT TENSE        |                   |
| mo'nuī, etc.         | monu'imus, etc.   |
| PLUPERFECT TENSE     |                   |
| monu'eram, etc.      | monuerā'mus, etc. |
| FUTURE PERFECT TENSE |                   |
| monu'erō, etc.       | monue'rimus, etc. |
| PRESENT IMPERATIVE   |                   |
| mo'nē                | monē'te           |

Notice that **moneō** is conjugated in exactly the same way as **vocō**, except that the stem vowel is not dropped, but only shortened, before **-ō** in the present active indicative first person singular **moneō**.

—Vocabulary—

Helvē'tius, -a, -um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetians*

ha'beō, habē're, ha'buī, ha'bitum, *have; hold*  
 ma'neō, manē're, măn'sī, măn'sum, *stay, remain*  
 mo'neō, monē're, mo'nuī, mo'nitum, *warn; advise, inform*  
 mo'veō, movē're, mō'vī, mō'tum, *move; castra movēre, to break camp*  
 se'deō, sedē're, sē'dī, ses'sum, *sit*  
 te'neō, tenē're, te'nuī, ten'tum, *hold*  
 ti'meō, timē're, ti'muī, —, *fear, be afraid*  
 vi'deō, vidē're, vī'dī, vī'sum, *see*

—Exercises—

A. Analyze each form and translate.

1. vidēbam, vīdit, vidēbunt, vīderātis 2. timēmus, timuimus, timet, timuit 3. sedēbō, sēderant, mānserat, manēbunt 4. tenēbat, tenuerit, mōvit, movet 5. portābitis, laudāvistis, timēbātis, nūntiāverās 6. parat, vīdī, dedī, appellāvit 7. timuistī, tenuistis, habuī, vidēbāmus 8. es, cōfirmāverō, monēbat, mānsērunt 9. oppugnābāmus, convocāvit, dat, sēdimus 10. habuit, fuit, habuerat, tenuerimus

B. Translate.

1. we were warning, they had warned, he will see 2. I shall fear, you had seen, they will have 3. we have sat, they have sat, I sit 4. we were holding, they remain, I shall have sat 5. you had, you will have, they will have 6. he was, you will remain, they had warned 7. she has seen, they had feared, we are moving 8. will you give? will they not stand? they were not calling, were they? 9. he announced, we shall have stood, you have saved 10. he had moved, we shall have moved, they will remain

C. Give synopses in the indicative, with meanings, of the following:



1. maneō in the first person singular 2. videō in the third person singular 3. habeō in the third person plural

**D.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Militēs ducem tenēbunt in oppidō. 2. Imperātor Rōmānus castra crās movēbit. 3. Populus Rōmānus imperium semper tenēbat. 4. Cōsulēs monēbō dē bellī periculō. 5. Stāte, virī, in viā et ducem expectāte. 6. Post proelium miserī captīvī mortem timuerunt. 7. Saepe nāvem pulchram vīdimus. 8. Diū sedēbant in villā frātrēs agricolae. 9. Māterne tua in urbe manēbit? 10. Nōne parātis, puellae, nunc librōs novōs?

**E.** Translate.

1. We stayed on the mountain for a long time. 2. The soldiers will soon break camp. 3. Lucius, are you holding the small animal? 4. Girls, warn the farmer; there is a fire in the farmhouse. 5. Our father saw a long river in Spain. 6. My brother is sitting on the small bridge. 7. The enemy do not fear our men. 8. The captives do not have much money, do they? 9. The consuls will have warned the citizens of the danger. 10. Tell the boys a story about Julius Caesar.

—Reading—

Read aloud and translate.

**A BRAVE WATER BOY**

Lūcius, lēgātus Caesaris, in villā agricolae amīcī sedēbat et agricolae filiīs fābulam dē bellō Gallicō nārrābat.

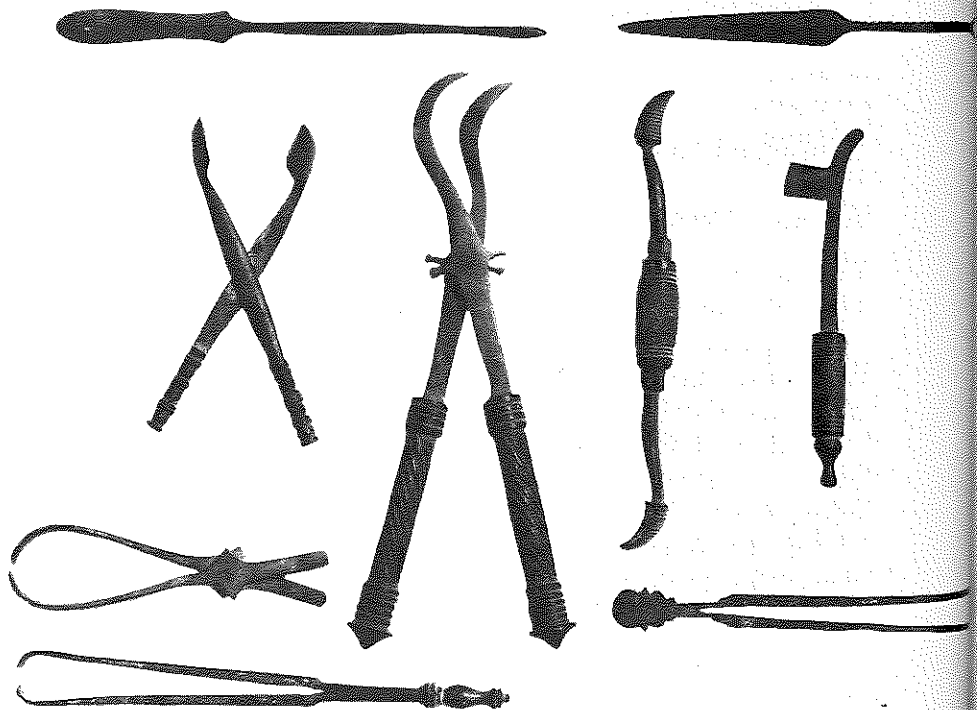
"Erat cum nostrīs cōpiīs puer Gallus. In proeliō ad milītēs aquam cibumque parvō carrō portābat. Mortem nōn timēbat. In castrīs cum milītibus laborābat.

"Diū in finibus Aeduōrum mānsimus. Nostrās cōpiās Caesar in castrīs ad flūmen Ararim tenēbat. Cum Helvētiīs pugnābat et hostēs expectābat.

"Hostēs cōpiās flūmen navibus trānsportābant. In flūmine nōn erat pōns. Ubi de flūmine puer aquam portābat, signa Helvētiōrum vidit et nostrōs dē periculō magnā cum celeritāte monuit. Helvētiī castra nostra oppugnāvērunt, sed parātī erāmus. Puerum Caesar laudāvit. Est hodiē cīvis Rōmānus."

# 18

## Third Declension, Adjectives Ablative of Accompaniment



*Surgeon's tools found at Pompeii*

Patria est communis omnium parens.  
*Our native land is the common parent of us all.*—CICERO

—Forms—

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

These adjectives are declined like third declension i-stem nouns. Like the neuter i- stems, they always have *-ī* in the ablative singular.

Third declension adjectives of three terminations end in *-er* in the masculine nominative singular, *-is* in the feminine, and *-e* in the neuter. They are declined like *celer*, *swift*.

|      | SINGULAR |          |          | PLURAL     |            |            |
|------|----------|----------|----------|------------|------------|------------|
|      | M.       | F.       | N.       | M.         | F.         | N.         |
| NOM. | ce'ler   | ce'leris | ce'lere  | ce'lerēs   | ce'lerēs   | cele'ria   |
| GEN. | ce'leris | ce'leris | ce'leris | cele'rium  | cele'rium  | cele'rium  |
| DAT. | ce'lerī  | ce'lerī  | ce'lerī  | cele'ribus | cele'ribus | cele'ribus |
| ACC. | ce'lerem | ce'lerem | ce'lere  | ce'lerēs   | ce'lerēs   | cele'ria   |
| ABL. | ce'lerī  | ce'lerī  | ce'lerī  | cele'ribus | cele'ribus | cele'ribus |

Adjectives of two terminations end in *-is* in both the masculine and the feminine nominative singular, and in *-e* in the neuter (*brevis*, *breve*). Adjectives of two terminations are declined like adjectives of three terminations, except that they have no separate form for the masculine nominative and vocative singular.

|             | SINGULAR |         | PLURAL    |           |
|-------------|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
|             | M. & F.  | N.      | M. & F.   | N.        |
| NOMINATIVE: | bre'vis  | bre've  | bre'vēs   | bre'via   |
| GENITIVE:   | bre'vis  | bre'vis | bre'vium  | bre'vium  |
| DATIVE:     | bre'vī   | bre'vī  | bre'vibus | bre'vibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | bre'vem  | bre've  | bre'vēs   | bre'via   |
| ABLATIVE:   | bre'vī   | bre'vī  | bre'vibus | bre'vibus |

Adjectives of one termination have the same form for the nominative and vocative singular of all three genders. All third declension adjectives which do not end in *-er* or *-is* in the masculine nominative singular are adjectives of one termination.





— Word Study —

**Adjective Prefixes.** Used with an adjective the prefix **in** means *not*; **inimicus** = **in** + **amicus**, *not friendly*; therefore, *unfriendly*. The prefix **per** means *very*. What are the meanings of the following adjectives?

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| imparātus, -a, -um | perlongus, -a, -um |
| ingrātus, -a, -um  | permagnus, -a, -um |
| pergrātus, -a, -um | permultus, -a, -um |

**The Suffixes -ia and -tia.** An abstract noun is often made from an adjective by the addition of **-ia** or **-tia** (*-ness, -ship*) to the base or stem of the adjective. **Amicitia** (*friendship, friendliness*) is formed from the adjective **amicus** in this way.

**The Suffix -tās.** The noun **celeritās** is derived from **celer**. The suffix **-tās, -tātis**, feminine, performs the same function of making an abstract noun from an adjective. Like **-ia** and **-tia**, it may be translated *-ness*. What would be the meanings of the following nouns?

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| brevitās, brevitātis, f.    | libertās, libertātis, f. |
| grātia, grātia, f.          | miseria, miseriae, f.    |
| gravitās, gravitātis, f.    | potentia, potentiae, f.  |
| inimicitia, inimicitiae, f. | vēritās, vēritātis, f.   |

— Exercises —

A. Decline the following.

|             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| animus ācer | rēgīna fortis | rēgnum potēns |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Māter cum filiō fortī manēbit.
2. Rēx potēns et rēgīna cum filiābus sedent.
3. Frāter cōsulis tuō patrī tēla dabit.
4. Breve est iter ad oppidum, et magnā cum celeritāte ambulāmus.
5. Omnēs īnsulam in flūmine Britannō spectābant.
6. Dux audāx tenēbat in castrīs cōsulem cum frātribus sorōribusque.
7. Omnēs socii cum Caesare pugnābant.
8. Nostrī tēlis gravibus hostēs vulnerāverint.
9. Ducēs fortēs cum omnibus cōpiīs oppida magna oppugnāverant.
10. Vidī omnia in castrīs.

~~~~~

Omnēs and **omnia**, when used as nouns, are usually translated *everyone* and *everything*. Remember that these words are plural in Latin.

Suntne omnēs in nave? *Is everyone on the ship?*

~~~~~

C. Translate.

1. The sons of the consul remained in the fields with the men.
2. The women are sitting on the bridge across the river.
3. The brave messenger warned the citizens about the dangers.
4. The small girls were afraid of everything.
5. The beautiful songs of the British girls pleased the Roman soldiers.
6. The weapons of the bold lieutenant are heavy.
7. Everyone was looking at the powerful soldier.
8. The road from our farmhouse to your city is not short.
9. Look at the wounds on the body of the horse, father.
10. The Trojan soldiers fought with heavy swords.

—Reading—

**CORIOLĀNUS**

Coriolānus malus cīvis erat sed bonus mīles. Rōmānī nūllum frūmentum habēbant et timēbant magnam famem. Iam rēx in Siciliā Rōmānīs multum frūmentum dederat sed Coriolānus frūmentum pauperibus nōn dabat. Itaque pauperēs Coriolānum ex urbe exturbāverunt.

Posteā Coriolānus dux Volscōrum erat et cum mīlitibus Rōmānīs pugnābat. Rōmānōs multis pugnīs superāvit. Rōmānī clāmāverunt: "Mox Coriolānus Rōmam occupābit."

Tum māter Coriolānī et uxor et filiū filiaeque ex urbe properāverunt. Māter Coriolānum ōrāvit et obsecrāvit: "Dā, fili, salūtem Romae." Respōnsum Coriolānī erat: "Salūtem, māter, dabō urbī meae. Servāvistī Rōmam sed tuum filium posthāc numquam vidēbis." Tum Coriolānus cum mīlitibus ab urbe properāvit.



# 19

## Passive Voice, First Conjugation



*Pont du Gard, France, Roman Aqueduct and Bridge, 19 B.C.*

Amor tussisque non celantur.  
*Love, and a cough, are not concealed.—OVID*

—Forms—

### THE PASSIVE VOICE

When the subject of the verb is not performing the action, but is being acted upon, the verb is in the passive voice.

In the present system the passive is conjugated like the active, but with a different set of personal endings.

|            | SINGULAR  | PLURAL |
|------------|-----------|--------|
| 1ST PERSON | -or, -r   | -mur   |
| 2D PERSON  | -ris, -re | -minī  |
| 3D PERSON  | -tur      | -ntur  |

#### PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|           |                       |            |                        |
|-----------|-----------------------|------------|------------------------|
| vo'cor,   | <i>I am called</i>    | vocā'mur,  | <i>we are called</i>   |
| vocā'ris, | <i>you are called</i> | vocā'minī, | <i>you are called</i>  |
| vocā'tur, | <i>he is called</i>   | vocan'tur, | <i>they are called</i> |

#### IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|              |                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| vocā'bar,    | <i>I was being called</i>     |
| vocābā'ris,  | <i>you were being called</i>  |
| vocābā'tur,  | <i>he was being called</i>    |
| vocābā'mur,  | <i>we were being called</i>   |
| vocābā'minī, | <i>you were being called</i>  |
| vocāban'tur, | <i>they were being called</i> |

#### FUTURE PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|             |                           |              |                            |
|-------------|---------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| vocā'bor,   | <i>I shall be called</i>  | vocā'bimur,  | <i>we shall be called</i>  |
| vocā'beris, | <i>you will be called</i> | vocabi'minī, | <i>you will be called</i>  |
| vocā'bitur, | <i>he will be called</i>  | vocābun'tur, | <i>they will be called</i> |

#### PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

|          |                   |            |                   |
|----------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|
| vocā're, | <i>be called!</i> | vocā'minī, | <i>be called!</i> |
|----------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|

## THE PERFECT TENSES IN THE PASSIVE

Perfect tenses in the passive are formed by combining the perfect passive participle (made from the last one of the principal parts) with forms of **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect.

PERFECT *I have been (was) called, etc.*

|           |   |     |           |   |        |
|-----------|---|-----|-----------|---|--------|
| vocātus   | { | sum | vocātī    | { | su'mus |
| (-a, -um) | { | es  | (-ae, -a) | { | es'tis |
|           |   | est |           |   | sunt   |

PLUPERFECT *I had been called, etc.*

|           |   |       |           |   |         |
|-----------|---|-------|-----------|---|---------|
| vocātus   | { | e'ram | vocātī    | { | erā'mus |
| (-a, -um) | { | e'rās | (-ae, -a) | { | erā'tis |
|           |   | e'rat |           |   | e'rant  |

FUTURE PERFECT *I shall (will) have been called, etc.*

|           |   |       |           |   |         |
|-----------|---|-------|-----------|---|---------|
| vocātus   | { | e'rō  | vocātī    | { | e'rimus |
| (-a, -um) | { | e'ris | (-ae, -a) | { | e'ritis |
|           |   | e'rit |           |   | e'runt  |

### —Syntax—

## AGREEMENT OF PERFECT PASSIVE

In the perfect system the perfect passive participle must agree with the subject in gender, number, and case (the case will, of course, be nominative).

Puer vocātus est. *The boy has been called. The boy was called.*  
 Puellae vocatae erant. *The girls had been called.*

### —Exercises—

A. Analyze each Latin form and translate.

1. parāvit, nūntiābitur, liberāta est
2. convocābāmur, cōnfirmāvistis, vocātum erat
3. data erunt, appellāberis, amābuntur
4. dantur, dabuntur, dedimus
5. vulnerātus es,



vulnerābāminī, expectāberis 6. amābiminī, superātī erimus,  
 amātae erant 7. occupāta sunt, occupāta est, servātur  
 8. pugnāvimus, vulnerābunt, pugnāverāmus 9. portāberis, por-  
 tātum erat, portor 10. spectantur, laudātī sumus, parāvī

B. Translate.

1. you are being wounded, it will be announced 2. they were  
 being called, I had been praised 3. she will be carried, they have  
 been saved 4. he has been defeated, we are being freed 5. they  
 were being carried, you will be praised 6. The fields had been  
 seized. 7. The women have been praised. 8. The boys have  
 been called. 9. The money had been given. 10. The mothers  
 will be loved.

(left) From the Stabian Baths, Pompeii. (right) Hot Room.



C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Militum animī signō proelī cōfirmātī erant. 2. Multa et pulchra dōna rēginae potentī dantur. 3. Caesaris mors cīvibus miseris nūntiātur. 4. Cūr fortēs amīcī nōn laudātī sunt? 5. Bonae fēminae semper amātae sunt. 6. Cīvēs Rōmānī saepe ad campum convocābantur. 7. Pōns longus in urbe Britannīs et Gallīs dēmōnstrābitur. 8. Servi Helvētīī crās liberābuntur. 9. Fābulae dē lēgātō audācī semper nārrābuntur. 10. Castra magnā cum audāciā oppugnāta sunt.

D. Translate.

1. Why are the letters not being prepared with care? 2. The wretched captives were being kept in the town. 3. Everyone has been called to the mountain. 4. Tomorrow the city will have been captured; soon we shall break camp. 5. The camp was being attacked with many weapons. 6. The death of the general will be reported far and wide. 7. The brave soldier had been wounded with a heavy weapon. 8. Haven't the enemy been defeated in Germany? 9. Everything was carried into camp. 10. The fields of the good farmer have been seized.

—Reading—

ALEXANDER'S HORSE

Alexander Magnus, rēx Macedoniae, equum fortem et celerem habēbat. Būcephalus appellātus est. Rēgem in proelium semper portābat. Armīs signōque proelī delectābātur. Ubi mīlitēs rēgis Būcephalum audācem inter hostēs vidēbant, animī cōfirmābantur et virī clamābant, "Būcephalus nōn est animal, sed similis deō."

Fābula dē equō memoriā diū tenēbātur. Alexander cum potentī duce Indōrum pugnābat. Rēx miserē labōrābat. Būcephalus multis tēlis hostium vulnerātus erat. In corpore equī erant gravia vulnera. Mors aderat, sed animal forte nōn timēbat. Alexandrum sine iniūriā ad castra portāvit. Tum animam expīravī.

Posteā in finibus Indōrum stābat oppidum Macedonicum. Nōmen oppidī erat Būcephala.



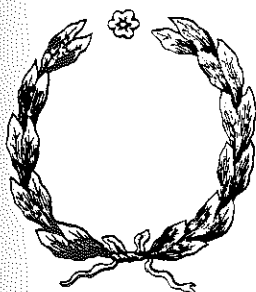
20

Second Conjugation,  
Passive  
Ablative of Personal  
Agent



*Mosaic, Terme Museum, Rome*





A cane non magno saepe tenetur aper.  
A boar is often held by a not-so-large dog.—OVID

—Forms—

THE PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

In the second conjugation the passive is formed in the same way as in the first conjugation.

PRESENT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| mo'neor  | monē'mur  |
| monē'ris | monē'minī |
| monē'tur | monen'tur |

IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| monē'bar, etc. | monēbā'mur, etc. |
|----------------|------------------|

FUTURE PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| monē'bor, etc. | monē'bimur, etc. |
|----------------|------------------|

PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| mo'nitus, -a, -um sum, etc. | mo'nitī, -ae, -a su'mus, etc. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mo'nitus, -a -um e'ram, etc. | mo'nitī, -ae, -a erā'mus, etc. |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mo'nitus, -a, -um e'rō, etc. | mo'nitī, -ae, -a e'rimus, etc. |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|

PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| monē're | monē'minī |
|---------|-----------|

## —Syntax—

## THE ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

With a passive verb the person by whom the action is performed is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab*. *Ā* or *ab* in this case is always translated *by*.

Puer bonus ā patre laudātus est.  
*The good boy was praised by his father.*

Do not confuse the ablative of agent with the ablative of means. The ablative of agent is usually a person and is preceded by *ā* or *ab*. The ablative of means is usually an object, and is used without a preposition.

Ā milite vulnerātus est. *He was wounded by a soldier.*  
(ABLATIVE OF AGENT)  
Tēlō vulnerātus est. *He was wounded by a weapon.*  
(ABLATIVE OF MEANS)

*Pons Aemilius, Rome*



## THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

A verb of making or naming may take a predicate accusative in addition to its direct object.

Vocāvit filium Mārcum. *He called his son Marcus.*

In the passive such verbs may take a predicate nominative.

Puer vocātur Mārcus. *The boy is called Marcus.*

## — Vocabulary —

aes'tās, aestā'tis, f., *summer*

hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter*

lūx, lū'cis, f., *light*

pāx, pā'cis, f., *peace*

sa'lūs, salū'tis, f., *safety, welfare*

vōx, vō'cis, f., *voice*

dē'beō, dēbē're, dē'buī, dē'bitum, *owe; ought*

do'ceō, docē're, do'cuī, doc'tum, *teach; show*

prohi'beō, prohibē're, prohi'buī, prohi'bitum, *prevent, keep . . . from . . .*

respon'deō, respondē're, respon'dī, respōn'sum, *reply, answer*

reti'neō, retinē're, reti'nuī, reten'tum, *hold back*

ter'reō, terrē're, ter'ruī, ter'ritum, *frighten*

## — Word Study —

**The Prefixes prō- (por-) and re- (red-).** The prefix **prō-** or **por-** means *in front, forward, forth, or for*.

**prohibeō = pro + habeō,** *I hold out in front = I hold off = I prevent*

The prefix **re-** or **red-** means *back, again, against*.

**retineō = re + teneō,** *I hold back*

Notice that in compounds the **-a** and **-e** of **habeō** and **teneō** are changed to **-i**.

Here are some verbs compounded with these two prefixes:

proclāmō, *I shout forth*

prōmoveō, *I move forward*

prōvideō, *I foresee, I provide for*

prōvocō, *I call forth*

remaneō, *I stay behind*

removeō, *I move back*

renūntiō, *I bring back a message*

repugnō, *I fight against*

revocō, *I call back*



## —Exercises—

**A.** Analyze each form and translate.

1. habēmur, monētur, datae sunt
2. vīdērunt, videntur, retinētur
3. tenēbātur, tenuerant, retinūi
4. mōvī, mōtus est, movēbitur
5. habēbās, timueris, servābit
6. mōvit, vīdit, dedit
7. mōverint, mōtī erāmus, timuerāmus
8. mōtum est, dabuntur, monitī sumus
9. vulnerābitur, liberāta eris, vocātī erātis
10. fuimus, erātis, fuerant

**B.** Translate.

1. he had been moved, I am held
2. you were held, they will be seen
3. they will have been frightened, she was warned
4. it is shown, they were being held
5. he has been held back, it has been prevented
6. they are warned, she has been moved
7. he had been held back, he will be seen
8. he is frightened, you have been defeated
9. he will be called, I shall be saved
10. they were moved, we were freed

**C.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Hiemēs in Āfricā brevēs sunt.
2. Tuam filiā ā flūmine retinimus.
3. Puellae ā puerīs in equīs territae sunt.
4. Hostēs ā ducibus vidēbantur.
5. Nostrī magnā cum celeritāte ā nūntiō vocābantur ex castrōrum portīs.
6. Dē periculō hiemis in Germāniā ab amīcō bonō monēberis.
7. Cōpiae Rōmānae bellum parāverant et multa oppida in Gallōrum finibus occupābant.
8. Rōma ā Gallis gentibus diū oppugnāta erat.
9. Multam pecūniam vestris amīcīs dēbēmus.
10. Multae et pulchrae urbēs in Hispāniā ā nostris amīcīs vīsae sunt.

**D.** Translate.

1. The farmer's daughter was waiting for her mother on the bridge.
2. Many large cities had been seized by the forces of the Roman consul.
3. The king's sisters were carried by a wagon to the ship.
4. The German camp was seen by the brave lieutenant.
5. The horses in the field were frightened by the boys' voices.
6. The wretched slaves owed money to their master.
7. Now I shall give the battle signal on my trumpet.
8. They wounded many soldiers of the enemy with weapons and saved

Rome. 9. The dangers of a winter on the sea were reported to the Roman sailors. 10. The general had been warned about the fire on the mountain.

—Reading—

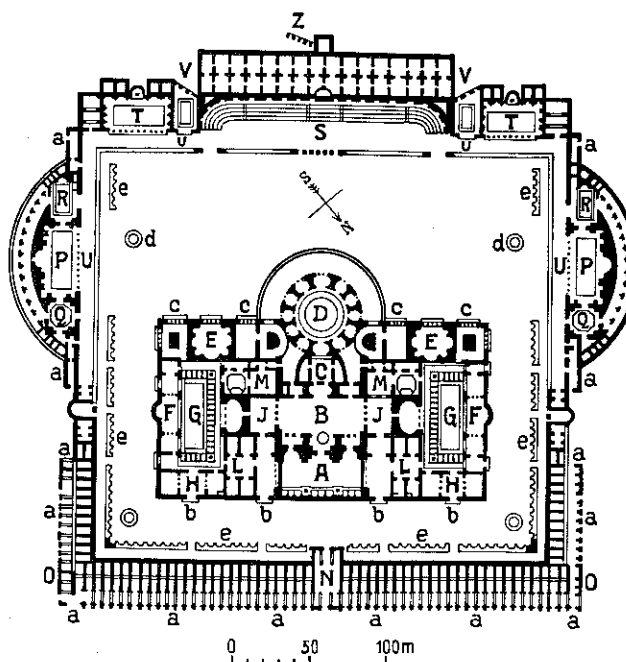
### ALEXANDER AND PORUS

Alexandrī et cōpiārum Graecārum magnum iter erat per finēs Persarum Indōrumque. Graeci ad flūmen Hydaspem ab imperātore prēmōti erant. Ibi flūmen lātum hostēs Graecis prohibuit. Trāns flūmen stābant milītēs Indī, virī ingentēs. Multae erant cōpiae. Pōrus, rēx Indōrum, in proelium elephantō portābātur et magna pulchraque arma tenēbat.

Tum Alexander milītēs trāns flūmen mōvit. Omnēs Graeci, ubi rēgem Indōrum vīdērunt, ferō animō et corpore magnō territī sunt. Acrīter pugnātum est. Et Pōrus et Alexander fortiter pugnāvīt. Sed Pōrus superātus est et postea erat socius Alexandrī.

*Plan of the Baths of Caracalla, dedicated in 216 A.D.*

- N. Main Entrance
- a. Shops
- Q. Nymphaea
- P. Rooms opening on colonnade
- R. Heated Rooms
- T. Libraries (Greek and Latin)
- S. Stadium
- V. Water Tanks
- z. Aqueduct
- b. Entrances to the baths
- L. Dressing Rooms
- A. Frigidarium
- B. Central Hall
- C. Tepidarium
- D. Caldarium
- G. Palaestra
- F. Exedrae
- c and E. Lecture Halls



Non est ad astra mollis e terris via.  
*There is no easy way from the earth to the stars.*—SENECA

## REVIEW 5 (LESSONS 17-20)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

aestās      lūx      salūs      hiems      pāx      vōx

B. Give the other nominative singular forms (or the genitive singular, for adjectives of one termination) and the meaning of the following adjectives.

ācer      brevis      facilis      gravis      potēns  
 audāx      celer      fortis      omnis      similis

C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

dēbeō      moneō      respondeō      teneō  
 doceō      moveō      retineō      terreō  
 habeō      prohibeō      sedeō      timeō  
 maneō                videō

### —Drill on Forms—

A. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: pāx, hiems, salūs
2. *dative singular*: salūs, Helvētius, aestās
3. *accusative singular*: lūx, vōx, Gallus
4. *ablative singular*: brevis, potēns, grave
5. *nominative plural*: pāx, Trōiānus, audāx
6. *genitive plural*: celer, similis, ācer
7. *dative plural*: facilis, fortis, omnis
8. *accusative plural*: vox, salūs, breve



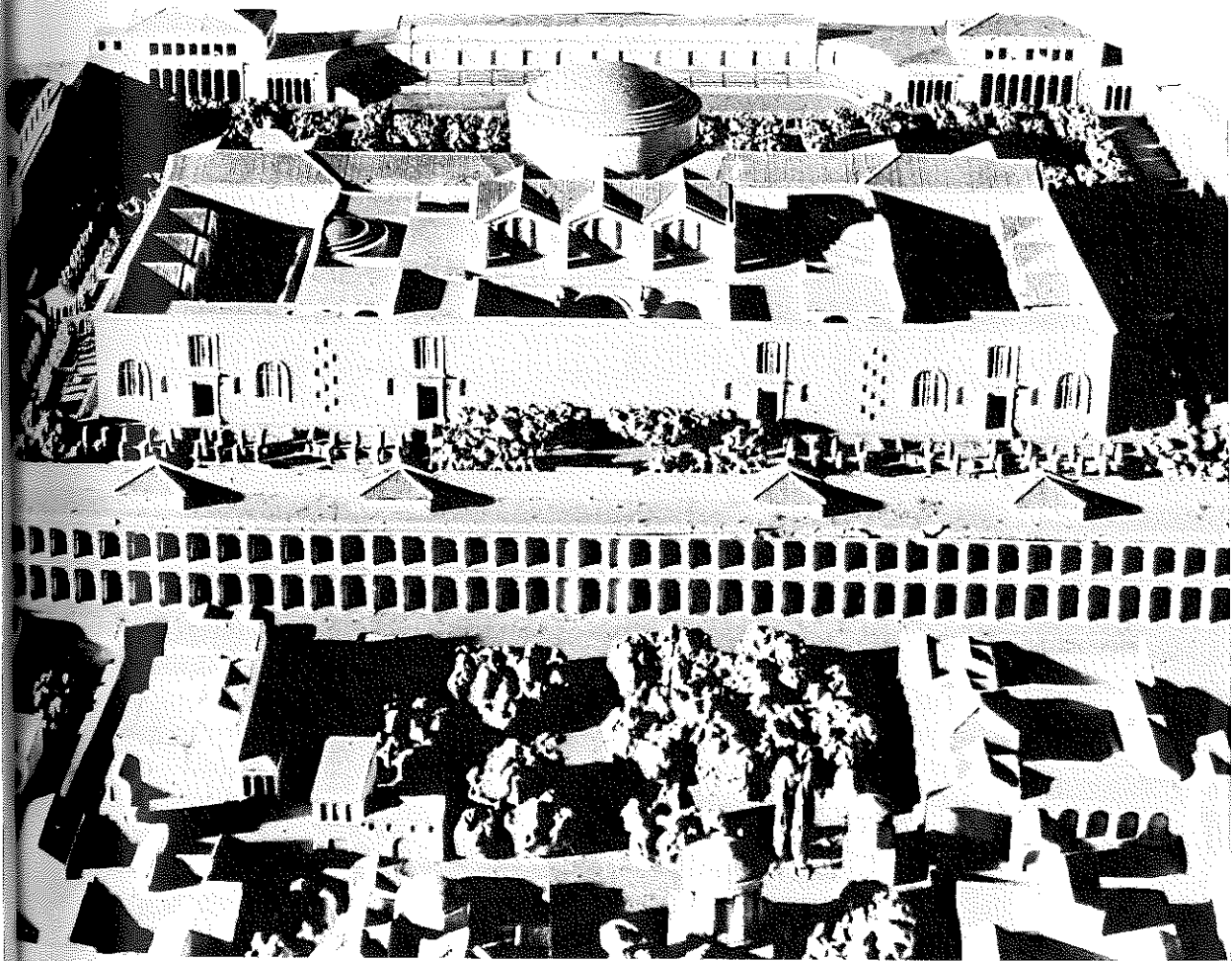
B. Give a synopsis in the active and passive, indicative and imperative, of:

1. portō in the 2d person plural    2. doceō in the 2d person singular

### C. Decline.

1. Gallus audāx                      2. aestās brevis

*A model of the Baths of Caracalla (plan on p. 113). Note the size of the complex, particularly the large areas of park and garden for strolling, and the roofing arrangements.*



—Drill on Syntax—

Translate the words in italics, giving the reason for each case.

1. They gave money *to the citizens*.
2. They carried water *to the citizens*.
3. He was wounded *by an enemy*.
4. He was wounded *by a sword*.
5. We attacked the town *with great speed*.
6. We attacked the town *with our allies*.
7. We attacked the town *with many weapons*.
8. I called my son *Lucius*.
9. My son is called *Lucius*.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Bona fortūna nostrōrum nautārum cīvibus nūtiābitur.
2. Signum datum est; tum milītēs castra hostium oppugnāvērunt.
3. Ignem vestrum, milītēs, portāte ad hostium urbēs.
4. Poena inimicārum gentium erit gravis.
5. Misera animālia in viīs oppidī sedēbant.
6. Multae nāvēs in flūmine vīsae sunt sub ponte lātō.
7. Num multī puerī vīsī erant in magnā nāve?
8. Urbēs ā multis cīvibus cum ducibus oppugnābantur.
9. Cum lēgātō fortī erant cōsulēs audācēs.
10. Est longa via ā meō oppidō ad vestram urbem.

B. Translate.

1. Because of the lack of bread the sailors were not staying in the town.
2. Everything on the ships was seen by everyone.
3. The brave citizens stayed in camp with the soldiers for a long time.
4. Many ships used to sail to the enemy's territory.
5. The mountains in Italy are not high, but they are beautiful.
6. The death of the general was announced to the wretched soldiers by the lieutenant.
7. Lucius, see the fires on the mountain and in the forests!
8. Caesar had warned the citizens about the dangers of winter.
9. The long bridge was seen by the brave boys.
10. They had called the boy Marcus Julius; the girl was called Julia.

21

## Numerals



*Arch of Constantine, Rome*





Etiam capillus unus habet umbram.  
*Even one hair has a shadow.*—PUBLILIUS SYRUS

—Forms—

**Ūnus, Duo, and Trēs**

**Ūnus**, *one*, is declined like **malus** except in the genitive and dative singular.

|             | MASCULINE | FEMININE | NEUTER |
|-------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| NOMINATIVE: | ŭ'nus     | ŭ'na     | ŭ'num  |
| GENITIVE:   | ŭnī'us    | ŭnī'us   | ŭnī'us |
| DATIVE:     | ŭ'nī      | ŭ'nī     | ŭ'nī   |
| ACCUSATIVE: | ŭ'num     | ŭ'nam    | ŭ'num  |
| ABLATIVE:   | ŭ'nō      | ŭ'nā     | ŭ'nō   |

**Duo**, *two*, is declined as follows:

|             | MASCULINE | FEMININE | NEUTER  |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|
| NOMINATIVE: | du'o      | du'ae    | du'o    |
| GENITIVE:   | duō'rum   | duā'rum  | duō'rum |
| DATIVE:     | duō'bus   | duā'bus  | duō'bus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | du'ōs,    | du'ās    | du'o    |
| ABLATIVE:   | duō'bus   | duā'bus  | duō'bus |

**Trēs**, *three*, is a regular third declension adjective except that it has, of course, no singular. The endings are added to the base **tr-**.

|             | M. & F. | N.     |
|-------------|---------|--------|
| NOMINATIVE: | trēs    | tria   |
| GENITIVE:   | trium   | trium  |
| DATIVE:     | tribus  | tribus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | trēs    | tria   |
| ABLATIVE:   | tribus  | tribus |

## CARDINAL NUMERALS

|                                       |                                               |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| ū'nus, -a, -um, <i>one</i> , (I)      | no'vem, <i>nine</i> , (IX or VIII)            |
| du'o, du'ae, du'o, <i>two</i> , (II)  | de'cem, <i>ten</i> , (X)                      |
| trēs, tri'a, <i>three</i> , (III)     | ūn'decim, <i>eleven</i> , (XI)                |
| quat'tuor, <i>four</i> , (IV or IIII) | duo'decim, <i>twelve</i> , (XII)              |
| quin'que, <i>five</i> , (V)           | vigin'ti, <i>twenty</i> , (XX)                |
| sex, <i>six</i> , (VI)                | cen'tum, <i>one hundred, a hundred</i> , (C)  |
| sep'tem, <i>seven</i> , (VII)         | mil'le, <i>one thousand, a thousand</i> , (M) |
| oc'tō, <i>eight</i> , (VIII)          |                                               |

Except for **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs**, the cardinal numerals up through **centum** are indeclinable; **mille** is indeclinable also. This means these adjectives do not change their forms to indicate gender, number, and case.

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| quinque puerī     | <i>five boys</i>       |
| quinque puellārum | <i>of five girls</i>   |
| ā quinque oppidīs | <i>from five towns</i> |

## ORDINAL NUMERALS

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| prī'mus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>    | sex'tus, -a, -um, <i>sixth</i>     |
| secun'dus, -a, -um, <i>second</i> | sep'timus, -a, -um, <i>seventh</i> |
| ter'tius, -a, -um, <i>third</i>   | octā'vus, -a, um, <i>eighth</i>    |
| quār'tus, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i>  | nō'nus, -a, -um, <i>ninth</i>      |
| quīn'tus, -a, -um, <i>fifth</i>   | de'cimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i>    |

Ordinal numerals agree in gender, number, and case with the noun they modify.

## —Vocabulary—

Britan'nia, -ae, f., *Britain*  
 cē'na, -ae, f., *dinner*  
 fenes'tra, -ae, f., *window*  
 Grae'cia, -ae, f., *Greece*  
 Helvē'tia, -ae, f., *Helvetia*  
     (modern Switzerland)  
 iniū'ria, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice*  
 mēn'sa, -ae, f., *table*  
 pug'na, -ae, f., *fight*  
 sel'la, -ae, f., *chair, seat*  
 Sici'lia, -ae, f., *Sicily*

Trō'ia, -ae, f., *Troy*  
 victō'ria, -ae, f., *victory*  
 at'que, ac. (conj.) *and*  
 aut, (conj.) *or* aut . . . aut . . . ,  
     *either . . . or . . .*  
 quod, (conj.) *because*  
 sī, (conj.) *if*  
 Just as **aut . . . aut . . .** means  
     *either . . . or . . .*, so **et . . . et**  
     . . . means *both . . . and . . .*

— Word Study —

**Mēnsa.** Since the top of a Roman table could be removed and used as a tray to serve a new course, **mēnsa** can also mean *course*. The *dessert course*, consisting usually of fruits and nuts, was called **secunda mēnsa**.

**Atque.** Of the three words which you have learned for *and*:

**et** expresses simple connection,

**-que** a close connection (which we often express by an unemphatic *and*, sometimes barely pronounced, as in salt 'n' pepper),

**atque** an emphasized close connection (e.g. She is beautiful *and* intelligent). Hence **atque** may sometimes be translated *and also*, *and even*, or *and besides*.

— Exercises —

**A.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Octō parvōs puerōs Germānōs in magnō oppidō vīdimus.
2. Decem virī post victōriam tenēbantur captīvī.
3. Sī pugna fuerit ācris, cōpiae Germānae superābuntur.
4. Quīnque puerī et quattuor puellae in agrīs manēbant.
5. Vigintī equī in agricolae agrīs vīsī sunt.
6. Propter rēgis iniūriās cum populīs Siciliae pugnābant.
7. Sī deī nostrīs victōriam dederint, duo oppida magna ā duce occupābuntur.
8. Agricolae vīta misera nōn est quod et lātōs agrōs et multam pecūniam habet.
9. Britannī in silvīs agrisque habitābant; nunc habent magnās urbēs.
10. Grātī sumus quod est magna cēna in nostrā mēnsā.

**B.** Translate.

1. The camp of the German troops was seized by the Roman soldiers.
2. We used to like the queen of Sicily, but we do not like the king.
3. If they defeat the enemy in Europe, our soldiers will then remain in our country.
4. We shall be unhappy if there is not a large dinner tomorrow.
5. The camp was guarded by the consul's forces.
6. If we fight in Helvetia, we shall defeat the Helvetian forces.
7. Nine slaves were walking toward the farmer's house.
8. A thousand soldiers broke camp and moved the heavy baggage across the river.
9. We praise the king and queen because they love the people.
10. There is a table with six chairs near the window in our farmhouse.



In clauses beginning with *if* in English we usually use the present tense when the future or future perfect would be more accurate. In a sentence like "If I'm in town tomorrow I'll meet you," "if I'm in town" really means "if I shall be in town."

Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English, and always uses the future or future perfect if future time is meant.

*Sī hostēs superāverimus, castra occupābimus.*  
*If we defeat the enemy, we shall seize their camp.*

### —Reading—

#### THE KINGS OF ROME

In villā sub montibus Faliscis post secundam mēsam pater Rōmānus quattuor filiis fābulās dē patriā in lūcem (*until dawn*) nārrābat. Hiems erat et in sellis ad ignem sedēbant. Per fenestrās mōns Sōracte albus vidēbātur.

"Pater," clāmāvit ūnus ex pueris, "nārrā fābulam aut dē Aenēā aut dē rēgibus Rōmānis."

"Fābulā," respondit pater, "mī cāre fili, dē rēgibus dēlector. Septem erant rēgēs Rōmāni. Rōmulus prīmus erat. Tum urbs nova in monte Palātiō asyllum erat servōrum atque malōrum, et cīvibus nōn erant fēminae. Sed fābula dē fēminis Sabinis longa est et posteā nārrābitur.

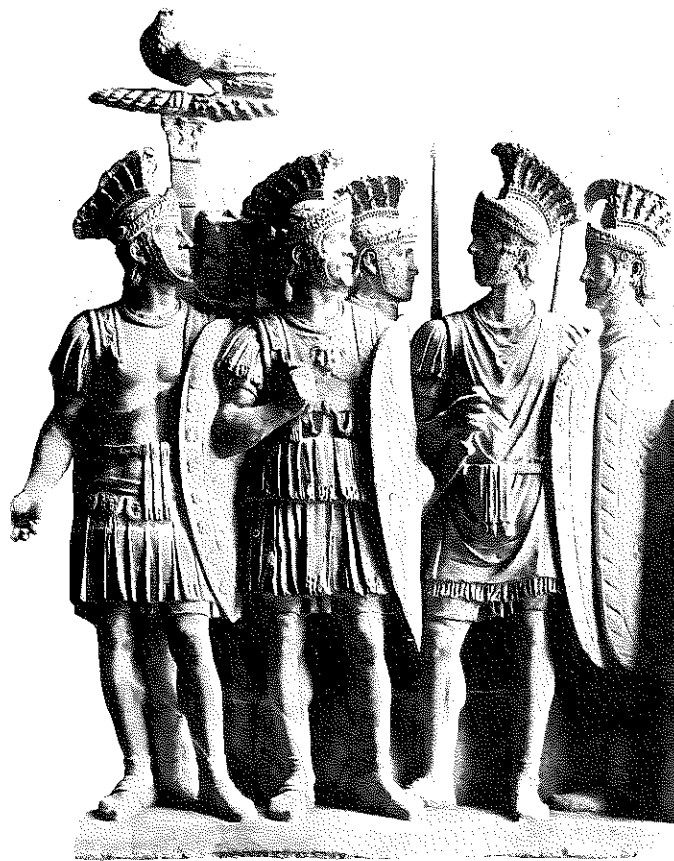
"Post mortem Rōmulī populus Numae imperium dedit. Numa sacra cūrāvit.

"Sed prīma lūx adest. Crās, sī bonī fueritis, fābulam dē quīnque rēgibus reliquīs nārrābō."



# 22

## Third Conjugation Apposition



*Relief showing the Praetorian Cohort, the emperor's personal bodyguard*

Culpam poena premit comes.  
*Punishment closely follows crime as its companion.*—HORACE

—Forms—

### THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs whose second principal part ends in **-ere** belong to the third conjugation. The present stem is found by dropping the **-ō** of the first principal part; the perfect stem is found in the same way as in the first two conjugations, by dropping the **-ī** of the third principal part.

The present system of third conjugation verbs differs from that of the first two conjugations in the following ways:

1. In the present tense, since adding the personal endings directly to a stem ending in a consonant would make pronunciation awkward, an **i** or a **u** is inserted between the stem and most of the endings:  
**regō, regere, present stem reg-**

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| re'gō  | re'gim <sup>us</sup> |
| re'gis | re'gitis             |
| re'git | re'gunt              |

2. In the imperfect tense the tense sign is **-ēbā-** instead of just **-bā-**.

|          |                        |
|----------|------------------------|
| regē'bam | regēbā'm <sup>us</sup> |
| regē'bās | regēbā'tis             |
| regē'bat | regē'bant              |

3. In the future tense the tense sign is **-ē-**, shortened before **-t** and **-nt**, and becoming **-a-** in the first person singular.

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| re'gam | regē'm <sup>us</sup> |
| re'gēs | regē'tis             |
| re'get | re'gent              |

The perfect system is formed exactly as in the other conjugations.

|                 |                |                               |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| PERFECT:        | rēx'ī, etc.    | rēx'im <sup>us</sup> , etc.   |
| PLUPERFECT:     | rēx'eram, etc. | rēxerā'm <sup>us</sup> , etc. |
| FUTURE PERFECT: | rēx'erō, etc.  | rēxe'rim <sup>us</sup> , etc. |

The present active imperative regularly adds an **-e** to the stem for the singular, and an **-ite** for the plural.

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| re'ge | re'gite |
|-------|---------|



—Syntax—

**APPOSITION**

A noun used to describe another noun or a pronoun is said to be its appositive, or to be in apposition with it. An appositive must refer to the same person or thing as the noun or pronoun to which it applies; it agrees with its noun or pronoun in case. The appositive usually follows its noun or pronoun.

*Puella fratrem Mārcum amat. The girl loves her brother Marcus.*

A noun may be in apposition with an understood subject.

*Cōsul mīlitēs dūcō. I, the consul, am leading the soldiers.  
I, as consul, am leading the soldiers.*

An appositive can be used to indicate time.

*Caesar puer magnam audāciam habuit.  
Caesar, when a boy, had great boldness.  
Caesar, while still a boy, had great boldness.*



—Vocabulary—

a'gō, a'gere, ē'gī, āc'tum, *do, drive*  
cō'gō, cō'gere, coē'gī, coāc'tum, *collect; compel*  
dēfen'dō, dēfen'dere, dēfen'dī, dēfēn'sum, *defend*  
dū'cō, dū'cere, dūx'ī, duc'tum, *lead*  
ge'rō, ge'rere, ges'sī, ges'tum, *bear, carry on, wear*  
mit'tō, mit'tere, mī'sī, mis'sum, *send, let go*  
pō'nō, pō'nere, po'suī, po'situm, *put, place*  
re'gō, re'gere, rēx'ī, rēc'tum, *rule*  
relin'quō, relin'quere, relī'quī, relic'tum, *leave, leave behind*  
sur'gō, sur'gere, surrēx'ī, surrēc'tum, *rise, stand up*  
trā'dō, trā'dere, trā'didī, trā'ditum, *hand over (down), surrender*  
vin'cō, vin'cere, vī'cī, vic'tum, *conquer, defeat*

—Word Study—

**Cōgō.** The two distinct meanings of **cōgō** (**co-** + **agō**) come from the two meanings of the prefix **co-**, *together* and *forcibly*: to drive together is to collect; to drive forcibly is to compel.

**Dūcō.** The present active imperative second person singular of **dūcō** is **dūc** (not **dūce**).

**Trādō.** In compounds **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum** becomes **-dō**, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**.

Two of the verbs in this lesson are commonly used in military idioms.

*bellum gerere, to wage war    castra pōnere, to pitch camp*

—Exercises—

A. Analyze the form, and translate.

1. **dūxī**, **ēgerat**, **gessit**    2. **mīsī**, **dēfenderit**, **coēgimus**    3. **vīcistī**, **surrēxerint**, **rēxerat**    4. **pōnet**, **relinquēmus**, **trādit**    5. **regite**, **dēfendit**, **posuerat**    6. **coēgistī**, **reliquī**, **dūxerit**    7. **trādidit**, **mīsērunt**, **vīcerant**    8. **agēbat**, **gere**, **surgent**    9. **mittimus**, **mīsimus**, **ēgerās**    10. **relinquit**, **vincent**, **gerēbant**

B. Translate.

1. we shall send, he had risen    2. you have ruled, I did    3. he has put, we have compelled    4. he handed over, we led    5. stand up! he was bearing    6. you are leaving behind, he defended    7. he had conquered, you will let go    8. I shall drive, they place    9. you will have collected, we had surrendered    10. did he carry on? are they not handing down?

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. **Bonī agricolae cēna erat in mēnsā ad fenestram.**    2. **Dux noster, Lūcius, auxilium ad cōpiās magnā cum celeritāte mīsīt.**    3. **Surgite, virī fēminaeque; equōs videō rēgis atque rēginae.**    4. **Nostrī oppidum nōn relinquent sed patriam defendent.**    5. **Cīvēs pecūniam coēgērunt, et Marcus dōna multa captīvīs trādet.**    6. **Cūr auxilia trāns flūmen cum novīs cōpiīs reliquērunt?**    7. **Rōmānī multa bella cum Germānīs gessērunt.**    8. **Hodiē castra in campō posuimus;**

crās post proelium castra movēbimus. 9. Decem virī pugnam reliquērunt et ā lēgātō vīsī sunt. 10. Cūr post castra milītēs reliquit imperātor?

D. Translate.

1. Why had they moved the troops, with the auxiliary forces, out of the town across the river? 2. The boys were sending letters to their friends across the sea. 3. A powerful king used to rule the fierce tribes in the territory of the Britons. 4. The general with his soldiers had defended Lucius, the consul's brother. 5. The soldiers had pitched camp on a high mountain. 6. Marcus, our leader, will defend the wretched soldier. 7. Why didn't the Roman people send aid to its allies across the sea? 8. Caesar, while commander, waged war with the Gauls. 9. Caesar's soldiers conquered the enemy in Gaul and even in Germany. 10. The enemy have surrendered their arms to our leader, Caesar's lieutenant.

—Reading—

THE KINGS OF ROME (continued)

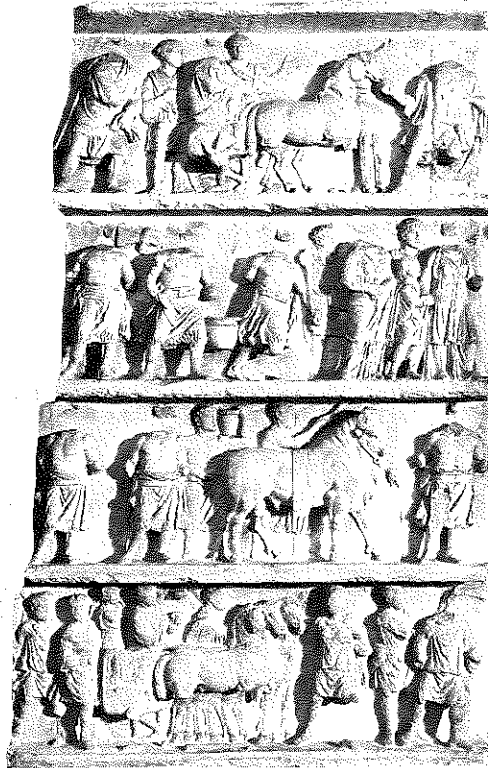
Pater filiīs fābulam dē rēgibus Rōmānīs nārrābat: "Tertius rēx erat Tullus Hostīlius. Bellum cum Albānīs gessit. In bellō Albānō trēs frātrēs Rōmānī, Horātīi, patriam defendērunt. Cum tribus frātribus Albānīs, Curiātiis, pugnāvērunt. Cīvēs Rōmānī Albānīque pugnam spectāvērunt. Diū pugnātum est. Trēs Curiātīi vulnerātī erant. Unus ex Horātīis vīvus relictus est, sed Curiātiōs vīcit et necāvit. Cīvēs surrēxērunt et Horātium in urbem magnō cum gaudiō duxērunt. Albānī urbem Albam Longam Tullō trādidērunt. Rēx Rōmānus Albam vāstāvit.

"Quārtus rēx erat Ancus Marcius. Post mortem Ancī Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus rēgnum occupāvit. Multa bella gessit et Serviō Tullīō, sextō rēgī, magnum agrum trādidit. Servius populum bene rēxit et urbī Rōmae multa dedit. Post mortem Servī filius Tarquinī Priscī, Tarquinius Superbus, rēgnum obtinuit. Bene appellātus est. Superbus malusque erat rēx. Brūtus, pater patriae, Tarquinius Superbum ab urbe rēgnōque ēgit."



# 23

## Third Conjugation, Passive Objective Genitive



*Frieze from Arch of Trajan at Beneventum: A triumphal procession*

Trahimur omnes laudis studio.  
*We are all led on by our eagerness for praise—CICERO*

—Forms—

### THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE

The present system of the third conjugation forms its passive by adding the passive personal endings to the same bases as in the active except that in the second person singular the inserted vowel is *-e-* instead of *-i-*.

#### PRESENT

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| re'gor   | re'gimur  |
| re'geris | regi'minī |
| re'gitur | regun'tur |

#### IMPERFECT

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| regē'bar, etc. | regēba'mur, etc. |
|----------------|------------------|

#### FUTURE

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| re'gar   | regē'mur  |
| regē'ris | regē'minī |
| regē'tur | regen'tur |

#### PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| re'gere | regi'minī |
|---------|-----------|

The perfect system in the passive is like that of the other conjugations.

#### PERFECT

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| rēc'tus, -a, -um sum, etc. | rēc'tī, -ae, -a su'mus, etc. |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|

#### PLUPERFECT

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| rēc'tus, -a, -um e'ram, etc. | rēc'tī, -ae, -a erā'mus, etc. |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|

#### FUTURE PERFECT

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| rēc'tus, -a, -um e'rō, etc. | rēc'tī, -ae, -a e'rimus, etc. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|

—Syntax—

### THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

The objective genitive is used as if it were the object of a noun or adjective containing some idea of action.

dux cōpiārum, *the leader of the forces* (dūcit cōpiās)  
cūra agrōrum, *care for the fields*  
fuga malōrum, *flight from evils*

—Vocabulary—

antī'quus, -a, -um, *former, ancient, old-fashioned, old*  
clā'rus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; famous*  
fini'timus, -a, -um, *neighboring*  
pau'cī, -ae, -a, *few, a few*  
re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of*  
  
cē'dō, cē'dere, ces'sī, ces'sum, *move; yield, give way*  
cōnsti'tuō, cōstitu'ere, cōnsti'tuī, cōstitū'tum, *set up; decide, determine*  
conten'dō, conten'dere, conten'dī, conten'tum, *strive, struggle; hasten*  
dē'ligō, dēli'gere, dēlē'gī, dēlēc'tum, *choose*  
discē'dō, discē'dere, disces'sī, disces'sum, *go away, depart, leave*  
excē'dō, excē'dere, excēs'sī, excēs'sum, *go out, leave*  
redū'cō, redū'cere, redūx'ī, reduc'tum, *lead back*

—Word Study—

**Antīquus** is rarely used to mean "old." **Virī antīquī** means not "old men" but *men of old* or *old-fashioned men*.

**Reliquus.** The genitive is not used with this adjective. The *of* or *rest of* is part of the meaning of the adjective.

reliquae cōpiae, *the rest of the troops*

**Discēdō.** The prefix **dis-** or **dī-** means *apart, in different directions*. In compounds, **cēdō** generally means *go*, hence it is intransitive.



## — Exercises —

## A. Analyze each form and translate.

1. positus est, reducti sunt
2. cōgēbantur, trāditā sunt
3. dēfendar, vincētur
4. ducta est, dēligitur
5. missi erunt, regar
6. relinqūeris, gestum erat
7. ācta erat, dūcar
8. cōstituētur, cesserant
9. vincimur, cōgentur
10. excessērunt, agēbāris

## B. Translate.

1. they have been set up, we shall be chosen
2. it is being sent, you will be handed over
3. she has been defended, he will be ruled
4. I am left behind, you will be led back
5. it will have been carried on, they have been collected
6. they will be placed, I shall be conquered
7. you have departed, she has stood up
8. he is being driven, we shall not go out
9. they were being led, we have been let go
10. they had yielded, it has been decided

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Ā paucīs mīlitibus ducēs tēlis victi sunt.
2. Et nautae et mīlītēs cum celeritātē Gallōs gladiis vīcērunt.
3. Paucī in auxiliōrum Gallōrum castrīs relictī erant.
4. Nōmina virōrum antiquōrum memoriā tenēmus.\*
5. Caesar ā populō cōsul dēlēctus est.
6. Reliquōs mīlītēs et magna auxilia Caesar ex oppidō ad castra redūxit.
7. Oppida finitima ā nostrīs oppugnāta sunt.
8. Castra nostra ad pontem in īsulā parvā posita erant.
9. Mīsī clārī poētae librum ad meum amīcum.
10. Sī magnā cum audāciā pugnābimus, hostēs vincentur.

## D. Translate.

1. The large wagon was driven to the city by the rest of the boys.
2. After the war the people chose Lucius as king.
3. Stand up, men; the general and his friends are walking toward our camp.
4. The German auxiliaries were being led back through the forest by the brave leader.
5. If we leave the town, we shall hasten to the small farmhouse across the river.
6. The men of old had great care for their fields.
7. Our men have not been

\* **Memoriā teneō** (*I hold by means of memory*), *I remember*.

conquered in battle by the enemy. 8. Our messengers were sent into the town by the lieutenant. 9. The citizens will always remember the ancient battles. 10. In the towns and in the plains we shall fight with great daring against our enemies.

—Reading—

### CINCINNATUS

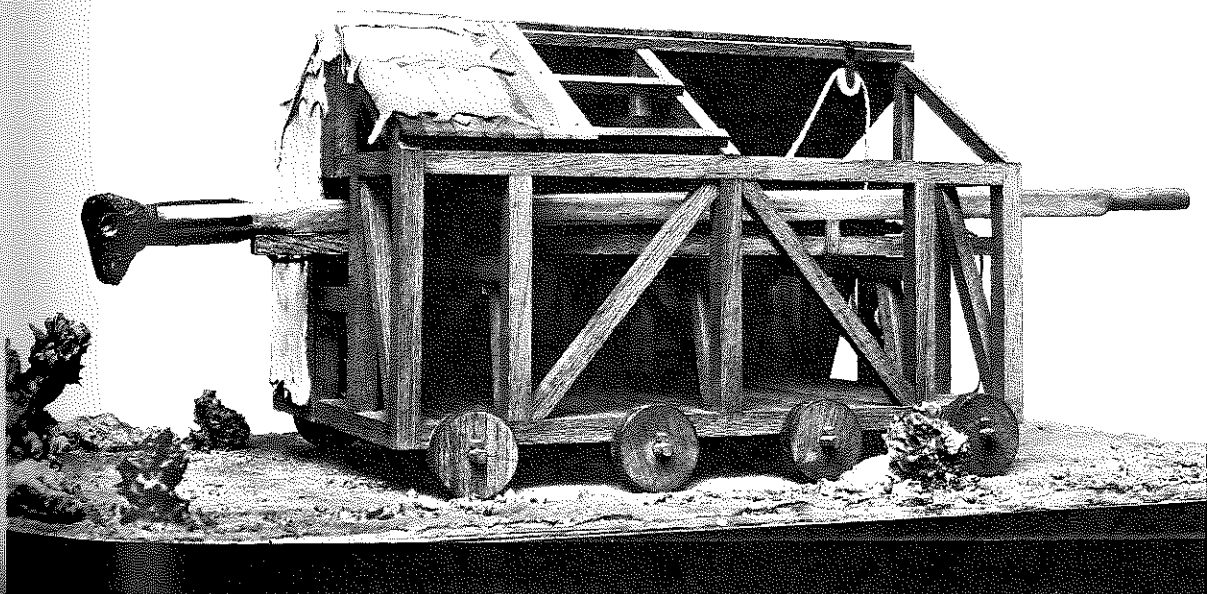
In numerō virōrum Rōmānōrum antiquōrum est Cincinnātus. Ab Rōmānīs nōmen Cincinnātī memoriā semper tenēbātur. Acer dux militum in bellō erat; in pāce agricola bonus. In parvā villā habitābat, et cūrā agrōrum dēlectābātur. Ubi in castrīs nōn erat, vītā in agrīs agēbat.

Rōmānī cum finitimīs bellum gerēbant. Cōsul cum cōpiīs Rōmānīs in montibus miserē labōrābat. Quīnque ex militibus nūntiū ad urbem contendērunt et cīvibus perīculum nūntiāvērunt:

“Sī auxilium ad cōsulem nōn mīseritis, cōsul cum reliquīs cōpiīs vincētur.”

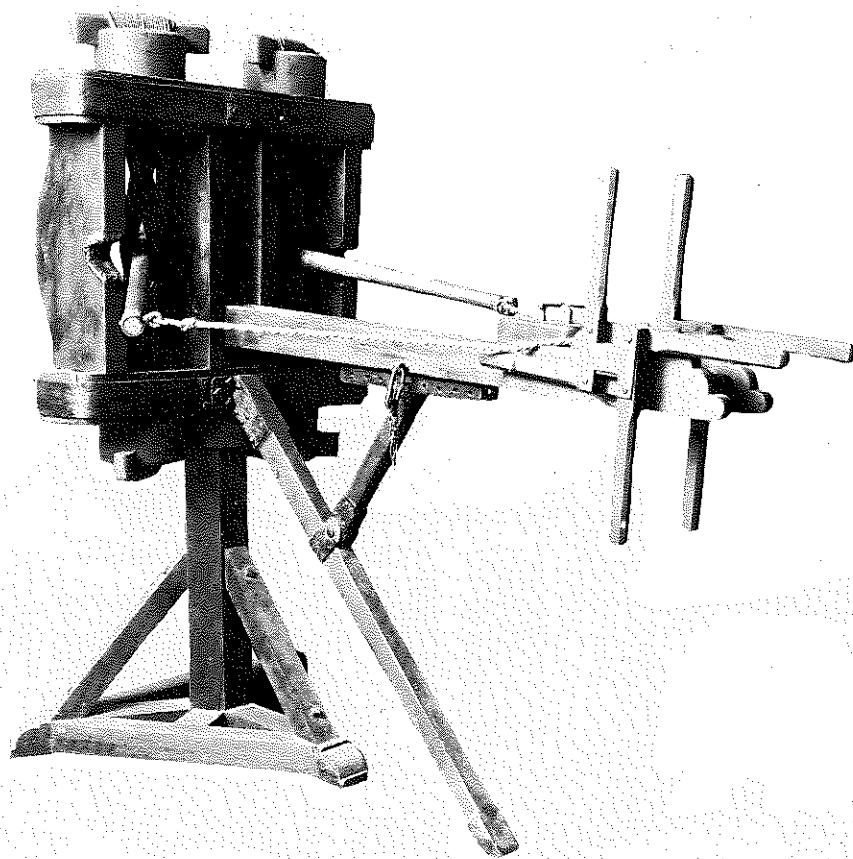
Tum ab cīvibus Cincinnātus dux dēlectus est et cum novīs cōpiīs ex urbe contrā hostēs excessit. Militēs cōsulis servātī sunt; arma ab hostibus sunt trādita. Postea Cincinnātus ad villam in triumphō reductus est.

*Model of a covered battering ram used against fortifications*



24

Third Conjugation,  
I-Stem  
Ablative of Separation



*Model of a catapult, a siege machine worked by torsion for shooting arrows*



Gladiator in arena consilium capit.  
*The gladiator is making his plan in the arena*  
*(i.e., too late).—SENECA*

—Forms —

### I-Stem Verbs of the Third Conjugation

A few important verbs of the third conjugation have present stems ending in **i**; the **i** does not appear in the other two stems. If you will remember that in the third conjugation the present stem is found by dropping the **-ō** from the first principal part you will have no trouble distinguishing **i**-stem verbs from the others. With both **regō, regere** and **capiō, capere** the **-ere** tells you that the verbs belong to the third conjugation; the first principal parts tell you that **capiō** is an **i**-stem and that **regō** is not. In the conjugation of an **i**-stem verb, the **i** of the stem is changed to **e** in the second principal part, the present passive indicative second person singular, and in the present active and passive imperative second person singular.

| ACTIVE               |                      | PASSIVE              |                        |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| PRESENT INDICATIVE   |                      |                      |                        |
| ca'pio               | ca'pimus             | ca'pior              | ca'pimur               |
| ca'pis               | ca'pitis             | ca'peris             | capi'minī              |
| ca'pit               | ca'piunt             | ca'pitur             | capiunt'tur            |
| IMPERFECT INDICATIVE |                      |                      |                        |
| capiē'bam,<br>etc.   | capiēbā'mus,<br>etc. | capiē'bar,<br>etc.   | capiēbā'mur,<br>etc.   |
| FUTURE INDICATIVE    |                      |                      |                        |
| ca'piam              | capiē'mus            | ca'piar              | capiē'mur              |
| ca'piēs              | capiē'tis            | capiē'ris            | capiē'minī             |
| ca'piet              | ca'pient             | capiē'tur            | capien'tur             |
| PERFECT INDICATIVE   |                      |                      |                        |
| cē'pī,<br>etc.       | cē'pimus,<br>etc.    | cap'tus sum,<br>etc. | cap'tī su'mus,<br>etc. |

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

|                   |                     |                        |                         |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| cē'peram,<br>etc. | cēperā'mus,<br>etc. | cap'tus e'ram,<br>etc. | cap'ti erā'mus,<br>etc. |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

|                  |                     |                       |                         |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| cē'perō,<br>etc. | cēpe'rimus,<br>etc. | cap'tus e'rō,<br>etc. | cap'ti e'rimus,<br>etc. |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

|       |         |          |         |           |              |
|-------|---------|----------|---------|-----------|--------------|
| ca'pe | ca'pite | capture! | ca'pere | capi'minī | be captured! |
|-------|---------|----------|---------|-----------|--------------|



## —Syntax—

## ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Separation, when no motion is implied, is expressed by the ablative with **a, ab**, or without a preposition. The preposition is generally used with persons and concrete nouns, and omitted before abstract nouns.

Dēfendimur ā finitimīs Gallīs. We are defended from the neighboring Gauls.  
Cōnsulem omnī cūrā liberābitis. You will free the consul from all care.

## —Vocabulary—

acci'piō, acci'pere, accē'pī, accep'tum, *receive, accept*  
ca'piō, ca'pere, cē'pī, cap'tum, *take, capture*  
cōnfi'ciō, cōnfi'cere, cōnfē'cī, cōnfe'ctum, *accomplish, finish*  
coni'ciō, coni'cere, coniē'cī, coniec'tum, *hurl; throw together*  
cu'piō, cu'pere, cupī'vī, cupī'tum, *wish, want, desire*  
fa'ciō, fa'cere, fē'cī, fac'tum, *make, do*  
fu'giō, fu'gere, fū'gī, fu'gitum, *flee, flee from*  
ia'ciō, ia'cere, iē'cī, iac'tum, *throw*  
inci'piō, inci'pere, incē'pī, incept'tum, *begin*  
interfi'ciō, interfi'cere, interfē'ci, interfec'tum, *kill*

—Word Study—

**Compounds.** Remembering prefixes, you should have no trouble with the meanings of the compound verbs in this lesson.

accipiō = ad- + capiō, take to oneself = receive, accept  
 incipiō = in- + capiō, take on = begin  
 cōficiō = cōn- + faciō, do completely = accomplish, finish  
 interficiō = inter- + faciō, make into pieces, destroy = kill  
 coniciō = con- + iaciō, throw together, throw forcibly = hurl

**Fac.** The present active imperative singular of **faciō** is **fac** (as that of **dūcō** is **dūc**).

**Fugiō** may be used either transitively or intransitively.

Hostēs fugiunt. The enemy are fleeing.  
 Hostēs fugiunt nostrōs. The enemy are fleeing from our men.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. capientur, accipiet 2. cōfēcimus, incipiam 3. cupīvistis, coniciēbātis 4. interfēcerat, fēcimus 5. fugient, iacta sunt 6. interficiēbam, acceptī erant 7. facta erunt, cōficiunt 8. incipitur, fugimus 9. cupīverās, coniciēbās 10. cēpit, iactum erat

B. Translate.

1. we shall accomplish, he was beginning 2. they have fled, they desire 3. it has been hurled, they will take 4. we have received, I shall make 5. they were throwing, you are killing 6. it will be thrown, it has been finished 7. they will have thrown together, I shall have begun 8. we were capturing, you will be killed 9. we want, he has accepted 10. we do, he killed

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Sī cōnsilium cēperimus,\* bellum diū nōn gerētur. 2. Quod Germānī nostrōs semper fugiēbant, iter in Germāniam

\*cōnsilium capere, to form (or make) a plan



fēcimus.\* 3. Hodiē, milītēs, prohibēte Gallōs castrīs nostrīs. 4. Populus Rōmānus ducēs cōsulēs appellābat. 5. Magnā cūrā liberābimur sī milītēs nostram urbem ab hostibus dēfenderint. 6. Cīvēs Rōmānī clārae victōriae memoriā servāvērunt. 7. Gallī tēla coniciēbant et nostrī multa vulnera accēpērunt. 8. Iūlius Caesar, nostrārū cōpiārū dux, imperātor factus est. 9. Aut hostium oppidum capiēmus aut ab hostibus interficiēmur. 10. Sī labōrābimus magnā cum dīligentiā multum cōficiēmus.

D. Translate.

1. If we make a good plan, our sailors will capture many ships.
2. The leaders of the Roman people were called consuls.
3. Men of Rome, shall we make Lucius our king?
4. The queen, because she was good, received many beautiful gifts from the grateful people.
5. Leave the forest, boys, and you will free me from great care.
6. We hurled many weapons and kept the enemy from our town.
7. Two boys and five girls were sitting on chairs near the large table.
8. A thousand soldiers and a hundred auxiliary troops were marching from Italy to Gaul.
9. The neighboring tribes are both savage and hostile, but we shall defend our city from the dangers of war.
10. A few bad boys were throwing books through the teacher's window.

—Reading—

**PYRRHUS AND FABRICIUS**

Rōmānī cum Pyrrho, rēge Epīrī, bellum gerēbant. Ab rēge multis proeliis victī sunt. Multī milītēs Rōmānī captī sunt. Rōmānī captīvōs ā Pyrrhō liberāre cupiēbant et ad rēgem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Ūnus ex lēgātīs fuit Fabricius, vir bonus et in bellō fortis; clārū erat Fabricī nōmen, sed vir nōn magnam pecūniam habuit. Pyrrhus Fabricium benignē accēpit; fāma ducis Rōmānī rēgem dēlectāvit.

"Fabricī," inquit (*says*) Pyrrhus, "sī pacem cum meā patriā faciēs, pecūniam accipiēs; captīvōs liberābō et meōs milītēs ab iniūriā prohibēbō. Eris socius meus."

Sed Fabricius patriam, nōn pecūniam, amābat. Respondit, "Sī, Pyrrhe, tua dona accēperō, meam amicitiam nōn cupiēs. Et Rōmānī et tuī magnō cum honōre bellum cōficient. Tum amicī erimus."

\**iter facere, to make a march, to march*

Rident stolidi verba Latina.  
*Fools laugh at the Latin language.*—OVID

## REVIEW 6 (LESSONS 21-24)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

- A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

cēna    fenestra    iniūria    mēnsa    pugna    sella    victōria

- B. Give the other nominative forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives.

antīquus    clārus    finitimus    paucī    reliquus

- C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|          |          |            |          |
|----------|----------|------------|----------|
| accipiō  | contendō | faciō      | pōnō     |
| agō      | cupiō    | fugiō      | redūcō   |
| capiō    | dēfendō  | gerō       | regō     |
| cēdō     | dēligō   | iaciō      | relinquō |
| cōgō     | discēdō  | incipiō    | surgō    |
| cōficiō  | dūcō     | interficiō | trādō    |
| coniciō  | excēdō   | mittō      | vincō    |
| cōstituō |          |            |          |

- D. Give the meanings of the following conjunctions.

atque    aut    quod    sī

### —Drill on Forms—

- A. Give the following forms.

1. *vocative singular*: Graecia, clārus, victōria
2. *genitive singular*: reliqua, sella, antīquum
3. *dative singular*: Trōia, Sicilia, iniūria
4. *genitive plural*: fenestra, trēs, septem
5. *accusative plural*: pugna, finitimum, pauca

B. Give a synopsis in all tenses, indicative and (where applicable) imperative, of:

1. interficiō in the first person singular, active voice
2. mittō in the second person singular, passive voice
3. faciō in the third person singular, active voice
4. accipiō in the first person plural, passive voice
5. pōnō in the second person plural, active voice
6. agō in the third person plural, passive voice

—Drill on Syntax —

Translate the words in italics, giving the reason for each case.

1. He was freed *from all care*.
2. He defended his daughter *from the danger*.
3. I gave the book to my son *Marcus*.
4. We freed the captives *from the soldiers*.
5. We have preserved the memory *of the great battle*.
6. They kept the enemy *from the town*.
7. *Julius, our consul*, was in the city.
8. Caesar was the leader *of the forces*.

—Exercises —

A. Translate.

1. Omnēs Germānī ē nostrā urbe Rōmā excēdent.
2. Rēx ā bonīs servīs dēfendēbātur.
3. Sī tēla hostiū nostrīs ducibus trādita erunt, pācem diū habēbimus.
4. Cōpiaē hostiū tēlis nostrōrum militū vulnerātae sunt.
5. Quod rēgīna per portam ambulāverat, cīvēs surrēxērunt.
6. Ad ignem sedēbāmus, et pater fābulam dē bellō nārrābat.
7. Ubi nūntiū dē periculō bellī accēpimus, iter per magnam silvam in Germāniam fēcimus.
8. Trēs puerōs, Mārce, cum tuō amīcō et quinque puellās vīdī.
9. Magnā cum dīligentiā Gallōs inimīcōs ab nostrīs castrīs prohibēbāmus.
10. Caesaris clārās victōriās memoriā semper tenēbimus.

B. Translate.

1. Our men pitched camp yesterday; today they will break camp and march with great speed to Gaul.
2. If Marcus leaves the city



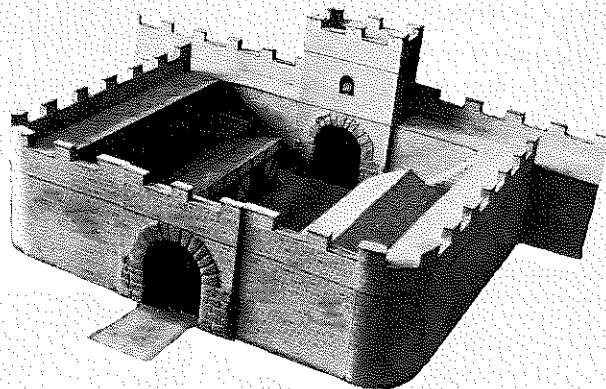
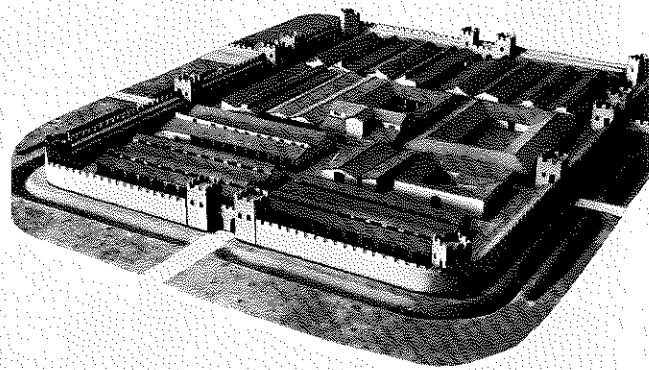
tomorrow he will not receive the king's gift. 3. Weapons were being hurled toward our town by a thousand soldiers of the enemy. 4. We shall pitch camp tomorrow; then we shall defend our city from the enemy with arms. 5. The king had ruled the people for a long time, and he was loved by everyone in the kingdom. 6. Caesar, our leader, has been made consul by the Roman people. 7. Before the battle the soldiers were preparing the weapons. 8. He has sent many letters to the commander in Gaul, but the commander has not replied. 9. Julia, my sister, wants aid from the queen of the city. 10. The boys and girls wanted either a large dinner or many gifts.

*The emperor Hadrian built an elaborate series of fortifications across the north of England to protect the fertile midlands from raiding Picts of Scotland.*



# 25

## Demonstratives Is, Hic, Ille Ablatives of Time



*Models of milecastle and cavalry fort on Hadrian's Wall*

Inhumanitas omni aetate molesta est.  
*Inhumanity is harmful in every age.* — CICERO

—Forms—

DEMONSTRATIVES

The demonstratives point out a person or an object. They are used either as adjectives or pronouns. As adjectives they agree with and modify nouns: **is puer**, *that boy*. As pronouns they are used alone: **videō eum**, *I see him*. The most common demonstrative adjectives are **is**, *this*, **that**, **hic**, *this*, and **ille**, *that*.

|      | SINGULAR |         |         | PLURAL   |          |          |
|------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | M.       | F.      | N.      | M.       | F.       | N.       |
| NOM. | is       | e'a     | id      | e'ī      | e'ae     | e'a      |
| GEN. | e'ius    | e'ius   | e'ius   | eō'rum   | eā'rum   | eō'rum   |
| DAT. | e'ī      | e'ī     | e'ī     | e'īs     | e'īs     | e'īs     |
| ACC. | e'um     | e'am    | id      | e'ōs     | e'ās     | e'a      |
| ABL. | e'ō      | e'ā     | e'ō     | e'īs     | e'īs     | e'īs     |
| NOM. | hic      | haec    | hoc     | hī       | hae      | haec     |
| GEN. | hu'ius   | hu'ius  | hu'ius  | hō'rum   | hā'rum   | hō'rum   |
| DAT. | huic     | huic    | huic    | hīs      | hīs      | hīs      |
| ACC. | hunc     | hanc    | hoc     | hōs      | hās      | haec     |
| ABL. | hōc      | hāc     | hōc     | hīs      | hīs      | hīs      |
| NOM. | il'le    | il'la   | il'lud  | il'li    | il'lae   | il'la    |
| GEN. | illī'us  | illī'us | illī'us | illō'rum | illā'rum | illō'rum |
| DAT. | il'li    | il'li   | il'li   | il'lis   | il'lis   | il'lis   |
| ACC. | il'lum   | il'lam  | il'lud  | il'lōs   | il'lās   | il'la    |
| ABL. | il'lō    | il'lā   | il'lō   | il'lis   | il'lis   | il'lis   |

—Syntax—

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

The time when an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Tertiā hōrā ē castris excessērunt.    *They left camp at the third hour.*



### ABLATIVE OF TIME WITHIN WHICH

The time within which an action occurs is also expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*Tribus annīs ad Āfricam nāvīgābimus.*

*We shall sail to Africa within three years.*

*Multa oppida ūnō annō capta sunt.*

*Many towns were taken in one year.*

### — Vocabulary —

*e'ques, e'quitis, m., horseman,  
knight; pl., cavalry*

*pe'des, pe'ditis, m., foot soldier;  
pl., infantry*

*is, e'a, id, this, that; he, she, it  
hic, haec, hoc, this; the latter  
il'le, il'la, il'lud, that; the former*

*bi'bō, bi'bere, bi'bī, —, drink  
cur'rō, -ere, cucur'rī, cur'sum,  
run*

*dī'cō, -ere, dīx'ī, dic'tum, say,  
tell*

*e'dō, -ere, ē'dī, ē'sum, eat  
pe'tō, -ere, petī'vī, petī'tum,  
seek; beg, ask; attack; aim at*

*scrī'bō, -ere, scrip'sī, scrip'tum,  
write*

*ō'lim, (adv.) formerly, once upon a  
time; some day*

### — Word Study —

**Eques, knight.** The word for horseman or cavalryman may also designate a knight, a member of the wealthy business class among the Romans. In primitive times the title had been given to a man wealthy enough to provide himself with a horse for battle but by the classical period the knights had little connection with horses.

**Is, hic, ille.** The demonstrative adjectives **hic** and **ille** point out the position of the words they modify as present or near the speaker (**hic**), or absent or more remote from the speaker (**ille**).

**Hic** and **ille** may also be used to mean *the latter* and *the former* respectively.

**Is** does not suggest any specific location, but merely indicates that the noun it modifies has already been mentioned or is to be defined.

*Hoc oppidum magnum, illud parvum est.*

*This town (here) is large; that one (there) is small.*

Oppidum Gallōrum vīdī; id oppidum parvum erat.

*I saw a town of the Gauls; this (or that) town was small.*

**Dīcō.** The present active imperative singular of **dīcō** is **dīc** (like **dūc** and **fac** it lacks the final **e**).

— *Exercises* —

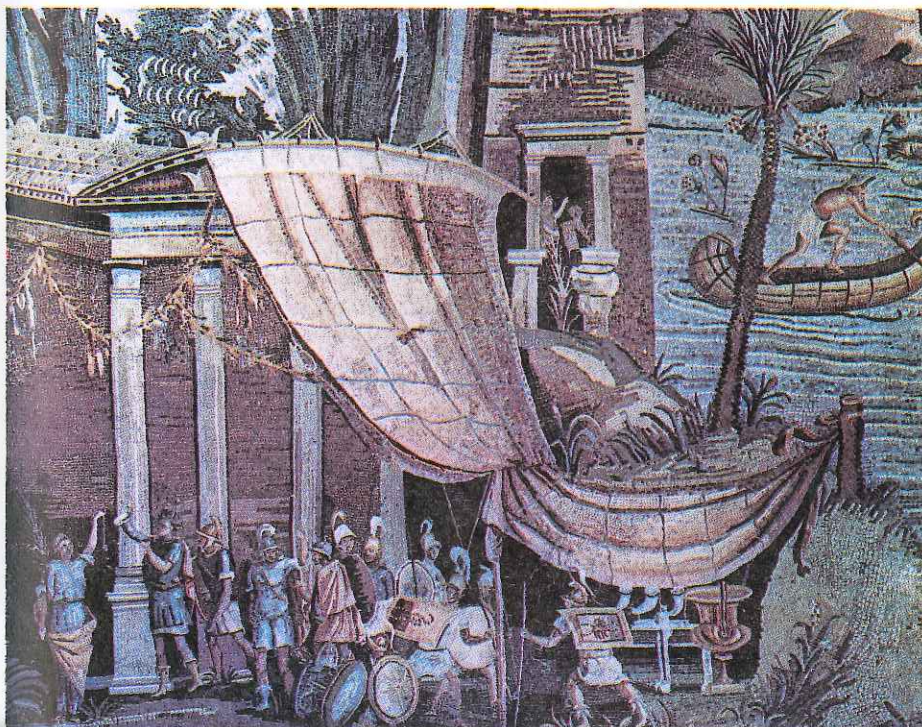
A. Give the case and translate.

1. huius peditis 2. illius cēnae 3. hārum iniūriārum 4. eae pugnae 5. cum eō equite 6. ab eīs cōsulibus 7. ad illās fenestrās 8. sub illō ponte 9. ad haec flūmina 10. quintō annō

B. Translate.

1. this table 2. of that victory 3. with these tribes 4. to that mountain 5. on this bridge 6. by means of these names 7. this light 8. by this horseman 9. of these voices 10. within three years

*Mosaic of a Nile scene, Palestrina*



## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Agricolae filia cēnam in mēnsā ad fenestram posuit. 2. Parvum animal in silvā equitēs fugiēbat. 3. Patriam nostram magnā cum audāciā dēfendēmus. 4. Eī equī magnā cum celeritāte ex agrō in viam currēbant. 5. Quīnque annīs ille rēx bonus servōs miserōs liberāverit. 6. Ōlim nostrī multīs proeliīs equitēs hostium vincēbant. 7. Mittite hās epistulās ad vestrōs amīcōs; mox respondēbunt. 8. Illā aestāte peditēs Rōmānī cum illīs hostibus diū pugnāverant. 9. Hae sellae sunt magnae, illae parvae. 10. Cīvēs huius oppidī Germānōs peditēs cēperant et ad castra dūcēbant.

## D. Translate.

1. The commander left the infantry in the camp and led the cavalry into battle. 2. In summer we shall send our sons to Italy. 3. The enemy surrendered (its) arms to our infantry at the seventh hour. 4. Much bread was eaten by the wretched captives in the Roman camp. 5. These boys were running down from the mountain at the tenth hour. 6. Our infantry and cavalry waged war with a powerful enemy in Spain. 7. This little girl is writing a letter to (her) brother. 8. The enemy's cavalry attacked our infantry with (their) weapons. 9. These wretched boys are seeking bread, but those girls have given them water. 10. Did that horseman say many things to the lieutenant?

## —Reading—

## BAUCIS AND PHILEMON

Ōlim Iuppiter et Mercurius in Phrygiā iter faciēbant. Nōn deī vidēbantur (*seemed*), sed hominēs. Nox aderat. Hī deī longō itinere dēfessī erant. Cibus vīnumque ab multīs petēbant, sed omnēs inimīcī erant. Tum parvam villam in colle vidērunt. Hōc tempore in hāc villā habitābant bonus vir Philēmon et bona fēmina Baucis. Erant veterēs et liberōs nōn habēbant. Inopiā magnā labōrābant, sed deōs amābant. Magnā cum amīciā deōs recēpērunt, sellās posuērunt, et cēnam parāvērunt. Deī liberē grātēque ēdērunt et bibērunt.

Post cēnam Iuppiter virō fēminaeque, "Sum," inquit, "Iuppiter. Multa dōna dabō. Omnēs bonōs fēlicēs faciam."

Finem potentia deōrum nōn habet.



# 26

## Personal Pronouns



*Dancers—Tomb of Triclinium, Tarquinia*



Vos vestros servate, meos mihi linquite mores.  
*You cling to your own ways and leave mine to me.*—PETRARCH

—Forms—

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

The First Person Pronouns are **ego**, *I*, and **nōs**, *we*.

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL            |
|-------------|----------|-------------------|
| NOMINATIVE: | e'go     | nōs               |
| GENITIVE:   | me'ī     | nos'trī, nos'trum |
| DATIVE:     | mi'hi    | nō'bīs            |
| ACCUSATIVE: | mē       | nōs               |
| ABLATIVE:   | mē       | nō'bīs            |

The Second Person Pronouns are **tū**, *you (s.)*, and **vōs**, *you (pl.)*.

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL            |
|-------------|----------|-------------------|
| NOMINATIVE: | tu       | vōs               |
| GENITIVE:   | tu'ī     | ves'trī, ves'trum |
| DATIVE:     | ti'bi    | vō'bīs            |
| ACCUSATIVE: | tē       | vōs               |
| ABLATIVE:   | tē       | vō'bīs            |

**The Third Person.** Latin has no personal pronoun for the third person, *he, she, it, they*. It is usually provided for by the demonstrative pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id**.

**Hic** or **ille** may be used as a personal pronoun when specific location is indicated.

Id factum est ab hōc, non ab illā.  
*This was done by him (this man here), not by her (that woman there).*

—Syntax—

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

We call the noun for which a pronoun stands its antecedent. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.

Sī erit pānis in mēnsā, eum edēmus; sī aqua, eam bibēmus.

*If there is bread on the table, we shall eat it; if there is water, we shall drink it.*

The genitive of the personal pronouns is not used to indicate possession; instead we use the possessive adjectives **meus**, **noster**, **tuus**, **vester**. The genitives **meī**, **nostrī**, **tuī**, and **vestrī** are used as objective genitives (see Lesson 23): **timor vester**, *your fear*, **timor vestrī**, *the fear of you*.

You will learn the use of the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** in Lesson 29.

When first and second person pronouns are used in the ablative of accompaniment, the **cum** is placed after the pronoun and the two are written as one word: **mēcum**, **nōbīscum**, **tēcum**, **vōbīscum**.

*Vōbīscum ambulābimus. We shall walk with you.*

### — Vocabulary —

|                                                                           |                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| auctō'ritās, -tā'tis, f., <i>authority,</i><br><i>influence, prestige</i> | la'pis, la'pidis, m., <i>stone</i>                        |
| a'vis, a'vis, f., <i>bird</i>                                             | le'giō, legiō'nis, f., <i>legion</i>                      |
| ca'nis, ca'nis, m. or f., <i>dog</i>                                      | līber'tās, -tā'tis, f., <i>freedom,</i><br><i>liberty</i> |
| clā'mor, clāmō'ris, m., <i>shout,</i><br><i>noise</i>                     | nox, noc'tis, f., <i>night</i>                            |
| iū'dex, iū'dicis, m., <i>juror, judge</i>                                 | prīn'ceps, prīn'cipis, m., <i>chief</i>                   |
|                                                                           | ti'mor, timō'ris, m., <i>fear</i>                         |

### — Word Study —

**Canis** is not an **i**-stem. It is an exception to the rule that masculine and feminine third declension nouns which have the same form in the nominative and genitive singular are **i**-stems.

**Clāmōr**, **timor**. The suffix **-or**, **-ōris**, **m.** on a word-root gives us the name of an action or quality. Thus the noun **clāmōr** is the name of the action of the verb **clāmō**, **timor** the name of the action of the verb **timeō**. Other such nouns derived from roots you have learned are:

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| amor, amōris, m.,     | <i>love</i>           |
| terror, terrōris, m., | <i>fright, terror</i> |

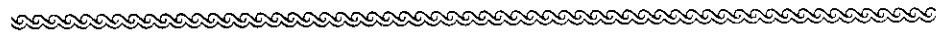
**Legiō**. The legion was a Roman military unit. Its enrollment varied from 4,200 to 6,000 men during the classical period.



## —Exercises—

## A. Translate the italicized words.

1. Ad urbem *mēcum* ambulābant. 2. Librum *eīs* dedit. 3. *Cum eīs* ambulābō. 4. *Mē et tē* vīdit. 5. *Ego tibi* dōnum dabō. 6. *Vōbiscum* currēbat. 7. *Id vōbīs* dedērunt. 8. *Tē et illum* ad oppidum dūcam. 9. *Eōrum* princeps *vōs* dūcēbat. 10. *Huius amīcī* nāvigābant.



In English, politeness requires that we put the first person after the second and third. In Latin the first person precedes the second and the second precedes the third.

Ego et tū ambulābāmus. *You and I were walking.*

Ego et hic ad insulam nāvigāmus.

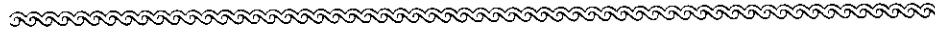
*He and I are sailing to the island.*

Tū et ille cucurrerātis. *You and he had run.*

Haec mihi et tibi et eī dant.

*They give these things to you, him, and me.*

Notice also the agreement of the verbs in person and number.



## B. Translate the italicized words.

1. He was walking *with her*. 2. Give the book *to me*. 3. I gave the money *to him*. 4. He saw *you and us*. 5. *He and I* can go *with you (sing.)*. 6. *Their* friends came *with us*. 7. *His* horse ran toward *me*. 8. *You and I* looked at *him*. 9. We were seen *by them*. 10. I gave *it to you (pl.)*.

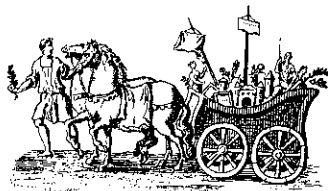
## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Eius frāter mihi pecūniam dabit. 2. Clāmor equitum mē et meam sorōrem terrēbat. 3. Prīnceps legiōnem octāvam cum multis equitibus ad haec castra dūxit. 4. Illae puellae ad flūmen nōbiscum ambulābunt. 5. Eōrum equī in nostrōs agrōs cucurrerant. 6. Mihi, domine, libertātem dā; servus miser sum. 7. Iūdicis amīcī tē et tuōs frātrēs vocābant. 8. Caesaris auctōritās

cīvēs nostrōs cōfirmāvit. 9. Illā nocte noster prīnceps legiōnem ad hunc montem dūxit. 10. Prīnceps mē vīdit et mihi hunc gladium dedit.

D. Translate.

1. At night many fires were seen on that high mountain. 2. He had written a letter to her but he did not send it. 3. Within five years you and I will see many Spanish chiefs in our country. 4. Many white birds were flying towards that small island. 5. His sister gave me bread, but I gave her a stone. 6. The enemy will surrender to us (their) arms and horses. 7. The judge was walking with my father and my mother. 8. A dog was given to Marcus's sister, and she gave it to me. 9. Lucius, run with me to the camp of the Tenth Legion. 10. That black dog was drinking water under the boy's chair.



—Reading—

### THE BOY AND THE APPLES

Erat in agrō arbor; in eā pōma multa erant. Puer pōma vīdit. Prīmā lūce in arborem ascendit et duo pōma ab arbore edēbat. Sed agricola, quī puerum vīderat, magnum canem in agrum dūxit.

Tum puer perterritus est et magnō clāmōre locum complēvit; sed nōn erat auxilium. Agricola appropinquāvit et puerum ita monuit: "Pōma nōn tua sunt. Cūr pōma aliēna ab arbore removēbās? Nōn aequum erat. Fūr es, et canis fūrēs mordēbit. Cūr nōn es bonus puer?" Tum puer exclāmat: "Numquam iterum fūr erō. Nunc canem ex agrō ēdūc."

Agricola rīsit et canem abdūxit. Puer incolumis relictus est, et pōma nōn iam\* ēdit. Bonum cōsiliū agricolae memoriā tenuit neque postea ab arbore eius pōma amōvit.

\* **Iam** with a negative means *longer*: **nōn iam**, *no longer*

## Relative Pronoun



*Mosaic of actors dressing, Pompeii*



Non omnes qui habent citharam sunt citharoedi.  
*Not all those who own a musical instrument are musicians.*—VARRO

—Forms—

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN—*quī, quae, quod, who, which*

|      | SINGULAR |        |          | PLURAL  |         |           |
|------|----------|--------|----------|---------|---------|-----------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.   | NEUT.    | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.     |
| NOM. | quī      | quae   | quod ✓   | quī     | quae    | quae ✓    |
| GEN. | cu'ius   | cu'ius | cu'ius ✓ | quō'rum | quā'rum | quō'rum ✓ |
| DAT. | cui      | cui    | cui ✓    | qui'bus | qui'bus | qui'bus ✓ |
| ACC. | quem     | quam   | quod ✓   | quōs    | quās    | quae ✓    |
| ABL. | quō      | quā    | quō ✓    | qui'bus | qui'bus | qui'bus ✓ |

—Syntax—

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

Virum quī aderat vīdī. *I saw the man who was present.*

Porta quam vidēs lāta est. *The gate which you see is wide.*

Fēminae sunt quās dēlēgit. *They are the women whom he chose.*

Ego quī haec vōbīs dīcō sum vester rēx.

*I who say these things to you am your king.*

Notice that **quī** in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **virum**, but it is *nominative* as subject of the verb **aderat**. In the second example **quam** is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with **porta**, but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb **vidēs**.

In the ablative of accompaniment the **cum** is usually attached to the relative, **quōcum, quācum, quibuscum**.

### The translation of the relative pronoun

|             |                        |                                             |
|-------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| NOMINATIVE: | MASCULINE AND FEMININE | <i>who</i>                                  |
|             | NEUTER                 | <i>which</i>                                |
| GENITIVE:   | MASCULINE AND FEMININE | <i>whose, of whom</i>                       |
|             | NEUTER                 | <i>of which</i>                             |
| DATIVE:     | MASCULINE AND FEMININE | <i>to whom</i>                              |
|             | NEUTER                 | <i>to which</i>                             |
| ACCUSATIVE: | MASCULINE AND FEMININE | <i>whom</i>                                 |
|             | NEUTER                 | <i>which</i>                                |
| ABLATIVE:   | MASCULINE AND FEMININE | <i>from, by, or with, whom</i>              |
|             | NEUTER                 | <i>in, on, at, from, by, or with, which</i> |

A clause introduced by a relative pronoun is called a relative clause. A third person pronoun antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted in Latin.

Quī auxilium dat vērū est amīcus. *He who gives help is a true friend.*

### —Vocabulary—

cī'vitās, -tā'tis, f., *citizenship, citizenry, state*  
 ho'mō, ho'minis, m., *man, human being*  
 hor'tus, -ī, m., *garden*  
 la'bor, labō'ris, m., *difficulty, hardship; work*

lēx, lē'gis, f., *law*  
 multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f., *great number, crowd*  
 pars, par'tis, f., *part, direction*  
 pēs, pe'dis, m., *foot*  
 vir'tūs, virtū'tis, f., *manliness, bravery, courage*

*Musicians, Tomb of the Leopards, Tarquinia*



—Word Study—

**Homō, vir.** **Homō** means *man* as opposed to animals or inanimate objects; **vir** means *man* as opposed to woman.

*Animālia fera sunt sed hominēs sunt fortēs.*

*Animals are fierce, but men are brave.*

*Virī proelia amāvērunt, fēminae timuērunt.*

*The men loved battles; the women feared them.*

**Vir** may also mean *hero*.

*Virī antiquī vēram virtūtem habēbant.*

*The heroes of old used to have real courage.*

—Exercises—

**A.** Translate the italicized words.

1. Tū, *quī amās* . . .
2. Frāter imperātōris *quem vīdī* . . .
3. Flūmen, *quod est lātum* . . .
4. Mīlitēs *quibus victōriam nūntiāvī* . . .
5. Nautae, *quōrum nāvēs erant* . . .
6. Animālia, *quae sedēbant* . . .
7. Eques *ā quō pedes vulnerātus est* . . .
8. Fēminae *quās spectāvī* . . .
9. Peditēs *quibuscum discēdēbāmus* . . .
10. Mea filia, *cui dedī* . . .

**B.** Translate the italicized words.

1. This is a town *in which* many people . . .
2. I, *who am* your sister . . .
3. I see some girls *who are* . . .
4. Give back the money *which* you took.
5. He was killed by a man *whose friends* were . . .
6. He spoke to the messengers *with whom* you were leaving.
7. We captured a city *which is* in . . .
8. The farmers *whom* we saw . . .
9. The women *to whom* I gave . . .
10. I know a boy *whose name is* . . .

**C.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Eōs mīlitēs vīdī quī in magnō bellō pugnāverant.
2. Gravia erant ea tēla quae portābāmus.
3. Quī magnam virtūtem habet vir est vērē.
4. Ea legiō quae ā Mārcō ducta est bene pugnāvit.
5. Ubi sunt puellae fēminaeque quibuscum ambulābās?
6. Vōbīs



quī cīvēs Rōmānī estis multa dē cīvitātis lēgibus cōsul dīcet.  
 7. Caesar, cuius cōpiae ab Italiā discessērunt, nunc est in Galliā.  
 8. Militēs ā quibus castra dēfēsa sunt cum virtūte pugnāvērunt.  
 9. Dux cui perīculum nūntiātum est ad castra currit. 10. Legiōnem  
 ad flūmen quod in prōvinciā est dūxit.

D. Translate.

1. The man whom you sent to the general has reported the victory. 2. I saw those slaves who had been led to the city. 3. The people whose courage you praised are now citizens. 4. You who live in farmhouses do not like the life of the city. 5. Those rivers which you were looking at in Gaul are wide and deep. 6. In Helvetia I have seen a large city in which many people live. 7. He who is not my friend is my enemy. 8. I sent my friend the books which I had written. 9. Behind the farmhouse there was a large garden, in which the farmer and (his) sons were working. 10. Did you see the men to whom I gave the money?

—Reading—

THE KING'S STORYTELLER

Servus rēgis antīquī omnī nocte quīnque fābulās dominō narrābat. Ūnā nocte rēx magnā cūrā mōtus est; etiam post octō fābulās nōn requiēvit. Itaque rūrsus petīvit octō fābulās, id quod servum nōn dēlectāvit. "Quod cupīvistī, domine, iam factum est."

Respondit rēx, "Fābulae quās mihi narrāvistī erant multae sed brēvēs. Longam cupiō fābulam quae multa verba habet."

Servus tum incēpit: "Ōlim erat agricola quī magnam pecūniam habēbat. In oppidō pecūniam virō dedit et accēpit centum ovēs. Dum ea animālia redūcit, appropinquat ad flūmen sine pontibus in quō est eō diē magna aquae cōpia; itaque modum nōn videt quō ovēs per aquam aget. Tandem vidit scapham, in quā ab agricolā duo animālia posita et portāta sunt."

Ubi haec verba dīxit, tacuit servus. Eum rēx hōc modō obsecrāvit: "Dīc mihi reliquam fābulam tuam."

Respondit ille, "Flūmen et altum et lātum, scapha parva est, atque sunt multa animālia. Sī dūxerit hic agricola omnia animālia trāns flūmen, fābulam quam incēpī ad finem dūcam."



# 28

## Interrogative Pronoun Interrogative Adjective



Mosaic—Roman tragic masks, Gregorian Museum, Vatican, Rome

Quid rides? . . . De te fabula narratur.  
*What are you laughing at? The joke's on you.*—HORACE

—Forms—

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

|             |        | SINGULAR               |  |        |
|-------------|--------|------------------------|--|--------|
|             |        | MASCULINE AND FEMININE |  | NEUTER |
| NOMINATIVE: | quis   |                        |  | quid   |
| GENITIVE:   | cu'ius |                        |  | cu'ius |
| DATIVE:     | cui    |                        |  | cui    |
| ACCUSATIVE: | quem   |                        |  | quid   |
| ABLATIVE:   | quō    |                        |  | quō    |

|             |         | PLURAL    |          |         |
|-------------|---------|-----------|----------|---------|
|             |         | MASCULINE | FEMININE | NEUTER  |
| NOMINATIVE: | quī     |           | quae     | quae    |
| GENITIVE:   | quō'rum |           | quā'rum  | quō'rum |
| DATIVE:     | quī'bus |           | quī'bus  | quī'bus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | quōs    |           | quās     | quae    |
| ABLATIVE:   | quī'bus |           | quī'bus  | quī'bus |

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

**Quī, quae, quod** meaning *which?, what?* followed by a noun, is declined exactly like the relative pronoun.

—Syntax—

USE OF THE INTERROGATIVE

The interrogative pronoun is used to ask questions, either direct or indirect. The English equivalents are as follows: NOM., *who? what?* GEN., *whose? of whom?* DAT., *to or for whom?* ACC., *whom? what?* ABL., *by or with whom? or in, on, at, by, or with what?* The singular and plural are the same in English. *Who saw . . . ?* in Latin can be **Quis vidit?** or **Quī vidērunt?**



—Vocabulary—

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ci'bus, -ī, m., food             | āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sum, |
| mo'dus, -ī, m., measure, degree; | lose                             |
| manner, way                      | commit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī,         |
| mū'rus, -ī, m., wall             | -mis'sum, entrust; (with         |
| ni'hil, n., (defective noun)     | proelium) begin a battle, join   |
| nothing*                         | battle                           |
| vī'num, -ī, n., wine             | expel'lō, -ere, ex'pulī,         |
|                                  | expul'sum, drive out, drive      |
|                                  | away                             |
|                                  | red'dō, -ere, red'didī,          |
|                                  | red'ditum, give back, restore    |

—Word Study—

**Modus.** The phrases **quō modō** (**quōmodo**), *by what way?, in what manner?, how?*, and **quem ad modum**, *to what degree?, how?*, are used frequently in Latin.

Quō modō id fēcit?    *How did he do it?*

Quem ad modum territus es?    *How were you frightened?*

**Committō.** The two distinct meanings of this word come from the two meanings of the prefix **com-**, *together* and *completely*. *To let go completely is to entrust; to let a battle go together is to join battle.*

—Exercises—

A. Translate the italicized words.

1. *Quid vīdistī?*
2. *Quī ambulant?*
3. *Quae fēcistis?*
4. *Quis pugnat?*
5. *Quōrum equī erant in agrō?*
6. *Cum cuius amīcō ambulās?*
7. *Cum quō amīcō nāvigāvit?*
8. *A quibus ductī sunt?*
9. *Cui pecūniam dedit?*
10. *Quibus militibus haec dīxit?*

\* A defective word is one whose inflection is incomplete. **Nihil** has no plural and no genitive, dative, or ablative singular.

## B. Translate the italicized words.

1. *Whom* were they defending? 2. *To which farmer* did you give the money? 3. *What* is in the road? 4. *In what land* is Rome? 5. *With whom* is he fighting? 6. *In(to) which direction* were you sailing? 7. *Whose* friend is he? 8. *With which weapon* was he wounded? 9. *To whom* are you saying this? 10. *To whose brother* did you entrust the money?



Mosaic showing children's games

Combat of the Gladiators—relief, National Museum, Rome



C Read the Latin and translate.

who, which

1. Quis vidit principem cuius amicus ex oppidō expulsus est?
2. Quibus pecuniam et dōna commisit? 3. Quam legiōnem dūcēbat ex castris ad flūmen?
4. Cum quibus proelium crās committēmus?
5. Cīvis malus civitātem amīsīt, sed postea ei reddita est.
6. Quid in hortō post villam vidisti? Nihil vidi.
7. In quam partem feminae ambulābant?
8. Cuius equi in nostrō agrō currunt?
9. Quō modō ex urbe expulisti hostēs qui eam oppugnābant?
10. Qui agricolae bibunt vinum et aquam in villā?

D. Translate.

1. Who gave back freedom and citizenship to the unhappy captives?
2. To whose father did you owe that money?
3. By whom was the little girl frightened?
4. What gift did the farmer's daughter give to the consuls?
5. To whom were you giving those books I wrote?
6. In which direction were those boys whom you saw running?
7. What was the judge saying to the citizens?
8. How did you lose the wine you were carrying?
9. What did she write in the letter which you have?
10. Which general will lead the infantry into battle?

—Reading—

**SCIPIO AFRICANUS MINOR**

Ōlim in hortō Cicerō et Q. Mūcius, iūdex Rōmānus, sedēbant. Hic illi multa dē C. Laeliō, clārō virō Rōmānō, et dē verbis nārābat, quae verba Laelius dē Scipiōnis virtūte cum amicis fēcerat.

AMICUS: Quō modō, Laeli, mortem tuī cārī amici Scipiōnis accēpisti?

LAELIUS: Sine, amice, dolore. Quid is qui vitam bonam ēgit dē morte timet? In caelō Scipiō malum nōn habēbit. Sed quid dē eius vitā dicam: dē pietāte in mātrem, liberālitāte in sorōrēs, bonitāte in servōs? Scipiō erat vir bonus et fortis qui patriam amābat. Qui imperātor antiquus omnēs hās virtūtēs habēbat?

AMICUS: Vēra dicis, Laeli. Sed hunc bonum quis malus interfecit?

LAELIUS: Is quem lēx et pax nōn dēlectant, vir inimicus patriae, Carbō.

AMICUS: Quam bonus vir interfectus est!



Ut sementem feceris ita metes.  
As you sow so will you reap. — CICERO

## REVIEW 7 (LESSONS 25-28)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|            |        |           |          |
|------------|--------|-----------|----------|
| auctōritās | homō   | libertās  | pedes    |
| avis       | hortus | modus     | pēs      |
| canis      | iūdex  | multitūdō | prīnceps |
| cibus      | labor  | mūrus     | timor    |
| cīvitās    | lapis  | nihil     | vīnum    |
| clāmor     | legiō  | nox       | virtūs   |
| eques      | lēx    | pars      |          |

B. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|        |          |      |         |        |
|--------|----------|------|---------|--------|
| āmittō | committō | dicō | expellō | reddō  |
| bibō   | currō    | edō  | petō    | scribō |

### —Drill on Forms—

A. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: eques, hōmo, quis
2. *dative singular*: multitūdō, pēs, ego
3. *accusative singular*: virtūs, nihil, quis
4. *ablative singular*: iūdex, cīvitās, hic
5. *nominative plural*: labor, pedes, ille
6. *genitive plural*: canis, pars, avis
7. *dative plural*: lapis, prīnceps, quis
8. *accusative plural*: virtūs, modus, similis

B. Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the indicative and (where applicable) the imperative, active and passive, with meanings.

1. reddō in the third person singular.
2. moveō in the second person singular.
3. iaciō in the second person plural.

## C. Translate:

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. biberant      | 5. edēbāmus    |
| 2. expulsa est   | 6. petitus sum |
| 3. redditum erit | 7. dicta erant |
| 4. scribet       | 8. currēs      |

## D. Translate.

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. he has eaten    | 5. he is being driven out |
| 2. we were writing | 6. we were running        |
| 3. it was lost     | 7. it had been said       |
| 4. they will drink | 8. you had been sought    |

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. Eōs nautās quī ad terram nāvigābant spectāvit. 2. Quī sunt illī virī quibuscum pugnābātis? 3. Cuius frūmentum agricola carrō ab agrō portat? 4. Dē quō imperātōre hominēs haec dīcunt? 5. Virōs antiquōs, quōrum virtūtēs magnae erant, amābant deī omnēs. 6. Ad quem amicum illās litterās scripsistī? 7. Captivīs reddidit bonus cōsul omnēs agrōs quōs amiserant. 8. In quam partem currēbat is agricola cuius equus amissus erat? 9. Servum cui princeps libertātem civitātemque dederat spectāvimus. 10. Unum pedem in proeliō amiserat mīles miser.

## B. Translate.

1. What did they put on the head of the general who defeated the German forces? 2. Formerly he used to work in summer and in winter in that farmer's fields. 3. Are these the boys with whom you were defending your camp? 4. The women in the garden are eating bread; they will not drink the wine. 5. Man is the animal which dwells in cities. 6. The Gauls and the Romans are fighting, but within seven years the former will have been defeated and the latter will march to the city. 7. Soldiers, defend this town in which we all live. 8. The women were frightened by wild animals, but the men killed them. 9. To whom was the victory of our legions reported, to the general, or to his lieutenant? 10. The animals who were fleeing from the fierce dogs ran into the forest.

29

## Fourth Declension Partitives



*Statuettes of clown slaves*



Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.  
*The wolf attacks with his fang, the bull with his horn.*—HORACE

—Forms —

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

This declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. Those ending in **-us** in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in **-ū** are neuter. Masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension are declined like **passus**, *pace*.

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL    | ENDINGS    |
|-------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| NOMINATIVE: | pas'sus  | pas'sūs   | -us, -ūs   |
| GENITIVE:   | pas'sūs  | pas'suum  | -ūs, -uum  |
| DATIVE:     | pas'suī  | pas'sibus | -uī, -ibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | pas'sum  | pas'sūs   | -um, -ūs   |
| ABLATIVE:   | pas'sū   | pas'sibus | -ū, -ibus  |

Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are declined like **cornū**, *horn*.

|             |         |           |           |
|-------------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| NOMINATIVE: | cor'nū  | cor'nua   | -ū, -ua   |
| GENITIVE:   | cor'nūs | cor'nuum  | -ūs, -uum |
| DATIVE:     | cor'nū  | cor'nibus | -ū, -ibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | cor'nū  | cor'nua   | -ū, -ua   |
| ABLATIVE:   | cor'nū  | cor'nibus | -ū, -ibus |

The vocative endings of the fourth declension are like the nominative.

**The Declension of Domus.** Besides its normal fourth declension forms, **domus** has some endings of the second declension.

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|-------------|----------|----------|
| NOMINATIVE: | do'mus   | do'mūs   |
| GENITIVE:   | do'mūs   | do'muum  |
| DATIVE:     | do'muī   | do'mibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | do'mum   | do'mōs   |
| ABLATIVE:   | do'mō    | do'mibus |

Rarely used, but seen occasionally, are second declension forms for the genitive and dative singular and genitive plural (**domī, domō, domōrum**) and fourth declension forms for the ablative singular and accusative plural (**domū, domūs**).

— Syntax —

### PARTITIVES

**The Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive).** The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is mentioned.

*Pars exercitūs in Galliam iter fēcit.*

*Part of the army marched into Gaul.*

*Erant duo frātrēs, quōrum Mārcus mīles, Lūcius nauta erat.*

*There were two brothers, of whom Marcus was a soldier,*

*Lucius a sailor.*

The **-um** forms of the genitive plural of the personal pronouns (**nostrum, vestrum**) are used as partitive genitives.

*Pars nostrum in castrīs mānsit.* *Part of us stayed in the camp.*

*Quis vestrum haec fēcit?* *Which of you has done these things?*

The partitive genitive is frequently used with **nihil**.

*Nōs nihil cibī, vōs nihil vīnī habētis.*

*We have no food (nothing of food), and you have no wine (nothing of wine).*

*Est nihil reliquī.* *There is nothing left (nothing of remaining).*

The partitive idea is sometimes expressed by the ablative of place from which with **dē** or **ex**, especially with cardinal numerals and **paucī**.

*Ūnus ex puerīs in villā erat.*

*One of the boys was in the farmhouse.*

*Paucōs dē equīs agricolae dedimus.*

*We gave a few of the horses to the farmer.*

Either construction can be used with **multi**.

Remember, the English expressions *rest of* and *all of* are not partitive in Latin.

*Reliquī nautae in nāve mānsērunt.*

*The rest of the (The remaining) sailors stayed in the ship.*

*Omnēs fēminae territae sunt.*

*All of (All) the women were frightened.*

—Vocabulary—

adven'tus, -ūs, m., arrival, approach  
 cor'nū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army)  
 cur'sus, -ūs, m., running; course, quick motion  
 do'mus, -ūs, f., house, home  
 exer'citus, -ūs, m., army  
 ex'itus, -ūs, m., departure, way out; end, outcome  
 fluc'tus, -ūs, m., wave  
 im'petus, -ūs, m., attack  
 ma'nus, -ūs, f., hand; band (of men)  
 occā'sus, -ūs, m., setting, downfall, a going down  
 pas'sus, -ūs, m., pace  
 por'tus, -ūs, m., harbor, port  
 senā'tus, -ūs, m., senate  
 ū'sus, -ūs, m., use; advantage; practice, experience

—Word Study—

**Gender of Fourth Declension Nouns.** Except for **domus**, **manus**, and names of trees, all of which are feminine, nearly all fourth declension nouns in **-us** are masculine.

**Impetum facere** in with accusative means *to attack*.

**Passus.** The pace (two steps) was a Roman unit of measurement, about five feet long; a mile was a thousand paces (**mille passūs**).

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. quis cīvium
2. in magnīs fluctibus
3. nihil vīnī
4. magna pars urbis
5. paucae de fēminīs
6. septem ex puellīs
7. multī militum
8. adventū nostrī exercitūs
9. ā parte vestrum
10. impetum fēcit in equitēs

B. Translate.

1. the rest of the army
2. all of the men
3. part of our band
4. which of us
5. by means of a fierce attack
6. many of the



women 7. the leader of their army 8. nothing left 9. ten of the men 10. no water

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Fluctūs magnī erant sed dē marī in portum sine periculō nāvī-  
gāvimus. 2. Decem ex militibus erant et magnī et fortēs.  
3. Suntne multī passūs inter portum et domōs oppidī?  
4. Multitūdō cīvium diū expectāvit adventum cōsulum ā quibus  
lēgēs bonae factae erant. 5. Quis nostrum gladiō rēgem malum  
petet? 6. Quod animal illa cornua magna gerēbat quae in villā  
tuā vidī? 7. Paucī ex nostrīs equitibus nihil cibī equīs dabant.  
8. Manus peditum laborābat in ponte cuius pars cōfecta non  
erat. 9. Parvum animal quod in silvā vidimus magnō timōre  
nostrī occupātum est. 10. Caesaris exercitus impetum fēcit in  
cōpiās Germānās.

D. Translate.

1. Have you fled because of your fear of us? 2. Which of you led  
the army out of the camp into the plains? 3. The tenth legion  
was attacked by bands of Spanish foot soldiers. 4. Whose garden  
did you see in that city yesterday? 5. The wretched captives,  
who had no food, were waiting for the arrival of our general.  
6. What did the leader of the army say to those soldiers who had  
attacked the town? 7. Eight of the boys were led back to (their)  
fathers' houses by the teacher. 8. Many of the girls gave back the  
rest of the money which the men had given to them. 9. The foot  
soldiers made an attack, and all of the enemy ran down from the  
mountain toward the river. 10. The consul reported to the senate  
the arrival of the enemy's army.

—Reading—

A TRIP TO THE CITY

Marcus, cuius pater agricola erat, in agrīs ā primā lūce ad sōlis oc-  
cāsum laborābat. Frūmentum cōgēbat quod ad urbem Rōmam carrīs  
portābātur. Hoc iter facere saepe cupiēbat quod Rōmam nōn viderat.

Ōlim pater, "Quod, mī fili," inquit, "mihi auxilium multōs diēs  
dedisti, tē mēcum ad urbem dūcam." Ubi frūmentum coāctum est, ā



*Relief showing a scene from Roman comedy. An angry father is restrained from chastising drunken son returning from a banquet supported by his personal slave. Son will be saved by this slave's tricks. (Flute player is accompanist for play.)*

villā discesserunt. Post quinque hōrās pater fīliusque eius in viīs urbis ambulābant. Ibi hominēs quī ab omnibus prōvinciīs convēnerant vidērunt.

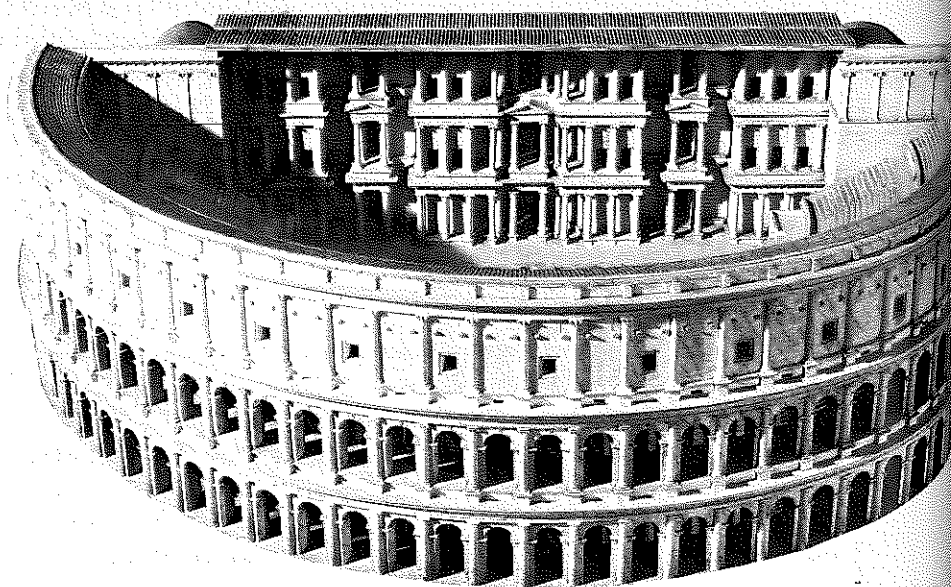
Eō diē per Viam Sacram cum mīlitibus veniēbat in triumphō imperātor clārus. Propter eius adventum magnī clāmōrēs cīvium audiēbantur. Marcus servum vidit quī gladium post tergum tenēbat et ad imperātōrem currēbat. Magnā vōce Marcus clāmāvit, "Spectāte, Rōmānī! Illum servum malum capite! Ducem nostrum interficiet. Vidī . . . !" Sed servus nōn iam aderat.\* Fūgerat!

Marcus, quod vītā ducis servāverat, ab omnibus laudātus est et ob virtūtem magnum praeium accēpit.

\* from **adsum**

30

Fourth Conjugation  
Accusative of Extent  
of Space  
Accusative of Duration  
of Time



*Model of the Theatre of Marcellus*



Non est ars quae ad effectum casu venit.  
*That which achieves its effect by accident is not art.* — SENECA

—Forms—

### THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

Verbs whose present stem ends in *i* belong to the fourth conjugation, and may be recognized by the *-īre* of the second principal part. They are conjugated like **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, hear.**

The **present system** of the fourth conjugation is formed like that of third conjugation *i*-stems. The *-i-* of the stem is shortened before a vowel or a final *-t*.

1. **Present.** The personal endings are added directly to the present stem, except that a *-u-* is inserted in the third person plural.

| ACTIVE   |          | PASSIVE  |            |
|----------|----------|----------|------------|
| SINGULAR | PLURAL   | SINGULAR | PLURAL     |
| au'diō   | audī'mus | au'dior  | audī'mur   |
| au'dīs   | audī'tis | audī'ris | audī'minī  |
| au'dit   | au'diunt | audī'tur | audiun'tur |

2. **Imperfect.** As in the third conjugation, the tense sign is *-ēbā-*.

audiē'bam, etc.

audiē'bar, etc.

3. **Future.** The tense sign, as in the third conjugation, is *-ē-*, shortened before *-t* and *-nt*, and becoming *-a-* in the first person singular.

au'diam

au'diar

au'diēs, etc.

audiē'ris, etc.

The **perfect system** of the fourth conjugation is formed in the same way as that of the other conjugations.

|              |                  |                      |
|--------------|------------------|----------------------|
| PERFECT      | audī'vī, etc.    | audī'tus sum, etc.   |
| PLUPERFECT   | audī'veram, etc. | audī'tus e'ram, etc. |
| FUT. PERFECT | audī'verō, etc.  | audī'tus e'rō, etc.  |

The imperative is formed in the same way as in the first and second conjugations.

| ACTIVE |                 | PASSIVE |                       |
|--------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------|
| au'dī  | audī'te (hear!) | audī're | audī'mini (be heard!) |

—Syntax—

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE AND ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

Extent of space (how far?) and duration of time (how long?) are expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Mille passūs cucurrit. *He ran a mile.*

Domus mea est vīgintī pedēs ā villā tuā.

*My house is twenty feet from your villa.*

In urbe quīnque annōs mānsimus.

*We stayed in the city for five years.*

—Vocabulary—

|                                                                   |                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| ✓ mī'lia, mī'lium, n. pl., thousands                              | ✗ mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tum, fortify, build          |
| ✓ au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tum, hear, listen to                   | ✗ perve'niō, -ī're, pervē'nī, perventum, reach, arrive  |
| ✗ conve'niō, -ī're, convē'nī, conven'tum, come together, assemble | ✗ ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ven'tum, come                   |
| ✓ dor'miō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tum, sleep                            | ✗ et'iam, (adv.) also, even                             |
| ✓ impe'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tum, hinder                          | ✗ ta'men, (adv. postpositive)* nevertheless, yet, still |
| ✓ inve'niō, -ī're, invē'nī, inven'tum, come upon, find            | ✗ nam, (conj.) for                                      |

\* A postpositive adverb or conjunction may not come first in its own clause; usually it comes second.

Clāmōrēs audivimus, puerōs tamen nōn invēnimus.

*We heard the shouts, yet we did not find the boys.*

— Word Study —

**Milia**, *thousands*, which is declined regularly as a third declension neuter *i*-stem (like the plural of **mare**), differs from all other Latin numerals in that it is a noun rather than an adjective. Consequently it cannot modify a noun, but must be used with a partitive genitive. It has no singular; you remember that **mille**, *a thousand*, is, like most cardinal numerals, an indeclinable adjective.

Mille milites vulnerati sunt. *A thousand soldiers were wounded.*

Quattuor milia militum vulnerata sunt.

*Four thousand soldiers were wounded.*

Quattuor milia ex militibus *four thousand of the soldiers*

Mille passus ambulavisti. *You walked a mile.*

Quinque milia passuum ambulavisti. *You walked five miles.*

**Perveniō**. Although we say *arrive at* or *arrive in* in English, **perveniō**, being a verb of motion, takes an accusative of place to which, not ablative of place where.

Brevi tempore ad portum pervenimus.

*Within a short time we arrived at the harbor (we reached the harbor).*

Tertiā hōrā in castra pervenerunt.

*They arrived in camp (reached camp) at the third hour.*

— Exercises —

A. Analyze each form and translate.

1. audis, audiētur, auditur, audiēmus 2. veniēbat, convēnērunt, perveniunt, vēnerant 3. mūniēbāmus, mūnīvērunt, mūnītum erat, mūniam 4. impediēnt, impeditus sum, invēneram, pervenient 5. conveniēbant, auditus erit, mūnīvimus, veniētis

B. Translate.

1. we shall hear, they are building 2. he has been hindered, they were coming together 3. she had arrived, I shall have come 4. it has been fortified, you were finding 5. they are listening to, we shall come together

C. Translate the italicized words.

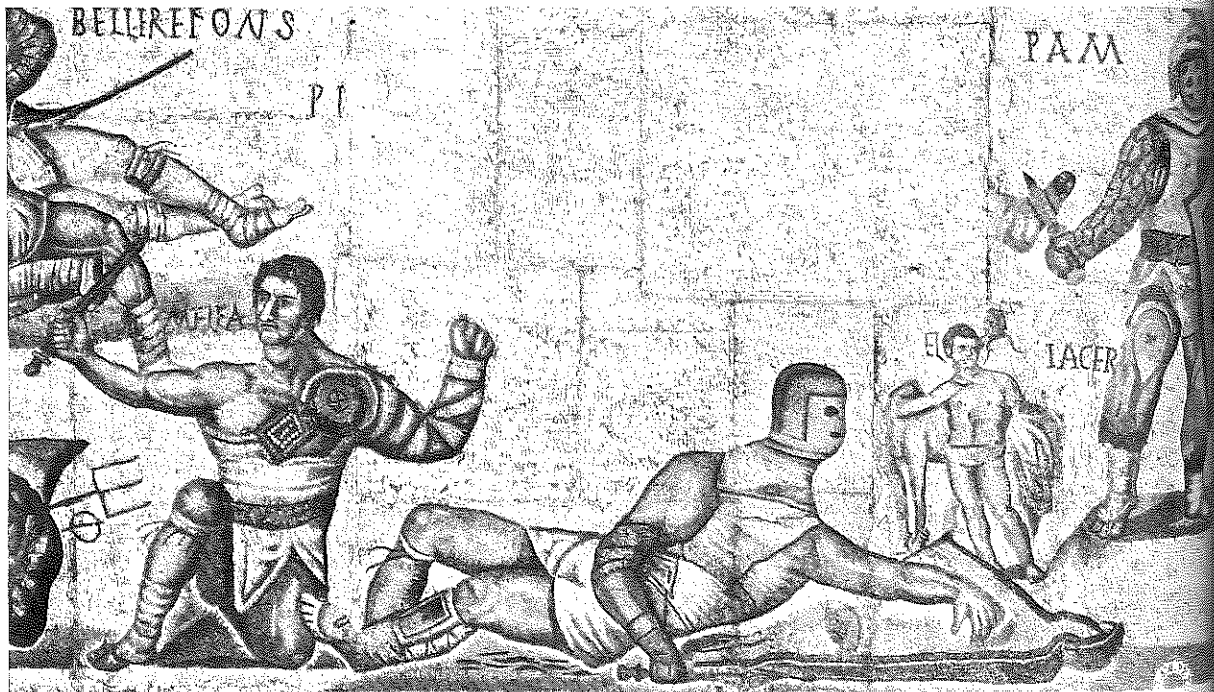
1. I saw *a thousand girls*. 2. I saw *five thousand boys*. 3. I saw *three thousand of the soldiers*. 4. They came *one mile*. 5. They came



ten miles. 6. He spoke to four thousand citizens. 7. They fought with eight thousand foot soldiers. 8. Two thousand captives were found in the camp. 9. We carried the weapons of one thousand soldiers. 10. He lived in Europe for twenty years.

D. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Decem hōrās urbem oppugnāverant et Graecōs, quī gravibus armīs impeditī sunt, vīcerant. 2. Lēgātus quī dē pāce missus erat quīnque mīlia passuum ad oppidum finitimum vēnit. 3. Propter fluctūs in mari dux octō hōrās in portū mānserat. 4. Brevi tempore multī Rōmānōrum in urbem nostram convenient. 5. Quis vestrum audiēbat imperātōrem ubi vōs dē victōriā docēbat? 6. Decem ex agricolīs frūmentum mille passūs ad flūmen portāverunt. 7. Nautae quī ad urbem vēnērunt nāvēs in portū reliquerant. 8. Māter mea ad agricolae villam septimā hōrā pervēnit et trēs hōrās manēbat. 9. Iter faciēmus multa mīlia passuum



Fighting gladiators

ad finēs nostrōrum sociōrum in Eurōpā. 10. Quōs invēnistī ubi in castra pervēnistī?

E. Translate.

1. We remained in camp for four hours, for we had not heard the signal. 2. We have come a mile and yet we have not found a river. 3. For many years she waited; yet the letters from him did not come. 4. We carried the grain and water to the horses many miles across the plains. 5. Ten thousand of the enemy were captured, for they fought badly because there was no food in their camp. 6. They are building a large camp in the territory of the friendly Gauls. 7. The attacks of our infantry were hindered by the enemy's boldness. 8. I saw three thousand men who had come from a neighboring city. 9. In my farmhouse there are the horns of many animals which I found in the woods. 10. What did you hear when you arrived at the villa of the consul?

—Reading—

A CITY IS TAKEN BY A HORSE

Ōlim filius rēgis Trōiānī per Graeciam iter faciēbat. Ibi rēgīnam pulchram Graecōrum vīdit et statim amāvit. Postea eam trāns mare ad urbem Trōiam dūxit.

Irātī ob rēgīnae discessum prīncipēs Graeciae multās nāvēs paravērunt. Atque ad illam urbem cum multīs et fortibus cōpiīs nāvigāvērunt.

Post novem annōs tamen ab hostibus nōn superāta erat Trōia propter virtutem Trōiānōrum. Itaque decimō annō clārus imperātor Graecus cōsiliū novum et audāx cēpit. Militēs eius iussū magnum equum ligneum fēcērunt, cuius corpus erat cavum. Ille exercituī, "In hōc equō cavō," inquit, "partem peditum nostrōrum ponēmus. Hoc animal, sī in urbem ductum erit, nōbīs victōriam dabit."

Ubi Trōiānī dē mūrīs magnitudinem animālis spectāvērunt, terrēbantur paucī. Multī tamen clāmābant, "Nōnne sacer est hic equus? Movēte eum per portās urbis ad templa deōrum, nam sine hōrum auxiliō urbem nostram nōn bene dēfendere poterimus."

Sed equus, quem in urbem accēpērunt Trōiānī, non pācem sed arma hostium portābat. Hōc modō id quod hominēs nōn decem annīs fēcērant, ūnā nocte cōnfēcit equus.

31

## Fifth Declension Formation of Adverbs



*A bronze of a retiarius*



Fallaces sunt rerum species.  
*The appearances of things are deceptive.*—SENECA

—Forms—

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Nouns whose stem ends in *ē* (shortened after a consonant and before a vowel) belong to the fifth declension; they may be recognized from the *-ēī* or (after a consonant) *-eī* ending of the genitive singular. They are declined like *diēs*, *day*, and *rēs*, *thing*.

|      | SINGULAR | PLURAL  | SINGULAR | PLURAL | ENDINGS  |       |
|------|----------|---------|----------|--------|----------|-------|
| NOM. | di'ēs    | di'ēs   | rēs      | rēs    | -ēs      | -ēs   |
| GEN. | diē'ī    | diē'rum | re'ī     | rē'rum | -ēī, -eī | -erum |
| DAT. | diē'ī    | diē'bus | re'ī     | rē'bus | -ēī, -eī | -ēbus |
| ACC. | di'em    | di'ēs   | rem      | rēs    | -em      | -ēs   |
| ABL. | di'ē     | diē'bus | rē       | rē'bus | -ē       | -ēbus |

The vocative endings of the fifth declension are like the nominative.

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS

You have learned that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base. Adjectives of the third declension form their adverbs by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base (if the base ends in *t*, only *-er* is added). Study the formation of the following adverbs.

|            |                   |            |                           |
|------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| ācriter,   | sharply, fiercely | fortiter,  | bravely                   |
| audacter,  | boldly, rashly    | graviter,  | deeply, severely          |
| breviter,  | briefly           | potenter,  | powerfully                |
| celeriter, | swiftly           | similiter, | in like manner, similarly |

—Vocabulary—

|                                                     |                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| ✓ a'ciēs, aciē'ī, f., straight line; line of battle | ✓ meri'diēs, -ē'ī, m., midday, noon; south |
| ✓ di'ēs, diē'ī, m., day                             | ✓ rēs, re'ī, f., thing, affair, matter     |
| ✓ iā'nua, -ae, f., door                             | ✓ spēs, spe'ī, f., hope                    |
| ✓ lec'tus, -ī, m., bed, dining couch                |                                            |

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *having to  
do with grain*  
pūb'licus, -a, -um, *belonging to  
the people, public*

i'taque, (conj.), *and so, therefore*  
ne'que, nec, (conj.), *and . . . not,*  
nor

### —Word Study—

**Gender.** Fifth declension nouns are all feminine, with the exception of **diēs** and **merīdiēs**. In certain idiomatic expressions, however, **diēs** may be feminine: **diē cōstitutā**, *on the appointed day*.

**Rēs.** *Thing* is really never a good translation for **rēs**, and vice versa (e.g. *many things* is **multa**, not **multae rēs**). The meaning *thing* is given because **rēs** has so many possible translations in English that no other English word will cover them. (Depending on the context, **rēs** in the singular may mean *fact, business, function, science, property, profit, etc.*; in the plural it may mean *the physical universe, conditions, circumstances, deeds, etc.*)

Four idiomatic uses of **rēs**:

rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, f., *grain supply, forage*  
rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f., *commonwealth, state, republic*  
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, f., pl., *deeds, accomplishments*  
rēs novae, rērum novārum, f. pl., *revolution*

**Multō diē** (*at much day*) is an idiom for *late in the day*; similarly **multā nocte** means *late at night*.

### —Exercises—

#### A. Decline.

1. haec aciēs    2. bonus diēs    3. exercitus fortis    4. rēs gestae
5. ūna spēs    6. quae manus?    7. rēs pūblica    8. duo cornua
9. mille passūs    10. mīlia passuum

#### B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Lēgēs rei pūblīcae nostrae sunt bonae.    2. Imperātor mīlitēs in agrōs ob rem frūmentāriam mīsīt.    3. Hostēs fortēs sunt; magnā tamen cum audāciā pugnābimus.    4. Ante merīdiem peditēs tertiae aciēi bene pugnābant.    5. Cōsul cīvibus multa dē rē pūblīcā

dixerat. 6. Merīdiē cibus datus est duōbus mīlibus cīvium. 7. Hostēs cum nostrā primā aciē sine spē pugnābant. 8. Rēs gestae huius populī sunt multae et magnae. 9. Domum ūnīus ē cōsulibus viderimus. 10. Multō diē ad iānuam domūs meae pervēnērunt.

C. Translate.

1. He was sleeping in the bed which was between the two windows. 2. He also informed the ambassador about the great hope of the citizens for peace. 3. At the arrival of the queen, all of the men who were sitting down stood up. 4. The rest of our first line of battle was driven away by the fierce attack of the Germans. 5. The boys were throwing stones down from one of the high houses into the street. 6. The army of one of the two generals remained in the plain for many hours. 7. In my country the days are short in winter and long in summer. 8. The soldiers broke camp late at night on account of the lack of food.

—Reading—

A GRATEFUL GHOST

Puella Graeca cum patre mātreque iter per montēs Āsiae faciēbat, quod ex patriā fugere propter bellum coāctī erant. Multōs post diēs ad villam antīquam et pulchram vērunt, in quā hominēs iam dūdum nōn habitābant. Itaque ibi semper manēre constituērunt.

Multā nocte magna vōx nōmen patris ex silvā clāmāvit. Pater, "Absum," respondit atque ob timōrem reliquam noctem sub lectō iacēbat. Secundā nocte in silvam vocāta est mater. Eī vocī ex fenestrā, "Crās veniam," respondit, et dormire temptābat. Tertiā nocte appellāta est puella, quae nihil dīxit, sed in silvam contendit.

Ibi brevī tempore alba ossa hūmāna vīdit. Mox ossa surrēxērunt atque ad eam ambulāre incipiēbant. "Quis es?" inquit puella territa.

"Ōlim huius villae dominus eram," respondit. "Hōc in locō ab animālī interfectus sum, nec postea corpus meum invenīrī potuit. Itaque centum annōs nocte per hanc silvam ambulō. Sī ossa mea sub terrā posueris, discēdam."

"Miser homo," inquit puella, "id quod petis faciam." Adventū diēi patrem vocāvit et eius auxiliō ossa sub terrā posuit. Postea vōx in silvā nōn iam audita est.



32

# Inquam; Possum Infinitives



*Gilt bronze helmet and greaves from the gladiators' barracks in Pompeii*

Stultum est timere quod vitare non potes.  
*It is foolish to fear that which you cannot avoid.*—PUBLILIUS SYRUS

—Forms—

### INQUAM

The defective verb **inquam**, *I say*, has only five commonly used forms.

| PRESENT                    | PERFECT                 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| in'quam, <i>I say</i>      |                         |
| in'quis, <i>you say</i>    |                         |
| in'quit, <i>he says</i>    | in'quit, <i>he said</i> |
| in'quiunt, <i>they say</i> |                         |

**Inquam**, **inquis**, etc. are used only to introduce direct quotations; they played the part of quotation marks for the Romans, who used little punctuation. They never come before the quotation, but are usually placed after its first word or phrase.

### POSSUM

The verb **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, —, *I am able, I can*, is a compound of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, *I am*. In the present system, **potis** becomes **pot-** before an **e**, and **pos-** before an **s**.

| PRESENT |           | IMPERFECT |            | FUTURE   |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|------------|
| pos'sum | pos'sumus | po'teram  | poterā'mus | po'terō  | pote'rimus |
| po'tes  | potes'tis | po'terās  | poterā'tis | po'teris | pote'ritis |
| po'test | pos'sunt  | po'terat  | po'terant  | po'terit | po'terunt  |

The perfect system is regular.

po'tuī, etc.

potu'eram, etc.

potu'erō, etc.

There are no imperatives.

### PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

The present passive infinitive is formed in the first, second, and fourth conjugations by changing the final **-e** of the present active infinitive

to -ī. In the third conjugation the **-ere** of the present active infinitive is replaced by -ī.

| ACTIVE  |         | PASSIVE |              |
|---------|---------|---------|--------------|
| vocāre, | to call | vocārī, | to be called |
| monēre, | to warn | monērī, | to be warned |
| regere, | to rule | regī,   | to be ruled  |
| capere, | to take | capī,   | to be taken  |
| audīre, | to hear | audīrī, | to be heard  |

### — Syntax —

#### INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

**Iubeō** must, and **cogō** and **prohibeō** may be followed by an infinitive phrase (infinitive with an accusative subject).

Militēs coēgērunt agricolam villam relinquere.

*The soldiers forced the farmer to leave his farmhouse.*

Cōsul cīvēs convenīre iussit.

*The consul ordered the citizens to assemble.*

Nōs ad Āfricam nāvigāre prohibēbunt.

*They will prevent us from sailing to Africa.*

#### THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

Some verbs need an infinitive to complete their meaning, e.g. **possum**, **cōstituō** (when it means *decide*), and **dēbeō** (when it means *ought*).

Castra movēre cōstituērunt. *They decided to break camp.*

Dēbēmus audīre cōsulem. *We ought to listen to the consul.*

Hoc dīcī potest. *This can (is able to) be said.*

### — Vocabulary —

Y gau'dium, gau'dī, n., joy, gladness

X offi'cium, offi'cī, n., duty

X prae'mium, prae'mī, n., reward

X praesi'dium, praesi'dī, n., guard, garrison

X ter'gum, -ī, n., back

✓ ab'sum, abes'se, ā'fuī, āfūtū'rus, be absent, be distant, be away



- ✓ ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fuī, adfūtū'rus, *be present, be near*
- ✓ conti'neō, -ē're, -ti'nuī, -ten'tum, *hold together, restrain, bound*
- ✓ in'quam, in'quis, in'quit, in'quiunt, *say*
- ✓ iu'beō, -ē're, ius'sī, ius'sum, *order, bid*
- ✓ pos'sum, pos'se, po'tuī, —, *be able, can*
- ✓ susti'neō, -ē're, -ti'nuī, -ten'tum, *hold up, hold in check, withstand*

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. poterit, potuerit, possumus    2. potuistis, potes, poterant
3. aberit, aderat, āfuerāmus    4. adfuerimus, possunt, aberunt
5. adest, potestis, āfuērunt    6. potest continēre    7. Iussimus
- puerōs venīre.    8. poterāmus audīre    9. Coēgit hominem labō-
- rāre.    10. poterunt invenīre

B. Translate.

1. we are able, he can, you will be able    2. they were able, she
- could, I had been able    3. he was absent, they are present, they
- are away    4. he will be able, they can, I shall have been able
5. we shall be away, he was near, they have been away    6. You
- were able to flee.    7. they could withstand    8. He forced the men
- to fight.    9. I ordered the messenger to run.    10. They will be able
- to sleep.

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Mea villa abest duo milia passuum ab urbe.    2. Princeps prae-
- mia magnō cum gaudiō accēpit.    3. Hostēs in nōs impetum fēc-
- ērunt quī ā nostris equitibus sustentus est.    4. Caesar praesidium
- militum in ponte reliquit.    5. "Quis vestrum," inquit lēgātus, "hās
- litterās ad imperātōrem portāre poterit?"    6. Paucī aderant, et
- multī aberant.    7. Cōsul cīvibus, "Nōn dēbēmus," inquit, "dis-
- cēdere ā nostrō officiō."    8. Poterō ad tuam urbem venīre crās, sī
- pecūniam invēnerō.    9. Equitēs iussī sunt continēre equōs ferōs;
- paucī dē hīs tamen celeriter ad campōs fūgērunt.    10. Prīncipēs
- quī novās rēs cupiēbant civitātem relinquere coāctī sunt.

## D. Translate.

1. We decided to fortify that large camp which we had captured from the enemy. 2. The slaves were forced to give back to the master part of the reward which he had given them. 3. Who will flee with me from this wretched place? 4. The messenger said to the general, "The garrison will remain on the bridge for two days." 5. We shall not be able to be present, but we shall send our sons and daughters. 6. "An evil man cannot be truly great," said the judge to the citizens. 7. The attack of the German cavalry was held in check by our men, who were fighting fiercely. 8. The republic ought not to be overcome by the attack of one man who desires a revolution. 9. "The duties of the Roman consuls," said the teacher, "were many and not easy." 10. The father ordered (his) sons to send all of the money to the farmers.

## —Reading—

## A SISTER SAVES HER BROTHERS

Iūlia parva puella Rōmāna erat, quae duōs frātrēs habēbat. Cum eīs semper esse cupiēbat; illi tamen eam discēdere iubēbant. "Puellās," inquiunt, "in lūdōs nostrōs nōn accipimus, nam nōs paene viri sumus."

Prīmō aestātis diē, frātrēs ad mare ambulāre cōstituērunt, nam propter magnum aestum nāre cupiēbant. Iūlia etiam cum eīs ambulāre incipiēbat, sed mox, quod illi currēbant, ab eīs relictā est. In villā patris manēre recūsāvit et cum cane, quī propter aetātem gravis erat et iam currere nōn poterat, post frātrēs discessit. Hī neque eam neque canem vidēbant.

Ubi ad mare vēnit Iūlia, frātrēs magnō cum clāmōre in aquā nābant. Illa post saxum sedēbat et eōs spectābat.

Subitō ūnus dē puerīs clamāvit: "Polypus meōs pedēs capit!" Ad eum nāvit frāter, quem quoque polypus cēpit. Iūlia magnō timōre ad villam cucurrit; iam currēbat etiam canis. Ad mare vocat patrem, ā quō pueri ē magnō mortis periculō servātī sunt. Itaque postea frātrēs sorōrem in lūdōs semper accipiēbant.

## Summary of Case Uses

### Nominative

1. Subject of a verb (Lesson 1)  
*Pueri currunt. The boys are running.*
2. Predicate Nominative or Subjective Complement (Lessons 1, 20)  
*Caesar erat consul. Caesar was consul.*  
*Puer appellatur Mārcus. The boy is called Marcus.*

### Vocative

1. For direct address (Lesson 13)  
*Veni, Lūcī, ad villam. Come to the farmhouse, Lucius.*

### Genitive

1. Of possession (Lesson 4)  
*Mātrēs puellārum adsunt. The girls' mothers are here.*
2. Objective (Lesson 23)  
*Noster timor bellī est magnus. Our fear of the war is great.*
3. Of the whole (Partitive) (Lesson 29)  
*Pars urbis est pulchra. Part of the city is beautiful.*

### Dative

1. Of the indirect object (Lesson 8)  
*Equitibus equōs dat. He is giving horses to the horsemen.*

### Accusative

1. Of the direct object (Lesson 2)  
*Exercitum videō. I see an army.*
2. Of place to which (Lesson 5)  
*Ad oppidum veniunt. They are coming to the town.*
3. Predicate Accusative (Objective Complement) (Lesson 20)  
*Filium meum vocāvī Lūcium. I have called my son Lucius.*
4. Of extent of space (Lesson 30)  
*Tria milia passuum cucurrī. I ran three miles.*
5. Of duration of time (Lesson 30)  
*Duās hōrās mānsit. He waited two hours.*
6. Subject of an infinitive (Lesson 32)  
*Coēgit virōs discēdere. He forced the men to leave.*
7. Subjective complement in an infinitive phrase (Lesson 32)  
*Prohibet servum esse cīvem.*  
*He keeps the slave from being a citizen.*

### Ablative

*Showing separation*



1. Of place from which (Lesson 5)  
Ab insulā nāvigāmus. *We are sailing from the island.*
2. Partitive place from which (Lesson 29)  
Duo dē puerīs absunt. *Two of the boys are absent.*
3. Of separation (Lesson 24)  
Civēs timōre liberāvit. *He freed the citizens from fear.*
4. Of personal agent (Lesson 20)  
Hoc factum est ā Caesare. *This was done by Caesar.*

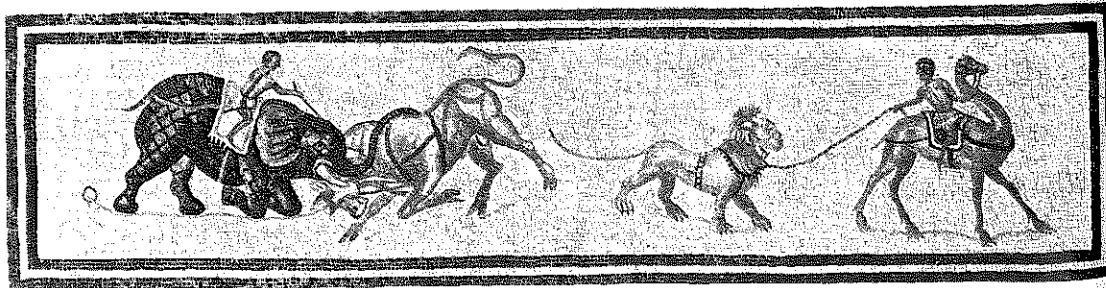
*Showing location*

1. Of place where (Lesson 3)  
In urbe manet. *He is staying in the city.*
2. Of time when (Lesson 25)  
Tertiā hōrā discesserunt. *They left at the third hour.*
3. Of time within which (Lesson 25)  
Tribus diēbus discedēmus. *We shall leave within three days.*

*Showing instrument or circumstances*

1. Of means or instrument (Lesson 9)  
Tēlō vulnerātus est. *He was wounded by a weapon.*
2. Of accompaniment (Lesson 18)  
Vēni cum meis amīcis. *I came with my friends.*
3. Of manner (Lesson 15)  
Dōnum magnō gaudiō accēpit. *He received the gift with great joy.*

*Mosaic of an animal show from late imperial villa at Piazza Armerina*



Per varios usus artem experientia fecit.  
 Through different exercises practice has brought skill.—MANILIUS

## REVIEW 8 (LESSONS 29–32)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|           |         |          |            |
|-----------|---------|----------|------------|
| aciēs     | exitus  | merīdiēs | praesidium |
| adventus  | fluctus | mīlia    | rēs        |
| cornū     | gaudium | occāsus  | senātus    |
| cursus    | iānua   | officium | spēs       |
| diēs      | impetus | passus   | tergum     |
| domus     | lectus  | portus   | ūsus       |
| exercitus | manus   | praemium |            |

B. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| absum    | conveniō | inveniō  | possum   |
| adsum    | dormiō   | iubeō    | sustineō |
| audiō    | impediō  | mūniō    | veniō    |
| contineō | inquam   | pervenīō |          |

C. Give the meaning of:

|              |        |          |       |
|--------------|--------|----------|-------|
| etiam        | itaque | neque    | tamen |
| frumentārius | nam    | pūblicus |       |

### —Drill on Forms—

A. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: merīdiēs, praemium, manus
2. *dative singular*: spēs, ūnus, cornū
3. *accusative singular*: aciēs, passus, virtūs
4. *ablative singular*: rēs, tergum, impetus
5. *nominative plural*: rēs, gaudium, domus
6. *genitive plural*: diēs, praemium, mīlia
7. *accusative plural*: officium, fluctus, cornū
8. *ablative plural*: rēs, exercitus, duo

B. Decline throughout: *aciēs, exercitus*

C. Give a synopsis of:

1. *iaciō* in the active indicative first person singular, with meanings
2. *inveniō* in the passive indicative third person singular, with meanings
3. *possum* in the indicative third person plural, with meanings
4. *absum* in the indicative first person plural, with meanings

D. Translate.

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>impediēbant</i> | 9. <i>āfuit</i>          |
| 2. <i>dormiam</i>     | 10. <i>mūnīta sunt</i>   |
| 3. <i>mūniverant</i>  | 11. <i>aderimus</i>      |
| 4. <i>audiuntur</i>   | 12. <i>pervēnērunt</i>   |
| 5. <i>vēnerint</i>    | 13. <i>inventus erat</i> |
| 6. <i>inquit</i>      | 14. <i>dormīre</i>       |
| 7. <i>potuistī</i>    | 15. <i>veniētisne?</i>   |
| 8. <i>convēnimus</i>  |                          |

E. Translate.

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. we shall be present | 9. will you build?         |
| 2. he was listening to | 10. to come together       |
| 3. they will be able   | 11. we shall build         |
| 4. they were hindered  | 12. they were found        |
| 5. she was sleeping    | 13. you could              |
| 6. he said             | 14. he will arrive         |
| 7. we have arrived     | 15. come! ( <i>sing.</i> ) |
| 8. he is absent        |                            |

—Drill on Syntax—

Translate.

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. for five days       | 6. nine of the soldiers |
| 2. a thousand boys     | 7. within two years     |
| 3. three thousand men  | 8. at night             |
| 4. to free from fear   | 9. by our cavalry       |
| 5. quickly and bravely | 10. with much joy       |



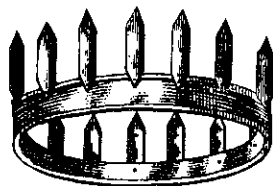
## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. Duo milia civium illius oppidi verba principis tres horas audiverunt; tum illum delegerunt regem. 2. Milites qui in acie pugnare ob telorum timorem non possunt hostes prohibere muro cogentur. 3. Septimo die pedites telis castra oppugnaverunt et ducem hostium cepērunt. 4. Legionēs paucis diebus aderunt cum auxiliis si Germani victi erunt. 5. Puer qui Marcus vocatur iter ab hoc oppido tria milia passuum per silvam ad urbem magnam fecit. 6. "Tela vestra, viri," inquit, "de nave conicite; hostes adsunt et vos fortes esse debetis." 7. Manus equitum in urbem meridiē venit, sed nihil cibi eis datum est. 8. Ubi legionēs nostras viderunt, ei qui cives servos esse coegerant cum celeritate fugerunt. 9. Canis albus sub mensa in horto diu dormiebat. 10. Tertia acies in monte post castra a legato solis occasu continebatur.

## B. Translate.

1. Many beautiful gifts were given to the queen by the citizens of the kingdom. 2. Caesar ordered the cavalry to make an attack on the wing of the enemy. 3. We decided to remain with our friends in Spain for a few days. 4. Where are the men who were ordered to work with me in the fields? 5. After the arrival of the messenger from the general, our forces waited in camp for the legions. 6. The first line of battle ran towards the enemy and attacked them fiercely. 7. The messenger who had carried my letter for two miles was killed by a weapon. 8. Within six days we shall march through the enemy's territory with great speed. 9. When he left Gaul, the leader said, "Men, we have conquered the enemy and freed our allies from fear of attacks." 10. Many of our horses desire grain and water, which we are not able to find tonight.



# 33

## Comparison of Adjectives Quam Ablative of Comparison



*Colosseum, Rome*

Risu inepto res ineptior nulla est.  
*There is nothing more foolish than a foolish laugh.*—CATULLUS

—Forms—

### REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

An adjective has three degrees, positive (e.g. *strong, certain*), comparative (e.g. *stronger, more certain*), and superlative (e.g. *strongest, most certain*).

**The Comparative Degree.** Latin adjectives regularly form the comparative by adding **-ior** (masculine and feminine) and **-ius** (neuter) to the base of the positive.

| POSITIVE |                | COMPARATIVE          |                     |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| potens   | <i>strong</i>  | potentior, potentius | <i>stronger</i>     |
| certus   | <i>certain</i> | certior, certius     | <i>more certain</i> |

**The Superlative Degree.** The superlative is regularly formed by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum** to the base of the positive.

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| potentissimus, -a, -um | <i>strongest</i>    |
| certissimus, -a, -um   | <i>most certain</i> |

**The Declension of the Comparative and Superlative.** An adjective in the comparative degree is declined as a third declension consonant-stem.

|             | SINGULAR     |            | PLURAL       |              |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
|             | MASC. & FEM. | NEUTER     | MASC. & FEM. | NEUTER       |
| NOMINATIVE: | cer'tior     | cer'tius   | certiō'rēs   | certiō'ra    |
| GENITIVE:   | certiō'ris   | certiō'ris | certiō'rum   | certiō'rum   |
| DATIVE:     | certiō'rī    | certiō'rī  | certiō'ribus | certiō'ribus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | certiō'rem   | cer'tius   | certiō'rēs   | certiō'ra    |
| ABLATIVE:   | certiō're    | certiō're  | certiō'ribus | certiō'ribus |

The superlative is declined like **malus, -a, -um**.



—Syntax—

### COMPARISON

**Quam** is used like *than* in English to join the two words which are being compared. The Latin usage differs from the English in that the word following **quam** must be in the same case as the word with which it is being compared.

Rōmānī dīligentiōrēs quam Germānī erant.

*The Romans were more diligent than the Germans.*

Haec via est longior quam illa.

*This road is longer than that.*

Nōn vīdī puerum potentiōrem quam eum.

*I have not seen a boy more powerful than he.*

Caesaris castra ampliōra erant quam Britannōrum.

*Caesar's camp was larger than the Britons'.*

### ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

When the noun or pronoun with which another is compared is in the nominative or accusative, **quam** may be omitted and the second noun or pronoun put into the ablative.

Rōmānī dīligentiōrēs Germānīs erant.

*The Romans were more diligent than the Germans.*

Haec via longior illā est.

*This road is longer than that.*

Nōn vīdī puerum potentiōrem eō.

*I have not seen a boy more powerful than he.*

### Translation of the Comparative and Superlative

The comparative may be translated with *too* or *rather*.

|                      |   |                                                                                                              |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hic mōns est altior. | { | <i>This mountain is higher.</i><br><i>This mountain is too high.</i><br><i>This mountain is rather high.</i> |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

The superlative may be translated with *very*.

|                          |   |                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hic mōns est altissimus. | { | <i>This mountain is the highest.</i><br><i>This mountain is most high.</i><br><i>This mountain is very high.</i> |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## —Vocabulary—

|                                                     |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| ae'quus, -a, -um, level; fair, just;<br>like, equal | iūs'tus, -a, -um, right, just            |
| am'plus, -a, -um, large, ample                      | lae'tus, -a, -um, happy, joyful,<br>glad |
| bar'barus, -a, -um, foreign,<br>strange, barbarous  | nō'tus, -a, -um, famous, well-<br>known  |
| cer'tus, -a, -um, sure, certain                     | trīs'tis, -e, sad, grim                  |
| dī'ligēns, dīligen'tis, careful,<br>diligent        | ū'tilis, -e, useful, profitable          |
| fē'lix, fēlī'cis, happy, lucky                      | quam, (conj. and adv.) as, than,<br>how? |
| inī'quus, -a, -um, uneven; unfair;<br>unfavorable   |                                          |

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. Via longior est. 2. Iter longius est. 3. Puerī sunt dīligentissimī. 4. Poeta est tristissimus. 5. Ō fēlicissime dī-  
ērum! 6. Lēgēs sunt iūstissimae. 7. Erat fortior quam Mārcus.  
8. Nōn erat fortior Lūciō. 9. Mōns est altissimus. 10. Potentior  
est principibus.

## B. Translate.

1. The girl is very brave. 2. This is the shortest of all rivers.  
3. He was stronger than the soldier. 4. I saw the very powerful  
consul. 5. He gave it to the bolder general. 6. They were with  
the very famous poet. 7. It is on the highest hill. 8. His house  
is rather ample. 9. I see a very happy woman. 10. The laws are  
too unfair.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Haec via brevior est quod montēs paucī sunt. 2. Iter ā meā  
villā ad urbem rēgīnae est longissimum. 3. Gladii ūtiliōrēs quam  
librī in proeliō sunt. 4. Dē monte altiōre nostrī amīcī castra hos-  
tium dīligenter spectābant. 5. Lēgēs nostrae aequiōrēs lēgibus  
Germānōrum sunt. 6. Iūdicēs nōtissimī cum filiis et filiabus ad  
nostram urbem venient. 7. Hic lapis ā fortiōre quam tē iactus

est. 8. Paucis diēbus cōpiae amplissimae ad finēs barbarōrum iter longissimum fēcērunt. 9. Filiī mei certē diligentiōrēs quam tuī sunt. 10. Fortissimī Germānōrum ad rēgem potentem missī sunt.

**D. Translate.**

1. They were throwing very heavy stones down from the windows. 2. These girls are more careful than those boys, but the boys are faster. 3. We were not able to find the place, because the journey was very long. 4. This large fierce animal ought to be killed by a sword heavier than mine. 5. This river is very wide, but it is not very deep. 6. I have seen swords heavier than those of the Roman soldiers. 7. On that day we decided to walk to this very well-known place. 8. The camp was pitched at the foot of a mountain which was very high. 9. Caesar was the most diligent of all the generals in the Roman army. 10. The foreign boys were stronger than those in this city.

—*Reading*—

**ARION AND THE DOLPHIN**

Arion erat amplissimus poēta Graecus, cuius fāma erat nōtissima in omnibus terrīs. Ab patriā ad Italiā Siciliamque pervēnerat et carminibus multās urbēs laetās fēcit. Populī barbarī eī dōna dedērunt. Multis rēgibus fēlicior erat. Animālia fera eius carmine dēlectābantur; ad multam noctem stābant et id magnō cum gaudiō audiēbant. Hiems discesserat et Arion patriam nāve petēbat. Sed mare erat tūtius quam nāvis, nam nautae gladiūs in poētā impetum fēcērunt. Hic ab illis fugit et in aquam saluit. Arion tamen, ubi saliēbat, carmen tristissimum et pulcherrimum canēbat. Delphīnus quī hoc carmen audīvit poētā servāvit et in tergō ad patriam portāvit.



# 34

## Comparison of Adjectives in -er, -eus, -ius, -ilis Dative with Adjectives



*Inner view of Colosseum, Rome*

Simia quam similis, turpissima bestia, nobis!  
*How like us is that very ugly beast the monkey!*—CICERO

—Forms—

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -ER

All adjectives which end in **-er** in the masculine nominative singular, regardless of their declension, form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, **-rima**, **-rimum** to the masculine nominative singular of the positive (not to the base). The comparative is regular.

| POSITIVE                   | COMPARATIVE     | SUPERLATIVE           |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum | pulchrior, -ius | pulcherrimus, -a, -um |
| celer, celeris, celere     | celerior, -ius  | celerrimus, -a, -um   |

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -EUS OR -IUS

Adjectives of the first and second declensions which have **i** or **e** before the **-us** ending form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*.

| POSITIVE                            | COMPARATIVE                                    | SUPERLATIVE                                     |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| idōneus, -a, -um<br><i>suitable</i> | magis idōneus, -a, -um<br><i>more suitable</i> | maximē idōneus, -a, -um<br><i>most suitable</i> |

Such adjectives are compared thus to avoid forms which would be awkward to pronounce (just as we say "more beautiful" instead of "beautifuler").

### COMPARISON OF SOME ADJECTIVES IN -ILIS

**Facilis**, *easy*, **difficilis**, *difficult*, **similis**, *like*, and **dissimilis**, *unlike*, form the superlative by adding **-limus**, **-lima**, **-limum** to the base of the positive. The comparative is regular.

| POSITIVE       | COMPARATIVE       | SUPERLATIVE            |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| facilis, -e    | facilior, -ius    | facillimus, -a, -um    |
| difficilis, -e | difficilior, -ius | difficillimus, -a, -um |
| similis, -e    | similior, -ius    | simillimus, -a, -um    |
| dissimilis, -e | dissimilior, -ius | dissimillimus, -a, -um |

These are the only common adjectives in **-ilis** to have this form of the superlatives. The others are regular.

ūtilis, -e      ūtilior, -ius      ūtilissimus, -a, -um

### —Syntax—

#### DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative is used to complete the meaning of some adjectives, e.g.

|          |            |           |         |            |            |
|----------|------------|-----------|---------|------------|------------|
| amīcus   | difficilis | fīnitimus | nōtus   | propinquus | similis    |
| inimīcus | fidēlis    | grātus    | pār     | proximus   | dissimilis |
| facilis  |            | idōneus   | propior |            | ūtilis     |

Caesar amīcus Mārcō, inimīcus Lūciō est.

*Caesar is friendly to Marcus, but unfriendly to Lucius.*

Fīnitimī Gallis sunt Germānī.

*Neighboring to the Gauls are the Germans.*

Prīnceps barbarōrum pār Caesarī nōn est.

*The chief of the barbarians is not equal to Caesar.*

But, if the adjective is used as a noun, it requires the genitive:

Caesar amīcus Mārcī, inimīcus Lūcī est.

*Caesar is Marcus' friend but Lucius' enemy.*

### —Vocabulary—

|                                                |                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| au'reus, -a, -um, golden                       | propin'quus, -a, -um, near, nearby             |
| cu'pidus, -a, -um, eager, desirous             | propior, -ius, nearer                          |
| dex'ter, dex'tra, dex'trum, right              | proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next               |
| diffi'cilis, -e, difficult                     | sinis'ter, sinis'tra, sinis'trum, left         |
| dissi'milis, -e, unlike                        | va'lidus, -a, -um, strong                      |
| dū'rus, -a, -um, hard, harsh                   | ma'gis (adv.), more, more greatly              |
| fidē'lis, -e, faithful, loyal                  | magno'pere (adv.), greatly                     |
| idō'neus, -a, -um, suitable                    | max'imē (adv.), most, most greatly, especially |
| nō'bilis, -e, of high birth, noble, well-known | ni'si (conj.), unless, if . . . not, except    |
| pār, pa'ris, equal                             |                                                |
| pos'terus, -a, -um, following, next            |                                                |



— Word Study —

**Cupidus.** The objective genitive, not the dative, is used with **cupidus**.

Cupidus pecūniae est. { *He is desirous of money.*  
                                          *He is eager for money.*

**Posterus.** As an adjective this word is seldom seen except in expressions of time: **posterō diē**, *the next day*, **posterō annō**, *in the following year*. As a noun in the masculine plural, **posterī**, **posterōrum**, **m.**, it means *posterity*, *descendants*.

**Propinquus.** Used as a noun **propinquus**, **-ī**, **m.**, means *relation* or *kinsman*.

— Exercises —

- A. Compare the following, giving all nominative singular forms of all three degrees.

acer, celer, difficilis, dissimilis, facilis, idōneus, liber, miser, niger, nōbilis, pulcher, similis, ūtilis

- B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Cūr Mārcī amīcus mihi inimīcissimus est? 2. Nautae patriae nostrae hodiē dissimillimī sunt eīs quī in marī inter Britanniam et Galliam nāvigābant. 3. Noster exercitus cupidissimus pācis erat; posterō annō tamen fortiter pugnāvit. 4. Rōma est pulcherrima urbium mihi nōtārum. 5. Milītēs quī in proeliō superātī erant fidēlissimī imperātōrī erant. 6. Lēx tua est magis idōnea bellō quam pācī; mea aequē grāta cīvibus et mīlitibus est. 7. Num potes invenīre equum nōbiliōrem quam meum? 8. Ubi oppidum propinquum videram, posterō diē litterās ad meōs propinquōs scrīpsī. 9. Nōn pugnābit nisi eī gladium longiōrem dederis. 10. Hortus in quō ambulāmus est propinquus hortīs Caesaris.

- C. Translate.

1. A small white dog is sleeping in a chair in the garden which is near our villa. 2. The next day, those bad sailors were throwing stones at (towards) the consul's house. 3. Oughtn't you to be more friendly to Julia's kinsmen? 4. When we attacked the en-

emy's left wing the battle was very fierce and many very brave men were killed. 5. This sword is harder than that; it is also longer and wider. 6. If your friends will not be faithful to the commonwealth, they will be the most wretched of all men. 7. Which of these girls is most like the queen? 8. The noble chief was very similar to the king of that country. 9. This work is not very difficult for me, but it is more difficult than yours. 10. Marcus was stronger than Lucius, but Lucius was braver.

—Reading—

### A SOLDIER TELLS ABOUT HIS DEEDS

Marcus in exercitū Caesaris miles validus fuerat. In proeliis acerrimis pugnaverat, et vulnus gravissimum accēperat; itaque posterō annō ab imperatore in Italiam missus erat. Nunc in parvō oppidō cum filiō, Lūciō, filiāque pulcherrimā habitābat. Marcus Lūciō sorōrique eius fabulās dē bellō saepe nārrābat.

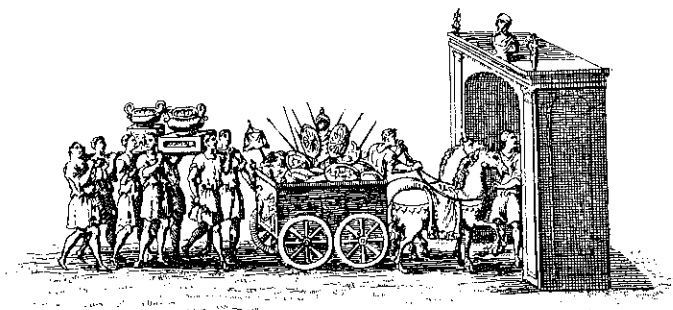
Lūcius, quī fabulās patris audire cupīvit, "Fortissimusne," inquit, "miles erās?"

Eī respondit Marcus, "Audī, Lūcī, haec. Caesar, ubi Helvētiōs ē Galliā expulit, in finēs Germānōrum iter longissimum faciēbat. Lēgātum idoneum mittere cōstituit cum epistulā ad legiōnem nōnam, quae in castris relictā erat. Mē epistulam portāre iussit. Posterā nocte per silvās contendēbam. Tum in mē vigintī hominēs impetum acerrimum gladiis fēcerunt . . ."

"Quid fēcistī, pater?" clāmāvit Lūcius.

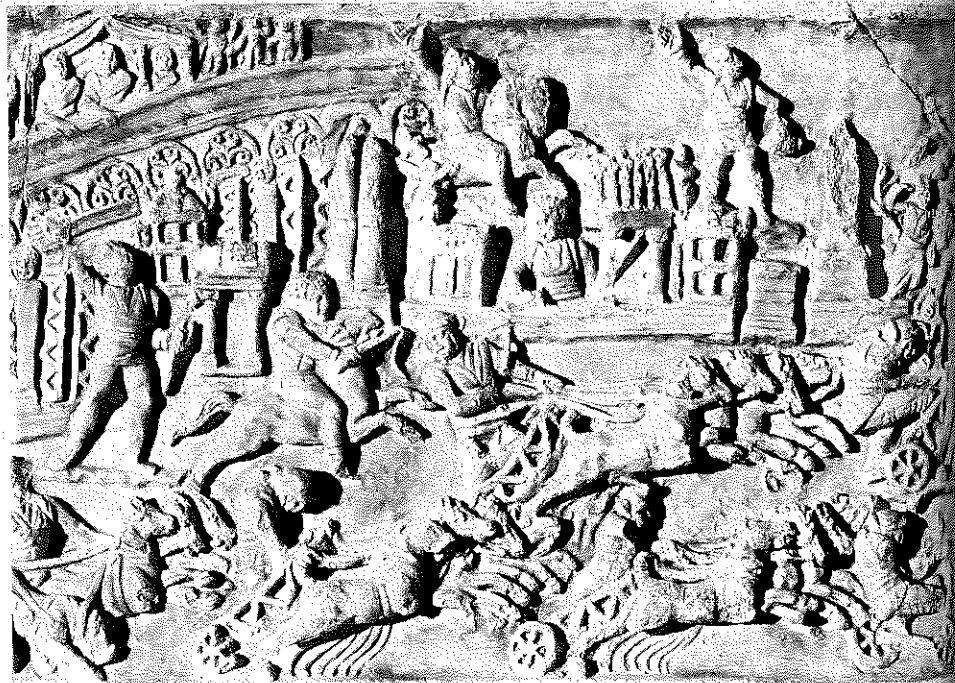
"Contrā eōs diū magnā cum virtūte pugnāvī. Septem hostēs interfēcī; quīnque vulnerāvī; reliquī ab eō locō fūgērunt. Post multās horās ad castra vēnī et ducī legiōnis epistulam dedī. Hanc ob rem ā Caesare laudātus sum. Nōne fortissimus eram?"

Lūcius patrem spectāvit sed nihil dīxit.



35

## Irregular Comparison of Adjectives



*Relief showing a chariot race*



Bonitas non est pessimis esse meliorem.  
*It is not goodness to be better than the worst.*—SENECA

—Forms—

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

A few very common adjectives have irregular comparatives and superlatives (like *good, better, best; bad, worse, worst* in English). These must be learned carefully.

|                                   |                                    |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| bo'nus, -a, -um,<br><i>good</i>   | me'lior, me'lius,<br><i>better</i> | op'timus, -a, -um,<br><i>best</i>     |
| ma'lus, -a, -um,<br><i>bad</i>    | pe'ior, pe'ius,<br><i>worse</i>    | pes'simus, -a, -um,<br><i>worst</i>   |
| mag'nus, -a, -um,<br><i>great</i> | ma'ior, ma'ius,<br><i>greater</i>  | max'imus, -a, -um,<br><i>greatest</i> |
| par'vus, -a, -um,<br><i>small</i> | mi'nor, mi'nus,<br><i>smaller</i>  | mi'nimus, -a, -um,<br><i>smallest</i> |
| mul'ti, -ae, -a,<br><i>many</i>   | plū'rēs, plū'ra,<br><i>more</i>    | plū'rimī, -ae, -a,<br><i>most</i>     |

Some other adjectives are defective in their comparison, lacking either a positive, a comparative, or a superlative.

#### Lacking a positive

|                                          |                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| — exte'rior, exte'rius, <i>outer</i>     | extrē'mus, -a, -um, <i>outer-<br/>most, farthest, last, end of</i> |
| — īnfe'rior, īnfe'rius, <i>lower</i>     | īn'fimus, -a, -um or ī'mus, -a,<br>-um, <i>lowest, bottom of</i>   |
| — inte'rior, inte'rius, <i>inner</i>     | in'timus, -a, -um, <i>inmost</i>                                   |
| — pri'or, pri'us, <i>former, earlier</i> | pri'mus, -a, -um, <i>first, fore-<br/>most</i>                     |
| — pro'pior, pro'pius, <i>nearer</i>      | prox'imus, -a, -um, <i>nearest,<br/>next</i>                       |
| — supe'rior, supe'rius, <i>higher</i>    | sum'mus, -a, -um, <i>highest,<br/>top of</i>                       |
| — ulte'rior, ulte'rius, <i>farther</i>   | ul'timus, -a, -um, <i>farthest</i>                                 |

#### Lacking a comparative

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| mul'tus, -a, -um, <i>much</i> | — plu'rimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i> |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|

#### Lacking a superlative

|                            |                      |   |
|----------------------------|----------------------|---|
| se'nex, se'nis, <i>old</i> | senior, <i>older</i> | — |
|----------------------------|----------------------|---|

## —Vocabulary—

|                                             |                                |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| plūs, plū'ris, n., more, a larger<br>amount | nā'tū, by birth                |
| me'dius, -a, -um, middle of                 | pro'pe, (adv.) nearly, almost; |
| se'nex, se'nis, old (masculine only)        | (prep. w. acc.) near           |

## —Word Study—

**Defective comparisons**

**Multus.** To replace the missing comparative of **multus** we use the noun **plūs, plūris, n.**, with a genitive of the whole (partitive genitive).

Da mihi plūs cibī. Give me more food (more of food).

**Senex.** To provide a superlative for **senex**, use **maximus nātū**, oldest (greatest by birth). **Maior nātū** is sometimes used for the comparative instead of **senior**. **Senex** has no neuter or feminine. It is not an **i**-stem.

**Medius**, like **reliquus**, contains within itself the partitive idea of; it is not used with the genitive.

in mediō campō in the middle of the plain

The same is usually true of **summus**, and frequently of **extrēmus, īmus**, and **īfimus**.

in summō monte on top of the mountain  
in extrēmā viā at the end of the road

## —Exercises—

**A. Translate.**

1. more girls
2. more wine
3. the oldest soldier
4. to the top of the house
5. in the middle of the camp
6. from the bottom of the river
7. near the town
8. nearer to the town
9. next to the town
10. at the end of the island

**B. Read the Latin and translate.**

1. Militēs ā dextrō cornū fortiōrēs in proeliō quam hostēs erant.
2. Erat fidēlis amīcīs quī in ponte nocte captī sunt.
3. Hī librī

meliōrēs sunt illīs; ab optimō poētā scrīpti sunt. 4. Posterō diē equitēs flūminī propiōrēs erant quam peditēs, quī sub monte erant. 5. Num Lūcius maior nātū tuōrum filiōrum est? 6. Castra maxima ab eōrum exercitū trāns illud flūmēn posita sunt. 7. Nāvēs Rōmānōrum dissimillimae nāvibus hostium erant. 8. Senex quī in hōc oppidō habitat quīnque mīlia passuum ad mediam silvam hodiē ambulāvit. 9. Fēlix nōn est is quī fēlicior miserrimīs est. 10. Suntne plūrēs cīvēs in hāc urbe quam in illā?

C. Translate.

1. The right wing of our army was coming towards the large plain. 2. At midnight shouts were heard in the middle of the town. 3. The cavalry on our left wing are nearer to the camp than to the river. 4. This man is better than the worst people; but shall we call him good? 5. The teacher is very eager for more books. 6. Very many citizens were not able to flee when the town was taken. 7. From the top of the mountain we can look at the sea across the plains. 8. In that town we shall find more horses and more grain. 9. Which is the oldest of your three sons? 10. Near the bridge which is next to the town the river is very deep.

—Reading—

ANDROCLES AND THE LION

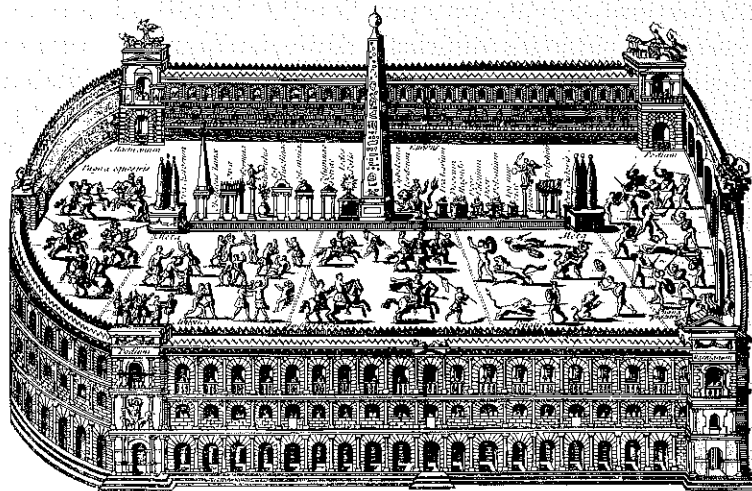
Androclus erat servus quī cum dominō iniquō ad urbem in Āfricā pervēnit. Ob plūrimās iniuriās dominī ad fugam in ultimōs montēs coāctus est. In summō monte in maximā spēluncā habitābat.

Ōlim Androclus ubi cibum petēbat leōnem vidit. Maximus erat eius timor et in interiōrem partem spēluncae fūgit. Sed leō nōn ferus erat, et vēnit in spēluncam maximā cum difficultāte, nam in pede erat spīna, quae eī magnum dolōrem faciēbat. Tum Androclī misericordia erat maior timōre; leō signīs auxilium petēbat. Androclus spīnam vulnere expressit. Leō grātissimus erat atque hī duo, vir animalque, in spēluncā trēs annōs habitāvērunt et erant optimī amīcī.



# 36

## Comparison of Adverbs Ablative of Degree of Difference Temporal and Causal Clauses



*A Renaissance drawing of a Roman Circus showing five different circus games*

Canis timidus vehementius latrat quam mordet.  
*A timid dog barks more violently than it bites.*—CURTIUS RUFUS

—Forms—

**COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

**The Comparative.** For the comparative of an adverb we use the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective from which it is derived.

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| bene, <i>well</i>           | melius, <i>better</i>           |
| celeriter, <i>swiftly</i>   | celerius, <i>more swiftly</i>   |
| liberē, <i>freely</i>       | liberius, <i>more freely</i>    |
| male, <i>badly</i>          | peius, <i>worse</i>             |
| similiter, <i>similarly</i> | similius, <i>more similarly</i> |
| validē, <i>strongly</i>     | validius, <i>more strongly</i>  |

**The Superlative.** The superlative of an adverb is formed by changing the *us* of the superlative adjective to *ē*.

|              |             |                       |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| optimus      | optimē      | <i>best</i>           |
| celerrimus   | celerrimē   | <i>most swiftly</i>   |
| liberrimus   | liberrimē   | <i>most freely</i>    |
| pessimus     | pessimē     | <i>worst</i>          |
| simillimus   | simillimē   | <i>most similarly</i> |
| validissimus | validissimē | <i>most strongly</i>  |

**Adverbs which have no corresponding adjectives**

|                                               |                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| diū, <i>for a long time</i>                   | saepe, <i>often</i>           |
| diūtius, <i>for a longer time, any longer</i> | saepius, <i>more often</i>    |
| diūtissimē, <i>for the longest time</i>       | saepissimē, <i>most often</i> |

—Syntax—

**Accusative as Adverb.** Since all accusatives are used in one way or another to limit the action of a verb, all accusatives might be called adverbial. This is why the accusative singular of the comparative adjective is used as a comparative adverb. Similarly, to form the

adverbs of some adjectives in the positive degree we merely put them into the neuter accusative singular (instead of giving them an adverbial ending, *-ē* or *-ter*).

*facile, easily; multum, much; primum, for the first time*

### ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

The ablative is often used adverbially with comparatives, also with **ante** and **post**, to express the degree of difference.

*Multō fortius pugnat.*

*He fights much more bravely. (literally, more bravely by much.)*

*Paulō ante vēnit. He came a little while ago. (literally, before by a little).*

*Multis post annis Germānī Rōmam oppugnāvērunt.*

*Many years later the Germans attacked Rome. (Literally, afterward by many years).*

### QUAM WITH THE SUPERLATIVE

**Quam** is used with the superlative to express *as . . . as possible*.

*Venīte quam primum. Come as soon as possible.*

Some form of **possum** is to be understood, and is sometimes expressed, with this construction.

*Venīte quam primum potestis. Come as soon as you can.*

### TEMPORAL AND CAUSAL CLAUSES

You have already been using subordinate clauses introduced by **ubi**, *when*, and **quod**, *because*. Clauses introduced by **ubi**, *when*, are called temporal clauses. Temporal clauses may also be introduced by **ut**, *as, when*, **postquam**, *after* (**post**, *later*, **quam**, *than*), and **simul atque**, *as soon as, at the same time as*. Clauses introduced by **quod**, *because*, are called causal clauses; they may also be introduced by **ut**, *as, since*.

### —Vocabulary—

*pau'lum, -ī, n., a little*

*cotī'diē, (adv.) daily, every day*

*de'inde, (adv.) then, next*

*e'ō, (adv.) there, to that place*

*hūc, (adv.) here, to this place*

*il'lūc, (adv.) there, to that place*

*there*



nōn'dum, (adv.) *not yet*  
 num'quam, (adv.) *never*  
 pae'ne, (adv.) *almost*  
 quō, (interr. adv.) *where to?, to*  
     *what place?*

si'mul, (adv.) *at the same time*  
 sta'tim, (adv.) *at once,*  
     *immediately*  
 tan'dem, (adv.) *at length, at last,*  
     *finally*

at'que, (conj.) *as (after aequē,*  
     *pariter, and simul)*  
 post'quam, (conj.) *after*  
 ut, (conj.) *how, as, when, since*

### — Exercises —

#### A. Translate.

1. much more fiercely    2. as fiercely as possible    3. a little more often
4. as soon as possible    5. Where is he?    6. Where is he walking (to)?
7. after many years    8. many years later    9. on the right wing
10. two paces longer

~~~~~

Prīmō is used as an ablative of time when, *at first*. It is also used to modify other words in the ablative of time when in the following idioms:

prīmā aestāte, *at the beginning of summer*
 prīmā lūce, *at daybreak* prīmā nocte, *early in the night*

~~~~~

#### B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Ut in hortō ambulābam vidī avēs quibus pulchriōrēs numquam videram.
2. Paucīs diēbus ante, rei pūblicae pecūniam dare tandem coāctus erat.
3. Prīmō ad urbem quam celerrimē cucurrī; deinde victōriam principī nūtiāvī.
4. Prīmā nocte cīvēs in opidum omnia animālia dūcere cōstituērunt.
5. Simul atque in silvam vēnit, magnopere territa est clāmōribus.
6. Postquam ad summum montem pervēnērunt, facillimē poterant vidēre ignēs.
7. Milītēs Caesaris multō fortius quam Germānī in Galliā conten-

dēbant. 8. Lēgātī officia quam dīligentissimē facere dēbent. 9. Prīmā aestāte nostrī cum hostibus in Galliā diū atque acriter pugnābant. 10. Fēmina aquam minus facile quam servus portāre poterat.

C. Translate.

1. You will never be able to see my friends if you do not run as quickly as possible. 2. She had not yet seen a more friendly woman than Julia's mother. 3. After you finished your work, what did you do next? 4. The animals on the top of the mountain immediately ran toward the river as soon as they saw the fires. 5. As there was danger of war, Caesar led the troops very quickly from Italy into Gaul. 6. They broke camp at daybreak and marched many miles through the territory of the Romans. 7. On the next night we remained in the city and watched the games. 8. The Germans were much larger than the Gauls, but the latter fought more bravely. 9. A few days later, the right wing of our army easily forced the enemy to leave the camp. 10. Our commander ought to wage war as fiercely as possible.

—Reading—

**HANNIBAL CROSSES THE RHONE**

Hannibal, nōtissimus Carthāginiēnsium imperātor, postquam urbem in Hispāniā, Saguntum, cuius populus erat socius Rōmānōrum, cēpit, bellum cum Rōmānīs in Italiā gerere cōstituit.

Multis cum equitibus et peditibus et elephantīs itineribus maximīs per Pŷrēnaeōs montēs ad flūmen Rhodanum tandem pervēnit. Ibi cōsul Rōmānus ad ostium flūminis castra posuerat et hostēs cotidiē exspectābat.

Hannibal nāvēs quam celerrimē coēgit et exercitum trāns flūmen dūcere parābat. Sed prīmō Hannōnem cōpiārum partem quam prīmum flūmen trādūcere et ā tergō impetum in Rōmānōs facere iussit.

Simul Hannibal nāvibus reliquās cōpiās trādūxit et partem equitum ad castra Rōmāna mīsīt. Simul atque Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, proelium equestre statim commīsērunt. Illī hostēs nōn facile vicērunt, sed tandem Carthāginiēnsēs in fugam dedērunt.

Diligentia maximum etiam mediocris ingeni subsidium.  
*Diligence is a very great help even to a mediocre intelligence.*

— SENECA

## REVIEW 9 (LESSONS 33–36)

### — Vocabulary Drill —

- A. Give the other nominative forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives.

|          |            |         |            |
|----------|------------|---------|------------|
| aequus   | diligēns   | inīquus | posterus   |
| amplus   | difficilis | iūstus  | propinquus |
| aureus   | dissimilis | laetus  | senex      |
| barbarus | dūrus      | medius  | sinister   |
| certus   | fēlix      | nōbilis | summus     |
| cupidus  | fidēlis    | nōtus   | tristis    |
| dexter   | idōneus    | par     | ūtilis     |
|          |            |         | validus    |

- B. Give the meaning of:

|         |           |          |        |
|---------|-----------|----------|--------|
| atque   | magnopere | numquam  | quam   |
| cotidiē | multum    | paene    | quō    |
| deinde  | nātū      | postquam | simul  |
| eō      | nisi      | primum   | statim |
| hūc     | nōndum    | prope    | tandem |
| illūc   |           |          | ut     |

### — Drill on Forms —

- A. Compare the following adjectives, giving all nominative singular forms of all three degrees.

|          |         |         |         |
|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| diligēns | ūtilis  | parvus  | miser   |
| malus    | nōbilis | magnus  | bonus   |
| pulcher  | celer   | facilis | similis |
| ācer     | iūstus  | longus  | dūrus   |

**B. Compare the following adverbs.**

|         |           |           |           |
|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| bene    | lātē      | celeriter | facile    |
| ācritēr | magnopere | male      | fidēliter |
| saepe   | miserē    | longē     | diū       |

**C. Give the following forms.**

1. the genitive masculine singular of the comparatives of *dūrus*, *bonus*, and *idōneus*
2. the dative feminine singular of *aureus*, *dexter*, and of the superlative of *nōbilis*
3. the accusative masculine singular of *pār*, *fēlix*, and of the comparative of *malus*
4. the ablative feminine singular of *fidēlis*, *ūtilis*, and of the comparative of *diligēns*
5. the nominative neuter plural of *diligēns*, *pār*, and of the comparative of *parvus*
6. the genitive neuter plural of *iūstus* and of the comparatives of *facilis* and *multī*
7. the dative feminine plural of *barbarus*, *difficilis*, and of the superlative of *ācer*
8. the accusative masculine plural of *senex*, *sinister*, and of the comparative of *dissimilis*

## —Drill on Syntax—

**A. Translate.**

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>prīmā nocte</i>          | 6. <i>pariter atque</i>          |
| 2. <i>post paucōs diēs</i>     | 7. <i>in imō marī</i>            |
| 3. <i>fēlicissimus hominum</i> | 8. <i>quam facillimum</i>        |
| 4. <i>multīs post annīs</i>    | 9. <i>fīnitimī Rōmānōrum</i>     |
| 5. <i>amīcior mihi</i>         | 10. <i>tribus pedibus altior</i> |

**B. Translate.**

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. as soon as        | 6. at daybreak        |
| 2. more money        | 7. rather badly       |
| 3. on the right wing | 8. most like the king |
| 4. too unfairly      | 9. eager for food     |
| 5. more horses       | 10. every day         |



—Exercises—

A. Translate.

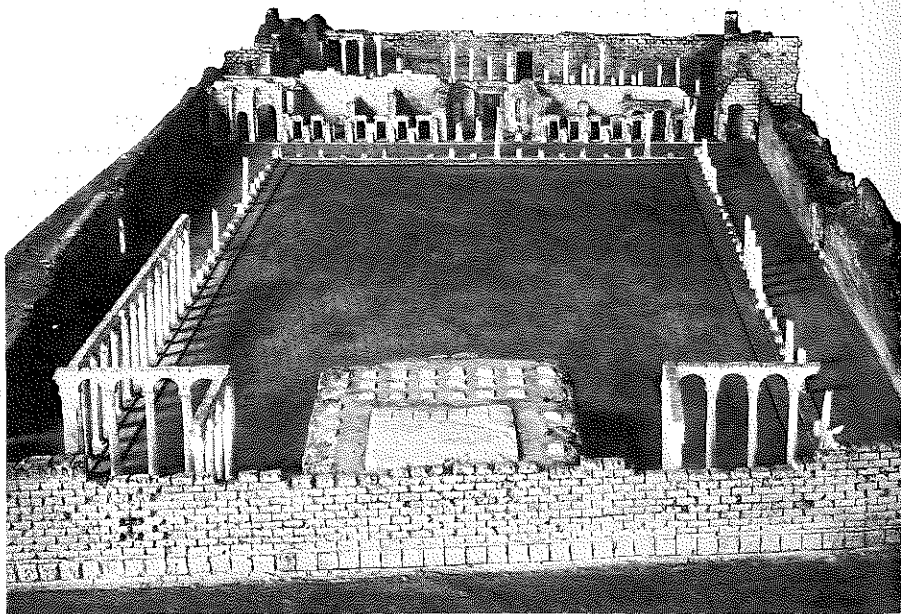
1. Simul atque ad summum montem pervēnī, "Quam pulchra," inquam, "est haec terra in quā habitāmus!" 2. Ut perīculum bellī multō maius est, dēbēmus in oppidum et plūs frūmentī et plūra arma portāre. 3. Prīmā lūce ad extrēmam silvam quam celerrimē cucurrērunt, atque postquam eō pervēnērunt pulcherrimam urbem vīdērunt. 4. Quod Mārcus in lūdīs cotīdiē gladiō pugnat dextra manus paulō maior est sinistrā. 5. Ille rēx, quī imperī cupidissimus est, pār est ducibus cīvītātum Graecārum; sed Caesaris pār nōndum est. 6. Prīmō mīlitēs ab hostium dextrō cornū cum nostrīs diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt; deinde paulum cessērunt; tandem fūgērunt. 7. Mārcus prope duōbus pedibus altior quam soror est; sed illa multō pulchrior est. 8. Ut ambulābat in hortō quī proximus est flūminī tum primum vīdit eam puellam quam amat. 9. Tū quī maximus deōrum es, mē audī et fac mē fēliciōrem. 10. Iubē, Lūcī, puerōs quam primum venīre, nam magister in lūdō diūtius manēre nōn potest.

B. Translate.

1. That book is too big; don't you have a book more suitable for this boy, who is rather small? 2. As soon as the cavalry on the right wing saw the enemy they attacked their left wing as fiercely as possible. 3. My sister is very like your daughter, who is not unlike Julia; which is the most beautiful of these girls? 4. As the consul will not stay much longer, you ought to arrive in the city as soon as possible. 5. In early summer they came to the middle of a very large forest, and there they saw animals whose horns were much bigger than those which are known to us. 6. Caesar's friend is much more friendly to me than to you; nevertheless he likes you a little. 7. After they fought long and fiercely in the plain next to the forest, they could not fight any longer. 8. Marcus is the tallest of my father's brothers. 9. With his left hand he was holding a heavy stone; with his right he aimed at the chief of the barbarians with a much heavier stone. 10. I first saw that very large bird as I was walking to the top of the mountain near our city.

# 37

## Demonstratives Ipse, Idem Irregular Adjectives Ablative of Specification



*Model of the Forum of Septimius Severus at Leptis Magna*

Aliena nobis, nostra plus aliis placent.  
*Other people's things are more pleasing to us, and  
 ours to other people.*—PUBLILIUS SYRUS

—Forms—

**IPSE AND IDEM**

The intensive demonstrative adjective **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself (ourselves, yourselves, themselves)*, is declined like **ille** except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

|      | SINGULAR |         |         | PLURAL   |          |          |
|------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| NOM. | ip'se    | ip'sa   | ip'sum  | ip'sī    | ip'sae   | ip'sa    |
| GEN. | ipsī'us  | ipsī'us | ipsī'us | ipsō'rum | ipsā'rum | ipsō'rum |
| DAT. | ip'sī    | ip'sī   | ip'sī   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   |
| ACC. | ip'sum   | ip'sam  | ip'sum  | ip'sōs   | ip'sās   | ip'sa    |
| ABL. | ip'sō    | ip'sā   | ip'sō   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   | ip'sīs   |

The demonstrative adjective **īdem**, *the same*, is a compound of **is** with the suffix **-dem**, with some changes in spelling to make pronunciation easier.

| SINGULAR    |           |           |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOMINATIVE: | ī'dem     | ea'dem    | i'dem     |
| GENITIVE:   | eius'dem  | eius'dem  | eius'dem  |
| DATIVE:     | eī'dem    | eī'dem    | eī'dem    |
| ACCUSATIVE: | eun'dem   | ean'dem   | i'dem     |
| ABLATIVE:   | eō'dem    | eā'dem    | eō'dem    |
| PLURAL      |           |           |           |
| NOMINATIVE: | eī'dem    | eae'dem   | ea'dem    |
| GENITIVE:   | eōrun'dem | eārun'dem | eōrun'dem |
| DATIVE:     | eīs'dem   | eīs'dem   | eīs'dem   |
| ACCUSATIVE: | eōs'dem   | eās'dem   | ea'dem    |
| ABLATIVE:   | eīs'dem   | eīs'dem   | eīs'dem   |

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

The following first and second declension adjectives are declined like **ūnus**, with **-ius** in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular. The plurals are regular, like that of **malus**.

al'ter, al'tera, al'terum,    *the other (of two), second*  
 neu'ter, neu'tra, neu'trum,    *neither*  
 nūl'lus, -a, -um,    *no, not any*  
 sō'lus, -a, -um,    *only, alone*  
 tō'tus, -a, -um,    *whole, entire*  
 ūl'lus, -a, -um,    *any*  
 u'ter, u'tra, u'trum,    *which (of two)?*

**A'lius, a'lia, a'liud**, *other, another*, is also declined like the above adjectives, except that (like **ille**) it has **-ud** in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

**Uter'que, utra'que, utrum'que**, *each (of two)*, is declined throughout like **uter** with the suffix **-que** added.

### —Syntax—

#### THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect the quality of a noun, adjective, or verb applies.

Rēx nōmine erat.    *He was king in name (with respect to name).*  
 Mārcus tibi pār virtūte est.    *Marcus is equal to you in courage.*

### —Vocabulary—

her'ba, -ae, f., *grass*  
 subsi'dium, subsi'dī, n., *aid, support*  
 to'ga, -ae, f., *toga*  
 vic'tor, victō'ris, m., *victor*

aliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, another's*  
 quis'que, quid'que, *each one*  
 un'de, (rel. adv.) *whence, from where, from which, (interr. adv.) whence?, where from?*  
 un'dique, *from everywhere, from all sides, on all sides*



— Word Study —

**Alius, alter.** **Alius** and **alter**, when repeated, have special meanings.

alius . . . alius . . . *one . . . another*  
alter . . . alter . . . *the one . . . the other*

Imperātor aliam partem agit, aliam lēgātus.

*A commander plays one part, a lieutenant another.*

Duōs frātrēs habeo; alter Mārcus, alter Lūcius vocātur.

*I have two brothers; the one is called Marcus, the other Lucius.*

If it appears in two different cases, **alius** may also be translated *some . . . one; some . . . another*.

Alii in aliam partem ambulābunt.

*Some will walk in one direction, some in another.*

Alter is used similarly.

Alter in alteram partem ambulabit.

*The one will walk in one direction, the other in the other.*

**Alter, second,** may be used as an ordinal numeral, instead of **secundus**.

**Toga.** The toga was the white wool trapezoidal outer garment of a Roman citizen, and had to be worn at all political or religious functions. It was forbidden to respectable women and to foreigners.

— Exercises —

A. Translate.

1. utrīus puellae? 2. alterī militi 3. cīvium ipsōrum 4. utrīque puerō
5. in ipsā villā 6. ab eādem urbe 7. aliud oppidum
8. alterum oppidum 9. equus alterius 10. equus aliēnus

B. Translate.

1. of the farmer himself 2. on the same day 3. which wing (of the army)?
4. another's authority 5. each hand 6. the other house
7. another house 8. towards the city itself 9. other citizens
10. of the entire town

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Uterque puer equōs in agrō spectābat, sed neuter eōs capere poterat. 2. Sōlī militī quī in hāc pugnā nōn interfectus est rēx praemium dedit villam agrōsque lātissimōs. 3. Agricola duōs filiōs habēbat, quōrum alter Mārcus appellātus est, alter Lūcius. 4. Uterque exercitus castra eōdem tempore reliquit; alter in Helvētiā, alter ad Italiā contendit. 5. Caesar ipse cōpiās in proelium contrā hostēs semper dūcēbat. 6. Utrum animal corpore maius est? 7. Sōlī civēs Rōmānī togās gerere poterant. 8. Eādem nocte quisque clāmōrēs per tōtius urbis viās audīvit. 9. Unde vēnērunt eae nāvēs quās ipse in mediō flūmine vīdī? 10. Sī alter cōsul exercitum redūxerit victōrem, quid praemī cuique militī dare dēbēmus?

## D. Translate.

1. After the shouts of the soldiers were heard from all sides, some citizens ran to the gates of the town, and others remained in the middle of the streets. 2. We shall surrender our arms to Caesar alone; we shall yield to no other commander. 3. The one dog was in the garden; we found the other in the grass behind the farmhouse. 4. The same poet has written a book about the nature of things; which one of you (two) has seen it? 5. Caesar himself saw the enemy, and at the same time the auxiliary troops ran from the camp. 6. He finally was able to find each one of the boys who had thrown the stones. 7. The king ruled the people of the whole nation fairly for many years. 8. Tell me this: which boy is stronger in courage? 9. The commander of the garrison was sitting on a horse in the middle of the field. 10. Neither daughter wanted to walk with the mother to the town.

## —Reading—

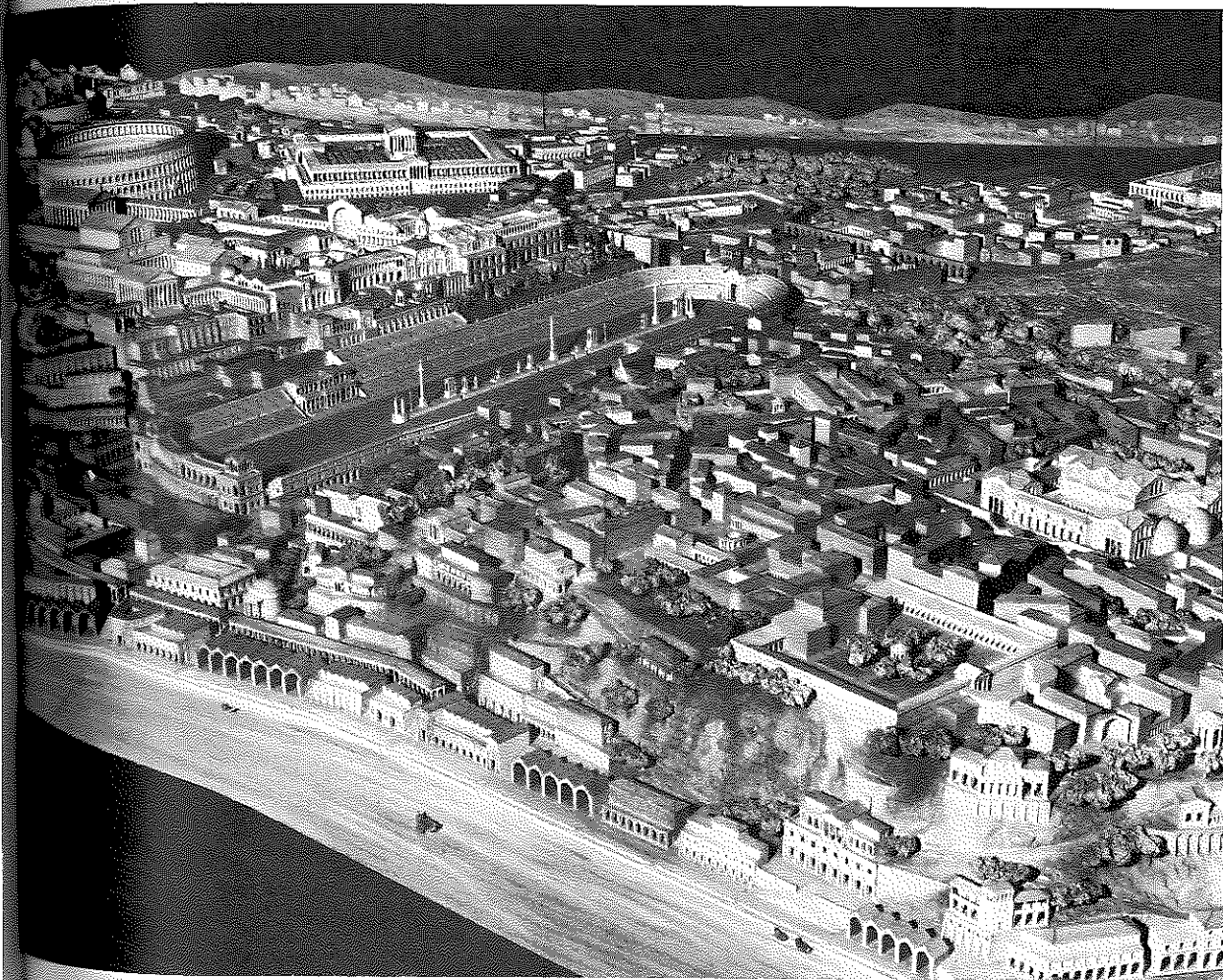
## HANNIBAL ENCAMPS AT THE TICINUS

Post proelium equestre cum Rōmānīs ad Rhodanum Hannibal cōpiās Carthāginiēnsēs trāns Alpēs maximā cum difficultātē dūxit. In hīs montibus altissimīs aliae gentēs Gallōrum Hannibalī amīcae, aliae inimīcae erant. Ubi ad summās Alpēs exercitus pervēnit, in castrīs biduum remānsit et imperātor ipse militibus campōs Italiāe quī sub

montibus vidēri poterant dēmōstrāvit. Postea omnēs ad flūmen Ticīnum brevī tempore pervēnērunt.

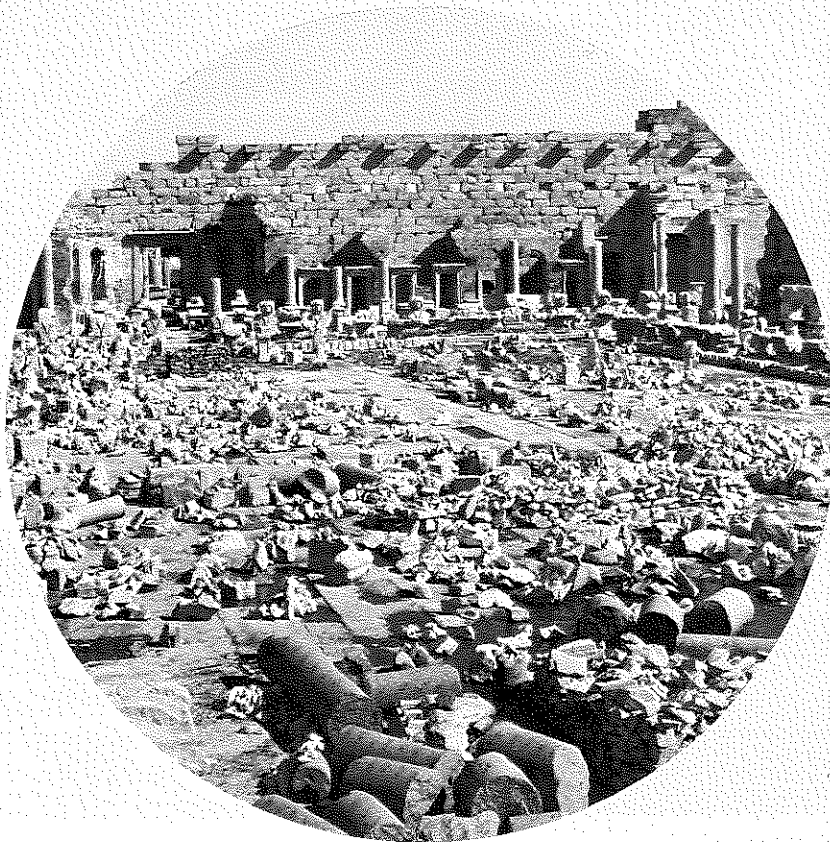
Hōc locō Hannibal cōpiās convocāvit. "Militēs," inquit, "sī eundem animum habueritis quem quisque vestrum habēbat in priōribus rēbus, vincētis. Ab ultimīs finibus terrārum vīgintī annīs hūc pervēnistis. Hōc annō per montēs flūminaue tōtius Hispāniae magna itinera fēcistis. Mox fortuna vōbīs labōrum finem dabit. Atque vestra erunt praemia quibus ampliōra dī hominibus numquam dedērunt."

*Panorama of Ancient Rome showing Colosseum and Circus Maximus*



38

Subjective and  
Objective  
Infinitives



*Basilica in the Forum of Septimius Severus at Leptis Magnis*



Aliquando et insanire iucundum est.  
*It is sometimes pleasant even to act like a madman.*—SENECA

—Forms—

INFINITIVES

The infinitive has three tenses; present, perfect and future, and it has both voices, active and passive. There is no future passive infinitive.

**Present Infinitive.** The forms of the present infinitive, active and passive, have been given in Lesson 32.

**Perfect Active Infinitive.** The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem.

vocāvis'*se*, to have called  
 monuis'*se*, to have warned  
 rēxis'*se*, to have ruled  
 cēpis'*se*, to have taken  
 audīvis'*se*, to have heard

**Perfect Passive Infinitive.** The perfect passive infinitive is like the perfect passive indicative, but with *esse* replacing *sum, es, est*, etc.

vocātus, -a, -um *esse*, to have been called  
 monitus, -a, -um *esse*, to have been warned  
 rēctus, -a, -um *esse*, to have been ruled  
 captus, -a, -um *esse*, to have been taken  
 audītus, -a, -um *esse*, to have been heard

**Future Active Infinitive.** The future active infinitive is formed by adding *-ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum* to the stem of the fourth principal part. *Esse* is sometimes added.

vocātū'*rus*, -a, -um *esse*, to be about to call  
 monitū'*rus*, -a, -um *esse*, to be about to warn  
 rēctū'*rus*, -a, -um *esse*, to be about to rule  
 captū'*rus*, -a, -um *esse*, to be about to take  
 audītū'*rus*, -a, -um *esse*, to be about to hear

## SUMMARY OF INFINITIVES

|         | ACTIVE                                                                               | PASSIVE                                                                    |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT | vocāre<br>monēre<br>regere<br>capere<br>audire                                       | vocārī<br>monērī<br>regī<br>capī<br>audīrī                                 |
| PERFECT | vocāvisse<br>monuisse<br>rēxisse<br>cēpisse<br>audivisse                             | vocātus esse<br>monitus esse<br>rēctus esse<br>captus esse<br>audītus esse |
| FUTURE  | vocātūrus esse<br>monitūrus esse<br>rēctūrus esse<br>captūrus esse<br>audītūrus esse |                                                                            |

## —Syntax—

## SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE INFINITIVES

The infinitive may be used as a noun, and so can be the subject or direct object of a verb. As a noun the infinitive is neuter singular nominative or accusative.

- Laudārī est grātum. *It is pleasant to be praised.*  
*Being praised is pleasant.*
- Tē nāvigāre docēbō. *I shall teach you to sail.*  
*I shall teach you sailing.*
- Timuit manēre in silvā. *He feared to remain in the forest.*  
*He was afraid to remain in the forest.*
- Lūdōs spectāre puerōs dēlectāvit. *It pleased the boys to watch the games.*  
*Watching the games pleased the boys.*
- Amō ambulāre. *I like to walk. I like walking.*
- Cupīvit discēdere. *He desired to depart.*
- Labōrāre incēpit. *He began to work. He began working.*

Parant venīre. *They are preparing to come.*  
 Temptābam vidēre urbem. *I was trying to see the city.*

For the other two uses of the infinitive see Lesson 32.

### — Vocabulary —

clau'dō, clau'dere, clau'sī, clau'sum, *shut, close*  
 crēs'cō, crēs'cere, crē'vī, crē'tum, *grow, increase*  
 dēs'itō, dēs'itere, dēs'titī, dēs'titum, *leave off, stop*  
 du'bitō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *doubt; hesitate*  
 fran'gō, fran'gere, frē'gī, frāc'tum, *break*  
 īn'struō, īnstru'ere, īnstrūx'ī, īnstrūc'tum, *pile up, draw up; equip*  
 iun'gō, iun'gere, iūnx'ī, iūnc'tum, *join*  
 la'vō, lavā're, lā'vī, lau'tum, *wash*  
 lū'dō, lū'dere, lū'sī, lū'sum, *play; mock*  
 pre'mō, pre'mere, pres'sī, pres'sum, *press; crush, overpower*  
 pro'bō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *prove; approve of*  
 reci'piō, reci'pere, recē'pī, recep'tum, *accept, receive; take back*  
 remīt'tō, remīt'tere, remī'sī, remis'sum, *send back, let go back*  
 remo'veō, removē're, remō'vī, remō'tum, *move back*  
 tra'hō, tra'here, trāx'ī, trāc'tum, *draw, drag*  
 va'leō, valē're, va'luī, va'litum, *be well, be strong*

### — Word Study —

**Claudō.** In compounds **claudō** becomes, -clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum: **inclūdō**, *shut in*, etc.

**Dubitō**, when it means *hesitate*, takes a complementary infinitive.

Dubitavērunt ex urbe excēdere. *They hesitated to leave the city.*

**Premō.** In compounds **premō** becomes -primo, -primere, -pressī, -pressum: **exprimō**, *press out*, etc.

**Valeō.** The present active imperatives of **valeō** are used as parting salutations: **valē**, **valēte**, *goodbye, farewell*.

"Valē," inquit, "amīce." *He said, "Farewell, friend."*

**Valēre iubeō** is *I bid farewell*.

Socium vālēre iussit. *He bade his companion farewell.*

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate, naming the use of each infinitive.

1. Nōn poterant trahere carrum. 2. Dēbēs claudere iānuam.
3. Cupisne lūdere? 4. Cōstituērunt dōnum recipere.
5. Poterant removērī. 6. Puerōs currere iubēbit. 7. Mīlītēs ambulāre coāctī sunt. 8. Poterāsne epistulam remittere? 9. Lavārī parāverant. 10. Mīlītēs iter facere iubentur.

## B. Translate, naming the use of each infinitive.

1. You ought to listen to me. 2. They will start to flee. 3. He has decided not to finish the wall. 4. Caesar ordered the men to be led into camp. 5. Are you afraid to see him? 6. They forced the line of battle to depart. 7. Do you hesitate to come? 8. It ought to be placed here. 9. We shall begin to build a camp. 10. He was preparing to sail.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Lēgātus postquam aciem instrūxit legiōnem impetum facere in hostēs iussit. 2. Bonum nōn est omnia timēre. 3. Uter lēgātus mīlītēs ā sinistrō cornū ē pugnā excēdere coēgit? 4. Omnēs fēminae et puellae puerique longē ā proeliō remōtī erant. 5. "Valē," inquit, "ad aliam īnsulam crās sōlus discēdam." 6. Nōs numerō mīlitum superant; dēbēmus tamen pugnāre quam fortissimē. 7. Pater statim utrumque filium gladium frangere coēgit. 8. Eīdem equī frūmentum multa mīlia passuum per tōtam silvam trahere potuērunt. 9. Imperātor ipse equitēs ad castra remittī iussit. 10. Fēminae optimae dīligentiam filiārum laudāre dēbent.

## D. Translate.

1. "I have come myself as quickly as possible," he said, "because I want to see my friends." 2. The poet, who was writing another book, could not be found. 3. "It is bad to be sent from the city," said the consul. 4. The barbarian king compelled the people to give money to the state alone. 5. When he left the farmhouse he bade (his) brothers and sisters farewell. 6. If you cannot come to me, I shall come to you. 7. The bravest of our soldiers cannot be defeated by any enemy. 8. Each one ought to defend (his) country from all enemies with great courage. 9. We were not able to



drag the body of the horse from the road. 10. Which consul (of the two) ordered that those books be thrown into the fire?

—Reading—

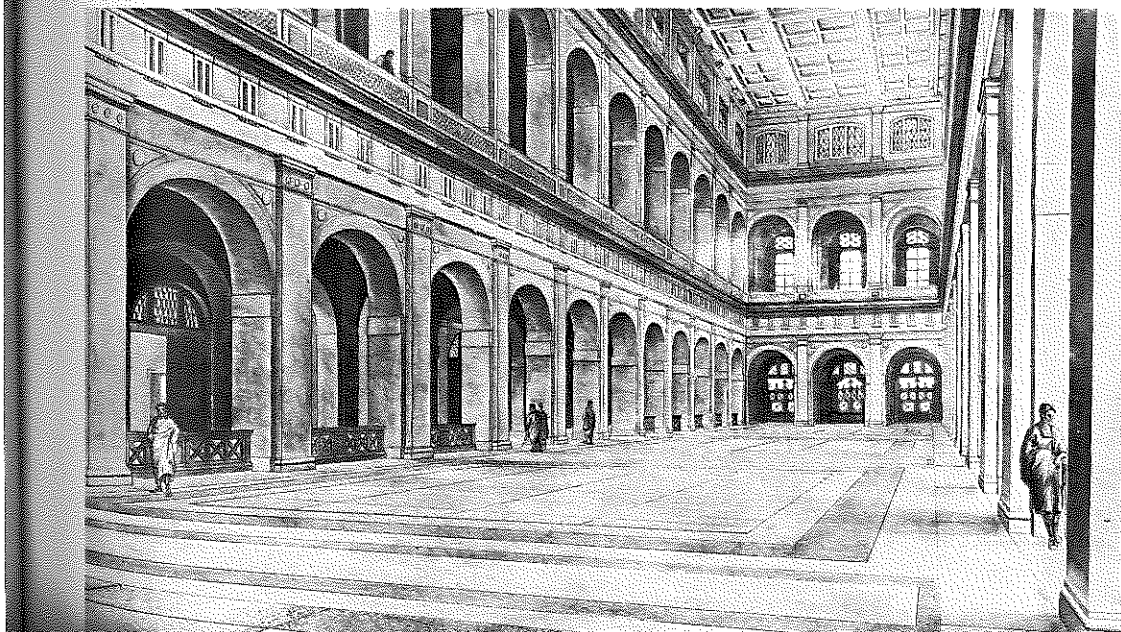
### THE BATTLE OF TRASIMENE

Flamīnius cōsul mīlitēs per agrum quī est inter urbem Cortōnam et lacum Trasumēnum dūcēbat. Hōc locō Hannibal exercitum Rōmānum expectābat et in collibus capere temptābat. Hoc cōficere potuit atque exercitus Rōmānus maximō proeliō oppressus est, et cōsul interfectus est.

Post proelium decem mīlia mīlitum fugā Rōmam petivērunt, sed itinera ab hostibus clausa erant. Aliī novam aciem instruere cupiēbant, aliī bellō quam primum dēsistere. Tandem nūntiōs remittere cōstituērunt. Hī pervenīre ad urbem nōn facile potuērunt.

Interim ibi ad primum hostium victōriæ nūntium timor cīvium magnopere crēscēbat. Undique clāmōrēs mātrem eōrum quī in proeliō interfecti sunt audīrī poterant. Tum patrēs M. Pompōnium, ūnum ex senātōribus, populō calamitātem nūntiāre iussērunt. "Pugnā," inquit, "magnā victi sumus." His vērō Rōmānī dīcuntur verba tristiōra numquam audīvisse.

*Interior of the Basilica Julia in the Roman Forum as it appeared about 300 A.D.*



# 39

## Indirect Statement Tenses of Infinitives Ablative of Cause



*The remains of the Basilica at Pompeii*

Credula vitam spes fovet et melius cras fore semper dicit.  
*Credulous hope supports our life, and always says that  
 tomorrow will be better.*—TIBULLUS

—Syntax—

### INDIRECT STATEMENTS

Indirect statements in Latin, used as objects of verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, or the like (expressed or implied), have an *infinitive* with the subject in the *accusative* case; i.e. they are infinitive phrases, (Lesson 32).

Dicit Caesarem esse fortem. *He says that Caesar is brave.*

Latin has no word for the introductory *that*.

Putō puellās librōs lēgisse. *I think that the girls have read the books.*  
 Vidit nāvēs vēnisse. *He saw that the ships had come.*

**The time of the infinitive** is relative to the main verb; i.e., the present infinitive is used to show *the same time as* the main verb; the perfect infinitive is used to show *time before* the main verb; the future infinitive is used to show *time after* the main verb.

Sciō eum hoc vidēre. *I know that he is seeing this.*  
 Sciō eum hoc vīdisse. *I know that he has seen this.*  
 Sciō eum hoc vīsūrum esse. *I know that he will see this.*  
 Scīvī eum hoc vidēre. *I knew that he was seeing this.*  
 Scīvī eum hoc vīdisse. *I knew that he had seen this.*  
 Scīvī eum hoc vīsūrum esse. *I knew that he would see this.*

### THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative, usually without a preposition, may be used to express cause.

Hoc fēcī amōre vestrī. *I did it from love of you.*  
 Timōre animālium silvam reliquērunt.  
*They left the forest from fear of the animals.*  
 Inopiā cibī labōrābant. *They were suffering from lack of food.*  
 Quā rē hoc dīctis? *For what reason do you say this?*

The preposition **dē** is used in the expression **quā dē causā**, *for which reason*.

Nūllam aquam invēnit, quā dē causā īnsulam relinquare coāctus est.  
*He found no water, for which reason he was forced to leave the island.*

### — Vocabulary —

accē'dō, accē'dere, acces'sī, acces'sum, *approach, go to*  
 cognōs'cō, cognōs'cere, cognō'vī, cog'nitum, *learn, find out*  
 crē'dō, crē'dere, crē'didī, crē'ditum, *believe, trust*  
 exis'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *think, suppose, consider*  
 intel'legō, intelle'gere, intellēx'ī, intellēc'tum, *understand*  
 iū'dicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *judge, consider*  
 le'gō, le'gere, lē'gī, lēc'tum, *choose; gather; read*  
 negō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *deny, say . . . not*  
 nes'ciō, nescī're, nescī'vī, nescī'tum, *not know*  
 obti'neō, obtinē're, obti'nuī, obten'tum, *hold (against opposition)*  
 perti'neō, pertinē're, perti'nuī, —, *pertain; extend*  
 pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *think*  
 sci'ō, sci're, scī'vī, scī'tum, *know*  
 sen'tiō, senti're, sēn'sī, sēn'sum, *feel, realize*  
 spē'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *hope*  
 a'pud, (prep. w. acc.) *among, at the house of, in the presence of*  
 cir'cum, (prep. w. acc.) *around*  
 prae'ter, (prep. w. acc.) *beyond, besides, except*  
 prō, (prep. w. abl.) *in front of, on behalf of, in exchange for, instead of*

### — Word Study —

**Accēdō** is used with the accusative of place to which.

**Cognōscō**. The basic sense of this word is *begin to know*. Consequently in the perfect system it can mean *know*.

|                |             |                                           |
|----------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
| PERFECT        | cognōvī,    | <i>I have learned, I know</i>             |
| PLUPERFECT     | cognōveram, | <i>I had learned, I knew</i>              |
| FUTURE PERFECT | cognōverō,  | <i>I shall have learned, I shall know</i> |



**Crēdō** takes an indirect object of the person to whom belief or trust is given.

Tibi crēdō. *I believe you. I trust you.*

**Nesciō** is normally used instead of **nōn sciō**.

**Spērō**. Unlike *hope* in English, this verb is not used with a complementary infinitive, but with an indirect statement, usually with a future active infinitive.

Mē vīsūrum esse tē spērō. *I hope to see you (I hope that I shall see you).*

### —Exercises—

#### A. Translate.

1. Dīcō tē iānuam claudere dēbēre. 2. Crēdisne eum cōpiās instructūrum?\* 3. Intellegunt nōs lūsisse. 4. Exīstimābam exercitum posse superāre hostēs. 5. Nōs pecūniam receptūrōs esse spērāt. 6. Hostēs accēdere scīvit. 7. Cognōvit mē ventūrum esse. 8. Dīcit puerōs mittī. 9. Putat milītēs pugnāvisse. 10. Sciō vōs hoc probāre.

#### B. Translate.

1. We know that he was killed. 2. He says that Lucius is being sent. 3. He wants to say to them that we shall yield. 4. Do you think that the men have ceased to fight? 5. Caesar says that the army is approaching. 6. I know that he will send it. 7. I think that he is judging us. 8. They believed that our army would defeat the enemy. 9. I hear that our friends have sailed. 10. He knows that we can play.

#### C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Quod milītēs esse paucōs cognōverat, monuit ducem difficile futūrum esse hostēs superāre. 2. Ipsīs cīvibus hanc victōriam magnam vōs dēbēre nūntiāre putō. 3. Dīxit omnēs agricolās circum hoc oppidum inopiā cibī et aliārum rērum labōrāre.

\* The **esse** is frequently omitted from the future active infinitive. It is sometimes omitted from the perfect passive infinitive.

4. Rōmānōs victūrōs hostēs crēdimus quod scīmus hōs illīs parēs  
nōn esse virtūte. 5. Apud cōsulēs tōtī cīvitātī dīximus Lūcium  
virum bonum esse; alterum illud malum fēcisse. 6. Servōs tuōs  
in agrōs urbī proximōs dūcī putō. 7. Omnēs Rōmānī Caesarem

*Basilica and Column of Trajan*





maximum imperatōrum fuisse intellegunt. 8. Cōsulī ipsī agrōs Helvētiōrum mīlia passuum duo ā flūmine abesse nūntiant. 9. Italiā patriā poetārum magnōrum esse sciunt. 10. Milītēs in summō monte manēre iussōs esse audīvimus.

D. Translate.

1. I hope to sail to Italy next summer; I hear that the cities there are very beautiful. 2. The leaders know that the enemy is approaching and that many soldiers have left the camp from fear of death. 3. We understand that the best wines by far are always placed on the table at Marcus's house. 4. The people hoped that the consuls would lead the army around the enemy's camp that day. 5. We said to him that we were unable to sail because of the large waves. 6. We all believe that many good books have been written by that poet; but which of us has read them? 7. Everyone knows that Rome has always been and is now a very great city. 8. We bade our comrades farewell and said to them that we hoped to see them within a few years. 9. He himself says that the ambassadors have been sent to the Gauls. 10. Our native land is like our mother, for which reason we think that we ought to fight on her behalf.

—Reading—

FABIUS APPOINTED DICTATOR

Ubi in urbe nūntiātum est Rōmānōs graviter superātōs esse, multitudō fēminārum in Forō stābat circum eōs quī ā proeliō vēnerant et nūntium dē virīs et filiīs petēbat. Sed nihil certī cognōvērunt.

Illō tempore patrēs Q. Fabium Maximum dictātōrem ob perīculum facere cōstituērunt. Fabius dīxit cīvēs Rōmānōs multa sacra deīs facere dēbere. Haec illī fēcērunt.

Fabius nova cōsilia bellī cēpit. Nam scīvit Hannibalem esse imperātōrem meliōrem quam cōsulēs Rōmānōs. Itaque exercitum Rōmānum proelium cum hostibus committere prohibēbat; itinera in summīs montibus magnā cum cūrā faciēbat.

Haec autem cōsilia cīvibus nōn grāta erant. Multī enim Rōmānī exīstimābant Fabium hostēs proeliō superāre posse, et exercitum Rōmānum in collēs fugere vidēre nōn cupiēbant.

40

Reflexives  
Dative of Reference  
Dative of Purpose  
Double Dative



*Emperor Marcus Aurelius, 2nd century, A.D., Rome*



In alio pediculum, in te ricinum non vides.  
*You see a louse on someone else, but not a tick on yourself.*

—PETRONIUS

—Forms—

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The third person reflexive pronoun is declined as follows:

|             | SINGULAR      | PLURAL        |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| GENITIVE:   | su'ī          | su'ī          |
| DATIVE:     | si'bi         | si'bi         |
| ACCUSATIVE: | sē (or) sē'sē | sē (or) sē'sē |
| ABLATIVE:   | sē (or) sē'sē | sē (or) sē'sē |

The reflexives of the first and second persons are supplied from the declension of **ego** and **tū**; **meī**, of *myself*, **tuī**, of *yourself*, and so on. When **cum** is used with the ablative of reflexive pronouns it is attached to them, as it is to personal pronouns: **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **sēcum**, etc.

—Syntax—

The reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand.

The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and numbers.

Sē vulnerāvit. *He wounded himself.*

Iūlia dixit sē id vīdisse. *Julia said that she had seen it.*

But

Eum vulnerāvī. *I wounded him.*

Putō eam vīdisse id. *I think that she has seen it.*

### REFLEXIVE ADJECTIVES

The reflexive adjective is **suus**, **sua**, **suum**. It is declined like **magnus**. It is used to refer back to the subject of the clause in which it stands, or to the subject of the main verb of the sentence. It is rarely used in the nominative case. When the English *his* (or *her*) is not reflexive, the genitive of the pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id** is used.

Suum equum in agrum dūxit. *He led his horse into the field.*  
 Suos filiōs ad oppidum mīserunt. *They sent their sons to the town.*  
 But  
 Eius equum in agrum dūxī. *I led his horse into the field.*  
 Eōrum filiōs ad oppidum dūximus. *We took their sons to the town.*

### DATIVE OF REFERENCE

The dative is used to show to whose advantage or disadvantage the action of the verb is performed.

Habē tibi illud praemium. *Keep that reward for yourself.*

### DATIVE OF PURPOSE; DOUBLE DATIVE

A dative expressing purpose is sometimes coupled with a dative of reference in a construction which is called the double dative.

Duās legiōnēs praesidiō oppidō reliquit.  
*He left two legions as a guard (for a guard) for the town.*  
 Equitēs Caesarī auxiliō erant.  
*The cavalry served as an aid (were for an aid) to Caesar.*

The words most commonly used as datives of purpose are:

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| auxiliō, <i>for an aid</i>          | praesidiō, <i>for a guard</i>  |
| cūrae, <i>for a care, worry</i>     | subsidiō, <i>for a support</i> |
| impedimentō, <i>for a hindrance</i> | ūsui, <i>for an advantage</i>  |

### —Vocabulary—

|                                                                  |                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ar'bor, ar'boris, f., <i>tree</i>                                | senā'tor, senātō'ris, m., <i>senator</i>                                           |
| col'lis, col'lis, m., <i>hill</i>                                | sōl, sō'lis, m., <i>sun</i>                                                        |
| cupi'ditās, cupiditā'tis, f., <i>greed,</i><br><i>desire</i>     | stel'la, -ae, f., <i>star</i>                                                      |
| glō'ria, -ae, f., <i>fame, glory</i>                             | tur'ris, tur'ris, f., <i>tower*</i>                                                |
| lī'berī, -ō'rum, m. pl., <i>children</i>                         | ven'tus, -ī, m., <i>wind</i>                                                       |
| lū'na, -ae, f., <i>moon</i>                                      | suus, -a, -um, (refl. poss. adj.)<br><i>his, her, its, their</i>                   |
| mo'ra, -ae, f., <i>delay</i>                                     | suī, sibi, sē, (refl. pron.) <i>himself,</i><br><i>herself, itself, themselves</i> |
| negō'tium, negō'tī, n., <i>trouble;</i><br><i>task, business</i> |                                                                                    |

\* **Turris** keeps the -i of its stem in the accusative singular: **turrim**.

—Word Study—

**Cupiditās** is frequently used with an objective genitive.

cupiditās potestātis    *a desire for power*

**Liberī**, *children*. This is merely the adjective **liber** used as a plural noun. It came to mean *children* because a Roman household was composed of the father, the mother, free persons, and slaves, and the free persons were of course the children of the family.

**Recipiō**, used with a reflexive pronoun for its object, means *to take oneself back, return, retreat*.

mē recipiō,    *I return*  
tē recipis,    *you return*  
sē recipit,    *he returns, etc.*

**Sōlis occāsus** (*the going down of the sun*) means *sunset*, either as a time (*sundown*) or a direction (*west*).

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Cum suis sociis venit.    2. Suum amicum vidit.    3. Putamus eum id facturum.
4. Negavit se posse venire.    5. Eius soror hoc dixit.
6. Suae matri vinum dedit.    7. Eius matri dedi cibum.
8. Suas copias huc duxit.    9. Eorum libri relictī sunt.    10. Putat se debere discēdere.

B. Translate.

1. We know that she is present.    2. He thinks that he can do it.
3. I believe that they have found it.    4. They sent their letters here.
5. They said that he had been sent there.    6. Have you seen his horse?
7. We came with them.    8. The boys praised themselves.
9. Their father was wounded.    10. The senator said that he would come.

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Cōsul dixit illum senātorem secum ad Africam navigātūrum.
2. Alter poēta multa de lūnā et sōle, alter de ventis et fluctibus scripsit; utrius librum legēs?
3. Viri optimi se non laudant.





*The Roman Forum with the Temple of Saturn*



4. Helvētū nūntium mīserunt magnam suārum cōpiārum partem ē finibus excessisse. 5. Suae mātī sē pecūniam invenīre nōn potuisse dīxit. 6. Sōlis occāsū prīma aciēs ā lēgātis in castra reducta erat. 7. Gallī et Germānī quī trāns flūmen habitant inter sē contendunt. 8. Lūcius "Senātōrī," inquit, "auxiliō cupiō esse in urbe." 9. Puella sē litterās ab ipsō poētā accēpisse dīxit. 10. Puerī nihil vidēre poterant, nam nox sine stellis aut lūnā erat.

D. Translate.

1. As soon as they saw his horse, they began to retreat. 2. The senator was saying that he desired to read that poet's books. 3. We hope that the men from Britain will arrive in our land tomorrow. 4. He hesitated to say to his father that there would be a delay. 5. I have heard that the winds are very strong, and I do not think that we shall reach the island. 6. My business today is very difficult, but I hope to see you after noon. 7. "Fight as bravely and as fiercely as possible," said the general to his troops, "and we shall defeat our enemy today." 8. Eagerness for money has compelled many men to do unfair things. 9. The bravest foot soldier had been sent from the town as an aid to the messengers. 10. As soon as they realized that the enemy was approaching, the soldiers ran to the top of the tower.

—Reading—

MINUCIUS LEFT IN CHARGE

Hannibal sē trāns collēs recēperat et Fabius sōlus in urbem Rōmam discesserat et exercitum cum magistrō equitum, nōmine Minuciō, relīquerat, quī sē in agrō Lārīnātī tenēbat et praesidiō finitimīs oppidīs erat. Sed Minucius, quod nōn crēdebat cōsilia Fabī victōriae esse idōnea, ob cupiditatem glōriae suōs mīlites contrā hostēs ēdūcere constituit.

Castra Rōmānōrum in colle altō et tūtō locō posita erant. Sōlis occāsū ea Minucius in campōs proximōs hostibus mōvit. Hannibal ipse intellēxit sē proelium commissūrum nōn cum eōdem duce; castra sua propius hostēs mōvit et proelium parābat. Alter exercitus vidēbat alterum aciem instruere et magna erat cupiditās pugnae.

Nocte Hannibal equitēs ad castra Rōmāna mīsīt. Hās cōpiās autem equestrēs nūllō negōtiō suis castrīs Rōmānī prohibuērunt.

Nec verbum verbo curabis reddere fidus interpres.  
*As a true translator you will take care not to  
 translate word for word.*—HORACE

## REVIEW 10 (LESSONS 37–40)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|           |          |           |        |
|-----------|----------|-----------|--------|
| arbor     | liberī   | senātor   | turris |
| collis    | lūna     | sōl       | ventus |
| cupiditās | mora     | stella    | victor |
| glōria    | negōtium | subsidiūm |        |
| herba     |          | toga      |        |

B. Give the other nominative singular forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives and pronouns.

|         |        |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| aliēnus | ipse   | quisque | tōtus   |
| alius   | neuter | sōlus   | ūllus   |
| alter   | nūllus | suus    | uter    |
| īdem    |        |         | uterque |

C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|          |           |          |         |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| accēdō   | frangō    | lūdō     | recipiō |
| claudō   | īnstruō   | negō     | remittō |
| cognōscō | intellegō | nesciō   | removeō |
| crēdō    | iūdicō    | obtimeō  | sciō    |
| crēscō   | iungō     | pertineō | sentīō  |
| dēsistō  | lavō      | premō    | spērō   |
| dubitō   | legō      | probō    | trahō   |
| exīstimō |           | putō     | valeō   |

D. Give the meaning of:

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| apud    | prō     |
| circum  | unde    |
| praeter | undique |

—Drill on Forms—

- A. Make a copy of the following box, and fill in the blanks with the proper forms of the infinitives of **lavō**, **obtineō**, **trahō**, **recipiō**, and **sentiō**.

| TENSE   | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---------|--------|---------|
| PRESENT |        |         |
| PERFECT |        |         |
| FUTURE  |        |         |

- B. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: negōtium, cupiditās, alter
2. *dative singular*: suī, collis, sōlus
3. *accusative singular*: sōl, īdem, turris
4. *ablative singular*: arbor, ipse, suī
5. *nominative plural*: negōtium, victor, uterque
6. *genitive plural*: senātor, collis, tōtus
7. *dative plural*: ventus, arbor, suī
8. *accusative plural*: stella, ūsus, toga

—Drill on Syntax—

- A. Translate, identifying the use of each infinitive.

1. Did you decide to close the door? 2. He was not able to drag the cart. 3. Do you think that they have learned this? 4. They ordered the soldier not to kill the women. 5. We believed that he had been sent back. 6. He hoped that I would read the book. 7. I think that the children have grown. 8. We know that they are being sent back. 9. They ought to believe you. 10. He hesitated to retreat.

- B. Translate the italicized words.

1. *His* children came. 2. I reported *it* to *their* friends. 3. He said that *he* was able to do *it*. 4. Caesar led *his* troops to the town.

5. I saw *their* army. 6. We know that *they* will see *us*. 7. They say that *they* desire *this*. 8. He finished *his* business. 9. *Their* friends were coming. 10. I hope that *you* will do *it*.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Exīstimō eōs ad hoc oppidum tribus diēbus ventūrōs esse.
2. Intellegō vōs putāre nōs nōn posse venīre. 3. Omnēs spērāmus nostrum exercitum fortem hostēs barbarōs in Galliā et Germaniā superātūrū.
4. Propter inōpiam frūmentī Caesar ibi tōtam aestātem manēre nōn poterat. 5. Imperātor suīs militibus sē illō diē pugnāre cupere dixit. 6. Sē multa dē sōle et lūnā et stellīs cognōvisse dīcēbat. 7. Suum frātre multō fortiōrem meō patre esse putābat. 8. Caesar parvam peditum manum praesidiō pontī reliquisse dicitur. 9. Sōlis occāsū barbarī sē ad summum collem recipere coāctī sunt. 10. Nescīvēruntne hī cīvēs suam cupiditatem rērum aliēnārū inīquam esse?

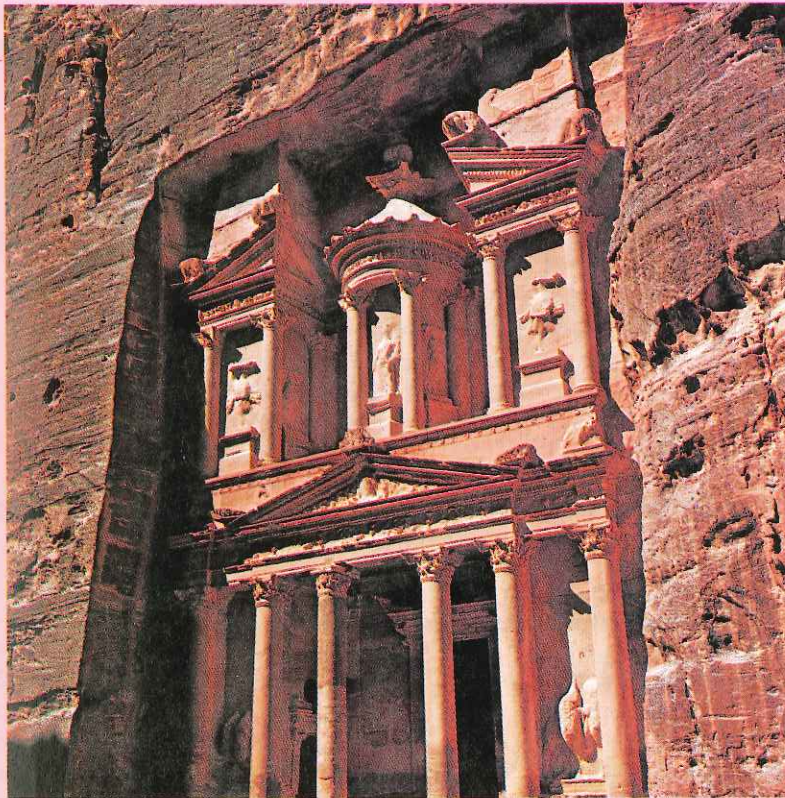
B. Translate.

1. We knew that they had put the money in the ships and that the sailors were preparing to sail. 2. The small girl hesitated to play with the larger children. 3. My friend had been sent by his father as an aid to the lieutenant in Gaul. 4. The woman could not believe that her son had left the camp. 5. We saw that the citizens were frightened by the letter from the consul. 6. They do not suppose that they are equal to us in courage, do they? 7. The chief of the town thought that that very high tower would act as a hindrance (would be for a hindrance) to our men. 8. I do not believe that this very good boy has mocked the teachers. 9. The senators learned that the two armies of the Gauls had been joined to each other. 10. Few men thought that a man could walk on the moon.



# 41

## Participles



*Jordan: Petra, The Treasury, 2nd century, A.D.*

Quam se ipse amans—sine rivali!  
Himself loving himself so much—without a rival!—CICERO

—Forms—

### PARTICIPLES

There are three participles in Latin, the present and future in the active voice, and the perfect in the passive voice. (There is also a future passive participle, which will be taken up in a later lesson.)

**Present Active Participle.** The present active participle is formed as follows:

1. First and second conjugations: add **-ns** to the present stem.

vocō, present stem vocā + ns = vocāns, *calling*  
moneō, present stem monē + ns = monēns, *warning*

2. Third and fourth conjugations: add **-ēns** to the present stem.

regō, present stem reg + ēns = regēns, *ruling*  
capiō, present stem capi + ēns = capiēns, *taking*  
audiō, present stem audī + ēns = audiēns, *hearing*

**Perfect Passive Participle.** The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part declined as a first and second declension adjective (like *malus*, -a, -um).

vocātus, -a, -um, *having been called*  
monitus, -a, -um, *having been warned*  
rēctus, -a, -um, *having been ruled*  
captus, -a, -um, *having been taken*  
audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard*

**Future Active Participle.** This is formed by adding **-ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum** to the stem of the fourth principal part.

vocātūrus, -a, -um, *about to call*  
monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn*  
rēctūrus, -a, -um, *about to rule*  
captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take*  
audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear*

**Sum** has only one participle, the future active, **futūrus, -a, -um**.

## SUMMARY OF PARTICIPLES

|         | ACTIVE                                                                                                                                                                                             | PASSIVE                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT | vocāns <i>calling, while calling</i><br>monēns <i>warning, while warning</i><br>regēns <i>ruling, while ruling</i><br>capiēns <i>taking, while taking</i><br>audiēns <i>hearing, while hearing</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| PERFECT |                                                                                                                                                                                                    | vocātus <i>called, having been called</i><br>monitus <i>warned, having been warned</i><br>rēctus <i>ruled, having been ruled</i><br>captus <i>taken, having been taken</i><br>audītus <i>heard, having been heard</i> |
| FUTURE  | vocātūrus <i>about to call</i><br>monitūrus <i>about to warn</i><br>rēctūrus <i>about to rule</i><br>captūrus <i>about to take</i><br>auditūrus <i>about to hear</i>                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES

The perfect passive and future active participles are declined like first and second declension adjectives. The present active participle is declined like a third declension adjective, except that it has *-e* in the ablative singular.

|             | SINGULAR     |           | PLURAL       |             |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
|             | MASC. & FEM. | NEUTER    | MASC. & FEM. | NEUTER      |
| NOMINATIVE: | vo'cāns      | vo'cāns   | vocan'tēs    | vocan'tia   |
| GENITIVE:   | vocan'tis    | vocan'tis | vocan'tium   | vocan'tium  |
| DATIVE:     | vocan'tī     | vocan'tī  | vocan'tibus  | vocan'tibus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | vocan'tem    | vo'cāns   | vocan'tēs    | vocan'tia   |
| ABLATIVE:   | vocan'te     | vocan'te  | vocan'tibus  | vocan'tibus |

—Syntax—

### PARTICIPLES

**Functions.** The participle shares the characteristics of two other parts of speech. A participle is like a verb in that it expresses an action and has tense and voice. It also takes a direct object if it is active and transitive. It is like an adjective in that it has gender, number, and case, and modifies a noun.

**Tenses.** The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive, are relative to the time of the main verb. The present participle describes an action contemporaneous with that of the main verb, the perfect an action prior to that of the main verb, and the future an action after that of the main verb. Latin observes these distinctions very carefully.

### TRANSLATION OF PARTICIPLES

The basic translations of the participles are as follows:

|                  |                                                                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRESENT ACTIVE:  | vocāns, <i>calling, while calling</i>                                                   |
| PERFECT PASSIVE: | vocātus, <i>called, having been called</i>                                              |
| FUTURE ACTIVE:   | vocātūrus, <i>about to call, going to call,<br/>intending to call, destined to call</i> |

### PARTICIPLES REPLACING CLAUSES

Latin makes a much greater use of participles than English, often using a participle where English would use a clause. Consequently we must often translate a Latin participle by a clause.

Equum inventum rēdūxit.  
*When he had found his horse, he led it back.*  
*Since he had found his horse, he led it back.*  
*He led back his horse, which he had found.*

—Vocabulary—

addū'cō, addū'cere, addūx'ī, adduc'tum, *lead to; influence*  
circumve'niō, circumveni're, circumvē'nī, circumven'tum, *surround,*  
*come around*  
commo'veō, commovē're, commō'vī, commō'tum, *move thoroughly,*  
*upset, alarm*



com'pleō, complē're, complē'vī, complē'tum, *fill up, complete*  
 cōnspi'ciō, cōnspi'cere, cōnspe'xī, cōnspec'tum, *look at attentively, observe closely*  
 dēfi'ciō, dēfi'cere, dēfē'cī, dēfec'tum, *fail; revolt, desert*  
 dīmit'tō, dīmit'tere, dīmī'sī, dīmis'sum, *let go away, send away, dismiss*  
 ēnūn'tiō, ēnūntiā're, ēnūntiā'vī, ēnūntiā'tum, *report, announce*  
 expō'nō, expō'nere, expo'suī, expo'situm, *set forth; explain*  
 in'citō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *stir up, arouse*  
 intermit'tō, intermit'tere, intermī'sī, intermis'sum, *stop, pause; interrupt; lose (time)*  
 occī'dō, occī'dere, occī'dī, occī'sum, *kill, cut down*  
 op'primō, oppri'mere, oppres'sī, oppres'sum, *crush, overpower*  
 trādū'cō, trādū'cere, trādū'xī, trādūc'tum, *lead across*

### —Word Study—

**Dēficiō**, when it means *revolt* or *desert*, takes the ablative of place from which, usually with **ab**.

**Trādūcō** may take two objects.

Exercitum flūmen trādūxit. *He led the army across the river.*

### —Exercises—

A. Translate in as many ways as you can.

1. Puerōs lūdentēs vīdī. 2. Equitēs in proeliō victōs ad urbem mīsit. 3. Erat pugnātūrus. 4. Castra oppugnāta capientur.
5. Poētam sub arbore sedentem vīdimus. 6. In silvam trāctī, fugere temptant. 7. Imperātor hostēs superātōs esse putāns discessit. 8. Puella hōs librōs lectūra est. 9. Aciem instructam dūxit in proelium. 10. Cōspectūrus sum hanc domum.

B. Translate, using participles wherever possible.

1. He was wounded while he was fighting in Europe. 2. Having collected the infantry, he led them across the river. 3. I heard the soldiers who were shouting. 4. I am about to dismiss him. 5. I am about to desert from the army. 6. He was about to kill the

animal. 7. He carried the money which he had found to the city. 8. I saw him as he was about to depart. 9. He interrupted the work that had been begun. 10. When he had defeated the enemy he let them go away (dismissed them).

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Litterās portāns ad Caesarem mediā nocte vēnit. 2. In castra vēnērunt ducem occīsūrī, sed prohibītī sunt. 3. In mediō monte stābam audiēns virōs clāmantēs. 4. Cōsul mīlitēs timēns urbem relinquere cōstituit. 5. Germānī fidēlēs suum ducem interfecitū portantēs ad oppidum veniunt. 6. Pedes prō castrīs pugnāns gladium āmisit. 7. Caesar suās cōpiās hostium cornū dextrum opprimentēs vīdit. 8. Terrītī puerī, hīs verbīs commōtī, sē recipere ad patrēs cōstituērunt. 9. Hostēs ad urbem accēdentēs oppressūrī sumus. 10. Prīma aciēs castra oppugnābat, sed secunda aciēs, in colle instructa, hostēs expectābat.

(upper) A late republican denarius (silver coin) of Longinus. Reverse, a man casting his ballot. The tablet bears the letter U for *uti rogas*, a favorable vote. Obverse, Vesta. (lower) Denarius of Quintus Cassius. Reverse, a voting urn, curule chair (magistrate's bench) and tablet with A, *absolvo*, (I acquit) and C, *condemno*. Obverse, Liberty.



D. Translate, using participles wherever possible.

1. He reported that he had seen near the bridge the bodies of four men killed in the battle. 2. Having observed the camp closely, he decided to attack it. 3. We shall easily be able to surround those soldiers who were wounded in the battle. 4. The lieutenant, because he had been dismissed by the general, decided to desert from the army. 5. I hope that the little boys who have been frightened by those noises will come to our farmhouse in a short time. 6. He said that that part of the river was filled up with large stones. 7. The right wing, near the river, was equal to the enemy in courage, but the left wing, fighting in the plain, was being overpowered. 8. Having been influenced by the words of the senator, the Roman people praised its faithful generals who were about to depart. 9. Holding the sword with her wounded hand, the brave girl was waiting for her brothers. 10. At midnight Caesar gave the letter to the messenger who was standing in front of the camp.

—Reading—

**FABIUS RESCUES MINUCIUS**

Adductus hāc minōre victōriā Minucius, magister equitum, imperium simile eī dictātōris Fabiī petēbat. Ā populō convocātō hoc imperium Minuciō datum est. Hic cum suis mīlitibus ē castrīs ēductīs impetum Hannibalis expectābat. Fabius tamen suos in castrīs tenēns rem cōspiciēbat.

Collis parvus erat inter castra Rōmānōrum et Poenōrum. Hannibal sēnsit sē debēre eum occupāre. Itaque cum paucīs ex mīlitibus ad collem accessit et eum occupāvit. Prīmum Minucius ipse equitibus\* impetum in hostēs fēcit, sed Hannibal labōrantibus suis subsidiō plūrēs mīsīt et Rōmānōs circumveniēbat. Deinde Minucius commōtus legiōnēs instrūctās in proelium ēdūxit. Hannibal mittēns auxilia peditem equitumque mox tōtam aciem complēverat. Aciēs Rōmāna maximē labōrābat. Tum legiōnēs Fabiī velut caelō dēmissae ad auxilium sē ostendērunt et aciem Poenōrum oppressērunt.

\* Ablative of means; people are often treated as instruments in military writings.

we beat a liar

↓  
1st  
conj.

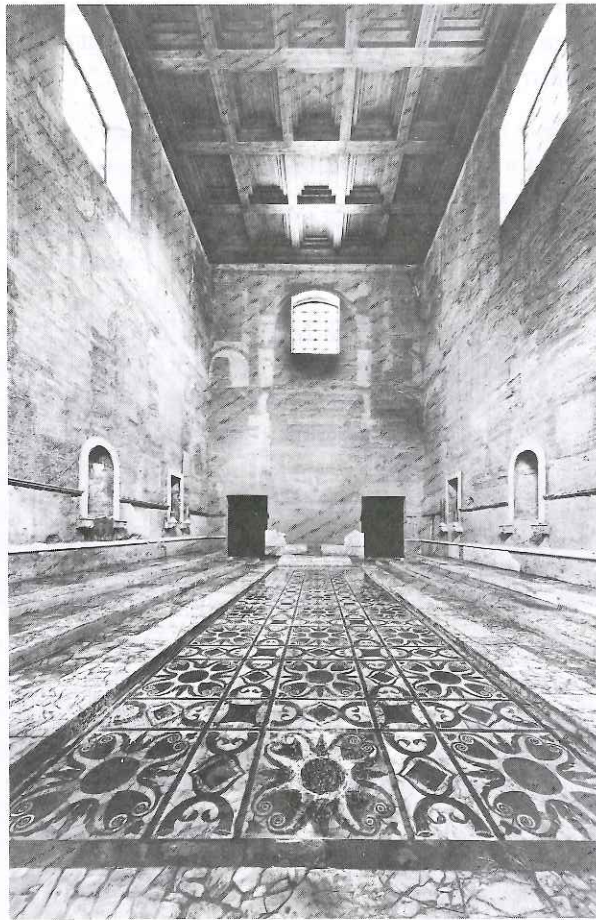
↓  
2nd  
conj.

↓  
3rd  
conj.

↓  
3rd-io  
+  
4th conj.

42

## Subjunctive Mood



*The interior of the late imperial curia (Senate House) at Rome*



Facilius per partes in cognitionem totius adducimur.  
*We are more easily led part by part to an understanding  
of the whole.*—SENECA

—Forms—

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive mood has four tenses, present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

The **present subjunctive** is formed as follows:

**First conjugation:** The *-ā-* of the present stem is changed to *-ē-* and the personal endings are added.

| ACTIVE   |          | PASSIVE  |           |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| SINGULAR | PLURAL   | SINGULAR | PLURAL    |
| vo'cem   | vocē'mus | vo'cer   | vocē'mur  |
| vo'cēs   | vocē'tis | vocē'ris | vocē'minī |
| vo'cet   | vo'cent  | vocē'tur | vocen'tur |

**Second, third, and fourth conjugations:** *-ā-* and the personal endings are added to the present stem.

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| mo'neam | moneā'mus | mo'near   | moneā'mur  |
| mo'neās | moneā'tis | moneā'ris | moneā'minī |
| mo'neat | mo'neant  | moneā'tur | monean'tur |
| re'gam  | regā'mus  | re'gar    | regā'mur   |
| re'gās  | regā'tis  | regā'ris  | regā'minī  |
| re'gat  | re'gant   | regā'tur  | regan'tur  |
| ca'piam | capiā'mus | ca'piar   | capiā'mur  |
| ca'piās | capiā'tis | capiā'ris | capiā'minī |
| ca'piat | ca'piant  | capiā'tur | capian'tur |
| au'diam | audiā'mus | au'diar   | audiā'mur  |
| au'diās | audiā'tis | audiā'ris | audiā'minī |
| au'diat | au'diant  | audiā'tur | audian'tur |

**Sum** and its compounds have an irregularly formed present subjunctive.

|     |        |
|-----|--------|
| sim | sī'mus |
| sis | sī'tis |
| sit | sint   |

**The imperfect subjunctive.** All four conjugations, and **sum**, form the imperfect subjunctive by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive (with the final **-e** lengthened).

|      | ACTIVE                                   | PASSIVE                                      |      | ACTIVE                                   | PASSIVE                                      |
|------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1ST. | vocā'rem<br>vocā'rēs<br>vocā'ret<br>etc. | vocā'rer<br>vocārē'ris<br>vocārē'tur<br>etc. | 2ND. | monē'rem<br>monē'rēs<br>monē'ret<br>etc. | monē'rer<br>monērē'ris<br>monērē'tur<br>etc. |
| 3RD. | re'gerem<br>re'gerēs<br>re'geret<br>etc. | re'gerer<br>regerē'ris<br>regerē'tur<br>etc. |      | ca'perem<br>ca'perēs<br>ca'peret<br>etc. | ca'perer<br>caperē'ris<br>caperē'tur<br>etc. |
| 4TH. | audī'rem<br>audī'rēs<br>audī'ret<br>etc. | audī'rer<br>audīrē'ris<br>audīrē'tur<br>etc. | SUM  | essem<br>essēs<br>esset<br>etc.          |                                              |

**The perfect active subjunctive.** All verbs form the perfect active subjunctive in the same way. They add **-erī-** and the personal endings to the perfect stem.

|                                                |                                                |                                              |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1ST.                                           | 2ND.                                           | 3RD.                                         |
| vocā'verim<br>vocā'verīs<br>vocā'verit<br>etc. | monu'erim<br>monu'erīs<br>monu'erit<br>etc.    | rex'erim<br>rex'erīs<br>rex'erit<br>etc.     |
|                                                | 4TH.                                           |                                              |
|                                                | audī'verim<br>audī'verīs<br>audī'verit<br>etc. | SUM<br>fu'erim<br>fu'erīs<br>fu'erit<br>etc. |

**The perfect passive subjunctive.** The perfect passive subjunctive is the perfect passive participle used as a subjective complement with the present subjunctive of **sum**.

| 1ST.                                                 | 2ND.                                                 | 3RD.                                              | 4TH.                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| vocā'tus sim<br>vocā'tus sīs<br>vocā'tus sit<br>etc. | mo'nitus sim<br>mo'nitus sīs<br>mo'nitus sit<br>etc. | rēc'tus sim<br>rēc'tus sīs<br>rēc'tus sit<br>etc. | cap'tus sim<br>cap'tus sīs<br>cap'tus sit<br>etc.    |
|                                                      |                                                      |                                                   | audī'tus sim<br>audī'tus sīs<br>audī'tus sit<br>etc. |

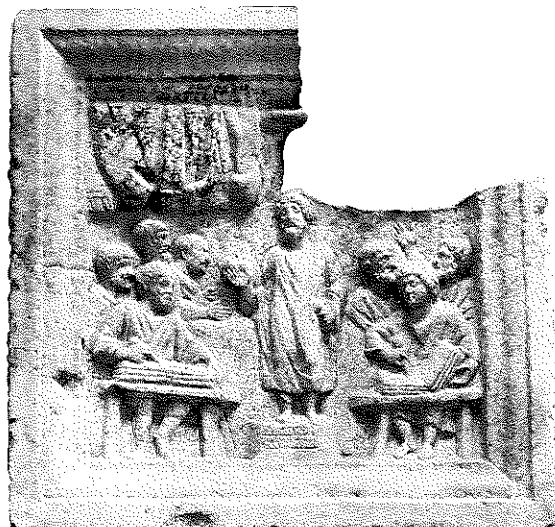
**The pluperfect active subjunctive.** Add the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive (lengthening the final -e).

| 1ST.        | 2ND.        | 3RD.      |           |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| vocāvis'sem | monuis'sem  | rēxis'sem | cēpis'sem |
| vocāvis'sēs | monuis'sēs  | rēxis'sēs | cēpis'sēs |
| vocāvis'set | monuis'set  | rēxis'set | cēpis'set |
| etc.        | etc.        | etc.      | etc.      |
|             | 4TH.        | SUM       |           |
|             | audīvis'sem | fuis'sem  |           |
|             | audīvis'sēs | fuis'sēs  |           |
|             | audīvis'set | fuis'set  |           |
|             | etc.        | etc.      |           |

**The pluperfect passive subjunctive** uses the perfect passive participle with the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

| 1ST.            | 2ND.            |  |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|
| vocā'tus es'sem | mo'nitus es'sem |  |
| vocā'tus es'sēs | mo'nitus es'sēs |  |
| vocā'tus es'set | mo'nitus es'set |  |
| etc.            | etc.            |  |
| 3RD.            | 4TH.            |  |
| rēc'tus es'sem  | audī'tus es'sem |  |
| rēc'tus es'sēs  | audī'tus es'sēs |  |
| rēc'tus es'set  | audī'tus es'set |  |
| etc.            | etc.            |  |

*Relief showing jurors and scribes, and speaker pleading a law case*



## —Syntax—

## TRANSLATIONS OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In modern English the subjunctive is seldom used. Many Latin subjunctives must therefore be translated by English indicatives or infinitives. For this reason no standard translation of the subjunctive can be given. You will learn how to translate each kind of subjunctive clause when it is presented.

## —Vocabulary—

|                                                                          |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| au'rum, -ī, n., <i>gold</i>                                              | scū'tum, -ī, n., <i>shield</i>      |
| fer'rum, -ī, n., <i>iron</i>                                             | tribū'nus, ī, m., <i>tribune</i>    |
| pī'lum, -ī, n., <i>javelin</i>                                           | val'lēs, val'lis, f., <i>valley</i> |
| ar'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, <i>arm, equip</i>                           |                                     |
| cōnsis'tō, cōnsis'tere, cōn'stitī, cōn'stitum, <i>halt; take a stand</i> |                                     |
| er'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, <i>wander; make a mistake</i>               |                                     |
| perfi'ciō, perfi'cere, perfē'cī, perfec'tum, <i>finish, accomplish</i>   |                                     |
| perter'reō, perterrē're, perter'ruī, perter'ritum, <i>terrify</i>        |                                     |
| nē, (adv.) <i>not</i>                                                    |                                     |
| vē'rō, <i>in truth, indeed; but</i>                                      |                                     |
| au'tem, (postpositive conj.) <i>but, however; and, moreover</i>          |                                     |
| e'nim, (postpositive conj.) <i>for</i>                                   |                                     |
| vel, (conj.) <i>or</i>                                                   |                                     |

## —Word Study—

**Ferrum** is often used to mean *sword, swords, or weapons*, particularly in the phrase **ferrō et igne**, *by fire and sword*.

**Pilum**. This is the heavy *javelin* of the Roman legionary, which he hurled during the charge, before the hand-to-hand sword fighting.

**Scūtum**: a large rectangular *shield*, curved like part of a cylinder; it would protect completely a man kneeling behind it. It was made of hide stretched over a wooden frame, with a hemispherical iron boss in the center to deflect heavy missiles.

**Tribūnus**. The **tribūnus militum** was a Roman officer, commissioned



by a vote of the people. Unlike the *lĕgātī*, who formed the general's staff, the *tribūnī* were assigned to particular legions. Each legion had six *tribūnī*, who took turns commanding it.

**Vel, aut.** *Aut* is used when the two terms being joined are contrasted or opposed (*or else*).

*Vincēs aut vincēris.*    *You will conquer, or else be conquered.*

**Vel** is used when an alternative is offered as a matter of choice.

*Hic locus est urbs vel oppidum.*

*This place is a city or, if you like, a town (or at least a town).*

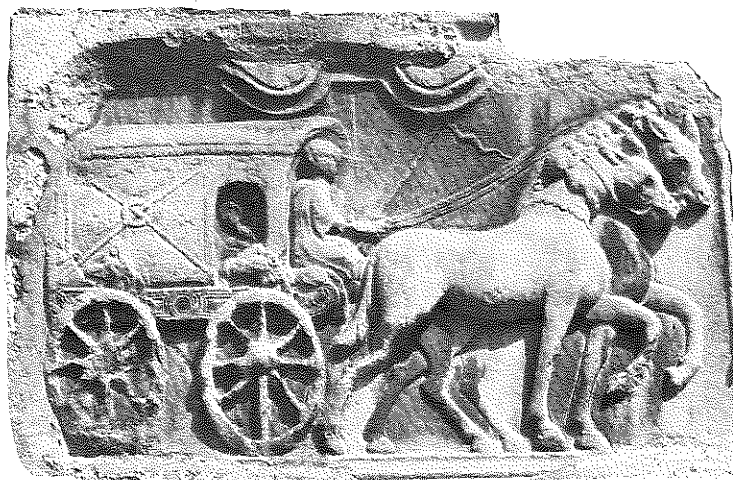
Like **aut . . . aut . . .**, **vel . . . vel . . .** can mean    *either . . . or . . .*

### — Exercises —

Give synopses, in the subjunctive only, of the following verbs.

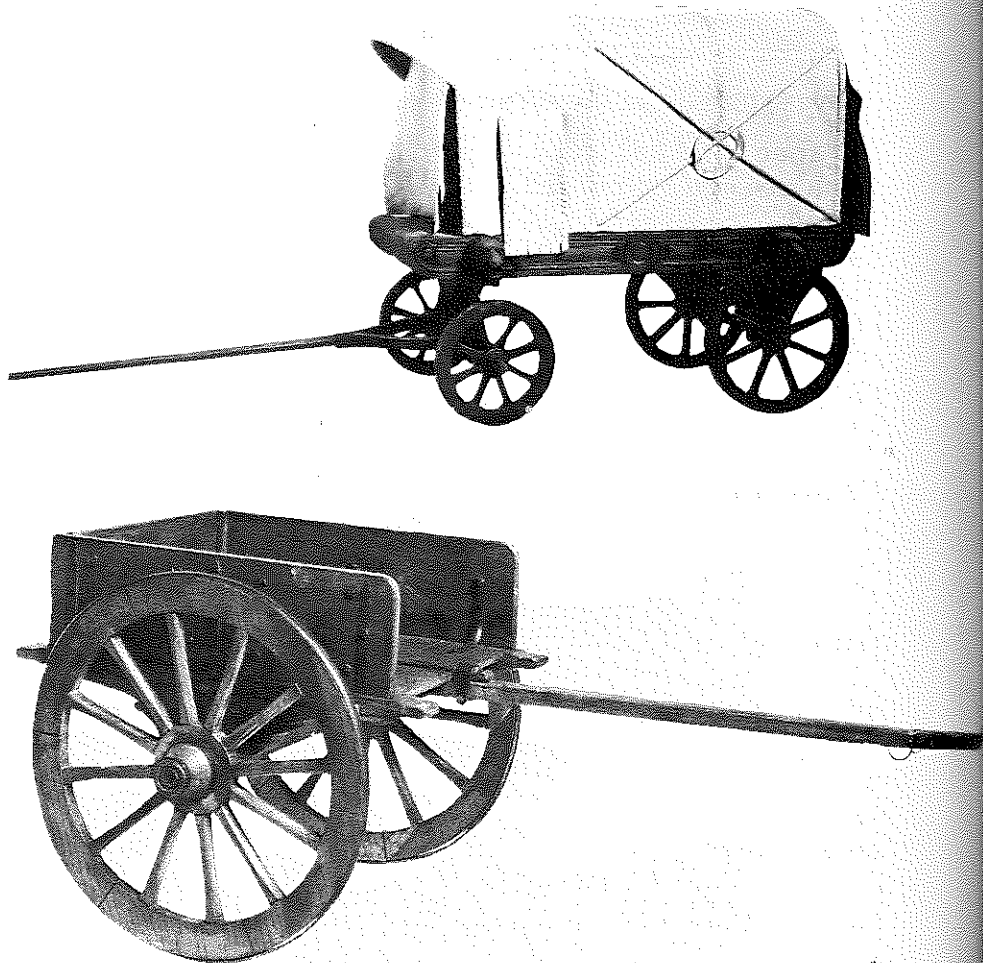
1. *armō* in the first person singular, active and passive
2. *terreō* in the second person singular, active and passive
3. *dūcō* in the third person singular, active and passive
4. *perficiō* in the first person plural, active and passive
5. *sentiō* in the second person plural, active and passive
6. *iungō* in the third person plural, active and passive
7. *sum* in the third person singular
8. *possum* in the third person plural

*A relief from Germany showing a covered wagon*



43

## Hortatory Subjunctive



*Model of a covered wagon and reconstruction of a two-wheeled cart*

Qui dedit beneficium taceat; narret qui accepit.  
*Let him who has given a favor be silent; let him who has  
 received it tell it.*—SENECA

—Syntax—

THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

A command or exhortation may be expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive, usually translated in English by *let*. The negative in Latin is expressed by *nē*.

Captīvī hūc addūcantur. *Let the captives be led to this place.*  
 Nē coniciant peditēs pīla. *Let the foot soldiers not throw their javelins.*

—Vocabulary—

|                                                       |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| cala'mitās, calamitā'tis, f.,<br>disaster, misfortune | or'bis, or'bis, m., circle, wheel                     |
| condi'ciō, condiciō'nis, f., terms,<br>condition      | potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., power                     |
| cōsuētū'dō, cōsuētū'dinis, f.,<br>habit, custom       | re'giō, regiō'nis, f., direction;<br>district, region |
| difficul'tās, difficultā'tis, f.,<br>difficulty       | sententia, -ae, f., opinion                           |
| īnsi'diae, -ārum, f., trap, ambush,<br>plot           | vadum, -ī, n., ford, shallows                         |
| iū'diciū, iūdi'cī, n., judgment,<br>trial             | ca'lidus, -a, -um, hot                                |
|                                                       | frī'gidus, -a, -um, cold                              |
|                                                       | subitō, (adv.) suddenly                               |
|                                                       | um'quam, (adv.) ever                                  |

—Word Study—

**Orbis terrārum** (*the circle of lands*) was the Roman name for the territories lying around the Mediterranean Sea; the phrase then came to mean *world*, in the sense of the inhabited areas of the world. The world as a globe is **tellus**, **tellūris**, f.

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. Conveniant omnēs. 2. Nē pugnēmus. 3. Mihi pecūniam det. 4. Cōsulem audiāmus. 5. Nē frangātur. 6. Nē venīre dubitent. 7. Discēdāmus. 8. Nē equōs incitēmus. 9. Nē terreātur. 10. Nōs nē videat.

## B. Translate.

1. Let him hear us. 2. Let them not find it. 3. Let her not hear this. 4. Let him not see them. 5. Let us go away. 6. Let her give them food. 7. Let them not play. 8. Let us announce this. 9. Let's sit here. 10. Let him not fear to come.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Prō patriā nostrā omnēs maximā cum virtūte pugnēmus. 2. Nē umquam audiat vōs periculum fūgisce. 3. Ipsī frumentum ab illius agricolae agrīs portēmus. 4. Discēdant illī puerī in viā ludentēs. 5. Verbīs eius senātōris nōtī nē commoveāmur, sed nostrās sentiētias dicāmus sine timōre. 6. Ad hanc vallem nē veniant sine aquā et cibō. 7. Nostrās condiōnēs pācis accipiant, et maneant semper nōbis amīcī. 8. Labor hōdiē cōficiātur; crās enim labōrāre nōn cupiēmus. 9. Illā nocte nihil vīdimus; post enim sōlis occāsum erat nūlla lūx lūnae aut stellārum. 10. Captus est mīles hūc veniēns rēgem interfectūrus.

## D. Translate.

1. Let them not ever think that they have defeated me. 2. Let her always believe that her sons were killed in the war. 3. Let us all look at the army as it marches to the camp. 4. Let us hope that the enemy will not surpass us in number of cavalry. 5. Let the tribune not hear that you deserted from the legion. 6. Let the judgments of our famous judge be accepted by all the citizens. 7. I hope that your children will learn many things about the world and its regions. 8. "Let him not hesitate to speak his opinion about the plot," said the consul. 9. Let us halt in this little valley, far from the enemy's camp. 10. Let that tribune not lead his forces into the territory of the enemy.



—Reading—

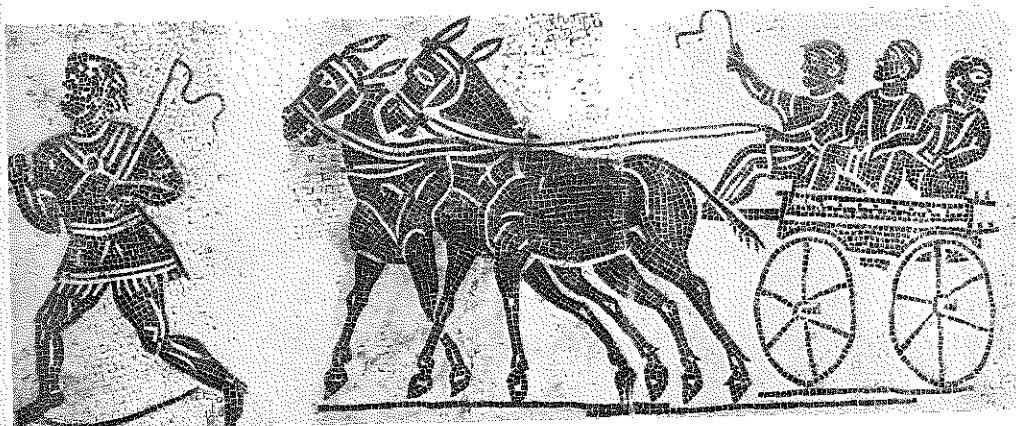
### ATALANTA

Ōlim in longinquā terrā habitābat potēns rēx, nōmine Schoeneus. Eius filia, Atalanta, celerrima omnium mortālium erat. Quod Atalanta tam pulchra erat, multōs procōs habēbat. Fortūna autem procōrum mala erat. Omnī procō Schoeneus "Sī Atalantam," inquit, "certāmine pedum vīceris, tum eam in mātīmōnium dūcere poteris; sī Atalanta tē vīcerit, poena mors erit."

Tandem ad rēgiam Schoeneī vēnit Hippomenēs, quī Atalantam in mātīmōnium dūcere cupiēbat. Schoeneus eī condiōnēs prōposuit. Inde Hippomenēs auxilium ā Venere ōrāvit, quae eī tria aurea pōma dedit. Tum Hippomenēs dixit sē ad certāmen esse parātum.

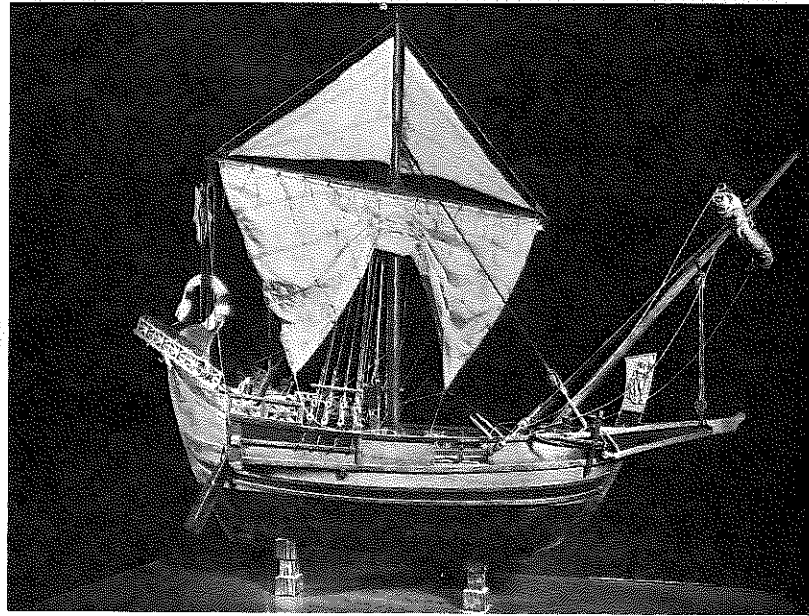
Dum haec geruntur, omnēs amīcī rēgis ad certāmen convēnērunt. Signum tubā datur. Magnō cursū Atalanta et Hippomenēs ēmicant. Atalanta autem celerior est itaque Hippomenēs ūnum ex tribus pōmīs proicit. Atalanta pōmum tollit et tum Hippomenēs prior est. Mox tamen Atalanta propter celeritatem suam eum superātūra est. Hippomenēs igitur secundum pōmum dēmittit, sed iterum Atalanta pōmum tollit et eum cōsequitur. Nunc ad mētā appropinquant. Ōrāns auxilium ā deā, Hippomenēs tertium pōmum proicit. Atalanta id quoque tollit sed spatium ad mētā brevius est. Hippomenēs est victor. Prō poenā mortis Hippomenēs Atalantam in mātīmōnium dūcit.

*Mosaic from Terme Cisiarii at Ostia showing two-wheeled cart drawn by mules, probably the usual mode of transport.*



# 44

## Adverbial Clause of Purpose Relative Clause of Purpose



*Model of a Roman freight ship*

Legum servi sumus ut liberi esse possimus.  
*We are slaves of the laws in order that we may be able  
 to be free. —CICERO*

—Syntax—

**ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF PURPOSE**

The subjunctive is used in Latin to express purpose. The present subjunctive is used if the main verb is present, future, or future perfect. The imperfect subjunctive is used if the main verb is in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect. An adverbial clause of purpose is introduced by **ut** if it is affirmative and **nē** if it is negative.

Pugnābāmus ut urbem defenderēmus.

*We were fighting to defend the city.*

*so as to defend the city.*

*in order to defend the city.*

*that we might defend the city.*

*so that we might defend the city.*

*in order that we might defend the city.*

Pugnāmus nē superēmur.

*We are fighting so as not to be defeated.*

*that we may not be defeated.*

*so that we may not be defeated.*

*in order that we may not be defeated.*

**RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE**

The relative clause of purpose is introduced by the relative pronoun instead of by **ut**. It is used to name the purpose of its antecedent, rather than the purpose of the whole clause.

Misit nūntiōs quī regiōnis cōsuētudinēs cognōscerent.

*He sent messengers to learn the customs of the district.*

*who were to learn the customs of the district.*

Librī scribuntur quōs legāmus.

*Books are written for us to read.*

*which we may read.*

When the purpose contains some comparative idea, the clause is introduced by **quō** (Ablative of Degree of Difference).

*Cōnsulī appropinquābō quō melius ōrātiōnem audiam.*

*I shall go near to the consul in order to hear his speech better. . . . the better to hear his speech. Literally: . . . by which the better I may hear his speech.*

The infinitive is never used to express purpose.

### —Vocabulary—

|                                                  |                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| altitū'dō, altitū'dinis, f., height,<br>depth    | iūs, iū'ris, n., right, justice, law              |
| centu'riō, centuriō'nis, m.,<br>centurion        | lātītū'dō, lātītū'dinis, f., width                |
| do'lor, dolō'ris, m., grief, pain,<br>suffering  | magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f.,<br>size, greatness |
| flōs, flō'ris, m., flower                        | mēns, men'tis, f., mind                           |
| fos'sa, -ae, f., ditch                           | mercā'tor, mercātō'ris, m.,<br>merchant, trader   |
| ge'nus, ge'neris, n., kind, sort,<br>class, race | o'nus, o'neris, n., burden                        |
| hīber'na, -ōrum, n., (pl.) winter<br>quarters    | o'pus, o'peris, n., work                          |
|                                                  | ōrā'tiō, ōrātiō'nis, f., speech                   |
|                                                  | vāl'lum, -ī, n., rampart                          |

### —Word Study—

**Centuriō.** A centurion was the highest ranking non-commissioned officer in the Roman army. As his title implies, he was originally in charge of a hundred soldiers; but in practice centurions' duties varied widely. A centurion might on occasion even be left in charge of a legion.

**Fossa, vāllum.** In fortifying a camp Roman soldiers dug a trench (*fossa*) around the outside of a large square area, throwing the dirt toward the inner side. A palisade of wooden stakes was then set in the top of this long mound of dirt; the mound and the palisade together made up what was called the **vāllum**.

The adverb **magnopere** is a contraction of the ablative of manner **magnō opere**, *with great effort*.



—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. I shall send a messenger to report this. 2. I sent a messenger to report this. 3. He will have come to hear us. 4. Men were sent to defend the bridge. 5. I shall send men to defend the bridge. 6. He has come to see them. 7. He had fled so as not to be killed. 8. They are fleeing so as not to be killed. 9. They will come to look at you. 10. Will you come with me to warn them?

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Pugnēmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Mercātōrēs ad nostram urbem vēnērunt ut pecūniam facerent. 3. Magnā cum dīligentiā aquam in hortum portāvit ut flōrēs crēscerent. 4. Multās ōrātiōnēs scripsit quās aliī dīcerent. 5. Celerrimē cucurrit nē ā suō patre caperētur. 6. Paulō ante nautae missī erant quī ad Britanniam cum illō mercātōre nāvigārent. 7. Nūntius ad urbem missus est quī cīvēs dē perīculis monēret. 8. Illa fēmina veniet ad urbem nōn ut lūdōs spectet sed ut ipsa spectētur. 9. Primā lūce prīnceps barbarus ad mediam silvam accessit nē ab equitibus invenīrētur. 10. Hortus tuus meum magnitūdine superat; labōrābō autem ut meum pulchriōrem tuō faciam.

C. Translate.

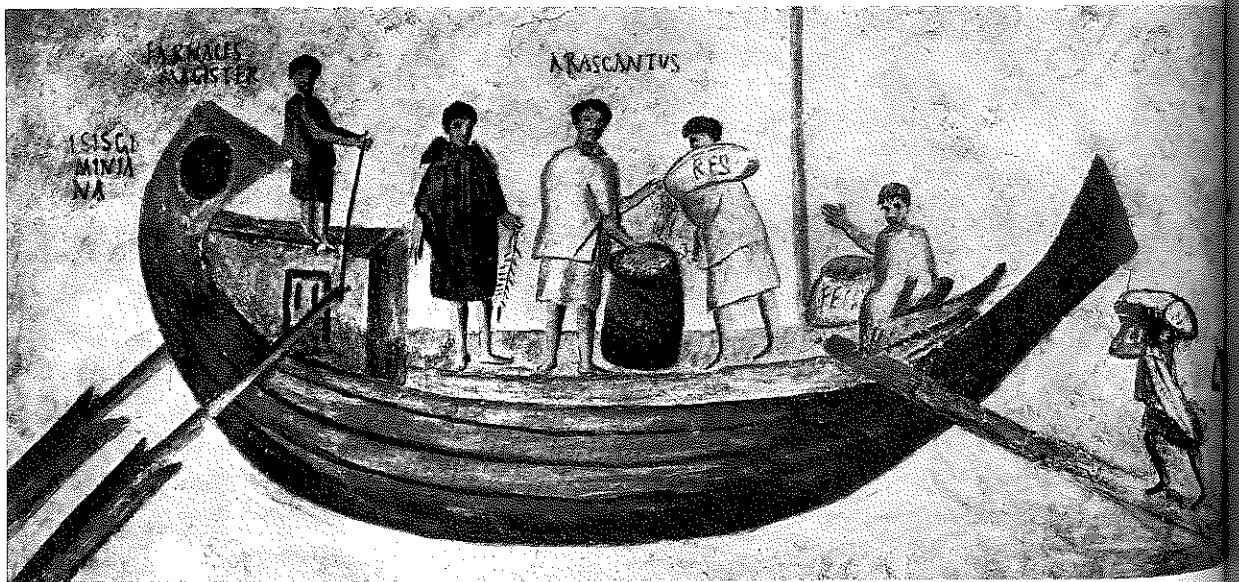
1. We sent the boys to the town to watch the games. 2. I had sailed many miles to come to this place because I had hoped to find my brother here. 3. The consuls, departing from the city, left a tribune and two thousand soldiers to be (for) a guard to the citizens. 4. I shall give you food to eat and wine to drink. 5. They fought long and fiercely in order to defeat a very powerful army of the Gauls. 6. I shall send my sister to the city to see the king and queen. 7. I want to fight bravely so that I may be equal to my father in boldness. 8. The messenger ran very quickly to report to the centurion that the enemy were approaching the camp. 9. Let my father come as soon as possible to lead me back to my native land. 10. These boys will read many books in order to learn as much as possible about the moon and stars.

## —Reading—

## CROESUS AND HIS SON

Inter fābulās quae nōbīs trāditae sunt dē Croesō rēge est haec: Croesus, quī maximum rēgnum et magnam cōpiam aurī habēbat, nōn tamen erat laetus, quod eius filius vocem nōn habēbat. Medicōs ad sē undique vocābat, sed nēmō eōrum vōcem puerō miserō dare poterat. Tandem Croesus ad urbem Delphōs ire cōstituit, ut cōsiliū ab ōrāculō rogāret. Ad illum oppidum itinere longō pervēnit. Postquam sē sacrō in flūmine lāvit et ad ōrāculum accessit, tum haec verba ā rēge audita sunt: "Ubi puer vocem habēbit, homō interficiētur." Ōrāculum intellegere semper erat difficillimum, sed multī existimāvērunt filium rēgis mox ē vitā excessūrum esse. Croesus igitur trīstissimus factus est.

Multis post annis Croesī hostēs rēgnum maximīs cum cōpiis oppugnābant. Ūnus ex hīs hostibus ad rēgem cucurrit ut eum interficeret. Filius perterritus hostem armātum vīdit et exclāmāvit, "Num rēgem interficiēs?" Croesus tamen gladiō occisus est. Hōc modō ōrāculum probātum est vērū.



*Painting of a landing scene*

Assiduus usus uni rei deditus et ingenium et artem saepe vincit.  
*Constant practice devoted to one subject often outdoes both  
 intelligence and skill.*—CICERO

## REVIEW 11 (LESSONS 41–44)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|             |          |           |           |
|-------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| altitūdō    | flōs     | magnitūdō | potestās  |
| aurum       | fossa    | mēns      | regiō     |
| calamitās   | genus    | mercātor  | scūtum    |
| centuriō    | hīberna  | onus      | sententia |
| condiciō    | īnsidiae | opus      | tribūnus  |
| cōnsuētūdō  | iūdicium | ōrātiō    | vadum     |
| difficultās | iūs      | orbis     | vallēs    |
| dolor       | lātitudō | pīlum     | vāllum    |
| ferrum      |          |           |           |

B. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|             |          |            |           |
|-------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| addūcō      | cōsistō  | errō       | opprimō   |
| armō        | cōspiciō | expōnō     | perficiō  |
| circumveniō | dēficiō  | incitō     | perterreō |
| commoveō    | dīmittō  | intermittō | trādūcō   |
| compleō     | ēnūntiō  | occidō     |           |

C. Give the meanings of the following.

|         |          |        |        |
|---------|----------|--------|--------|
| autem   | enim     | nē     | umquam |
| calidus | frīgidus | subitō | vel    |
|         |          |        | vērō   |

### —Drill on Forms—

A. Give a synopsis in the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative of:

- laudō in the first person singular, active.
- moveō in the second person singular, passive.

3. dūcō in the third person singular, active.
4. iaciō in the first person plural, passive.
5. inveniō in the second person plural, active.
6. sum in the third person plural.

B. Make a copy of the following box and fill the blanks with the proper forms of the participles of **incitō**, **habeō**, **dīcō**, **perficiō**, and **mūniō**.

| TENSE   | ACTIVE | PASSIVE |
|---------|--------|---------|
| PRESENT |        |         |
| PERFECT |        |         |
| FUTURE  |        |         |

—Drill on Syntax—

Translate.

1. I want to see you. 2. I came to see you. 3. It is good to see you. 4. He had come to see you. 5. We are afraid to see you. 6. It pleases me to see you. 7. They ordered him to see you. 8. They will come to see you. 9. She was able to see you. 10. He sent men to see you.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

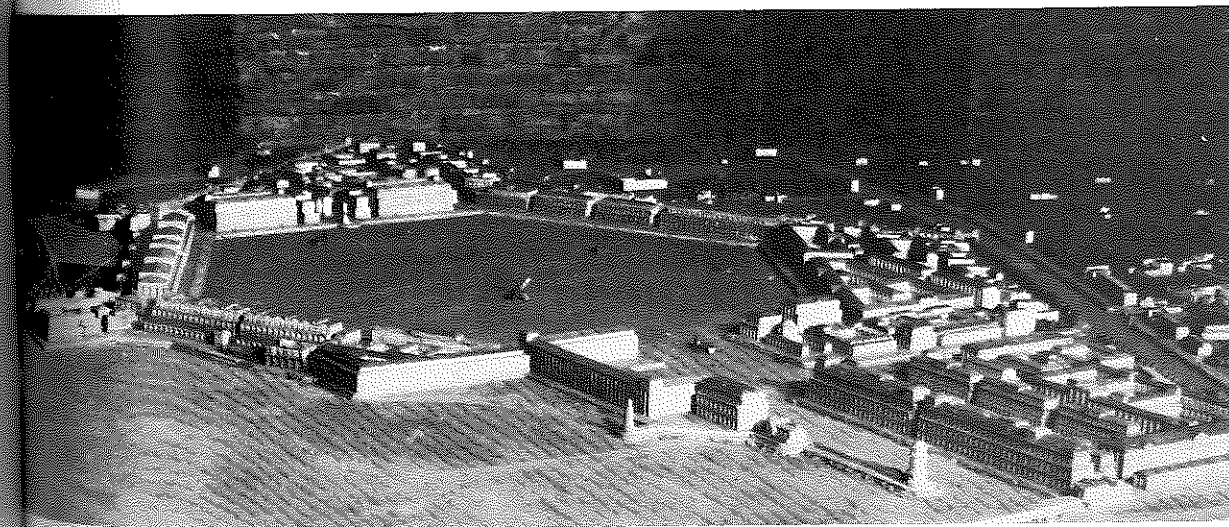
1. Tribūnus "Prīmā lūce," inquit, "militēs castra muniant fossā vāllōque." 2. Nē putēmus nostrās mentēs meliōrēs quam Gallōrum esse. 3. Nāvem inventūrī sumus quā mercātōrēs aurum nostrum ad patriam portent. 4. Nūntiō in silvam errātūrō viam ad urbem dēmōnstrāvī; ille autem mihi nihil dīxit. 5. Ut deae mēns nōbīs amīca sit, puellae dēligantur quae mēnsam ex aurō factam ad eam portent. 6. Militēs scūta pīlaque portantēs iter ad vadum quam celerrimē faciant, nē circumveniantur. 7. Magnā cum celeritāte currit ut ignem in summō colle videat. 8. In mēnsā



exponāmus cibōs vīnaque optima nē hic prīnceps potentissimus  
nōbīs inimīcus sit. 9. Nē audiat magister tē id opus optimum  
intermīsisse quod herī incēpistī. 10. Barbarī fossam lapidibus  
complēre incēpērunt ut cōpiās trādūcerent et castra occupārent.

**B. Translate.**

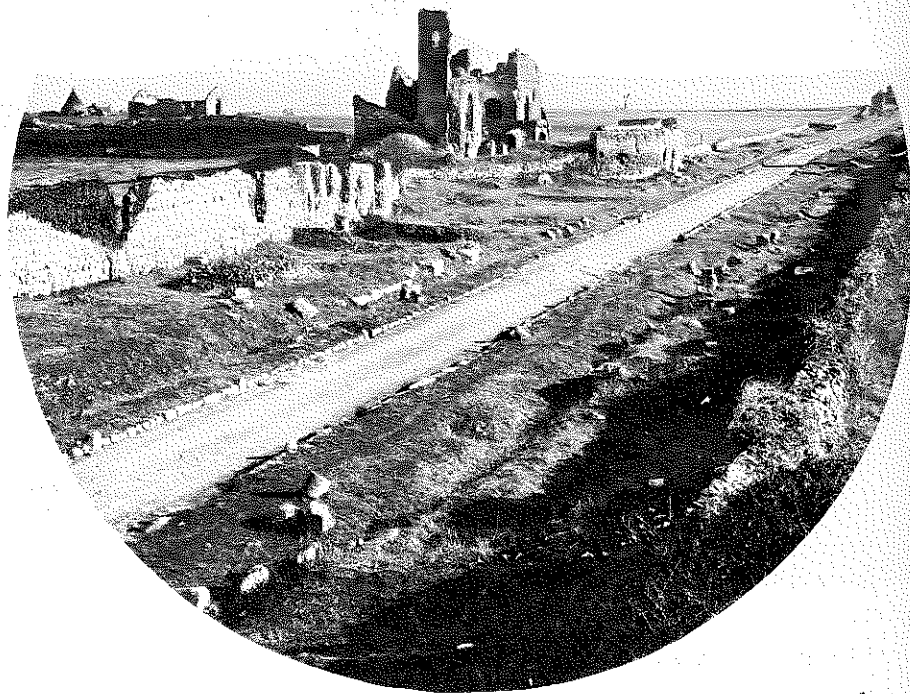
1. Let us all be friendly to these men, who are here to see our city. 2. He was wounded as he was about to hurl his javelin at the chief of the barbarians. 3. Let not your grief be too great, for I know that your brother will come to find you. 4. Let the enemy put their shields and javelins in the ditch across the valley; then let them surrender themselves to us. 5. The goddess equipped her son with a shield made out of gold, for she was anxious about his safety (his safety was for an anxiety to her). 6. We took a cart with which to carry our wounded to the camp. 7. Your grain will be of use (for a use) to us, and we shall make bread for you to eat. 8. He will send a messenger to the enemy's camp to carry the terms of peace. 9. It is very difficult to believe that these flowers, chosen with care, will not please your mother. 10. That centurion came to our camp to report to the tribunes the ambush of the German army.



*Model of harbors at Ostia*

45

## Indirect Commands



*Appian Way—remains of the Temple of Hercules and the Villa of the Quintilii*

Exigo a me non ut optimis par sim, sed ut malis melior.  
*I require myself not to be equal to the best, but to  
 be better than the bad.*—SENECA

—Syntax—

**INDIRECT COMMANDS**

Verbs of asking, advising, and commanding are followed by indirect commands. In English these are usually infinitives. Latin uses the subjunctive in the same tenses as adverbial clauses of purpose (see Lesson 44). Indirect Commands are also called Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

**Cases with Verbs of Asking, Advising, and Commanding.** Three different constructions are used for the person asked, advised, or commanded to do something.

**Dative** (indirect object): **imperō, mandō, persuadeō.**

Mihi persuāsit ut venīrem. *He persuaded me to come.*

**Accusative** (direct object): **moneō, ōrō, rogō.**

Mē monuit nē venīrem. *He warned me not to come.*

**Ablative with a Preposition** (place from which): **petō, postulō, quaerō.**

Ā mē petit ut veniam. *He is asking me to come.*

**Reflexives in Indirect Commands.** In an indirect command the reflexive pronoun has as its antecedent the subject of the verb of asking, advising, or commanding which governs the indirect command.

Ab eīs petīvit nē sē vulnerārent. *He begged them not to wound him.*

—Vocabulary—

im'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *order, command*  
 man'dō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *command, instruct; entrust*  
 ō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *beg*  
 persuā'deō, persuādē're, persuā'sī, persuā'sum, *persuade*  
 pos'tulō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *demand*  
 quae'rō, quae'rere, quaesī'vī, quaesī'tum, *seek; inquire, ask*  
 ro'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *ask*

|                                                           |                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| er'gō, (adv.) <i>therefore</i>                            | an, (conj.) <i>or</i>         |
| praete'reā, (adv.) <i>besides,</i><br><i>besides that</i> | an'nōn, (conj.) <i>or not</i> |
| pro'cul, (adv.) <i>at some distance</i>                   |                               |

—Word Study—

**Imperō** and **rogō** may take a direct object in place of an indirect command.

Tibi pecūniam imperābō. *I shall order money from you.*  
Mē cibum rogāvit. *He asked me for food.*

**An, annōn.** **An** is used in double questions when the two halves cannot both be true.

Ad Italiam veniēs, an in Britannia manēbis?  
*Will you come to Italy, or remain in Britain?*  
Ad Italiam veniēs annōn? *Will you come to Italy or not?*

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. He had begged me not to sail (**orō** and **petō**). 2. We shall persuade them to remain. 3. I asked him to depart (**petō**, **quaerō**, and **rogō**). 4. He influenced me to fight. 5. They were demanding of me that I yield. 6. I advise you not to walk. 7. He commanded them to halt (**imperō** and **mandō**). 8. We warn you to flee. 9. They are instructing her not to run. 10. He ordered that the work be finished (**imperō** and **iubeō**).

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Petitisne ā mē ut ad Hīspāniam vōbiscum nāvigem? 2. Tribūnīs imperat ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Ille prīnceps barbarus frātrī persuādēbit ut rēgnum in cīvitatē occupet. 4. Caesar ab eīs postulāvit ut decem ex prīncipibus ad sē addūcerentur. 5. Agricolam senem addūcere temptābant ut sibi pecūniam daret. 6. Tē rogābō ut hās litterās ad cōsulem portēs. 7. Petivēruntne ā Germānīs nē sēcum pugnārent, an cōstituērunt bellum gerere? 8. Cōsul cōpiās barbarās monuit ut iter per finēs Gallōrum maximā cum celeritatē facerent. 9. Dux mandat ut



omnēs Aeduī sibi tēla et arma omnia trādant. 10. Cīvēs militēs rogāvērunt nē castra prope urbem pōnerent.

C. Translate.

1. The senators had instructed the consuls to defend the state from all dangers. 2. She is asking her father to give her the money. 3. The leader with great difficulty persuaded the soldiers to fight in that valley. 4. He begged his mother not to send him to that school. 5. The tribune has ordered grain from the farmers and wine from the merchants. 6. The messenger demanded of the boys that they lead him through the great forest. 7. We command you to complete this work; therefore it ought to be begun at once. 8. Caesar let some farmers go away, but he warned others to carry the grain to the camp in carts.

—Reading—

THE STORY OF REGULUS

Rōmānī antīquī bella longa cum Carthāginiēnsibus gerēbant. Haec gēns erat audāx et potēns, quam Rōmānī maximē timēbant. Senātus Rōmānus putābat hostēs ē Siciliā urbem Rōmam ipsam oppugnātūrōs esse. Propter hoc perīculum Rōmānī cōsiliū audācissimū cēpērunt. Cōsulem Rēgulum cum exercitū in Āfricā mīsērunt ut Carthāginem caperet.

Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs proeliīs victī celeriter pācem rogābant. Sed Rōmānī eōs inīquās condiōnēs accipere coēgērunt. Mox autem rursus pugnāre cōstituērunt; nōn solum Rōmānōs superāvērunt sed etiam Rēgulum cēpērunt. Ducem captum Rōmam redīre iussērunt ut pax meliōribus condiōnibus cōstituerētur. "Lībertātem tibi reddēmus," inquiunt, "sī nostrī captīvī ā Rōmānīs remittentur. Si nōn remittentur, ad nōs quam celerrimē venīre dēbēs."

Itaque quid fēcit Rēgulus? Sē haec factūrum esse cōfirmāvit, et sine morā ad senātum discessit. Senātōribus, "Captīvōs," inquit, "reddere nōn dēbētis. Sunt enim fortēs, ego autem nōn iam validus sum. Vōs sine mē facile eōs superātūrōs esse existimō. Hostēs autem sine militibus captīs bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterunt."

Brevī tempore Rēgulus Carthāginem rediit, et ab Carthāginiēnsibus crūdēlissimē interfectus est.

# 46

## Clauses after Verbs of Fearing Sequence of Tenses



*Dress of Roman matron and a consul in toga and senatorial boots*

Sedit qui timuit ne non succederet.  
*He who feared he would not succeed sat still.*—HORACE  
*(For fear of failure, he did nothing.)*

—Syntax—

### CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

In English we use an indirect statement after verbs of fearing: "I fear that he is coming." Latin uses the subjunctive. After verbs of fearing an affirmative clause is introduced by **nē**, a negative clause by **nē nōn** or **ut**.

Timeō nē veniat. *I fear that he is coming (lest he come).*  
 Timeō nē nōn veniat. *I fear that he is not coming.*  
 Timeō ut veniat. *I fear that he is not coming.*

If you will remember that a clause after a verb of fearing expresses the wish that the person fearing has in mind, you will have no trouble.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES

You have already learned that in purpose clauses and indirect commands the present subjunctive is used after present and future main verbs, and the imperfect subjunctive after past verbs. In other kinds of clauses we may need to express an action prior to that of the main verb (e.g., "I fear that he has come," "I feared that he had come"); for this we use the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive. *Sequence of tenses* is the term used for the tense relationship between the main verb and the subjunctive in a subordinate clause.

**Primary Sequence.** If the verb of the main clause is in a present or future tense, the verb in the subjunctive is in:

1. the present tense, if its action takes place at the same time as, or after, that of the main verb.
2. the perfect tense, if its action is over with by the time of that of the main verb.

**Secondary Sequence.** If the verb of the main clause is in a past tense, the verb in the subjunctive is in:

1. the imperfect tense, if its action takes place at the same time as, or after, that of the main verb.
2. the pluperfect tense, if its action is over with by the time of that of the main verb.

## TENSES OF THE MAIN VERB

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

|                                                            | Incomplete Action<br>(during or after<br>that of main verb) | Completed Action<br>(prior to that<br>of main verb) |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| PRIMARY SEQUENCE<br>Present<br>Future<br>Future perfect }  | Present                                                     | Perfect                                             |
| SECONDARY SEQUENCE<br>Imperfect<br>Perfect<br>Pluperfect } | Imperfect                                                   | Pluperfect                                          |

## Examples of Sequence of Tenses

|                               |                                                          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Timeō, I fear,                | } nē veniat, that he is coming.                          |
| Timēbō, I shall fear,         |                                                          |
| Timeorō, I shall have feared, |                                                          |
| Timēbam, I was fearing,       | } nē venīret, that he was coming,<br>that he would come. |
| Timeui, I feared,             |                                                          |
| Timeueram, I had feared,      |                                                          |
|                               | nē vēnerit, that he has come.                            |
|                               | nē vēnisset, that he had come.                           |

## —Vocabulary—

|                                                        |                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| aedifi'cium, aedifi'cī, n., building                   | spe'ciēs, -ē'ī, f., sight, appearance                  |
| au'ris, au'ris, f., ear                                | ves'tis, ves'tis, f., clothing                         |
| fi'dēs, -eī, f., faith, loyalty,<br>confidence; pledge | vigi'lia, -ae, f., wakefulness,<br>watchfulness; watch |
| fo'rum, -ī, n., market place, forum                    | vīs, vīs, f., force, violence                          |
| nē'mō, nē'mini, m. (dat.), no one                      | vī'rēs, vī'rium (pl.), strength                        |
| o'culus, -ī, m., eye                                   |                                                        |

Vīs is declined as follows:

|             | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|-------------|----------|----------|
| NOMINATIVE: | vīs      | vī'rēs   |
| GENITIVE:   | vīs      | vī'rium  |
| DATIVE:     | vī       | vī'ribus |
| ACCUSATIVE: | vīm      | vī'rēs   |
| ABLATIVE:   | vī       | vī'ribus |



—Word Study—

**Fidēs.** From the meaning *pledge* have developed the idioms **in fidē**, **in fidem**, *under protection*.

**Forum.** Originally a market place, the forum at Rome gradually acquired many other functions. The law courts and stock market were there; meetings were held and political speeches delivered there. It was the scene of gladiatorial shows and dramatic performances, and a favorite loitering place for idlers.

**Nēmō** is derived from **nē + homō**. Its genitive and dative are seldom used; **nūllius** and **nūllī** (from **nūllus**, **-a**, **-um**) are used instead. There is no plural. The accusative is **neminem**.

**Vigilia.** In military language, a *watch* was one-fourth of the night.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. He feared that I would run.
2. We fear that they are not fleeing.
3. I feared that they would not yield.
4. They feared that he was not present.
5. You fear that I will remain.
6. He feared that you were being dismissed.
7. She feared that he had been killed.
8. They fear that it has not been accomplished.
9. Who feared that he had not departed?
10. They fear that he is sleeping.

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Crēdāmus nūllī; nēmō enim fidēlis nōbīs est.
2. Bellum nōn gerent quod timent nē frūmenta sua et villae aedificiaque omnia capiantur.
3. Ambulēmus ad forum ut illum nōtum cōsulem ōrātiōnem habentem audiāmus.
4. Illa animālia et speciē et magnitudīne corporis dissimillima erant eīs quae paulō post vīdimus.
5. Nēmō est quī nōbīs cibum aut vīnum det; quid ergō factūrī sumus?
6. Ab hostibus victīs postulābunt ut omnia arma sibi trādant.
7. Dicēbat difficillimum esse hunc puerum cursū superāre.
8. Det Fortūna huic proeliō exitum fēlicem!
9. Nōsne senātus populusque Rōmānus rogābunt ut amīcī et sociī sīmus, an gerent bellum contrā nōs?
10. Tertiā vigiliā ignēs in hostium castrīs vīsī sunt; imperātor noster ergō timuit nē illī fugere incēpissent.

## C. Translate.

1. I say that I myself have seen that ancient building with my (own) eyes. 2. This work is very difficult, but we hope that our desire for glory will give us strength. 3. As soon as he arrived in the city he came to see his friend who was about to depart. 4. Fearing that his men would not be able to defend the town, he sent cavalry to guard (be a guard for) the bridge. 5. He tried to persuade the consul not to deliver (**habeō**) a speech in the senate that day. 6. Let's run to the forum as quickly as possible to watch the games. 7. If you hold this same course you will arrive at the island at sundown. 8. He said that that animal was very like a horse in appearance, but that its ears were much larger. 9. There was no one to defend us; therefore I feared that our town would be taken. 10. In the fourth watch Caesar ordered that all the soldiers should take arms.

## —Reading—

## THE SACRED GESE

Gallī urbem Rōmam oppugnābant. Eōrum ducēs militibus imperāvērunt ut acerrimē pugnārent. Rōmānī timēbant nē tōta urbs dēlerētur. Sed Gallī eam expugnāre nōn poterant, quod mōns Capitōlinus erat altus et moenia valida erant.

Circum Capitōlium Gallī stationēs disposuerant nē Rōmānī in monte cibum et aquam acciperent. Rōmānī autem Gallōs dērisērunt; pānem etiam ad Gallōs dēiēcērunt.

Ūnā nocte tertiā vigiliā ūnus ex custōdibus Gallicīs vīdit nūntium Rōmānum nūdīs pedibus discēdere dē Capitōliō in forum. Statim custōs ad ducem Gallicum properāvit ut id nūntiāret.

Proximā nocte quartā vigiliā dum lūna obscura est Gallī suīs militibus imperāvērunt ut montem ascenderent magnō silentiō, nē Rōmānī eōs audīrent. Ānserēs autem sacri excitātī sunt ubi Gallī ad summum montem appropinquāvērunt, et magnum strepitum emisērunt. Miles Rōmānus, Mānlius nōmine, ē somnō excitātus, primum Gallum in summum mūrū ascendentem petīvit et eum dē mūrō dēiēcīt. Hic Gallus recidēs in Gallōs aliōs incidit, et eī cēterōs omnēs Gallōs ad imum montem reiēcērunt.

Tālī modō Capitōlium ā Mānliō, virō fortī, et strepitū ānserum sacrorum servātum est. Postea Mānlius "Capitōlinus" appellātus est.



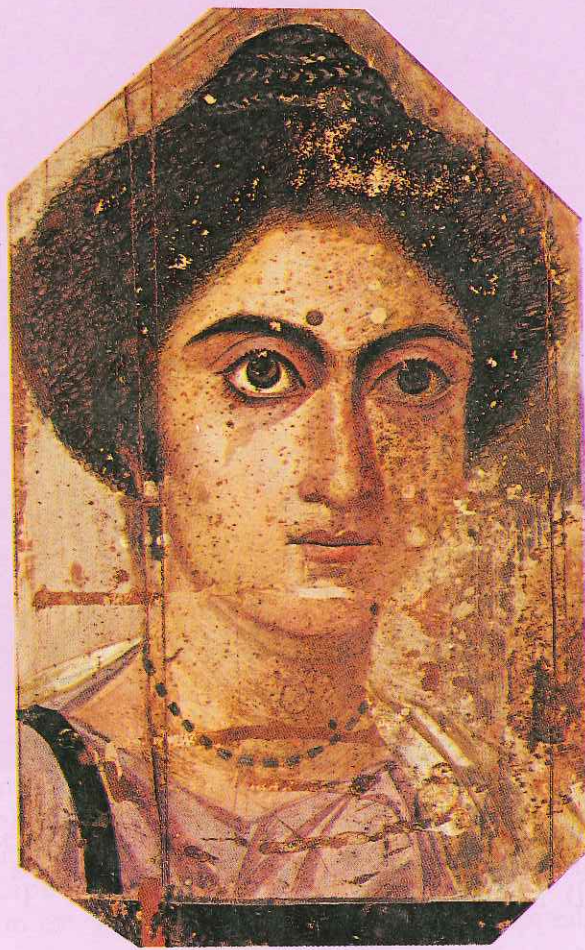


*The elegant tresses and complicated coiffures of Pompeian women required careful arranging, done here by a slave hairdresser. Wall painting from Herculaneum, 1st century, A.D. National Museum, Naples*



47

## Indirect Questions



*Portrait of a young woman, 2nd century, A.D., Archeological Museum, Florence*



Saepe ne utile quidem est scire quid futurum sit.  
*Often it is not even advantageous to know what will be.*—CICERO

—Syntax—

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Indirect questions in Latin are introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb and have their verbs in the subjunctive, following sequence of tenses.

Rogat quid faciāmus.    *He asks what we are doing.*  
 Rogat quid fēcerimus.    *He asks what we have done.*  
 Rogāvit quid facerēmus.    *He asked what we were doing.*  
 Rogāvit quid fēcissēmus.    *He asked what we had done.*

A reflexive pronoun in an indirect question (just as in an indirect command) has as its antecedent the verb governing the indirect question.

Mihi "Dabisne," inquit, "mihi dōnum?"  
*"Will you give me a gift?" she said to me.*  
 Mē rogāvit num sibi dōnum datūrus essem.  
*She asked me if I would give her a gift.*

Besides verbs of asking, indirect questions may follow verbs of saying, perceiving, knowing, etc.

Scitne ubi sītis?    *Does he know where you are?*

—Vocabulary—

tre'decim, (indecl. adj.) *thirteen*, (XIII)  
 quattuor'decim, (indecl. adj.) *fourteen*, (XIV or XIII)  
 quīn'decim, (indecl. adj.) *fifteen*, (XV)  
 sē'decim, (indecl. adj.) *sixteen* (XVI)  
 septen'decim, (indecl. adj.) *seventeen* (XVII)  
 duodēvigin'tī, (indecl. adj.) *eighteen* (XVIII)  
 ūndēvigin'tī, (indecl. adj.) *nineteen* (XIX or XVIII)

|                                                     |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| commū'nis, -e, <i>common, general</i>               | num, (conj.) <i>if, whether</i>                   |
| immortā'lis, -e, <i>immortal</i>                    | utrum . . . an . . . , (correl. conj.)            |
| privā'tus, -a, -um, <i>private</i>                  | <i>whether . . . or . . .</i>                     |
| quan'tus, -a, -um, <i>how great?,<br/>how much?</i> | utrum . . . necne,<br><i>whether . . . or not</i> |
| quot, (indecl. adj.) <i>how many?</i>               |                                                   |

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Tē rogābit ubi fuerīs.
2. Rogāvit quid facerem.
3. Scit quī sītis.
4. Scīvī cūr vērissēs.
5. Quaerit cuius equus currat.
6. Rogāvistine ā quō vulnerātus esset?
7. Scīverās quid factūrī essent.
8. Sciam cui id dēs.
9. Cupivit scīre num eōs vīdissēmus.
10. Rogābat quī mittī dēberent.

B. Translate.

1. He asked who had been fighting.
2. Do you know to whom she gave it?
3. We shall learn whether he did this.
4. They do not know who is being sent.
5. They had learned why she was going to depart.
6. He will ask whose friends saw her.
7. I knew what she was saying.
8. He wants to find out whether they came or not.
9. Did you see what he was doing?
10. I do not know where he will find it.

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Rogāvī utrum agricolis an mercātōribus pecūnia darētur.
2. Magnā cum dīligentiā temptābāmus cognōscere ubi liberī essent.
3. Quaeram ā Caesare num lapidēs in fossam iēcerint.
4. Nautae nostrī scīvērunt quot nāvēs in portum pervēnissent.
5. Tertiā vigiliā lēgātus cognōvit quī ē castrīs fūgissent.
6. Omnēs timuērunt oppidum relinquere, nēmō enim scīvit quid factum esset.
7. Rogāvī meum patrem quō in locō vestem posuisset.
8. Deī immortalēs sciunt quid hominēs fēcerint et faciant et factūrī sint.
9. Cōsul timēns nē urbs caperētur rogābat quantaessent hostīum cōpiae.
10. Nūntiī missī sunt quī ā rēge quaererent cūr in Graeciam exercitum trādūxisset.

## D. Translate.

1. The centurion ordered the captured messenger to say where the buildings were. 2. Do you know whether that ship is equal in size to our ships? 3. My friends asked me why the children had remained in the forum for five hours. 4. Will you ask the captive to what place the barbarian chief will lead his army? 5. The consuls knew that the enemy were in the city, but they did not know how many there were. 6. He sent a boy to find out who had led the animals from the field. 7. I know that you are all asking whether he did it or not. 8. She hesitated to ask the men if they would lead her to the city. 9. Let them not ask what we have given to the wounded foot soldiers. 10. The small boy asked his father what the name was of the man who had stood on the moon.

## —Reading—

## HANNIBAL AT CANNÆ

Pessima calamitās armōrum Rōmānōrum erat in proeliō quod Varrō et Paulus, cōsulēs Rōmānī, contrā Hannibalem fēcērunt. Pugnātum est apud oppidum quod appellātur Cannæ. In hōc proeliō tōtus paene exercitus Rōmānus captus aut interfectus est. Paulus occīsus est.

Ante eam pugnam cōsilia bellī duōrum cōsulum erant vērō inter sē dissimillima. Varrō dīxit sē longum bellum cum Hannibale ūnō proeliō statim perfectūrum esse. Sed Paulus crēdebāt malam esse audāciam Varrōnis et meliōra cōsilia Fabiū Maximī. Timēbat nē cōsilia Varrōnis Rōmam opprimerent. Ille scīvit quot proeliīs Fabius bellum cum Hannibale gessisset. Itaque ad Fabium accessit et ab eō quaesīvit quid ipse facere dēberet. Fabius respondit: "Tua rēs, Paule, difficillima est; et cum Varrōne et cum Hannibale pugnāre cōgeris."

Sed cōsiliū Varrōnis, nōn Paulī, vīcit. Exercitus Rōmānus superātus est et multī Rōmānī timēbant nē Hannibal brevī tempore ipsam Rōmam oppugnāret.



48

## Result Clauses



*Etruscan breastplate, Etruscan Museum, Vatican, Rome*



Nullus est liber tam malus ut non aliqua parte prosit.  
*There is no book so bad that it is not profitable in some part.*

—PLINY THE YOUNGER

—Syntax—

RESULT CLAUSES

A clause describing an action which results from the action of the main verb is called a clause of result. The verb in the result clause is put into the subjunctive, and it is always introduced by **ut**; in the negative, **ut . . . nōn**, **ut . . . nūllus**, etc., are used. The tense of the verb in the subjunctive is normally determined by the rule for sequence of tenses, with the present and imperfect only used, as in purpose clauses (see Lesson 44). Usually there is a word meaning *so* or *such* in the main clause: **sic**, **ita**, **tam**, **tālis**, **tantus**, or **tot**.

Erant tot aedificia ut omnia vidēre nōn possem.

*There were so many buildings that I could not see them all.*

Hoc opus tantum est ut numquam id confectūrī sīmus.

*This work is so great that we shall never finish it.*

**Substantive Clauses of Result.** Result clauses are also used as the subject or object of certain verbs. A substantive clause may be the object of a verb of causing or bringing about.

Effecit ut tribūnus discēderet. *He made the tribune leave. He brought it about that the tribune left.*

It may also be used as the subject of such a verb in the passive, of a verb of happening, or of **necesse est**, *it is necessary*.

Accidit ut cōsul adesset. *It happened that the consul was present. The consul happened to be present.*

—Vocabulary—

sa'tis, n., (defective noun) *enough*

neces'se, (defective adj.) *necessary*

tā'lis, -e, *such, of such a kind*

tan'tus, -a, -um, *so much, so great, so large (such a great, such a large)*

tot, (indecl. adj.) *so many*

ac'cidō, acci'dere, ac'cidī, —, *fall upon; happen*  
 effi'ciō, effi'cere, effē'cī, effec'tum, *bring about; complete*  
 i'ta, (adv.) *so, in such a way, thus*  
 tam, (adv.) *so*  
 sīc, (adv.) *so, in this way*

—Word Study—

**Satis.** This word appears only in the nominative and accusative singular. It is frequently used with a partitive genitive.

Satis cibī habēmus. *We have enough food (enough of food).*

The accusative is often used adverbially.

Satis labōrāvimus; opus confectum est.  
*We have worked enough; the task is finished.*

**Necesse** has only a nominative and accusative neuter singular. It is used only as subjective complement with **esse, est, erat**, etc.

**Ita, sīc, tam.** **Sīc** modifies only verbs, **tam** only adjectives and adverbs; **ita** may do either.

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Efficit ut discessūrī sīmus. 2. Tantus est ut nēmō eum superet. 3. Necesse est ut nihil faciāmus. 4. Accidit ut absit. 5. Tot hominēs aderant ut nōn omnēs mē audirent. 6. Urbs erat tālis ut omnēs dēlectāret. 7. Necesse erat ut ambulārēmus. 8. Tam longē abest ut id nōn videant. 9. Ita territus erat ut fugeret. 10. Factum est ut multī vēnīrent.

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Tēla tantā vī coniēcērunt ut duodēvigintī ex hostibus interficerentur. 2. Necesse erat ut iter maximum illō diē facerent ut ad castra ante sōlis occāsum pervēnīrent. 3. Tantus timor mortis omnēs captīvōs occupāverat ut ex castrīs excēderent. 4. Tālēs sunt condiōnēs pācis ut hostēs nōbīs quīndecim annōs pecūniam datūrī

sint. 5. Cōsul efficiet ut ille senātor malus ab urbe discēdat. 6. Virtūs peditum nostrōrum tanta erat ut vincī nōn possent. 7. Accidit ut nēmō mitterētur quī nōbīs auxiliō esset. 8. Meus frāter tam validus est ut tuum gladium frangere possit. 9. Erant in hostium castrīs tot mīlītēs ut satis cibī et aquae nōn esset. 10. Tantam multitudinem equitum habēmus ut omnēs hostēs nōs oppugnāre dubitent.

C. Translate.

1. Our city is so beautiful that many people come to see it. 2. Marcus was so strong that he was able to defeat the rest of the boys. 3. The Romans had such a large army that they were able to conquer the Gauls. 4. It is necessary that we find enough food to give to this crowd. 5. She was so terrified that she asked her father to guard her. 6. He reads in such a loud voice that the rest of the children can hear every word very easily. 7. The consuls brought it about that all enemies were driven out of the city. 8. The dangers were so great that they did not want to leave the town. 9. It happened that the merchants, who were nineteen in number, were sailing to Britain at that time. 10. That river is so wide that we cannot see the enemy's camp.

—Reading—

ROMAN SUCCESSES

Annō quartō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā vēnit, M. Claudius Mār-cellus, cōsul, contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit. Hic tantam ĩnsulae Siciliae partem cēpit ut Poenī auxilium dē ĩnsulā in Ītaliā mittere nōn possent. Syrācūsās, nōbilissimā urbem, expugnāvit. Et dē hāc urbe tot signa (*statues*) ad urbem Rōmam mīsīt ut haec in Forō posita eum locum pulcherrimum facerent.

Interim in Hispāniā missus est P. Cornēlius Scīpiō. Hic, puer duodēvigintī annōrum, in pugnā ad Tīcīnum tantā cum virtūte pug-nāverat ut omnēs scīrent hunc futūrum maximum imperātōrem. Atque ita accidit. Nam in Hispāniā tam bene rēs gessit ut omnēs ferē Hispāniae cīvitatēs in fidem Populī Rōmānī venīrent.

Difficile est tenere quae acceperis nisi exerceas.  
*It is difficult to retain what you may have learned unless you should  
 practise it.*—PLINY THE YOUNGER

## REVIEW 12 (LESSONS 45–48)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

- A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|            |       |         |         |
|------------|-------|---------|---------|
| aedificium | fidēs | oculus  | vestis  |
| auris      | forum | speciēs | vigilia |
|            | nēmō  |         | vīs     |

- B. Give the other nominative singular forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives.

|            |          |         |        |     |
|------------|----------|---------|--------|-----|
| commūnis   | privātus | quot    | tālis  | tot |
| immortālis | quantus  | necesse | tantus |     |

- C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|         |       |           |        |
|---------|-------|-----------|--------|
| accidō  | mandō | persuādeō | quaerō |
| efficiō | orō   | postulō   | rogō   |
| imperō  |       |           |        |

- D. Give the meaning of:

|       |       |           |       |
|-------|-------|-----------|-------|
| an    | ita   | praetereā | num   |
| annōn | necne | procul    | tam   |
| ergō  | sic   |           | utrum |

- E. Give the cardinal numerals from one to twenty.

### —Drill on Syntax—

- A. Copy the following sentences and fill in the blanks.

1. Affirmative purpose clauses are introduced by —.
2. Affirmative result clauses are introduced by —.

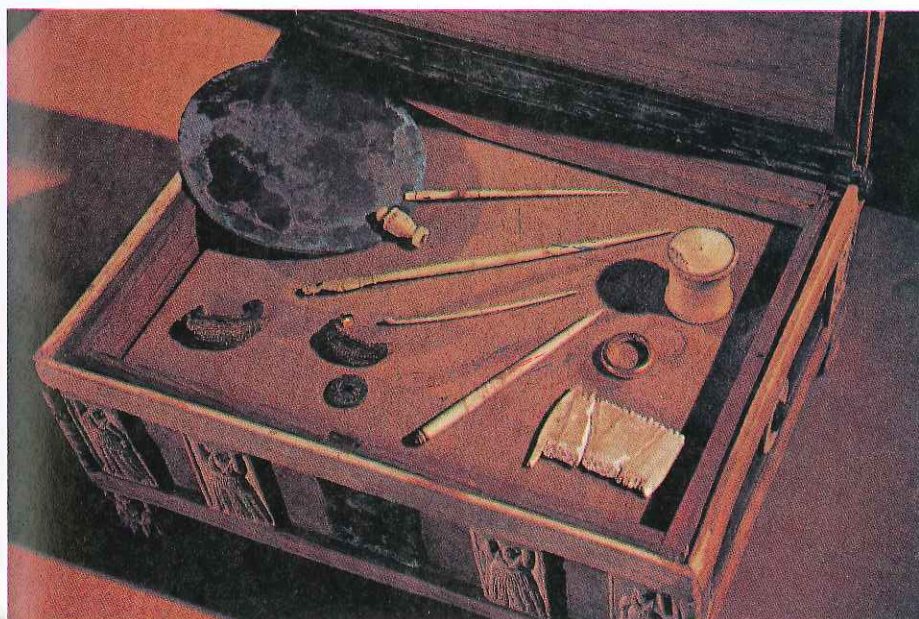


3. Negative purpose clauses are introduced by —.
4. Negative result clauses are introduced by —.
5. Both purpose and result clauses normally use only the — or — tenses of the subjunctive.
6. If the verb in the main clause is present or future tense, the — tense must be used in the subjunctive in both purpose and result clauses.
7. If the verb in the main clause is in any past tense, the — tense must be used in the subjunctive in both purpose and result clauses.
8. The hortatory subjunctive uses only the — tense.
9. A negative hortatory subjunctive in Latin is introduced by —.
10. The hortatory subjunctive is translated in English by —.

**B. Translate.**

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. huic similis speciē    | 6. multa milia passuum        |
| 2. postulāvit ā suō amīcō | 7. rogātūra erat              |
| 3. persuāsit patrī suō    | 8. mīlitēs in campō pugnāntēs |
| 4. rogāvit suam mātrem    | 9. perterritī hīs rēbus       |
| 5. imperāvit servō        | 10. Nē pugnēmus.              |

*A vanity case from Pompeii containing an ivory-handled bronze mirror, hairpins, comb, earrings, and cosmetic case*



## C. Translate.

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Let them come.           | 6. We can persuade him.      |
| 2. enough grain             | 7. They hesitated to ask me. |
| 3. equal to me in strength  | 8. on top of the mountain    |
| 4. of the running slaves    | 9. for fourteen miles        |
| 5. as an aid to the general | 10. for seventeen days       |

## — Exercises —

## A. Translate.

1. Centuriō opus tam celeriter confēcit ut castra relinquere merīdiē posset. 2. Fac ut veniās ad mē quam primum. 3. Onera erant tam gravia ut equī ea ad nostram villam portāre nōn possent. 4. Timuērunt pugnāre aliī; aliī autem timēbant nē urbs ab hostibus caperētur. 5. Nostrī cīvēs postulant ut lēgēs patriae nostrae sint aequae. 6. Ōrātiō tam longa erat ut manēre nōn possem ut finem audirem. 7. Necesse est ut satis pecūniae mittāmus ad illōs mercātōrēs. 8. Virī tam cupidī glōriae erant ut maximā cum virtūte pugnārent. 9. Mē rogābat num ad urbem venīre cuperem ut lūdōs spectārem. 10. Lēgātus suīs imperāvit ut in castrīs eō diē manērent.

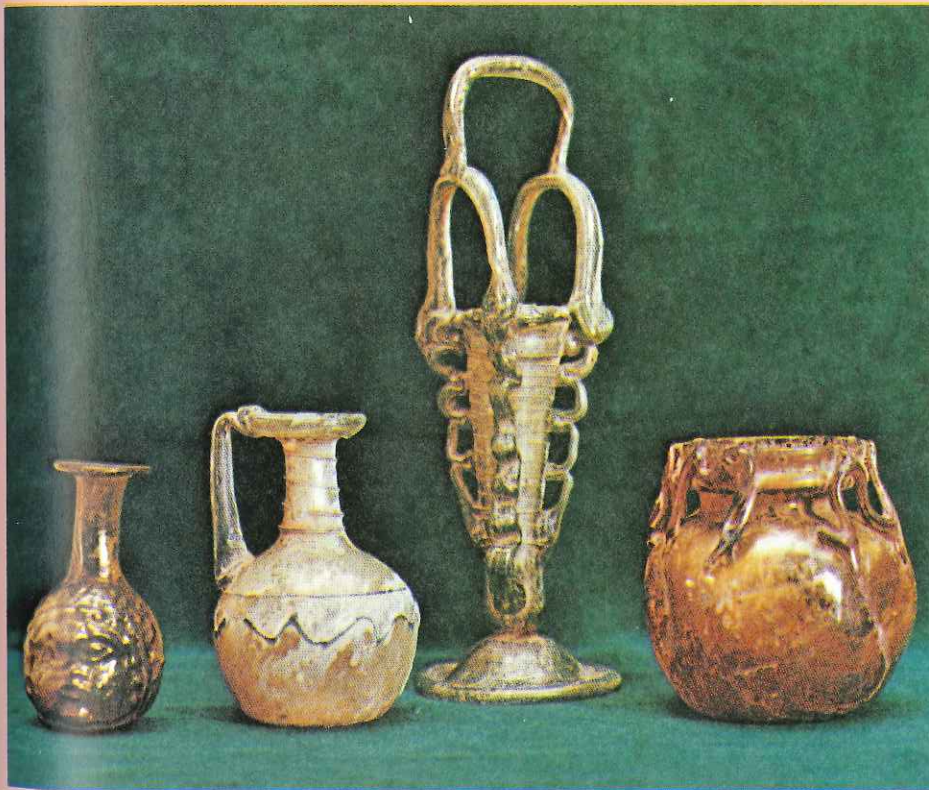
## B. Translate.

1. We do not know whether the senate has ordered the consuls to defend the city. 2. Her sorrow was so great that she did not wish to see her friends. 3. They feared that the general had heard nothing about the danger; nevertheless they hoped that he would come. 4. The ditch was so wide and so deep that we were not able to fill it. 5. I asked the poet to send me a book about the stars. 6. The power of that king was so great that he could kill even the citizens. 7. It happens that there is not enough grain in this valley; we fear therefore that we cannot remain here (any) longer. 8. The general asked the barbarians to come under the protection of the Roman people. 9. The centurion ran so fast that he arrived at the camp before all others. 10. See to it (*faciō*) that no one leaves this town before sundown.



# 49

## Cum Clauses



*Roman glass perfume bottle, jug, ointment jar and vase*

Struit insidias lacrimis cum femina plorat.  
*When a woman weeps, she is setting traps with her tears.*

—DIONYSIUS CATO

—Syntax—

**CUM CLAUSES**

The conjunction **cum** is used to introduce four kinds of clauses.

**Cum Temporal Clauses** (**cum** is translated *when*). If a **cum** clause merely establishes the time when the action of the main verb took place, its verb is in the indicative.

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīcipēs erant Aeduī.  
*When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders.*

**Cum primum**, *when first, as soon as*, is followed by the perfect indicative, even when the pluperfect would seem more natural in English.

Cum primum in urbem pervēnit, turrīm vīdit.  
*As soon as he had arrived in the city he saw the tower.*

The same is true of **postquam** clauses.

Postquam turrīm vīdit, discessit.  
*After he had seen the tower, he left.*

*Cameo—victory in a chariot*





**Cum Circumstantial Clauses** (**cum** is translated *when*). If a **cum** clause establishes the circumstances under which the action of the main verb takes place, and not merely the time, the verb is in the subjunctive for past events, in the indicative for present or future events.

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnisset, Aeduī permōtī sunt.

*When Caesar had come into Gaul, the Aedui were alarmed.*

Cum tālia vidēmus, terrēmur.

*When we see such things, we are frightened.*

**Cum Causal** (*since*) and **Cum Concessive** (*although*) **Clauses**. When **cum** means *since* or *although* the verb of its clause is in the subjunctive, following sequence of tenses.

Cum tū nōn adessēs, pecūniam Mārcō dedī.

*Since you weren't there, I gave the money to Marcus.*

When **cum** means *although*, **tamen** (*nevertheless, yet, still*) or some similar word will often be found in the main clause.

Cum oppidum incendissēmus, hostēs tamen fortiter pugnābant.

*Although we had set fire to the town, nevertheless the enemy kept fighting bravely.*

When the subject of a **cum** clause is the same as that of the main verb, it precedes the **cum** clause.

Mārcus cum fidēlis amīcus sit mē nōn relinquet.

*Since Marcus is a faithful friend, he will not abandon me.*

### —Vocabulary—

sagit'ta, -ae, f., arrow

spa'tium, spa'tī, n., distance, interval (of time or space)

stu'dium, stu'dī, n., eagerness, enthusiasm, zeal

tempes'tās, tempestā'tis, f., weather; storm

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired

impedi'tus, -a, -um, hindered, handicapped, in difficulty

mī'rus, -a, -um, strange, wonderful

cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, save, keep

incen'dō, -ere, incen'dī, incēn'sum, set on fire; arouse

pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sum, push; rout, defeat

permo'veō, -ē're, permō'vī, permō'tum, move deeply, alarm

prōdū'cō, -ere, prōdūx'ī, prōduc'tum, *lead forward, bring forth*  
 prōpō'nō, -ere, prōpo'suī, prōpo'situm, *set forth, put forth, propose*  
 renūn'tiō, -ā're, ā'vī, -ā'tum, *report, bring back word (of)*  
 vās'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *lay waste, devastate*  
 cum, (conj.) *when, since, although*

**Helps and Hints.** Do not confuse the conjunction **cum**, meaning *when, since, or although*, with the preposition **cum**, meaning *with*. They are totally different words.

— Exercises —

**A.** Turn the causal or temporal clauses in the following sentences into **cum** clauses.

1. Ut ad villam ambulābāmus, parvum animal ex silvā cucurrit.
2. Quod Mārcus pecūniam amiserat, patris iram timuit.
3. Postquam pervēnit in Galliam, Caesar cum Gallīs saepe pugnabat.
4. Ut equitēs suōs pulsōs esse vidit, ex proeliō excessit.
5. Ubi in Italiā sum, in urbe Rōmā manēō.
6. Simul atque mē valēre iussit, discessit.

**B.** Read the Latin and translate.

1. Cum animal vulnerātum invenire nōn possēmus coactī sumus id relinquere in silvā.
2. Mārcus tum cum hostium insidiās cōsulibus renūntiāvit parvus puer erat.
3. Cum ad illam insulam pulcherrimam pervēnissent, ibi manēre cōstituērunt.
4. Cum sōlus sciās quis villam incenderit, id tuō patrī nūntiāre dēbēs.
5. Cum multum frūmentum nōn habeāmus, eis tamen magnam partem dabimus.
6. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae civitatēs in armīs essent, causam bellī cognōvit.
7. Cum primum Caesar proelium commisit, eī renūntiātum est hostium milītēs in ūnum locum coactōs fortiter pugnāre.
8. Cum calamitātis timor magnus sit, Galli

tamen maximā cum audaciā impetum faciunt. 9. Cum sagittās suās amīsisset, Gallōrum ducem petere nōn potuit. 10. Cum Caesar esset in Galliā, multa cōsilia ei prōposita sunt ā lēgātis.

C. Translate.

1. When all of the infantry had assembled, Caesar gave the signal for battle and led the troops forward. 2. Although we have found out many things about the stars, yet we do not know how far away they are. 3. When I see (shall have seen) the senator I shall report to him everything which you said to me. 4. Since the enemy saw that they could not take our city, they were devastating our fields with fire and sword (**ferrō et igne**). 5. Since he thinks that the enemy are unable to withstand our attacks, he will draw up a line of battle. 6. Although reports of a disaster had been brought to us, yet we did not cease to hope. 7. When the legions had been left in camp, the general led the rest of the soldiers through the territory of the enemy. 8. As soon as we arrived at the town, we came immediately to find our friends. 9. At that time when I saw Caesar himself, I was living in the city. 10. Although they have received many serious wounds, nevertheless they are fighting very bravely.

—Reading—

THE BATTLE OF ZAMA

Annō decimō tertiō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā vēnit, Scīpiō cōsul creātus est. Hic cum posterō annō in Āfricā missus esset exercitum Hannōnis, ducis Carthāginiēnsium, pepulit. Cum primum haec victōria renūtiāta est, Hannibal omnēs ferē suōs amīcōs sociōsque in Ītaliā amīsīt. Tot annīs bellī tam dēfessae erant cīvitatēs Ītaliae ut in fidem Rōmānōrum venīrent.

Carthāginiēnsēs permōtī Hannibalem cum exercitū ab Ītaliā in Āfricā discēdere iussērunt. Scīpiō etiam exercitum mare trādūxit in Africā. Cum Hannibal optimē pugnāret, Scīpiō tamen eius exercitum maximō proeliō quod apud Zamā commissum est vicit. Post hoc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Cum multae partēs Ītaliae vastatae incēnsaeque essent, Rōmānī tamen Scīpiōnem maximō cum studiō in patriam recēpērunt.

50

Deponent Verbs  
Locative Case  
Special  
Place Constructions



*Women's hair styles*



Praeceptores suos adulescens veneratur et suspicit.  
*A young man respects and looks up to his teachers—SENECA*

—Forms—

### DEPONENT VERBS

Many verbs in Latin have passive forms but active meanings; they are called deponent (from **dēpōnō**, *lay aside*) because they have laid aside their passive meanings.

*morātur*, *he delays*      *cōnātī erant*, *they had tried*

Deponent verbs, however, retain a few active forms:

- a. The present active participle: *loquēns*, *speaking*
- b. The future active participle: *locutūrus*, *about to speak*
- c. The future active infinitive: *locutūrus esse*, *to be about to speak*

### LOCATIVE CASE

With names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs**, the preposition is not used in expressions of place. These words express place where by a case called the locative. Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative. **Rūs** always, and other third declension nouns occasionally, have a locative in **-ī**: **rūrī**, *in the country*, **Carthāginī**, *at Carthage*.



*Gold jewelry: earrings, fibula (safety pin), and necklaces*

## —Syntax—

## SPECIAL PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

In nouns which have a locative case there is no need to use a preposition to indicate place from which. On the same principle the accusative of place to which is also used without a preposition.

|                        | ORDINARY NOUNS                                                                            | NOUNS WITH LOCATIVE CASE                                                        |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PLACE<br>WHERE         | Ablative + <b>in, sub, super</b><br>In urbe est.<br><i>He is in the city.</i>             | Locative Case<br>Romae est.<br><i>He is in Rome.</i>                            |
| PLACE<br>FROM<br>WHICH | Ablative + <b>ab, dē, ex</b><br>Ab urbe venit.<br><i>He comes from the city.</i>          | Ablative<br>without a preposition<br>Rōmā venit.<br><i>He comes from Rome.</i>  |
| PLACE<br>TO<br>WHICH   | Accusative + <b>ad, in, sub, super</b><br>Ad urbem venit.<br><i>He comes to the city.</i> | Accusative<br>without a preposition<br>Rōmam venit.<br><i>He comes to Rome.</i> |

## —Vocabulary—

Athē'nae, -ā'rum, f., *Athens*

Carthā'gō, Carthā'ginis, f., *Carthage*

Corin'thus, -ī, f., *Corinth*

rūs, rū'ris, n., *country, countryside*

ar'bitror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *think*

cō'nor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *try, attempt*

hor'tor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *encourage, urge*

lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, *speak, talk*

mo'ror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *delay*

pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum, *suffer; permit, allow*

permi'tō, -ere, permī'sī, permis'sum, *entrust; permit*

polli'ceor, -ē'rī, polli'citus sum, *promise*

proficī's'cor, proficī's'cī, profec'tus sum, *set out, depart*  
 vi'deor, -ē'rī, vī'sus sum, *seem*

Because there is no perfect active stem, deponent verbs have only three principal parts.

### —Word Study—

**Rūs** means *country* only as opposed to *city*. In the locative case it sometimes means *at one's country place*.

Estne domī an rūrī?

*Is he at his town house or his country place?*

**Cōnor** is followed by a complementary infinitive.

Venīre cōnātur. *He tries to come.*

**Hortor**, like **moneō**, is followed by an accusative and an indirect command.

Militēs hortātus est ut fortiter pugnārent.

*He urged the soldiers to fight bravely.*

**Patior, permittō.** **Patior**, *permit, allow*, is followed by an infinitive phrase (infinitive with accusative subject); **permittō**, *permit*, is followed by an indirect object and a purpose clause.

**Polliceor.** Like verbs of hoping, verbs of promising must be followed by an indirect statement. The indirect statement will normally have a future infinitive.

Pollicitus est sē haec factūrum esse.

*He promised to do these things.*

### —Exercises—

#### A. Translate.

1. arbitrābimur, hortābātur, patī, cōnāris
2. patiēbar, cōnātus eram, proficīscar, morāta est
3. profectus erat, loquēbātur, arbitrābuntur, videntur
4. passus sum, pollicēre, patientur, cōnātī estis
5. hortābar, loquere, passī sunt, morāta erit

## B. Translate.

1. we are delaying, they will think, he has promised, she has tried 2. you will attempt, I was suffering, they delayed, try! 3. he will have talked, he seems, they were setting out, I shall urge 4. you have delayed, you will promise, she will encourage, I shall promise 5. will you try? he has spoken, I had permitted, let him suffer

## C. Translate.

1. to Rome, from Carthage, at Corinth, (to) home 2. from the country, in our country, to Italy, from the city 3. In Sardis,\* to Veii,\*\* in Greece, to the city 4. from Europe, in Sicily (a large island), from our country, to the country 5. in Troy, from Corinth, to Carthage, at Veii 6. from Rome, in Carthage, to Troy, from home 7. in the country, to Sicily, from Sardis, in the city 8. to Greece, from Veii, to Europe, in Italy 9. from Greece, from Sicily, to our country, at home 10. from Troy, to Corinth, at Rome, to Sardis

## D. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Nūntium mittere cōnābimur quī cum cīvibus loquātur. 2. Mē rūs cum amīcīs ambulātūrum pollicitus, nōn arbitrātus sum mē domī dēbēre morārī. 3. Proficiscuntur ex urbe nē inimīcī cōsulis videantur. 4. Agricolaē Rōmam rūre veniēbant ut deīs immortālībus sacra facerent. 5. Imperātor pollicitus est sē ante proelium peditēs hortātūrum esse. 6. Illōs servōs quī linguā Graecā loquuntur rogābō num Corinthō vēnerint. 7. Cōstituere cōnāmur num ad illum ducem nūntium mittere dēbeāmus. 8. Lēgātī Rōmae quam diūtissimē morābuntur ut cum senātōribus dē pācis condiōnibus loquantur. 9. Crās proficīscar sī mihi primum permīseris ut cum meā mātrem loquar. 10. Centūriō cum primum īnsidiās hostium in silvā vīdit Corinthum cucurrit ut periculum lēgātō renūntiāret.

## E. Translate.

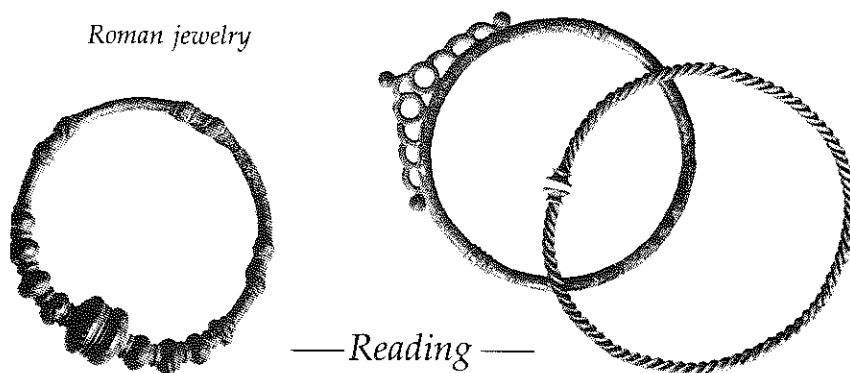
1. Having tried to devastate our fields, the enemy set out towards the next town. 2. Having set out from home at daybreak, they all tried to walk the twenty miles to Rome. 3. Caesar, having urged his men not to fear the enemy, led the troops forth to

\*Sardēs, Sardium, f. \*\*Veii, Veiorum, m.



war. 4. The consuls will urge the citizens who live in the country not to come to Rome. 5. The consuls did not permit the ambassadors who had spoken against the war to set out for (*ad*) Greece. 6. The Greeks, having delayed at Troy for ten years, finally captured and burnt the city. 7. Few of the farmers in this valley seem to have tried to keep their grain. 8. I shall try to persuade the consul to permit you to leave Rome, for you will be much happier in the country. 9. Having thought that you had set out for the city, I spoke with your sister. 10. The enemy seem to think that we will not try to march to Carthage.

*Roman jewelry*



### A DISASTER REUNITES BROTHERS

Mārcus et Lūcius frātrēs erant. Multōs annōs hī frātrēs, quī in eōdem oppidō finitimās domōs habēbant, inimicissimī inter sē erant. Calamitāte tamen gravissimā ad amicitiam reductī sunt. Sī scīre cupitis quō modō hoc factum sit, omnia quae ipse audīvī vōbīs nārrābō.

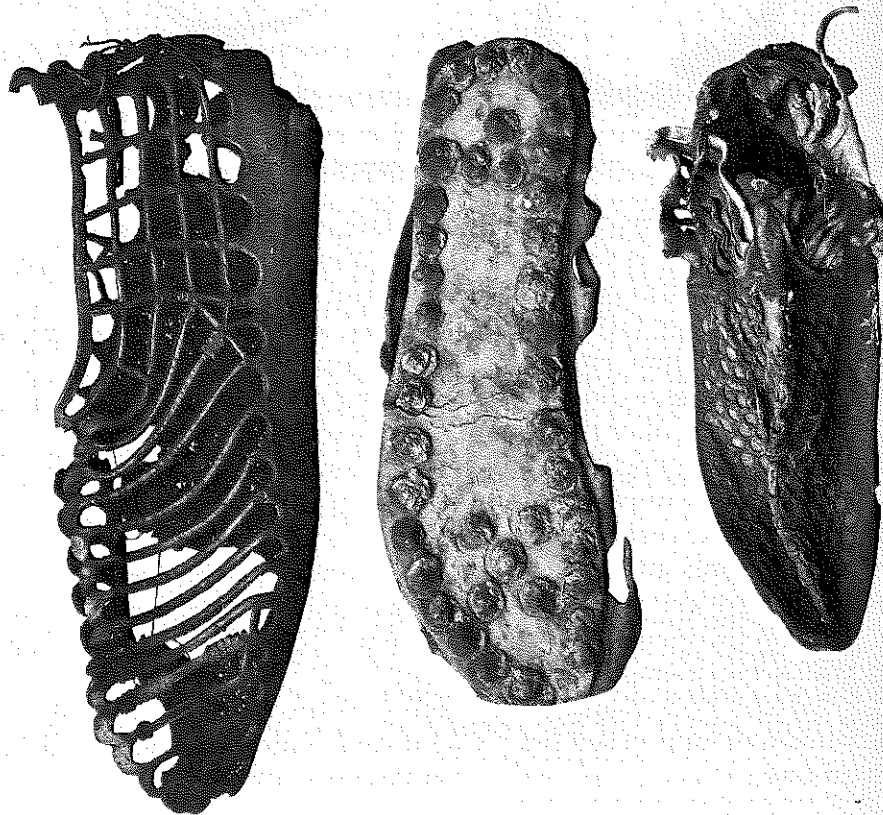
Erat oppidum antīquum, sub monte Vesuviō positum, Pompeiī nōmine, cuius aedificia pulcherrima erant. Mārcus ut negōtium quoddam gereret, ōlim primā lūce domō excessit, et Pompeiōs contendit.

Cum suum negōtium cōfecisset, domum redire cōstituit.

Paulum ex oppidō prōgressus, subitō terram movērī sēnsit. Simul nec sōl nec caelum ipsum cōspicī poterat; ignēs autem summae magnitudinis in monte Vesuviō vidēbantur. Hīs rēbus Mārcus ita perterritus est ut longius prōcēdere nōn posset. Eum dubitantem quīdam ex oppidō fugiēns ita monuit, "Nē dubitēmus! Nisi mors tibi grātior est quam vīta, mēcum venī!"

Mārcus vōce magis quam verbīs mōtus, "Frāter," inquit, "tēcum veniam et nunc et semper." Cognōverat enim deōs Lūcium sibi auxiliō mīsisse.

Ablative Absolute  
Genitive and Ablative  
of Description



*Sandals from Roman Britain, one with hobnails*

Amoto quaeramus seria ludo.  
*Joking aside, let us turn to serious matters.*—HORACE

—Syntax—

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case loosely connected grammatically with the rest of the sentence. It may consist of: 1. a noun and a participle: **signō datō**. 2. two nouns: **Caesare imperātōre**. 3. a noun and an adjective: **periculō magnō**. (rare)

The first construction (using the participle) is by far the most common of the three mentioned here.

The participle or adjective must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

The ablative absolute is usually best translated by a clause. It generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The noun in the ablative absolute *never* denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

1. Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.  
 (The signal having been given) When the signal had been given, they attacked the town.
2. Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.  
 (Caesar [being] general) If Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.
3. Periculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.  
 (The danger [being] great) Since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.
4. Multis militibus āmissis, oppidum expugnāvimus.  
 (Many soldiers having been lost) Although many soldiers had been lost, we took the town by storm.

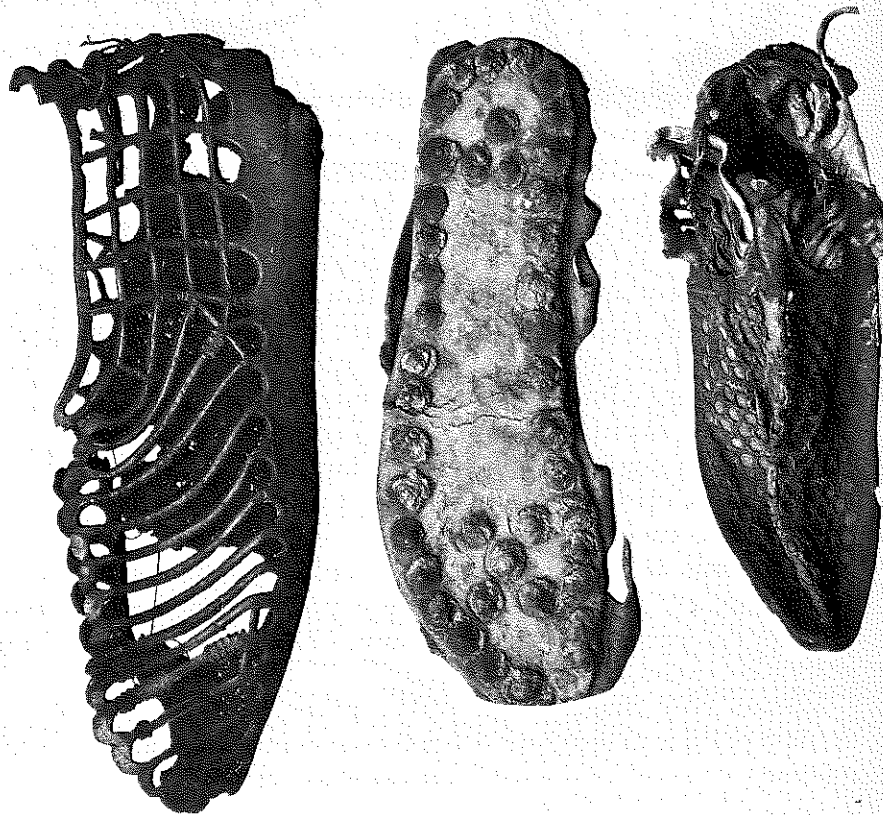
---

**Helps and Hints.** The verb **sum** has no present participle. Consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in Latin, but must be supplied in the English translation. Study sentences 2 and 3.

---

51

Ablative Absolute  
Genitive and Ablative  
of Description



*Sandals from Roman Britain, one with hobnails*



Amoto quaeramus seria ludo.  
*Joking aside, let us turn to serious matters.*—HORACE

—Syntax—

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case loosely connected grammatically with the rest of the sentence. It may consist of: 1. a noun and a participle: **signō datō**. 2. two nouns: **Caesare imperātōre**. 3. a noun and an adjective: **periculō magnō**. (rare)

The first construction (using the participle) is by far the most common of the three mentioned here.

The participle or adjective must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

The ablative absolute is usually best translated by a clause. It generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The noun in the ablative absolute *never* denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

1. Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.  
 (The signal having been given) When the signal had been given, they attacked the town.
2. Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.  
 (Caesar [being] general) If Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.
3. Periculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.  
 (The danger [being] great) Since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.
4. Multis militibus āmissis, oppidum expugnāvimus.  
 (Many soldiers having been lost) Although many soldiers had been lost, we took the town by storm.

---

**Helps and Hints.** The verb **sum** has no present participle. Consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in Latin, but must be supplied in the English translation. Study sentences 2 and 3.

---

### PERFECT PARTICIPLES

There is no *perfect active* participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin: *The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely*. There is no Latin word meaning *having given*, but the same idea may be expressed by changing the participle to the passive and making it agree with *signal* in the ablative instead of with *leader* in the nominative.

Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.

(*The signal having been given*) *Having given the signal, the leader fought bravely.*

Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coordinate clause: *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

### GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

The genitive or ablative modified by an adjective is used to describe the quality of a noun.

vir magnae virtūtis    *a man of great courage*  
vir magnā virtūte    *a man with (of) great courage*

These constructions may not be used without the adjective; for "a man of courage" we can say only *a brave man*, **vir fortis**.

The genitive of description and the ablative of description have essentially the same meaning and are practically interchangeable, except that the genitive must be used for definite measurements. This use is called the genitive of measure.

mūrus magnā altitudīne    *a wall of great height*  
mūrus octō pedum    *an eight-foot wall (a wall of eight feet)*

### — Vocabulary —

collo'quium, collo'quī, n., *conference, conversation*

ini'tium, ini'tī, n., *beginning*

Rhē'nus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*

tū'tus, -a, -um, *safe*

quī'dam, quae'dam, quod'dam (quid'dam), (indef. adj. and pron.) *a certain, one, certain, some*

rūr'sus, (adv.) *back, again*

aggre'dior, -ī, aggres'sus sum, *approach, attack*  
 congre'dior, -ī, congres'sus sum, *meet, come together*  
 cōnse'quor, cōnse'quī, cōnse'cūtus sum, *pursue, overtake; obtain, gain*  
 ēgre'dior, -ī, ēgres'sus sum, *go out, disembark*  
 prōgre'dior, -ī, prōgres'sus sum, *advance, go forward*  
 se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum, *follow*  
 ve'reor, -ē'rī, ve'ritus sum, *fear*

—Word Study—

**Quīdam** is declined like **quī, quae, quod (quid) + dam**, except that an **m** before the **-dam** becomes **n**: **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam**. The partitive idea with **quīdam** (as with **paucī** and cardinal numerals) is expressed by the ablative of place from which (see Lesson 29).

Quīdam ex nautīs ēgressī sunt.

*Certain of the sailors have disembarked.*

Quaedam dē puellīs proficīscitur.

*One (a certain one) of the girls is setting out.*

—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Hostibus pulsīs . . .
2. Pāce factā . . .
3. Aedificiīs omnibus incēsis . . .
4. Sagittīs frāctīs . . .
5. Forō complētō . . .
6. Militibus dēfessīs . . .
7. Victōriā renūtiātā . . .
8. Caesare dūce . . .
9. Cursū cōfectō . . .
10. Caesare Bibulōque cōsulis . . .

B. Translate.

1. These things having been finished . . .
2. After the terms of peace were proposed . . .
3. After seeing the storm . . .
4. Having announced the calamity . . .
5. The enemy's cavalry having been routed . . .
6. Under the leadership of Lentulus . . .
7. In Caesar's consulship. . . .
8. After reading the book . . .
9. Our march having been hindered . . .
10. The javelins having been thrown . . .

**Helps and Hints.** Whenever you see a noun and a perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute construction in Latin, translate it first in the following way: After *blank* had been *blank(ed)*. Examples: **hostibus vīsīs**, after *the enemy* had been *seen*; **mīlite vulnerātō**, after the *soldier* had been *wounded*. This will give you a rough translation and you can then make a more exact one, if you need to.

C. Read the Latin and translate.

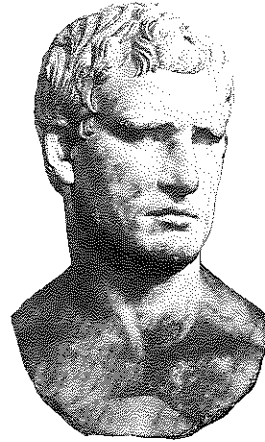
1. His rēbus gestīs Belgae statim lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt. 2. Cum prīmum ē nāve ēgressus est vīdit quādam turrim centum pedum altitūdine. 3. His cōpiīs coāctīs Brūtus castra in mediō monte posuit. 4. Lūcius cum puer magnā audaciā esset rēgem malum sagittā petīvit. 5. Omnibus fēminīs liberisque ab urbe remōtīs adventum hostium exspectābant. 6. Itinere vīgintī mīlium passuum factō exercitus aggressus est magna hostium castra. 7. Litterīs acceptīs imperātor alterum oppidum hostium oppugnāre cōstituit. 8. Quōdam diē ut domō excēdēbam ut cum amīcō meō congregeder parvum canem nigrum vīdī. 9. Colle occupātō nostrī ad flūmen maximā cum celeritāte cucurrerunt. 10. Quīdam ex senātōribus postulābant ut exercitus Athēnās mitterētur quī illam urbem aggredērētur.

D. Translate.

1. The soldiers, having pitched camp, were ordered to fill up the ditch. 2. (After) having marched nineteen miles from Corinth, the soldiers were ordered to make a six-foot ditch and a twelve-foot rampart. 3. Having done all of these things, the boys thought that their work was finished. 4. The Roman citizens who were living at Athens thought that our army would sail to Greece and disembark from the ships on the eighth day. 5. Having marched eighteen miles that day, all the soldiers were tired. 6. Since the Rhine is a river of great depth, I fear that we cannot lead our army across to attack the enemy. 7. Having seized this farmer's farmhouse, those evil men set fire to it. 8. Although they were about to approach the city at night, the women feared



nothing; but certain of the men wished to remain at home. 9. Having obtained suitable terms of peace, the Germans promised to surrender their weapons. 10. The consul, a man of great authority, talked with my friends for many hours, but could not persuade them to set out.



*Male hair style of the first century*

—Reading—

#### CAESAR SAILS TO BRITAIN

Caesar in insulam Britanniam proficisci constituerat. Ut cognosceret quae res in insula essent, legatum cum nave longa praemisit. Huic mandavit ut, omnibus rebus exploratis, ad se veniret. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam cursus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus iussit convenire.

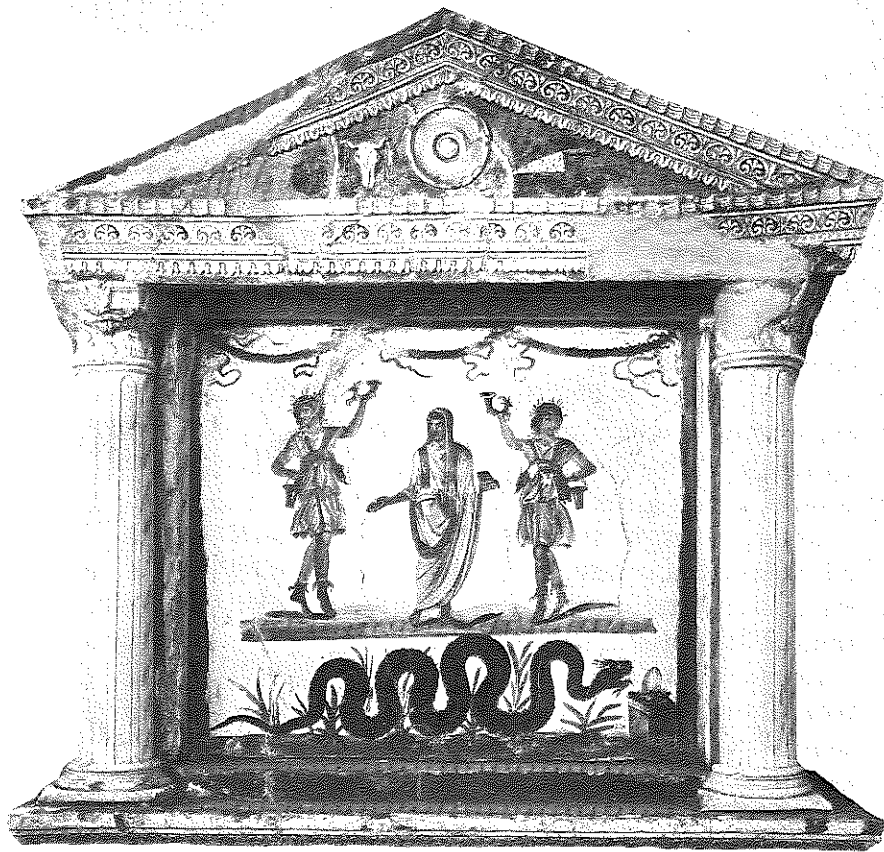
Interim consilio eius cognitō a multis insulae civitatibus ad eum legati venerunt qui pollicerentur se futuros Populi Romani amicos. Quibus auditis, eos hortatus ut in ea sententia manerent in civitates remisit.

Legatis Britannorum domum remissis, Volusenus, legatus a Caesare ad Britanniam praemissus, Caesarī quae ibi vidisset renuntiavit. Sed ille, vir minimae virtutis, nave non egressus erat; non multa ergo imperatori renuntiavit.

Itaque Caesar in navibus coactis exercitum imposuit. Equites in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves ibi conscendere iussit. Ille cum quibusdam ex militibus ad insulam accedebat. Ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias conspexit. Hunc locum non tutum arbitratus nave non egressus est.

52

## Ferō and Eō



*Shrine of the household gods from The House of the Vetti in Pompeii*

Potest ex casa magnus vir exire.  
*A great man can come from a cabin.* — SENECA

—Forms—

FERŌ AND EŌ

These verbs, used very frequently in Latin, are both irregular. Learn the complete conjugations of these verbs on pages 463–464. Transitive compounds of **eō**, like **adeō**, have passive forms, **adeor**, **adiris**, **aditur**, etc. The present active participle of **eō** is **iēns**, **euntis**.

—Vocabulary—

e'ō, ī're, ī'ī (ī'vī), ī'tum, *go*  
 a'deō, adī're, a'diī (adī'vī), a'ditum, *go toward, approach*  
 ex'eō, exī're, ex'īi (exī'vī), ex'itum, *go out*  
 re'deō, redī're, re'diī (redī'vī), re'ditum, *go back, return*  
 trāns'eō, trānsī're, trāns'īi, (trānsī'vī), trāns'itum, *cross*  
 fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lātum, *bear, carry; bring; take; relate*  
 ad'ferō, adfer're, at'tulī, allā'tum, *bring up, bring to; report*  
 cōn'ferō, cōnfer're, con'tulī, collā'tum, *bring together, collect; compare*  
 īn'ferō, īnfer're, in'tulī, illā'tum, *carry onward; bring upon, inflict*  
 re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tum, *bring back, report*  
 tol'lō, tol'lere, sus'tulī, sublā'tum, *raise, lift up; remove*

—Word Study—

**Cōnferō**, used reflexively, means *betake oneself, proceed, go*.

**Īnferō**. **Bellum īnferre** with the dative means *make war upon*.

**Signum īnferre** (*carry the standard onward*) is a military term meaning *to advance*.

**Referō**. The reflexive **sē referre** and the idiom **pedem referre** mean *go back, return*. In military terminology **pedem referre** means *give ground, retreat*.

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. fers, fertur, vōs contuleritis
2. intulit, adibit, tollēbant
3. tulistis, trānsībunt, vōbīs bellum īferunt
4. rettulerant, adiērunt, pedem rettulērunt
5. rediistī, adeunt, signum intulerint
6. lātus erit, exībant, mē referam
7. redeunt, intulerat, contulerit

## B. Translate.

1. we shall go, he was crossing, they have removed
2. he is approaching, they will bear, you have made war on us
3. he is going back, I shall go out, we were giving ground
4. they had inflicted, we approached, you will advance
5. he bears, they bring, I betake myself
6. they have brought back, we were crossing, they were proceeding
7. you have collected, you will cross, I go

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Rōmānī sē virtūte reliquās gentēs superāre arbitrātī sunt.
2. Mē cōferam rūs paucīs diēbus; tum domum rūsus redībō.
3. Domō omnia sustulerant et Rōmam sē cōferēbant.
4. Quīdam mercātor ad Britanniam ōlim nāvigāvit ut servōs referret.
5. Flūmen trānsībunt ut hostēs fugientēs sequantur in omnēs partēs.
6. Cōsul domī manēbit nec Gallīs bellum īferet.
7. Sī Rōmae manēbimus, necesse erit iniuriās cuiusdam dē nōbilibus ferre.
8. Cum decima legiō signa īfert, hostēs pedem referunt.
9. Caesarem Germānīs bellum audācter intulisse scīmus.
10. Domum trāns Rhēnum sē cōferent nē ab exercitū Rōmānō vincantur.

## D. Translate.

1. They brought together all their weapons from home into the towns across the Rhine.
2. The lieutenant will go back home to see his children, since he cannot remain at Rome.
3. The king said that his town had been captured and his people carried back to Rome.
4. We marched home to make war on the evil chiefs.
5. They could not bring help to their men from Rome.
6. Certain of the messengers reported to the centurion that they had seen an ambush behind the camp.
7. The army will cross the river much



more quickly in large ships. 8. The Roman army then proceeded to the farthest lands of the Germans, and returned home in the same summer. 9. When help had been brought, the wounded soldier was carried back to the town. 10. We tried to cross the river, although it was very wide and very deep.

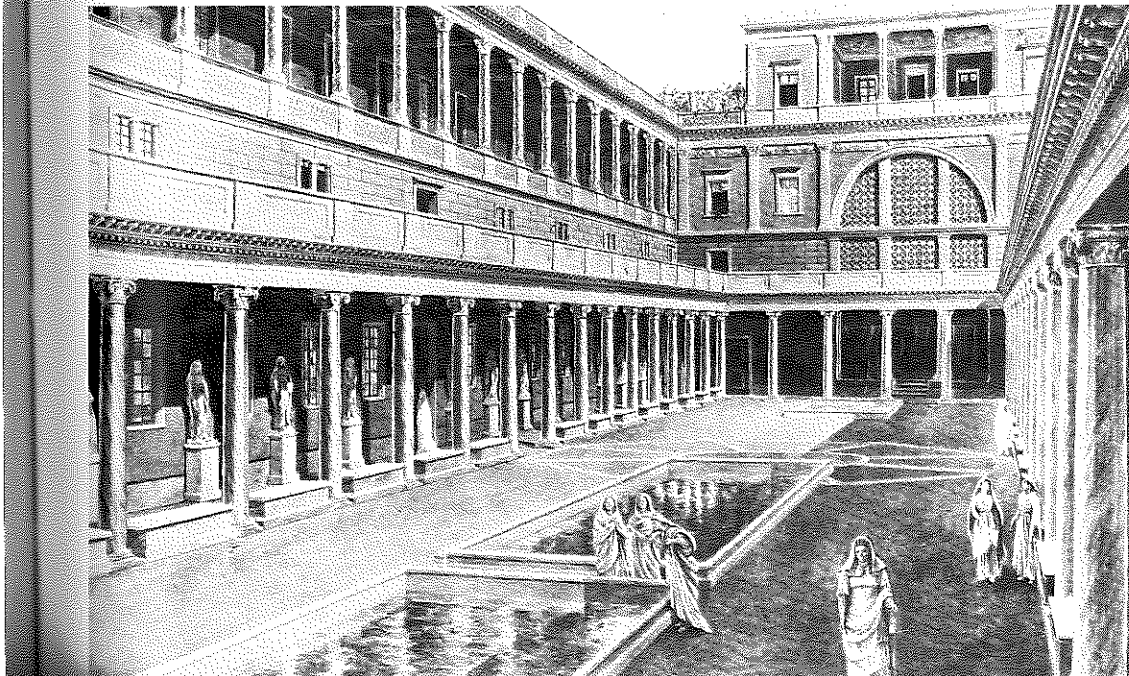
—Reading—

**THE DAUGHTER OF CREON**

Iāson et Mēdēa, ob ea mala quae ibi fēcerant patriam relinquere coāctī, ē Thessaliā exiērunt et Corinthum sē cōntulērunt. Creōn, rēx Corinthī, ūnam filiam habēbat. Iāsonī relātum est filiam Creontis pulcherrimam esse atque ille eam in mātirimōnium dūcere cupiēbat. At Mēdēa, cum intellexeret quae ille in animō habēret, haec aegrē ferēbat. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit in quā erat venēnum cuius vīs tanta erat ut vestem gerentem statim interficeret.

Hanc vestem ferēns Mēdēa domum Creontis iit et filiae rēgis dōnum dedit. Illa dōnum libenter accēpit. Cum vestis in manibus eius esset, tantum dolōrem sēnsit ut ē vitā excēderet. Cīvēs Corinthī, magnō clāmōre sublātō, Mēdēam Corinthō expulērunt.

*The Atrium Vestae, type of convent where the six Vestal Virgins lived*



Perfer et obdura; dolor hic tibi proderit olim.  
*Be patient and tough; some day this pain will be useful to you.* — OVID

## REVIEW 13 (LESSONS 49–52)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

- A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|            |         |         |           |
|------------|---------|---------|-----------|
| colloquium | rūs     | spatium | tempestās |
| initium    | sagitta | studium |           |

- B. Give the other nominative singular forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives.

|          |           |       |        |       |
|----------|-----------|-------|--------|-------|
| dēfessus | impeditus | mīrus | quīdam | tūtus |
|----------|-----------|-------|--------|-------|

- C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|            |          |             |          |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| adeō       | ēgredior | patior      | redeō    |
| adferō     | eō       | pellō       | referō   |
| aggredior  | exeō     | permittō    | renūntiō |
| arbitror   | ferō     | permoveō    | sequor   |
| cōnferō    | hortor   | polliceor   | tollō    |
| congregior | incendō  | prōdūcō     | trānseō  |
| cōnor      | īnferō   | proficīscor | vāstō    |
| cōnsequor  | loquor   | prōgredior  | vereor   |
| cōnservō   | moror    | prōpōnō     | videor   |

- D. Give the meanings of **cum** and **rūrsus**.

### —Drill on Forms—

- A. Give synopses in the indicative, subjunctive, and (where applicable) imperative of the following verbs.

1. vereor in the 1st person singular
2. sequor in the 2d person singular
3. adferō in the 2d person singular passive

4. *cōnferō in the 3d person singular active*
5. *patior in the 1st person plural*
6. *exeō in the 2d person plural*
7. *cōnor in the 2d person plural*
8. *trānseō in the 3d person plural passive*

B. Give, name, and translate the five infinitives of **referō**.

C. Give, name, and translate the three participles of **adeō**.

D. Translate.

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. proficiscētur  | 6. arbitrātī erant |
| 2. patī           | 7. exhibunt        |
| 3. morātus        | 8. infers          |
| 4. colloquēbantur | 9. rettulistis     |
| 5. cōnāns         | 10. trānsiēns      |

E. Translate.

- |                         |                              |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. she promised         | 6. to seem                   |
| 2. having tried         | 7. to speak                  |
| 3. having been produced | 8. we shall suffer           |
| 4. they follow          | 9. you ( <i>sing.</i> ) bear |
| 5. while attacking      | 10. he had crossed           |

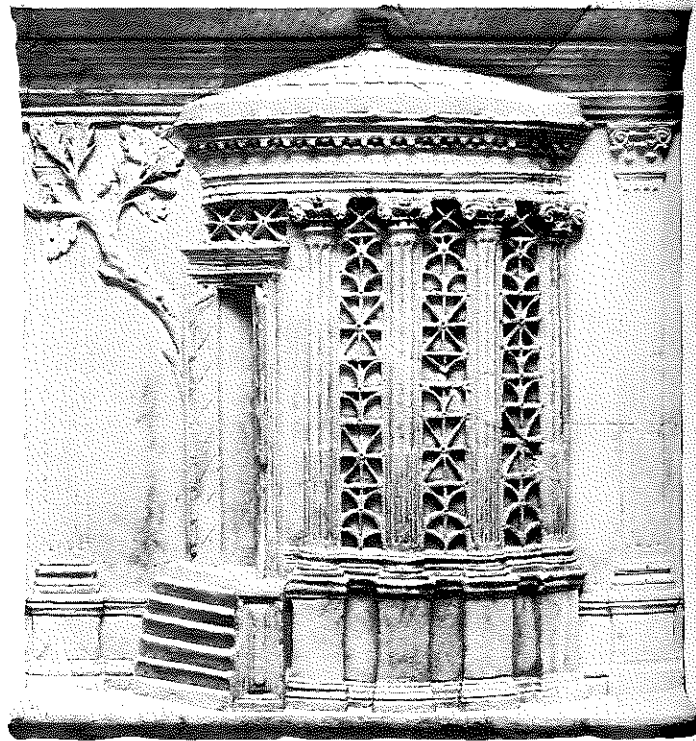
—Drill on Syntax—

A. Translate.

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. domō                 | 6. trānseant!      |
| 2. urbe captā           | 7. quartā vigiliā  |
| 3. miles magnīs viribus | 8. nē prōgrediāmur |
| 4. Rōmae                | 9. paulō ante      |
| 5. multōs diēs          | 10. Rōmā           |

B. Translate.

- |                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. having burned the town   | 6. for sixteen miles     |
| 2. queen in name            | 7. within eight hours    |
| 3. at home                  | 8. much more quickly     |
| 4. after seizing the bridge | 9. let him not delay     |
| 5. from Corinth             | 10. a hundred-foot tower |



*The Temple of Vesta in the Forum at Rome. (top) The temple, partly reconstructed from fragments, is shown as it looked in antiquity. (bottom) The round shape was derived from primitive round thatched huts.*



—Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Cum rogātūrus essem cūr omnia animālia in nostrum agrum contulissēs, subitō discessistī. 2. Tertiā vigiliā quīdam dē mīlitibus quī in insidiīs manēbant cōsulem interfēcit. 3. Tria mīlia passuum circum montem prōgressus, domum ante noctem redīre cōnātus est. 4. Rōmae tredecim diēs morātī sumus ut tōtam urbem pulcherrimam vidērēmus. 5. Captīvī ex castrīs ēgredi et fugere cōnātī ab equitibus, quī eis celeriorēs erant, interfectī sunt. 6. Multī Rōmānī arbitrābantur Caesarem omnium imperātōrum maximum esse et virtūte et auctōritāte. 7. Puellae pollicitae sunt sē cum suis mātribus quam celerrimē reditūrās. 8. Decima legiō, flūmen multa mīlia passuum secūta, castra sub monte posuit quae praesidiō itinerī essent. 9. Nāvibus tempestātis timōre remōtis, exercitus flūmen quīndecim pedum altitūdine trānsire nōn potuit. 10. Imperātor lēgātum, virum magnae auctoritātis, hortātus est nē cum reliquīs mīlitibus proficīscerētur.

B. Translate

1. After finishing the work, bring me a few of the books which you are reading. 2. It happens that the general has not arrived, for which reason I fear that we cannot keep the enemy from our walls. 3. Marcus, I urge you not to ask the men what they have seen. 4. He said that he would follow us for five miles, and then go back home. 5. As soon as he had reported the calamity to the people, the man who had been chosen king urged everyone to flee from the city. 6. Since in the farthest lands of the Germans there were no towns nor cities, the barbarians lived in the forests and fields. 7. So great a number of ships was seen in the river that we thought that the enemy had arrived. 8. Although the messenger is tired, he has been sent by the chief to take a letter back to the consul and make him more certain about the danger. 9. We attacked the enemy's winter camp with fire and javelins and arrows, and other weapons suitable for the attack. 10. After delaying at home for a few days, I decided to go back to Rome with great speed.

53

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō  
Dative of Possession  
Negative Commands



*A mosaic charm meant to protect the household against the evil eye*

Libenter homines id quod volunt credunt.  
*Men gladly believe that which they wish for.*—CAESAR

—Forms—

**VOĻŌ, NŌĻŌ, AND MĀĻŌ**

These verbs are irregular in the present indicative and the present subjunctive. Learn the following:

vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī,    *wish, be willing*  
 nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī,    *be unwilling, not wish*  
 mā'lō, māl'le, mā'luī,    *prefer*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

|      |         |          |            |        |          |
|------|---------|----------|------------|--------|----------|
| volō | volumus | nōlō     | nōlumus    | mālō   | mālumus  |
| vīs  | vultis  | nōn vīs  | nōn vultis | māvīs  | māvultis |
| vult | volunt  | nōn vult | nōlunt     | māvult | mālunt   |

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

|       |         |       |         |       |         |
|-------|---------|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| velim | velimus | nōlim | nōlīmus | mālim | mālīmus |
| velīs | velītis | nōlīs | nōlītis | mālīs | mālītis |
| velit | velint  | nōlit | nōlint  | mālit | mālint  |

All other forms are regular.

—Syntax—

The infinitive with subject accusative is used with **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the objective infinitive is used.

Volō tē ire.    *I wish you to go.*  
 Volō ire.    *I wish to go.*

There is no imperative form of **volō** or **mālō**. **Nōlō**, however, has present imperative forms: *sing.*, **nōlī**; *pl.*, **nōlite**. These are regularly used with the infinitive of other verbs to form the negative imperative.

Nōlī currere.    *Do not run. (be unwilling to run)*  
 Nōlite loquī.    *Do not speak. (be unwilling to speak)*

### DATIVE OF POSSESSION

Possession may be expressed by the dative of the possessor with **sum**, the subject being the thing possessed.

Puerō canis erat. *The boy had a dog (a dog was to the boy).*

### — Vocabulary —

ae'tās, aetā'tis, f., *age*

clas'sis, clas'sis, f., *fleet*

facul'tās, facultā'tis, f., *opportunity, chance, ability*

hos'pes, hos'pitis, m., *stranger; guest, host*

mēn'sis, mēn'sis, m., *month*

or'dō, or'dinis, m., *order*

appropin'quō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *approach, draw near*

com'parō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *prepare; compare; get*

cōnscrībō, -ere, cōnscrīb'sī, cōnscrīb'tum, *enroll, enlist*

dis'cō, -ere, di'dicī, —, *learn*

exer'ceō, -ē're, exer'cuī, exercitum, *train, exercise, practice*

īnsti'tuō, -ere, īnsti'tuī, īnsti'tū'tum, *build, establish, set up*

mālō, māl'le, mā'luī, —, *wish more, prefer*

nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, —, *not wish, be unwilling*

osten'dō, -ere, osten'dī, osten'tum, *show, display*

ve'hō, -ere, vex'ī, vec'tum, *carry, transport*

vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, —, *wish, be willing*

inte'reā, (adv.) *meanwhile*

qui'dem, (adv.) *at least, at any rate; as a matter of fact, to be sure, indeed*

nē . . . qui'dem, (adv.) *not even*

quo'que, (adv.) *also, too*

### — Word Study —

**Appropinquō** may take either the dative of the indirect object or the accusative of place to which with **ad**.

Oppidō (ad oppidum) appropinquāmus.

*We are approaching the town.*



**Nē . . . quidem.** The word modified goes between the two words.

Nē Mārcus quidem hoc didicit.  
*Not even Marcus has learned this.*

**Quoque** comes after the word it modifies.

**Vehō** in the passive may mean *travel, ride or sail*; the vehicle is in the ablative of means.

Illā nāve vectus sum. *I sailed in that ship.*  
 Equō vehitur. *He is riding a horse.*

### — Exercises —

#### A. Translate.

1. volunt, vīs, nōn vult 2. mālēs, nōn vīs, nē mālīmus 3. mālunt, vultis, voluerās 4. nōn vultis, nōluistī, māvīs 5. volent, mālūi, nōluērunt 6. volumus, mālēbas, nōlīte 7. Nōlī mihi appropinquāre.

#### B. Translate.

1. we shall prefer, you (*sing.*) wish 2. they were unwilling, he had wished 3. he was unwilling, they will prefer 4. you (*pl.*) will wish, we do not wish 5. to prefer, let them wish 6. you (*pl.*) wish, he prefers 7. Do not speak!

#### C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Equō vehī vult Rōmā ut collēs trānseat. 2. Multī mīlītēs, quī subsidiō legiōnī missī erant, paucīs mēnsibus domum redīre mālēbant. 3. Nē Caesar quidem decimam legiōnem praesidiō urbī mittere volēbat. 4. Imperātor rogāvit cūr maiōrēs cōpiās in Galliā hōc mēse nōn cōscripsissēmus. 5. Dux victus per viās Rōmānās carrō vectus est. 6. Volet esse auxiliō cōsulibus sed Rōmae manēre nōlet. 7. Māvīsne ad urbem mēcum īre quam domī manēre? 8. Virī octō mēnsēs Rōmae exercitī ad Galliam missī sunt. 9. Est nōbīs classis maxima quā frūmentum et arma ad Āfricam ferāmus. 10. Sciuntne cūr exercitus noster illis castrīs sine impedimentīs appropinquāverit?

## D. Translate.

1. He wishes to go to Rome with the lieutenant to see the seven hills. 2. Since they were approaching the lands of the enemy, they did not want the cavalry to cross the hills. 3. He will command the wounded messenger to go to Rome and remain at home. 4. The Romans wished to train their sailors in the fleet, rather than in schools. 5. We approached the town to speak with the messenger who had been caught in ambush. 6. They are urging him to set out from the town and follow the captives. 7. He persuaded the citizens not to go out of their boundaries with all their forces. 8. They were not willing that the soldiers who had been enrolled in the farthest territory of Germany go to Rome. 9. I do not want you to think that I have ever sailed on that ship. 10. Not even Caesar wanted the entire army to be transported to Britain.

## —Reading—

## CROESUS AND SOLON

Croesus, rēx Lȳdiae, maximam fāmam propter suam potestātem et pecūniam cōsecūtus est. Nē rēgnum Persārum quidem erat maius. Multī ex omnibus partibus Graeciae ut tantum rēgem vidērent Sardēs veniēbant.

Athēnīs habitābat Solōn, omnium suōrum cīvium sapientissimus. Hic quoque audīverat quam prōsperum rēgnum Croesus instituisset atque id vidēre voluit. Itaque nāve vectus orīs Lȳdiae appropinquāvit. Hunc hospitem Croesus benignē accēpit et eī omnia ostendit. Omnibus vīsīs, "Solōn," Croesus inquit, "quem omnium hominum fēlicissimum putās?" Rēx vērō crēdebāt Solōnem sē fēlicissimum esse dictūrum. "Tellum Athēniēsem," respondit Solōn. "Num alium fēliciōrem quam mē putās?" clāmāvit Croesus. "Nōlī crēdere, Croese," respondit Solōn, "pecūniam hominēs fēlicēs facere. Meā aetāte didici virōs scīre nōn posse quid ante mortem accidat. Post mortem vir 'fēlix' appellārī potest."

# 54

## Fīō Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse



*Arch of Constantine, Rome—relief panel with sacrificial scene*

Cito fit quod dii volunt.  
*What the gods want happens soon.*—PETRONIUS

—Forms—

**FĪŌ.** The verb **fĭō** is used as the passive of **faciō**, which has no passive forms in the tenses formed from the present stem. For the perfect tenses of **fĭō** we use the perfect passive of **faciō**. **FĪŌ** takes a predicate nominative, like **sum**. Learn the complete conjugation of **fĭō**.

Tē rēgem faciēmus.    *We shall make you king.*  
 Rēx fiēs.    *You will be made king.*

| INDICATIVE |           | SUBJUNCTIVE |           |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| SINGULAR   | PLURAL    | SINGULAR    | PLURAL    |
| PRESENT    |           |             |           |
| fĭ'ō       | fĭ'mus    | fĭ'am       | fĭā'mus   |
| fĭs        | fĭ'tis    | fĭ'ās       | fĭā'tis   |
| fĭt        | fĭ'unt    | fĭ'at       | fĭ'ant    |
| IMPERFECT  |           |             |           |
| fĭē'bam    | fĭēbā'mus | fĭ'erem     | fĭerē'mus |
| fĭē'bās    | fĭēbā'tis | fĭ'erēs     | fĭerē'tis |
| fĭē'bat    | fĭē'bant  | fĭ'eret     | fĭ'erent  |
| FUTURE     |           |             |           |
| fĭ'am      | fĭē'mus   |             |           |
| fĭ'ēs      | fĭē'tis   |             |           |
| fĭ'et      | fĭ'ent    |             |           |

—Syntax—

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN  
INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

A subordinate clause within an indirect statement, command, or question has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive is used because the action of the verb, being merely reported, is not seen as real.



Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse usually follow sequence of tenses, depending on the tense of the verb introducing the indirect discourse.

*Dixit virōs quī Rōmam vēnissent posterō diē discessisse.*

*He said that the men who had come to Rome left the next day.*

### —Vocabulary—

ae'dēs, ae'dis, f., *temple*; pl., *house*  
 cae'dēs, cae'dis, f., *slaughter, murder*  
 mūnī'tiō, mūnī'tiō'nis, f., *fortification*  
 ob'ses, ob'sidis, m., *hostage*  
 ra'tiō, ratiō'nis, f., *account; plan; manner; reason*  
 rī'pa, -ae, f., *bank (of a stream)*  
 ae'ger, ae'gra, ae'grum, *sick*  
 aper'tus, -a, -um, *open, exposed*  
 ēgre'gius, -a, -um, *outstanding*  
 in'teger, in'tegra, in'tegrum, *untouched, undiminished; whole, entire*  
 le'vis, -e, *light (in weight or importance)*  
 mari'timus, -a, -um, *of the sea*  
 mīlitā'ris, -re, *military*  
 necessā'rius, -a, -um, *necessary; (as a noun), relative*  
 prū'dēs, prūden'tis, *foresighted; wise, prudent*  
 re'cēns, recen'tis, *fresh, new, recent*  
 ve'tus, ve'teris, *old*  
 fī'ō, fī'erī, factus sum, *be made, become; happen*  
 vēn'dō, -ere, ven'didī, ven'ditum, *sell*

### —Word Study—

**Aeger.** The adverb of this adjective, **aegrē**, means *with difficulty, scarcely*.

**Vetus** is a consonant-stem (not an **i**-stem): its ablative singular is **vetere** and its genitive plural **veterum**. It is much more general in its meaning than either **antiquus** or **senex**, and means *old* in all three senses: not young, not new, and not modern.

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

1. Mārcum cōnsulem faciāmus. 2. Cōsul factus est.  
3. Imperātor fiet. 4. Fīat lūx! 5. Mīlitēs fiēbant.

## B. Translate.

1. What happened? 2. He was made a lieutenant. 3. They will become citizens. 4. Caesar was made a dictator. 5. It cannot happen here.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Per clāmōrēs certiōrēs fiēbāmus\* hostēs sē recēpisse ad montem quī nōn longē abesset. 2. Dīxit veterem nautam quī ex oppidō exīret obsidem esse. 3. Amīcōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur Corinthum, quae centum mīlia passuum abesset. 4. Dīxērunt sē proficīscī mālle ad urbem quam trāns campōs vidēre possent. 5. Imperātor, recentī classis victōriā adductus, ad Hispāniam proficīscī voluit. 6. Mīlitēs quī in alterā rīpā stārent hostium esse scīvimus. 7. Intereā certior factus est obsidēs per apertam portam post mūnitiōnem fūgissee. 8. Ex urbe proficīscuntur nē iniūria ā mīlitibus fiat. 9. Spērō omnēs puerōs quī ad Eurōpam itūrī sint Rōmae paucōs diēs morātūrōs. 10. Multōs profectōs esse ut cum rēge colloquerentur mē certiōrem fēcīt.

## D. Translate.

1. I know that if you wish to persuade him you will try to learn his opinion. 2. The messenger informed the lieutenant that the hills, which were three in number, had been surrounded with a fortification. 3. When the centurion had been informed of the danger, the hostages were led to the other bank of the river. 4. He knew that the men who were with him were outstanding senators. 5. The infantry were unwilling to carry light swords, since they preferred heavier weapons. 6. I have heard that he cannot

\* To make more certain, **certiōrem facere**, and to be made more certain, **certior fieri**, are idioms meaning *to inform* and *to be informed*. They may be followed by indirect discourse or by the ablative with **dē** (*about, or concerning*).

be enlisted because he has been wounded before. 7. The wise father did not ask his son what was happening in the camp where he was. 8. Did he ask when the hostages who were being brought from Britain would come to Rome? 9. They will be informed that the old general who has been wounded in battle will not come home. 10. The slaughter of all the sick animals was done the same day.

—Reading—

**HORACE, A ROMAN POET**

Q. Horātius Flaccus puer Rōmam adductus est ā patre, quī scīvit filium suum in eā urbe disciplinam meliōrem acceptūrum quam sī domī Venusiae manēret. Mōs erat ut puer Rōmānus servum semper habēret quī cum puerō ad lūdum īret, ut eum ā malīs dēfenderet. Pater ipse Horātī hoc servī officium accipere māluit.

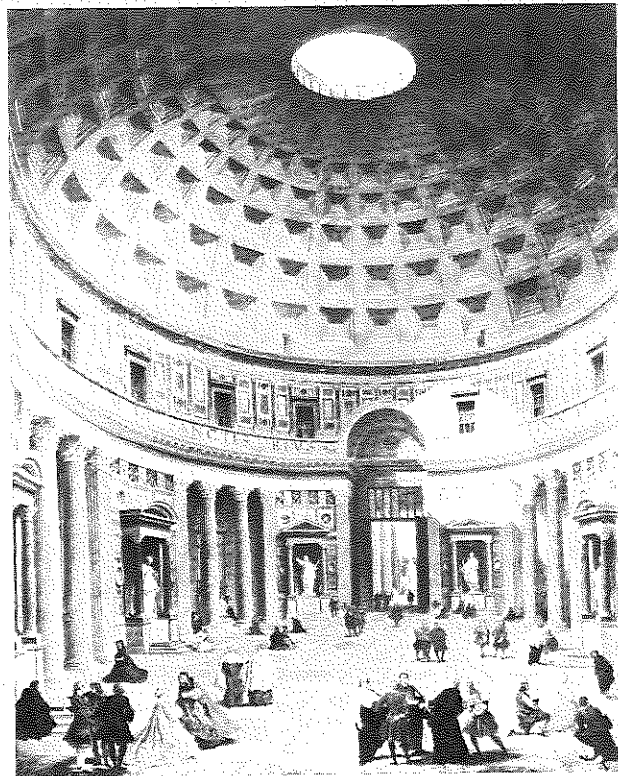
Posteā Horātius Athēnās profectus est. Ibi quōsdam clārōs virōs et Graecōs et Rōmānōs nōvit, inter quōs erat M. Brūtus, quī bellum cum Octāviānō gerere parābat. Horātius sē cum Brūtī cōpiīs iūnxit. Duōbus post annīs, exercitū Brūtī victō, Horātius domum rediit miser et sine pecūniā. Eō tempore carmina scribere incipiēbat.

Mox autem per Vergilium, alium poētā, auxilium ā potentī amīcō Augustī accēpit. Hic amīcus, Maecēnās nōmine, vir ēgregius, carminibus Horātī audītis, eī pecūniā atque villā in collibus Rōmae propinquīs positā dedit. Horātius, iam imperātōris amīcus, ob sua carmina et levīa et gravīa nōtissimus in poētīs fiēbat. Carminibus docēbat virum integrum vītā beātiōrem agere quam eum quī potēns esset.

Dē fonte qui erat prope suā villā cecinit: "Fīēs nōbīlium tū quoque fontium"; atque suā ipsā glōriā hīs verbīs praedīxit: "Nōn omnis moriar." Hoc vērē dictum est, quod etiam hodiē plūrimī sciunt quis fuerit Horātius.



Review of  
Indirect Statement  
Indirect Commands  
Indirect Questions



*Pantheon, Rome—National Gallery, Washington*



Omnia iam fient fieri quae posse negabam.  
*Everything which I used to say could not happen will happen now.*

— OVID

### — Syntax —

#### INDIRECT STATEMENT

Review the explanation of indirect statement in Lesson 39. It states that a verb of *saying, thinking, knowing*, etc. in English followed by the word *that* requires the main verb to be in the infinitive form in Latin with the subject in the accusative case. Lesson 54 adds that a subordinate clause in Latin within an indirect statement, command or question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Sciō puerōs venīre. *I know that the boys are coming.*

Sciō puerōs quī sint inimīcī venīre.

*I know that the boys who are unfriendly are coming.*

The tense of the infinitive depends on the relation of time between the main verb and the infinitive. That is, does it come at the same time, the time before, or the time after the main verb?

#### INDIRECT COMMANDS

Lesson 45 explains that certain verbs of asking, commanding, advising, etc., require the subjunctive in Latin introduced by **ut** or **nē**. Some of these verbs take the dative case for the person commanded, some the accusative, and some the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. Review the list of these verbs on page 263. Remember that the tense of the subjunctive verb follows the rule for sequence of tenses. (Lesson 46)

Rogat puerōs nē currant. *He asks the boys not to run.*

Rogāvit puerōs nē currerent. *He asked the boys not to run.*

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Lesson 47 explains that an indirect question usually following a verb of asking, saying, knowing, etc., and introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb has its verb in the subjunctive, following sequence of tenses.

Rogat quid faciāmus. *He asks what we are doing, will do.*

Rogat quid fēcerimus. *He asks what we have done.*

But

Rogāvit quid facerēmus. *He asked what we were doing, would do.*

Rogāvit quid fēcissēmus. *He asked what we had done.*

### —Vocabulary—

au'deō, -ēre, au'sus sum, *dare*

ca'dō, -ere, ce'cidī, cā'sum, *fall*

cae'dō, -ere, cecī'dī, cae'sum, *cut, cut down, kill*

e'mō, -ere, ē'mī, emp'tum, *buy*

hi'emō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *spend the winter*

o'rior, -ī'rī, or'tus sum, *rise, arise*

po'tior, -ī'rī, potī'tus sum, *get possession of (with abl. of means)*

tan'gō, -ere, te'tigī, tāt'tum, *touch*

ū'tor, -ī, ū'sus sum, *use (with abl. of means)*

bis, (adv.) *twice*

cir'citer, (adv.) *about, approximately (with numbers)*

fe'rē, (adv.) *almost, nearly (with numbers and words of quantity)*

frūs'trā, (adv.) *in vain*

i'tem, (adv.) *likewise*

omnī'nō, (adv.) *altogether, in all, at all*

repen'te, (adv.) *suddenly*

su'prā, (adv.) *above*

vix, (adv.) *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty*

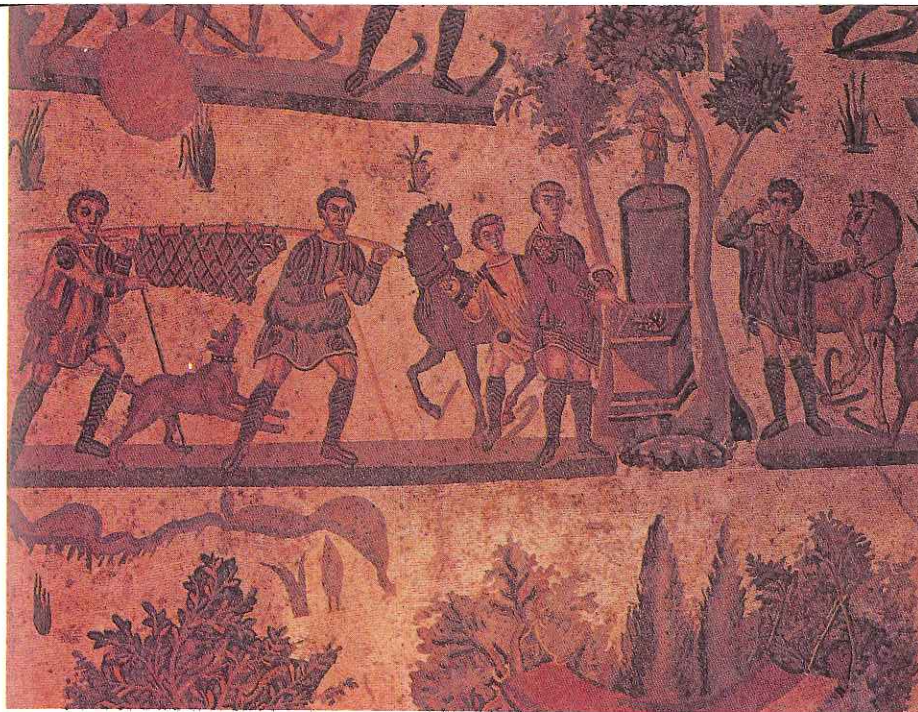
### —Word Study—

**Audeō** has active forms in the present system, but only passive forms in the perfect system. Such a verb is called *semideponent*. Its meanings are active throughout.

**Cadō** and **caedō** bear the same relation to each other as "to fall" and "to fell" in English.

Cum arborem caedimus, cadit. *When we fell a tree, it falls.*

Each of these two verbs has many compounds, in which **caedō** becomes **-cīdō**, **-cīdere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum**, and **cadō** becomes **-cidō**, **-cidere**, **-cidī**, **-cāsum**.



*Thank-offering offered to Diana, goddess of the chase, after a successful boar hunt.  
Mosaic from Piazza Armerina*

— Exercises —

A. Translate.

1. Dicit sōlem orīrī. 2. Putāmus puerōs id discere. 3. Arbitrāti sunt sē exercēre militēs dēbēre. 4. Classem appropinquāre existimāvī. 5. Oppidō nōs potītōs esse dixerant. 6. Pater suīs filiis persuāsit nē equīs veherentur. 7. Obsidēs rogābant ut liberārentur. 8. Tē hortor nē animal tangās. 9. A mātrem filiae petīvērunt ut in Hispāniā hiemāre sē paterētur. 10. Puellae puerīs “Nōlīte” inquiunt “nōs sequī!” 11. Scīsne quid acciderit? 12. Rogāvit cui librōs dedissētis. 13. Cognōscēmus ubi amīcī nostrī hiement. 14. Gladiō frūstrā ūsus est. 15. Didicimus cūr militēs nōn exercitī essent.

B. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Fēminae dixerunt sē vīdisse animālia quae in silvā caesa essent. 2. Miles item mē monuit nē eam turrim adīrem. 3. Quīdam rēx ōlim mandāvit ut circiter mīlle captīvī ex urbe dūcerentur. 4. Pater filium rogāvit cūr parvum animal cecidis-



set. 5. Didicimus nē imperātōrem quidem fīnibus hostium potīrī potuisse. 6. Senātōris liberī dīxērunt sē nōlle diūtius sē exercēre. 7. Senex aeger ā filiābus petīvit ut cibus sibi darētur. 8. Rogāvit num mällēs Rōmae quam in Graeciā hiemāre. 9. Peditēs ducī respondērunt sē cum equitibus iter facere nōlle. 10. Prūdēns imperātor obsidibus imperāvit ut in praesidiō multōs mēnsēs manērent.

### C. Translate

1. Do you know who said that I did not want to buy that book?
2. I heard that a sick animal had fallen from the high tree. 3. That outstanding consul urged the senators not to free the hostages.
4. My mother urged her guests to go with her into the garden.
5. We promised to winter with our friends for five months in Italy and Greece. 6. He thought that we ought not to use those long swords. 7. He saw that a very high tree had fallen to the earth on the bank of the river. 8. We hear that about a hundred soldiers were killed when we took possession of the fortification. 9. He says that he will buy about twenty horses next month. 10. I do not think that he will dare to touch the money.

*Funeral chorus of women (5th century B.C. tomb) National Museum, Naples*







*Funerary relief with chariot—Lateran Museum, Vatican, Rome*

—Reading—

### OCTAVIAN

Post Iūli Caesaris mortem illi quī eum occiderant Rōmā fugērunt. Imperium exercitūs Rōmānī Marcō Antōniō, virō summae auctōritātis quī Caesarī amīcus fuerat, ā senātū datum est. Octāviānus autem quī postea Augustus est appellātus, Rōmam ā Graeciā quam celerrimē vēnit, atque imperium sibi petivit. Tandem Octāviānus pācem et amicitiam cum Antōniō sociisque eius cōfirmāvit. Hī duo principēs, brevī spatiō intermissō, inimicōs Caesaris oppressērunt.

Paulō postea Antōnius ad prōvinciam suam profectus apud Cleopātram, rēginam Aegyptiōrum, morābatur. Quīdam cīvēs Rōmānī dixerunt Antōnium Cleopātram populī Rōmānī rēginam facturum esse. Hīs rēbus incitātus Octāviānus bellum Antōniō intulit et victōriam cōsecūtus est. Omnibus inimicīs per tōtum orbem terrarum victis, Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ut sōlus cīvitātem cum pāce regeret.

Id quod Iūlius Caesar facere cōnātus erat cōnfecit Octāviānus Augustus. Belli timōre atque periculō cīvēs Rōmānōs liberāvit. Salūs prōvinciārum Augustō magnae cūrae erat. Itaque postquam cognōvit quantās iniuriās passae essent, aliās prōvinciās regēbat ipse, aliās senātui commisit. Ille omnia tam bene gessit ut ā senātū pater patriae appellārētur et post mortem suam in numerō deōrum habērētur.



56

## Impersonal Verbs



*Diana, Roman Fresco, National Museum, Naples*



Mendacem oportet esse memorem.  
*A liar must be good at remembering.*—QUINTILIAN

—Syntax—

IMPERSONAL VERBS

An impersonal verb is a verb which either has no subject (e.g. *It is raining*), or has a subject which may be an infinitive, an infinitive phrase, or a clause. **Licet** and **oportet** are two common impersonal verbs in Latin. **Licet** takes the dative for the person, and an infinitive.

Licet mihi ire.

*I am permitted to go (It is permitted to me to go).*

**Oportet** takes the accusative for the person and the infinitive.

Oportet eos discēdere.

*They ought to depart (It is necessary that they depart).*

**Accidit**, *It happens*, has as its subject a substantive clause of result.

Accidit ut ire nōn possimus. *It happens that we cannot go.*

When a Latin writer wishes to state that an action took place, but without specifying the subject, he uses an intransitive verb impersonally in the passive.

Perventum est ad montēs. *The mountains were arrived at.*

Diū et acriter pugnātum est. *Fighting went on long and fiercely.*

Do not try to translate such passive intransitives literally; "It was arrived at the mountains" is nonsense in English.

—Vocabulary—

ag'men, ag'minis, n., *line of march, army on the march, column*

an'cora, -ae, f., *anchor*

auc'tor, auctō'ris, m., *author, originator, founder, sponsor*

cā'sus, -ūs, m., *fall; chance, accident; fate*

la'tus, la'teris, n., *side, flank*

ōs, ō'ris, n., *mouth, face*

pa'lūs, palū'dis, f., *swamp, marsh*

prae'da, -ae, f., *booty*

cē'terī, -ae, -a, *the rest of, the other*  
 complū'rēs, complū'ra, *several, quite a few*  
 au'geō, -ē're, aux'ī, auc'tum, *increase, strengthen*  
 cōnsī'dō, -ere, cōnsē'dī, cōnses'sum, *sit down; settle, encamp*  
 con'venit, -ī're, convē'nit, *it is convenient*  
 do'leō, -ē're, do'luī, do'litum, *grieve, be sorry; grieve for*  
 explō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *search out, explore, reconnoiter*  
 li'cet, -ē're, li'cuit, *it is permitted*  
 opor'tet, -ē're, opor'tuit, *it is necessary, it is proper*  
 pertur'bō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tum, *alarm, upset, throw into confusion*  
 susci'piō, -ere, suscē'pī, suscep'tum, *undertake*  
 te'gō, -ere, tēx'ī, tec'tum, *cover*  
 vī'vō, -ere, vīx'ī, vīc'tum, *live, be alive*

— Word Study —

**Agmen.** In military terminology **primum agmen** means *the van*, **no-vissimum agmen** *the rear*.

**Convenit.** **Convenit** is used in the same way as **oportet**.

Convenit eōs discēdere.

*It is convenient that they depart (That they depart is convenient.).*

— Exercises —

A. Translate.

1. Accidit ut perveniret. 2. Mihi nōn licuit nāvigāre. 3. Militi exire nōn licuit. 4. Oportet liberōs ambulāre. 5. Nōs explōrāre palūdem oportuit.

B. Translate.

1. She was not permitted to write a letter. 2. He happened to be away. 3. It was necessary for the column to depart. 4. We were not permitted to go out. 5. It happens that he has been wounded.

C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Accidit cāsū ut Caesaris lēgātus duōs peditēs trāns flūmen mīssisset quī palūdem explōrārent. 2. Dolēmus cāsū nostrī exer-



citūs, in quem hostēs impetum ab apertō latere fēcērunt. 3. Magistrō mandātum erat ut hostium adventū ancoram tolleret, sed cāsū accidit ut abesset. 4. Oportēbitne Caesarem mūnīre omnia oppida primā aestāte? 5. Amīcīs meis domum cōsulis vidēre nōn licuit. 6. Ferē tōtus exercitus perturbātus est cum sē circumventum esse repente vīdisset. 7. Nūntiō imperātum est ut īret cum peditibus quī silvās post castra hostium explōrārent. 8. Accidit item ut sciat quis sit huius cōsuētūdinis auctor. 9. Cum castrīs primum agmen appropinquāret novissimum agmen cum hostibus contendēbat. 10. Ferē omnēs fēminās dolēre quod virī in bellō vulnerātī aut interfectī essent dixit.

#### D. Translate.

1. The boys were with difficulty persuaded to undertake this work. 2. Having gained possession of the other bank of the Rhine, they progressed about ten miles into Germany. 3. It happens by chance that I have gone to Rome twice already, but I am willing to go again. 4. As soon as the anchors had been thrown from the ship, the sailors disembarked with great speed. 5. On the exposed flank our men were forced to fight with great daring; fighting also went on in (ā) the rear. 6. So much booty was taken from the captured town that the soldiers tried in vain to carry it home. 7. The rest of the citizens were taken to a swamp so that the enemy would not find them. 8. It is necessary for us to remain in this wretched town, since we cannot return home. 9. You will not be permitted to go to the games with your friends. 10. Although the Rhine had been reached, Marcus was not permitted to lead his men into the German territory.

### —Reading—

#### A NEW CONSTITUTION

Athēniēnsēs, Solōne duce, īnsulā Salamīne potītī sunt. Īnsulā captā, multī tamen cīvēs inopiā omnium rērum et nōbīlium iniūriā opprimēbantur. Plūrimī magnopere dolēbant. Itaque complūrēs cīvēs ab Solōne petēbant ut imperium caperet et populum inopiā iniūriāque liberāret. "Tē," inquiunt, "oportet esse rēgem." Sed Solōn sē rēgem appellārī nōn passus est. Tum ille prīnceps cīvītātis appellātus est atque auctor novārum lēgum novam ratiōnem rei pūblicae instituit.

Optimīs lēgibus cōstitūtīs et novīs cīvium ōrdinibus īnstitūtīs, urbs Athēnae potestāte et magnitūdine aucta est.

Tum Solōn Athēnīs diūtius manēre nōluit. Ille enim verēbatur nē cīvēs sē esse dictātōrem māllent. Itaque Athēniēnsibus, "Cīvēs," inquit, "licetne mihi ire in aliās cīvitātēs?" Cīvibus persuāsum est ut Solōnī exīre liceret. Atque pollicitī sunt sē dum ille abesset lēgibus novīs illius ūsūrōs esse.

*Temple of Fortuna Virilis so-called*



Leve fit, quod bene fertur, onus.  
*The burden which is borne well becomes light.*—OVID

## REVIEW 14 (LESSONS 53–56)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|        |          |         |        |
|--------|----------|---------|--------|
| aedēs  | caedēs   | latus   | ōs     |
| aetās  | cāsus    | mēnsis  | palūs  |
| agmen  | classis  | mūnitiō | praeda |
| ancora | facultās | obses   | ratio  |
| auctor | hospes   | ōrdō    | rīpa   |

B. Give the other nominative forms, and the meanings, of the following adjectives (for adjectives of one termination, give the genitive singular).

|           |          |             |         |
|-----------|----------|-------------|---------|
| aeger     | ēgregius | maritimus   | prūdēns |
| apertus   | integer  | militāris   | recēns  |
| cēteri    | levis    | necessārius | vetus   |
| complūrēs |          |             |         |

C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|             |         |          |          |
|-------------|---------|----------|----------|
| appropinquō | discō   | licet    | suscipiō |
| audeō       | doleō   | mālō     | tangō    |
| augeō       | emō     | nōlō     | tegō     |
| cadō        | exerceō | oportet  | ūtor     |
| caedō       | explōrō | orior    | vehō     |
| comparō     | fīō     | ostendō  | vēndō    |
| cōnscribō   | hiemō   | perturbō | vīvō     |
| cōnsidō     | īstituō | potior   | volō     |
| convenit    |         |          |          |

D. Give the meanings of the following adverbs.

|          |         |                 |         |
|----------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| aegrē    | frūstrā | nē . . . quidem | quoque  |
| bis      | intereā | omnīnō          | repente |
| circiter | item    | quidem          | suprā   |
| ferē     |         |                 | vix     |

## —Drill on Forms—

## A. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: *latus, cāsus, palūs*
2. *dative singular*: *vetus, obses, ratiō*
3. *accusative singular*: *agmen, mūnitiō, integer*
4. *ablative singular*: *recēns, cāsus, mēnsis*
5. *vocative plural*: *hospes, prūdēns, auctor*
6. *genitive plural*: *classis, levis, caedēs*
7. *dative plural*: *complūrēs, vetus, ōrdō*
8. *accusative plural*: *rīpa, agmen, militāris*

## B. Give the following synopses, active, indicative, subjunctive, and (where applicable) imperative.

1. *volō in the 2d person singular*
2. *ferō in the 3d person singular*
3. *mālō in the 1st person plural*
4. *nōlō in the 2d person plural*
5. *eō in the 3d person plural*

## C. Give the following synopses of deponents, indicative, subjunctive, and (where applicable) imperative.

1. *orior in the 1st person sing.*
2. *ūtor in the 2nd person sing.*
3. *potior in the 3rd person pl.*
4. *cōnor in the 3rd person sing.*
5. *moror in the 1st person pl.*

D. Identify and translate the five infinitives of **caedō** and **tollō**.E. Identify and translate the three participles of **augeō** and **vehō**.

## F. Translate.

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>ausus est</i>  | 6. <i>licēbit</i>     |
| 2. <i>oriēns</i>     | 7. <i>fiēt</i>        |
| 3. <i>ūtiminī</i>    | 8. <i>cōnscrībent</i> |
| 4. <i>nōn vultis</i> | 9. <i>hortātus</i>    |
| 5. <i>mālētis</i>    | 10. <i>referri</i>    |



## G. Translate.

- |                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. to get possession of      | 6. they will wish    |
| 2. you ( <i>sing.</i> ) bear | 7. she has used      |
| 3. they prefer               | 8. it was being made |
| 4. he will be unwilling      | 9. he had touched    |
| 5. it happened               | 10. having delayed   |

## —Drill on Syntax—

## A. Translate.

- |                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Mihi ire licuit.         | 6. Tē venīre oportēbat.           |
| 2. Gladiō ūtitur.           | 7. Mūnitiōne potitī sunt.         |
| 3. Cūr nōbīs nōn crēditur?  | 8. Nōlet augēre cīvitatē.         |
| 4. Obsidibus caesīs rediit. | 9. In palūdem prōgressus cecidit. |
| 5. Cōsul fiet.              | 10. Sunt eīs animālia.            |

## B. Translate.

- |                                      |                                          |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. He wants to live.                 | 6. They will get possession of the camp. |
| 2. I used my shield.                 | 7. He does not dare to enlist the men.   |
| 3. He will go within four months.    | 8. It happens that we have the booty.    |
| 4. I was persuaded not to go.        | 9. She says she will go if she can.      |
| 5. The city will be reached at noon. | 10. Will he be allowed to use an anchor? |

## —Exercises—

## A. Translate.

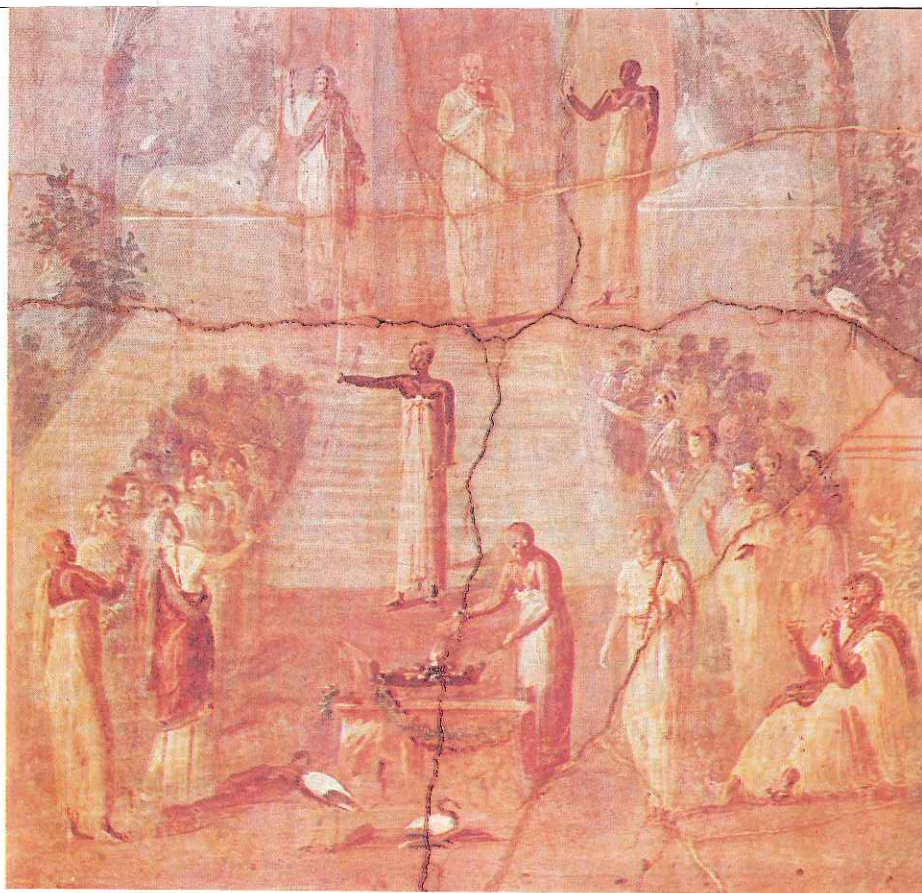
1. Primum agmen flūmen trānsibat cum novissimum agmen ad vallem appropinquābat. 2. Auctōrem illius librī poētā nōtissimum esse scīvimus. 3. Mūnitiōnibus perfectīs imperātum est militibus ut domum redirent. 4. Cum castrīs potitī essent praeda carrīs domum vexerunt. 5. Prudentissimum centuriōnem

mīsimus quī equitēs exercēret. 6. Cum multās hōrās in rīpā morārēmur classem tamen nōn vīdimus. 7. Putāvimus eōs nōn longius prōgredi audēre quod pugnāre nōllent. 8. Nōbīs quidem pecūniam, sī militī vulnerātō auxilium tulissēmus, sē datūrum esse pollicitus est. 9. Cum equus quō vehēbātur cecidisset eques ferē septem mīlia passuum ambulāre coāctus est. 10. Postquam ad īnsulam perventum est, ut oppidum explōrārent profectī sunt.

*Castel Sant'Angelo (Mausoleum of Hadrian), Rome. The huge tomb, in the Etruscan style, was later converted to a papal fortress and connected to the Vatican by a fortified passageway.*







Wallpainting showing the Rites of Isis, National Museum, Naples

B. Translate.

1. Although a great slaughter was made, quite a few (**complūrēs**) soldiers were able to save themselves and return to camp. 2. The army was led into an ambush when it was approaching the valley. 3. I have been informed that if he comes he will not stay for many months. 4. He seems to think that we did not dare to explore this place. 5. Caesar likewise asked why the men had not increased the size of the fortification. 6. He said that he did not want to spend the winter on the island because there was not enough water. 7. A star falling into the forest pointed out the way to the hesitating men. 8. Lucius, at any rate, wishes to become a soldier rather than a senator. 9. The fighting went on fiercely for a long time, and about fifteen men were killed when the camp was captured. 10. A new moon was rising when the sun was falling into the sea.



# 57

## Dative with Intransitive Verbs Dative with Compound Verbs



*Livia, Augustus' wife, with Tiberius, her son by a previous marriage*



Mus uni non fedit antro.  
*A mouse does not rely on just one hole.*—PLAUTUS

—Syntax—

**DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS**

Certain verbs with the following meanings take an indirect object in Latin (instead of a direct object, as in English).

|        |          |        |          |       |
|--------|----------|--------|----------|-------|
| favor  | believe  | obey   | envy     | trust |
| help   | persuade | serve  | threaten | spare |
| please | command  | resist | pardon   |       |

You have already learned some of these verbs; **crēdō**, **imperō**, **licet**, **mandō**, **permittō**, and **persuādeō**. Others, in the vocabulary for this lesson, are **cōnfidō**, **noceō**, **parcō**, **pareō**, **placeō**, **resistō**, and **studeō**.

Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive. The dative is retained.

Auctōrī persuāsum est. *The author was persuaded.*

**DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS**

Many verbs compounded with the following prefixes may take an indirect object.

|       |      |       |      |         |        |
|-------|------|-------|------|---------|--------|
| ad-   | con- | ob-   | prō- | circum- | prae-  |
| ante- | in-  | post- | sub- | inter-  | super- |

If the original verb was transitive, the compound will take a direct object as well.

Caesar lēgātum legiōnī praefēcit.

*Caesar placed (-fēcit) the lieutenant in command of (prae-) the legion.*

—Vocabulary—

tur'pis, -e, base, disgraceful; ugly

ve'hemēns, vehemen'tis, violent, forceful

cōnfī'dō, -ere, cōnfī'sus sum, trust (semi-deponent)

cōn'sulō, -ere, cōnsu'luī, cōnsul'tum, consult; consult the interests of,  
 take counsel for

dē'sum, dēes'se, dē'fuī, dēfutū'rus, *be lacking*  
 ēri'piō, -ere, ēri'puī, ērep'tum, *rescue*  
 no'ceō, -ē're, no'cuī, no'citum, *harm, injure*  
 par'cō, -ere, peper'cī, par'sum, *spare*  
 pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, pā'ritum, *obey*  
 pla'ceō, -ē're, pla'cuī, pla'citum, *please*  
 praefi'ciō, -ere, praefē'cī, praefec'tum, *place over, place in command of*  
 prae'sum, praees'se, prae'fuī, praefutū'rus, *be at the head of, be in command of*  
 prōvi'deō, -ē're, prōvī'dī, prōvī'sum, *foresee; provide for*  
 ra'piō, -ere, ra'puī, rap'tum, *seize, snatch*  
 resis'tō, -ere, re'stitī, —, *resist*  
 sol'vō, -ere, sol'vī, solū'tum, *loose, untie, set free; pay*  
 stu'deō, -ē're, stu'duī, —, *be eager for, desire*

### — Word Study —

**Cōsulō** takes an accusative of the person consulted, a dative of the person whose interests are consulted or the thing for which counsel is taken.

Sī mē cōsulueris, tē monēbō.

*If you consult me, I shall advise you.*

Sī tibi cōsulueris, hoc faciēs.

*If you consult your own interests, you will do this.*

**Dēsum** may take a dative of possession.

Canis eī est. *He has a dog.*

Canis eī dēest. *He does not have a dog (A dog is lacking to him.).*

**Prōvideō** takes either a direct object of the verb or an indirect object with the prefix (not both at once, like **praeficiō**).

Hanc calamitātem prōvidī. *I foresaw this calamity.*

Huic calamitātī prōvidī. *I have provided for this calamity.*

**Rapiō** in compounds becomes **-ripiō, -ripere, ripuī, -reptum**.

**Solvō**. The ablative of separation with **solvō** is used without a preposition except in the idiom **nāvem (nāvēs) solvere**, *set sail* (i.e., untie the ship).

## — Exercises —

## A. Translate.

1. Liberis prōvisum est. 2. Suo patrī pārui. 3. Exercitū praeest. 4. Pāci studēbant. 5. Captivīs pepercit. 6. Equitibus Mārcum praefēcimus. 7. Nostris cōpiis acriter resistēbant. 8. Cīvibus placēbat. 9. Servīs nōn cōfīsus est. 10. Fēminae cōsultuit.

## B. Translate.

1. We resisted the enemy. 2. I do not trust her. 3. He did not obey the teacher. 4. She will please my mother. 5. Lucius was in charge of the fleet. 6. The horse was being harmed. 7. Caesar placed Marcus in command of the town. 8. He will not injure his friend. 9. Who is in command of this camp? 10. They spared the slave.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Cum nāvēs longae\* nōbīs dēessent, nōs oportuit ūtī nāvibus quōrundam mercātōrum. 2. Lēgātō nōn licēbat cōsulere senātōrem, cum cīvēs illī nōn cōfiderent. 3. Fēminae puerōs rogāvērunt nē animālībus in agrīs nocērent. 4. Imperātor castrīs appropinquāns quis nostris cōpiis praeesset rogāvit. 5. Agricola prūdēns hiemī prōviderat cum magnam cōpiam frūmentī domum attulisset. 6. Eī cui auctōritās dēest numquam pārēbitur. 7. Mercātor nautae cui pecūniam dederat nōn cōfīsus est. 8. Cum hostēs magnā cum audāciā nōbīs resisterent, tamen collibus potītī sumus. 9. Imperātor castrīs quae ad rīpam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praefēcit. 10. Centuriō quī peditibus prae-fuit sē obsidibus pepercisse dīxit.

## D. Translate.

1. I cannot trust you any longer, for you have greatly injured my friends. 2. I shall show you that I am in charge of the troops against the enemy. 3. The cavalry, about to set sail for (ad) Britain, did not trust the infantry; this did not please the gen-

\* Nāvis longa is an idiom for *warship*.

eral. 4. It was necessary to send troops to bring help to our cavalry, certain of whom had been wounded in battle. 5. Although the Germans chose their wisest leader, nevertheless he could not resist the Roman cavalry. 6. If we consult the interests of the state in this matter, who of the citizens will be harmed? 7. We ought to trust that citizen who returned the money; at any rate (**quidem**) we cannot harm him. 8. They wished to drive the ambassadors from the town, for the conditions of peace were most disgraceful. 9. On account of the arrival of Caesar himself, the Germans did not harm even the slaves of our allies. 10. The general approached the town and put Lucius in command of his forces.

—Reading—

### MARCUS AURELIUS AND THE CHRISTIANS

Mārcus Aurēlius, vir maximā virtūte et ūnus ex quīnque bonīs imperātoribus Rōmānīs, patriam suam iūstissimē vīgintī annōs rēxit. Erat cōsuētūdō eiusdem per viās Rōmae cum servō ambulāre et cum cīvibus dē eōrum difficultātibus loquī. Omnibus temporibus erat hīs auxiliō. Itaque Rōmānī exīstimāvērunt illum esse omnium imperātorum optimum.

Necesse erat Aurēlium multīs proeliīs pugnāre ut Rōmānōs finēs dēfenderet. Ōlim bellum in barbaram gentem Quādōs appellātam inferēbat. Hostēs tam acriter undique aggressi sunt ut Rōmānī sē in inīquum locum recipere cōgerentur. Quō factō, ob vim sōlis omnēs inopiam gravissimam aquae patiēbantur. Quādam in legiōne erant tria mīlia Christiānōrum quī simul clāmāvērunt, "Domine, dā nobīs auxilium; aqua sit."

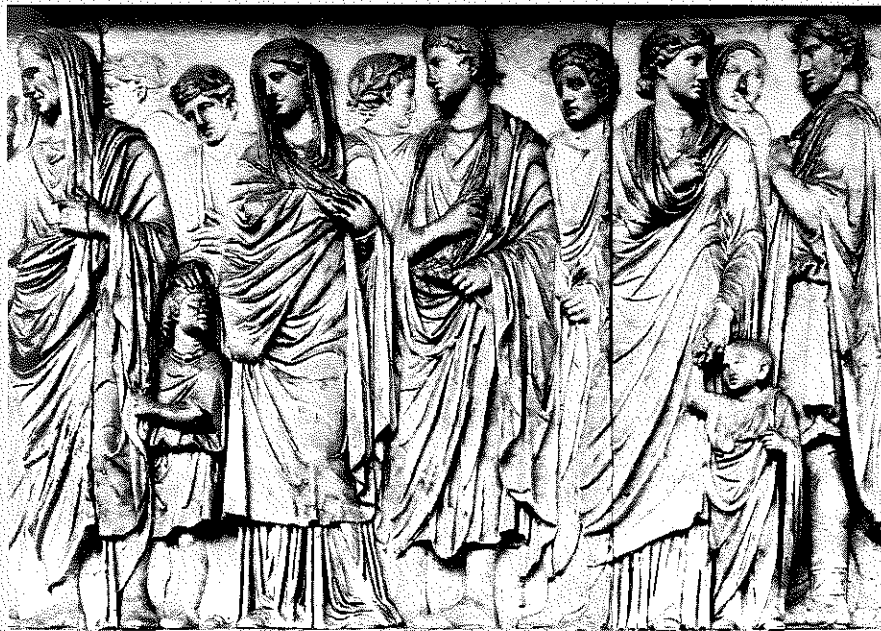
Statim tonītrus audītur, lūx discēdit, imber pervenit. Omnibus tantum virtūtis redditur ut in hostēs multō ācriōrem impetum faciant. Quādīs ita victis, omnēs crēdidērunt ab deō Christiānōrum imbrem missum esse.

Christiānī, imperātorem ad suam fidem dūcere cōnātī, hāc spē dēiecti sunt. Eīs tamen amīcissimus erat. Aurēlius cuidam rogantī quod nōmen huic legiōnī darētur respondit sē eam Legiōnem Tonitrūs semper appellātūrum esse.



# 58

## Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives Relative Clause of Characteristic



*Frieze from the Ara Pacis, The Altar of Peace, erected by Augustus in 13. B.C.*

Quaedam iura non scripta sed omnibus scriptis certiora sunt.  
*Some laws are unwritten but they are better established than all  
 written ones.*—SENECA RHETOR

—Forms —

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

**Quīdam** means *some definite person or thing, someone or something I know of*. For the declension of **quīdam** see the Word Study in Lesson 51. The pronoun and the adjective are identical in form except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular, where the pronoun is **quiddam**, the adjective **quoddam**.

**Aliquis** (pronoun) and **aliquī** (adjective) mean *someone (something, some) or other, as opposed to no one (nothing, no)*.

| SINGULAR     |          |           |          |          |
|--------------|----------|-----------|----------|----------|
| PRONOUN      |          | ADJECTIVE |          |          |
| MASC. & FEM. | NEUT.    | MASC.     | FEM.     | NEUT.    |
| aliquis      | aliquid  | aliquī    | aliqua   | aliquid  |
| alicuius     | alicuius | alicuius  | alicuius | alicuius |
| alicui       | alicui   | alicui    | alicui   | alicui   |
| aliquem      | aliquid  | aliquem   | aliquam  | aliquid  |
| aliquō       | aliquō   | aliquō    | aliquā   | aliquō   |

| PLURAL                |           |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE |           |           |
| MASC.                 | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| aliquī                | aliquae   | aliqua    |
| aliquōrum             | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| aliquibus             | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| aliquōs               | aliquās   | aliqua    |
| aliquibus             | aliquibus | aliquibus |

**Quisquam** (pronoun) and **ūllus** (adjective) mean *anyone, any*.

Putāsne quemquam hoc scīre?  
*Do you think anyone knows this?*

**Quisquam** is declined like **quis, quid** + **-quam**; it has no plural.

|             | MASC. & FEM. | NEUT.                |
|-------------|--------------|----------------------|
| NOMINATIVE: | quisquam     | quidquam or quicquam |
| GENITIVE:   | cuiusquam    | cuiusquam            |
| DATIVE:     | cuiquam      | cuiquam              |
| ACCUSATIVE: | quemquam     | quidquam or quicquam |
| ABLATIVE:   | quōquam      | quōquam              |

**Ūllus** is declined like **ūnus**. (See Lesson 21.)

**Quis** (pronoun) and **quī** (adjective) are used instead of **quisquam** and **ūllus** after **sī, nisi, nē, and num**. They are declined like **aliquis** and **aliquī** without the **ali-**. In other words they resemble the interrogative pronoun and adjective except in the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

*Sī quis hunc librum lēgerit, multa discet.*  
*If anyone reads this book, he will learn much.*

**Nē quis** and **nē quid** are used for *no one* and *nothing* in negative purpose clauses and indirect commands.

*Fugiet nē quis eum capiat.*  
*He will flee so that no one may capture him.*  
*Eīs persuāsit nē quid facerent.*  
*He persuaded them to do nothing.*

**Quisque** (pronoun) and **quīque** (adjective), *everyone, every (each)*, are declined like **quis, quid, and quī, quae, quod** + **-que**.

*Quīque mīles gladium habet.*    *Every soldier has a sword.*



Distinguish between the two words for *some*.

*Quaedam fēminae hīc habitant.*  
*Some women (whom I know of) live here.*  
*Aliquae fēminae hīc habitant.*  
*Some women (or other) live here.*



## — Syntax —

**Relative Clause of Characteristic.** A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive (following sequence of tenses) is used to define its antecedent as being of a certain character or kind, rather than merely to state a fact about it; hence it is called a relative clause of characteristic. Note the difference in the following:

Mārcus nōn est is quī hoc fēcit.

*Marcus is not the one who did this.*

Mārcus nōn est is quī hoc fēcērit.

*Marcus is not he who is of such a kind that he would have done this.*

*Marcus is not the kind (type) of person to have done this.*

## — Vocabulary —

adulēs'cēns, adulēscen'tis, m., young man, youth  
 grā'tia, -ae, f., favor, influence; gratitude  
 mōs, mō'ris, m., custom, habit  
 qui'ēs, quiē'tis, f., rest, sleep  
 rū'mor, rumō'ris, m., rumor, murmur  
 san'guis, san'guinis, m., blood  
 volun'tās, voluntā'tis, f., willingness, wish, consent

aliquis, aliquid, someone, something  
 aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, some  
 quī, qua, quod (after sī, nisi, nē, num) any  
 quis, quid (after sī, nisi, nē, num) anyone, anything  
 quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything  
 quisque, quidque, everyone, each

ape'riō, -ī're, ape'ruī, aper'tum, open, expose  
 coe'pī, coepis'se, coep'tum (defective), began  
 cōnsuēs'cō, -ere, cōnsuē'vī, cōnsuē'tum, become accustomed  
 ia'ceō, -ē're, ia'cuī, ia'citum, lie  
 in'colō, -ere, inco'luī, —, inhabit, live in; dwell  
 iū'vō, -ā're, iū'vī, iū'tum, help, aid  
 ri'deō, -ē're, rī'sī, rī'sum, smile, laugh; laugh at  
 rum'pō, -ere, rū'pī, rup'tum, burst, break  
 sū'mō, -ere, sūmp'sī, sūmp'tum, take, assume



—Word Study—

**Grātia**, *gratitude*, is used in several idioms.

|                 |                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| grātiās agere   | to thank                  |
| grātiām habēre  | to feel gratitude         |
| grātiām dēbēre  | to be under an obligation |
| grātiām referre | to show gratitude         |

All these are used with a dative of the person.

Tibi grātiās agō. *I thank you.*

**Mōs est** is used with a substantive clause.

Mōs est ut populus cōsulēs dēligat.  
*The custom is that the people choose the consuls.*

**Sūmō**. The Romans thought of punishment as something which was taken out of the person being punished.

Poenam dē hīs puerīs sūmam. *I shall punish these boys.*

—Exercises—

A. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Quisque mīles habuit aliquod opus quod faceret, sed omnēs tam dēfessī erant ut nihil facerent. 2. Caesar nōn erat imperātor quī suīs imperāret nē quid facerent. 3. Quid dēbēmus facere sī quis in nōs impetum fēcerit? 4. Tū nōn es is quī hoc nesciāt. 5. Hic nōn est liber quī tibi placeat. 6. Grātiās agimus vōbīs quī nōs iūverītis. 7. Poenam sūmēmus dē eīs quī cīvibus nocuerint. 8. Estne aliquis quī hunc puerum fortem nōn laudet? 9. Difficile est invenīre puellam quae Lūciō placeat. 10. Quārum rērum magnam partem impetus hostium impediēbat.

B. Translate.

1. He fled with such great speed that no one tried to follow him. 2. He ran very swiftly so that no one would try to follow him. 3. Will anyone ever dare to harm Caesar himself? 4. There are some who would say that you are beautiful. 5. Some Germans, at least (**quidem**), live in this town. 6. He is not one who would

feel gratitude. 7. The senators were with difficulty persuaded not to do anything. 8. I do not believe that this man has any authority. 9. It is the custom of the barbarians that they drink the blood of their enemies, but some never become accustomed to do this. 10. Does every boy have a book to read?

—*Reading*—

**THEMISTOCLES AND ARISTIDES**

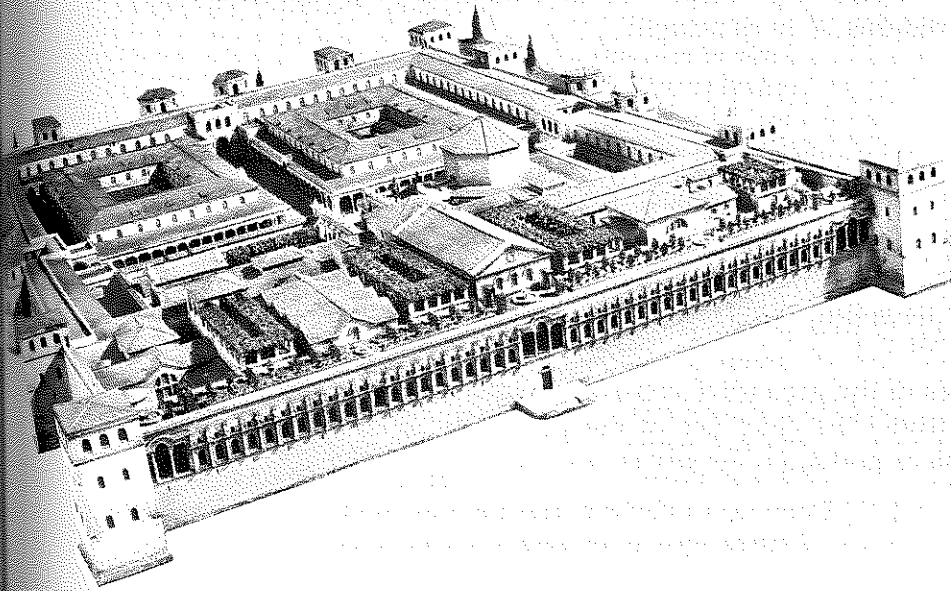
Cum ducēs Graecōrum convēnissent, Themistoclī, prīcipī Athēniēnsium, nūntiātum est aliquem cum eō loquī velle. Ille cum conventū exisset comperit hunc esse Aristīdem, quī patriā sex ante annīs iniquē expulsus esset et nunc redisset. Erat mōs enim apud Athēniēnsēs ut eōs quī plūs posse vidērentur expellerent. Aristīdēs autem potestātem non cupiēbat; vir erat quī semper vellet patriae servīre. Ab omnibus iūstus appellēbātur.

Themistoclēs, cum Aristīdem vidēret "Sī quis," inquit, "Aristīdēs, est quī nōs vērē certiōrēs dē cōsiliīs hostium faciat, is es. Quid factūrī sunt?"

Prīmum Aristīdēs dixit tōtam classem Graecōrum ā Persīs circumventam esse. Deinde Themistoclēs Aristīdem rogāvit ut quae rēs esset prīncipibus Graecōrum nūntiāret, nam erat vir cui omnēs cōfiderent.

59

Future Passive Participle  
Gerundive  
Passive Periphrastic  
Dative of Agent



*Model of Diocletian's Palace at Spalato in Jugoslavia*

Vitanda est improba siren desidia.  
*One must steer clear of the wicked temptress, Laziness.*—HORACE

—Forms —

**THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE**

In the first and second conjugations, the future passive participle is formed by adding **-ndus, -nda, -ndum** to the present stem.

vocandus, vocanda, vocandum    *to be called*  
 monendus, monenda, monendum    *to be warned*

In the third and fourth conjugations, the future passive participle is formed by adding **-endus, -enda, -endum** to the present stem.

regendus, regenda, regendum    *to be ruled*  
 capiendus, capienda, capiendum    *to be taken*  
 audiendus, audienda, audiendum    *to be heard*

The future passive participles of transitive compounds of **eō** are like that of **adeō**:

adeundus, adeunda, adeundum

The future passive participle of a deponent verb has a passive meaning: **hortandus**, *to be encouraged*.

—Syntax —

**USES OF THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE**

**The Gerundive Construction.** The idea which we express in English by a gerund (the verbal noun in *-ing*) is expressed in Latin by a future passive participle modifying a noun; hence this construction is called gerundive.

The uses of the gerundive construction are as follows.

1. **Genitive.** The chief use of the gerundive in the genitive is with **causā** or **gratiā**, *for the sake of*.

Domī mānsī librōrum legendōrum causā.  
*I stayed home for the sake of reading books.*



2. **Dative.** The dative of the gerundive is usually the indirect object or the dative with adjectives. (See Lesson 34.)

Multum tempus librīs legendīs dedit.

*He gave much time to reading books.*

Hic locus librīs legendīs idōneus est.

*This place is suitable for reading books.*

3. **Accusative.** The accusative of the gerundive is confined to the accusative of place to which with **ad** (used to indicate purpose).

Hūc vēnī ad librōs legendōs.

*I came here for the purpose of reading books.*

*I came here to read books.*

4. **Ablative.** The most common ablative of the gerundive is the ablative of means.

Librīs legendīs multum didicit.

*He learned much by reading books.*

The gerundive construction is not used in the nominative.

### THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONSTRUCTION

The use of the future passive participle as a predicate adjective with forms of **sum** is called the passive periphrastic. It denotes necessity or that which ought to be done. The participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Hoc faciendum est. | <i>This is to be done.</i>    |
|                    | <i>This has to be done.</i>   |
|                    | <i>This must be done.</i>     |
|                    | <i>This ought to be done.</i> |

### DATIVE OF AGENT

With the passive periphrastic the agent or doer is not in the ablative of personal agent, but in the dative. This dative is akin to the dative of possession and is known as the dative of agent.

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Hoc mihi faciendum est.   | <i>This must be done by me.</i> |
| <i>I must do this.</i>    | <i>I have to do this.</i>       |
| <i>I have this to do.</i> | <i>I ought to do this.</i>      |

**Helps and Hints.** Notice that the English verb *must* (*ought*) is very irregular. We say, "We must go," for the present time; "We had to go," for past time; and "We shall have to go," for future time. The Latin is regular.

— Vocabulary —

|                                                                               |                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| benefi'cium, benefi'cī, n.,<br><i>kindness, favor</i>                         | mu'lier, muli'eris, f., <i>woman, wife</i>                                 |
| co'hors, cohor'tis, f., <i>cohort</i>                                         | opī'niō, opīniō'nis, f., <i>opinion;</i><br><i>expectation; reputation</i> |
| cus'tōs, custō'dis, m., <i>guard</i>                                          | plēbs, plē'bis, f., <i>the common</i><br><i>people</i>                     |
| equitā'tus, -ūs, m., <i>cavalry</i>                                           | rē'mus, -ī, m., <i>oar</i>                                                 |
| explōrā'tor, explōrātō'ris, m.,<br><i>scout</i>                               | sax'um, -ī, n., <i>rock, stone</i>                                         |
| īn'fāns, īfan'tis, m. or f., <i>baby</i>                                      | ux'or, uxō'ris, f., <i>wife</i>                                            |
| la'crima, -ae, f., <i>tear</i>                                                | in'de, (adv.) <i>from there, thence</i>                                    |
| laus, lau'dis, f., <i>praise</i>                                              |                                                                            |
| lī'tus, lī'toris, n., <i>shore</i>                                            |                                                                            |
| magistrā'tus, -ūs, m., <i>magistracy,</i><br><i>public office; magistrate</i> |                                                                            |

— Word Study —

**Cohors.** A cohort consisted of six centuries of men, between 420 and 600; there were ten cohorts in a legion.

— Exercises —

A. Translate.

1. ad bellum gerendum    2. urbis videndae causā    3. ad portās claudendās    4. ad īnsulam explōrandam    5. flūminis trānseundi grātiā    6. Porta aperienda est.    7. Hoc mihi faciendum erat.    8. Oppidum exercituī nostrō occupandum erit.    9. Signa danda sunt.    10. Grātiaē agendaē sunt.

## B. Translate.

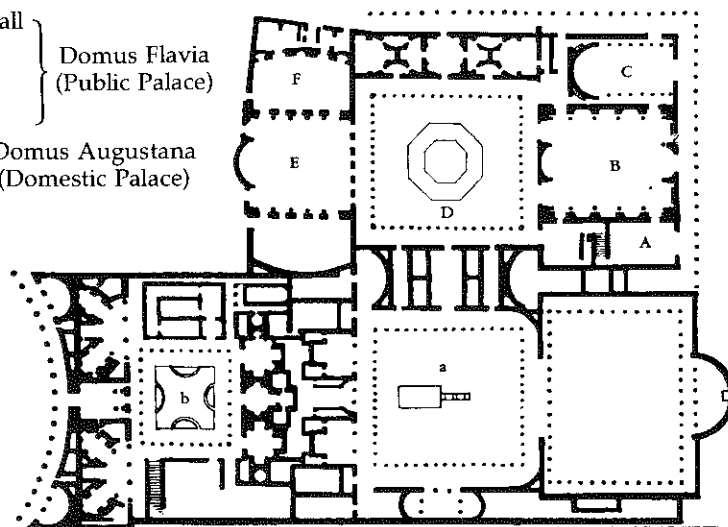
1. for the sake of announcing the victory 2. by burning the town 3. for carrying grain 4. for slaying the enemy 5. for the sake of training the soldiers 6. War must not be waged. 7. War had to be waged. 8. Caesar must send the soldiers. 9. The men will have to carry the water. 10. We must free the slaves.

## C. Read the Latin and translate.

1. Uxor ūnīus cōsulis et complūrēs aliae mulierēs ad senātum iērunt in forum ad rogandōs senātōrēs nē diūtius bellum gere-  
rent. 2. Caesarī ūnō tempore omnia agenda erant: aciēs in-  
struenda in apertīs campīs et mīlītēs hortandī erant. 3. Nautae  
in portum salūtis petendae grātiā nāvīgant. 4. Hīs rēbus adductī  
exīstimāvimus hiberna Gallōrum nōbīs capiēda esse. 5. Ad por-  
tum primā lūce contendērunt quō celerius nāvēs solverent ad Bri-  
tanniam ad obsidēs referendōs. 6. Arbitrātī sumus auxilia ad  
hīberna statim mittēda esse. 7. Prīncipēs ad pācem petendam  
Rōmam venīre contendēbant. 8. Caesar bellī gerendī causā mul-  
tās legiōnēs parābat. 9. Eī collēs nostrīs peditibus occupandī sunt  
quō equitēs facilius circumveniant hostēs. 10. Contrā omnium  
opīniōnem locum invēnimus castrīs ponendīs idōneum.

*Plan of the Flavian Palaces on the Palatine (81-96 A.D.).*

- |                               |                                        |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| A. The Lararium               | } Domus Flavia<br>(Public Palace)      |
| B. Aula Regia or Central Hall |                                        |
| C. Basilica                   |                                        |
| D. Peristyle                  |                                        |
| E. Triclinium                 |                                        |
| F. Nymphaeum                  | } Domus Augustana<br>(Domestic Palace) |
| a. Upper Peristyle            |                                        |
| b. Sunken Peristyle           |                                        |



## D. Translate.

1. A very wide river must be crossed by our entire army. 2. We know that the winter camp of our allies must be defended with the greatest boldness. 3. The army advanced about fifteen miles for the sake of crossing the river. 4. You must finish your work and give the books to your teacher. 5. The bodies of the soldiers who have been killed must be carried to the city. 6. The poet returned home to Rome to write a book about the wars. 7. We ought to give great thanks to the gods for having\* spared our lives in this disaster. 8. Having advanced several miles into the territory of the Germans, our leader decided that he ought to wait for the rest of the army. 9. He said that he had led the cohort around the wall to find an open gate. 10. We do not know what we ought to do.

## —Reading—

## CIMON THE WISE

Cimon ducum Athēniensium prouidentissimus putābatur. Quōdam diē ei ūnus ex amicis, "Omnibus," inquit, "bene nōtum est, Ō Cimon, tē consiliis tuis cīuitātem nostram maximē iūvisse. Mihi dīc quid tuā opīniōne Athēniensibus ūtilissimum fēceris."

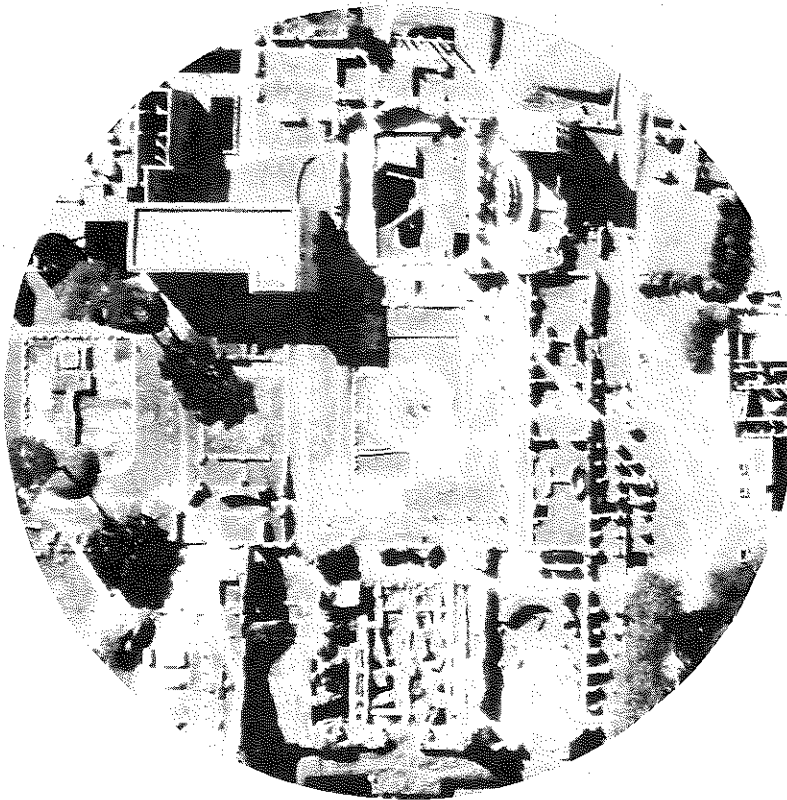
Respondit Cimon ridēs, "Ōlim ego et socii, in Āsiam bellī gerendī causā profecti, quōsdam senēs nōbilēs cēpimus. Ego igitur cui potestās praedae dīvidendae data erat in alterō locō virōs ipsōs, in alterō omnia ornāmenta eōrum aurea posui. Deinde sociōs hortātus sum ut dēligerent utram partem vellent, cōfirmāvique mē partem ab eis relictam cum gaudiō acceptūrum esse. Quibus verbis audītis illi sine ūllā morā ornāmenta cupidē cēpērunt. Athēnās postquam rediī, cīvēs meis captivīs Āsiaticis cōspectis risērunt quod hominēs hīs miseriōrēs numquam viderant, atque mirātī sunt cūr tam stultus fuissem; ego autem tacēbam. Brevi tempore, ut exīstimāveram, quīdam legātī ex Āsiā missi sunt quī illōs senēs multō aurō redimerent. Hōc modō mihi, quī virōs accēperam, erat satis pecūniae ad centum nāvēs armandās novās; sociis nostris autem quī ornāmenta dēlēgerant, erat vix satis ad uxōrēs filiāsque ornandās."

\*Use relative clause of characteristic.



60

Passive Periphrastic  
Gerund  
Supine



*Air view of the Flavian Palaces on the Palatine (81-96 A.D.)*



Timendi causa est nescire.  
*Ignorance is the cause of fear.*—SENECA

—Syntax—

### PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC (INTRANSITIVE VERBS)

Since intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally in the passive, the passive periphrastic of intransitive verbs uses the future passive participle impersonally, in the neuter nominative singular only.

Fortiter nobis pugnandum est. *We must fight bravely.*  
 Senatoribus persuadendum erit.  
*The senators will have to be persuaded.*

When verbs which take an indirect object are used in the passive periphrastic construction, agency is usually expressed by the ablative of personal agent rather than the dative of agent, to avoid the ambiguity of two datives.

Patri a te parendum est. *You must obey your father.*

### THE GERUND

Since an intransitive verb can have no passive meanings, its future passive participle obviously cannot modify any noun, but must be used impersonally in the neuter singular. The future passive participle in this use is called a gerund because it resembles a neuter singular noun. It has precisely the same uses as the normal gerundive construction.

Hoc dixi tibi persuadendi causā.  
*I said this for the sake of persuading you.*  
 Haec vallēs hiemandō idonea est.  
*This valley is suitable for spending the winter.*  
 Tela comparavit ad pugnandum.  
*He got together weapons for fighting.*  
 Quid efficiemus loquendō?  
*What will we accomplish by talking?*

The gerunds of the four conjugations and of *eō* are as follows:

|             |           |          |           |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| NOMINATIVE: | —         | —        | —         |
| GENITIVE:   | pugnandī  | nocendī  | crēdendī  |
| DATIVE:     | pugnandō  | nocendō  | crēdendō  |
| ACCUSATIVE: | pugnandum | nocendum | crēdendum |
| ABLATIVE:   | pugnandō  | nocendō  | crēdendō  |
| NOMINATIVE: | —         | —        | —         |
| GENITIVE:   | fugiendī  | veniendī | eundi     |
| DATIVE:     | fugiendō  | veniendō | eundo     |
| ACCUSATIVE: | fugendum  | venendum | eundum    |
| ABLATIVE:   | fugiendō  | veniendō | eundo     |

**Helps and Hints.** An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that "the gerundive is an adjective."

## SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun, the fourth principal part of the verb, declined in the fourth declension in only two cases, the accusative and the ablative:

|         |         |        |        |         |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|---------|
| vocātum | monitum | rēctum | captum | audītum |
| vocātū  | monitū  | rēctū  | captū  | audītū  |

The supine has only two uses, each of which may be translated by an infinitive: the accusative to express purpose (with verbs of motion) and the ablative of specification.

Vēnī pugnātum. *I have come to fight.*  
Hoc est vīsū turpe. *This is ugly to see.*

## —Vocabulary—

ascen'dō, -ere, ascen'dī, ascēn'sum, *climb up*  
coniun'gō, -ere, coniūnx'ī, coniūnc'tum, *join together, unite*  
cōnscen'dō, -ere, cōnscen'dī, cōnscēn'sum, *climb; board, go aboard*

dēdū'cō, -ere, dēdūx'ī, dēduc'tum, *lead down, lead away; launch*  
 dē'ferō, dēfer're, dē'tulī, dēlā'tum, *carry, bring; report*  
 dēscen'dō, -ere, dēscen'dī, dēscēn'sum, *descend*  
 in'eō, inī're, in'īi, in'itum, *enter, begin; consilium inīre, to adopt a plan*  
 me'reor, -ē'rī, me'ritus sum, *deserve, earn*  
 mī'ror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *wonder at, be surprised*  
 mo'rior, -ī, mor'tuus sum (fut. act. part. moritū'rus), *die*  
 nās'cor, -ī, nā'tus sum, *be born; be found*  
 refi'ciō, -ere, refē'cī, refec'tum, *repair, restore*  
 rei'ciō, -ere, reiē'cī, reiec'tum, *throw back, repulse*  
 repel'lō, -ere, rep'pulī, repul'sum, *drive back*  
 repe'riō, -ī're, rep'perī, reper'tum, *find, discover*  
 rever'tor, -ī, rever'sus sum, *go back, return*  
 ta'ceō, -ēre, ta'cuī, ta'citum, *be silent*  
 tri'buō, -ere, tri'buī, tribū'tum, *assign, grant*  
 ver'tō, -ere, ver'tī, ver'sum, *turn*

### —Word Study—

**Mīror** may be followed by an indirect question.

Mīrātus est quae eius rei causa esset.

*He wondered what the reason for this fact was.*

**Morior. Mortuus** is not actually the participle of this verb, but a separate adjective.

Mortuus erat. *He was dead = He had died.*

### —Exercises—

A. Translate.

1. Obsidibus parcendum erit. 2. Nōbīs in pāce vīvendum est.
3. Huic rei cōsulendum erat. 4. Hostibus ā nōbīs resistendum est.
5. Fortiter pugnandum erit. 6. ad nāvīgandum
7. pugnandō fortiter 8. resistendī grātiā 9. Hoc rōgātum vēnit.
10. Pācem petītum ībit.



**B. Translate.**

1. You must not fight. 2. Fathers must be obeyed. 3. This must be provided for. 4. We shall have to sail. 5. You must spare the captives. 6. for wintering in Gaul 7. by providing carefully 8. They made an end of fighting. 9. for the sake of pleasing me 10. They came to find her.

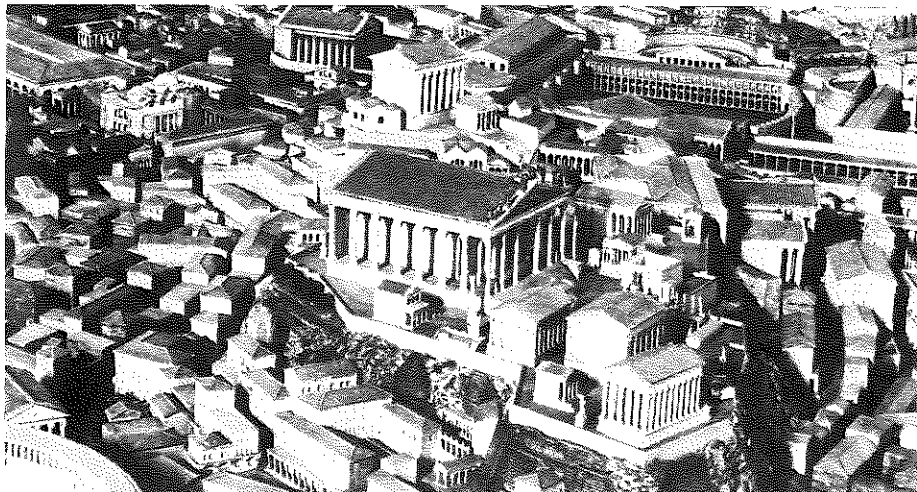
**C. Read the Latin and translate.**

1. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est.
2. Imperātōrēs sē vēnisse colloquendī causā cum nostrīs ducibus dixerunt.
3. Statim dē captīvīs nōbīs constituendum est.
4. Sibi Rhēnum vadō esse trānseundum putāvit.
5. Cōsul dicit grātiās deīs immortalibus ā nōbīs agendās esse prō tantīs beneficiīs.
6. Militēs, postquam hostēs pulsōs viderunt, finem pugnandī fecerunt.
7. Impetibus hostium acerrimīs audacter pugnandō resistere poterant.
8. Explōrātōrēs in urbem nocte vēnerunt domum cōsulis incensum.
9. Ā nōbīs nūntiandum cōsulī est hostēs ab apertīs agrīs statim repellendōs esse.
10. Nāvēs nōbīs dēdūcendae et cōscendendae sunt ut quam primum domum deferāmur.

**D. Translate.**

1. Although they had been born at Rome, they were nevertheless living in Spain.
2. The messenger reported that the warships had been repaired and launched, and we went into winter quarters to

*View of the model of ancient Rome showing the Capitoline Hill (Forum of Trajan in the background).*



seek safety. 3. They closed the gates; and, a garrison having been left near the harbor, they sent men to find grain. 4. The sailors disembarked at noon for the sake of exploring the shores. 5. One Roman commander conquered the enemy by delaying, another by fighting in line of battle. 6. The nobles were unwilling to allow the magistrates to assign fields to the common people. 7. A scout was sent by the magistrates of the town to descend the hill and carry a letter to Caesar. 8. The chiefs adopted the plan of joining the two armies together in order to repulse the enemy more easily. 9. "If we must die," said the centurion, "let us at any rate die fighting bravely." 10. Do not be surprised at my work; I like repairing wagons.

—Reading—

### THE FATTEST LION

Erat ōlim Rōmae servus Christiānus, nōmine Geta, quī, omnium puerōrum celerrimus, cotīdiē in Campō Martiō suī exercendī causā currēbat.

Cum Rōma igne vastāta esset, populus dolōre perturbātus dīxit Nerōnem imperātōrem urbem incendisse quō carmen dē Trōiae cāsū melius scriberet. Ad hunc rūmōrem opprimendum, Nerō dīxit Christiānōs urbī ignem intulisse, atque cīvibus persuāsit ut ab illis poenam mortis sūmerent. "Licet," inquit, "eōs leōnibus darī." Plēbs, sanguinis semper cupida, "Christiānōs ad leōnem!" clāmāvit.

Geta, captus, ante iūdicēs trāctus est, quī imperāvērunt ut ad leōnem iacerētur. Leō erat quīdam, maximus, fortissimus, crassissimus, cui Geta edendus erat.

Diē constitutā, in arēnam vēnit Geta quī sōlus, sine pīlo, sine scūtō, cum animālī pugnāret. Mox, rugītū mirō auditō, in arēnam cucurrit leō crassissimus, quī statim Getae appropinquāvit. Fūgit Geta quam celerrimē, leōne celeriter quoque sequente. Bis circum arēnam currunt anhelantēs et Geta et leō. Tum Geta ante imperātorem ipsum lapsus cadit. Omnī spē āmissā, iam moritūrus leōnis impetum expectat. Sed leō, iam appropinquāns, subitō cecidit, corde crassō cursū longō ruptō, atque moriēns ante pedēs Getae iacēbat.

Populus, hōc spectāculō laetissimus, "Deī iūdicāvērunt," clāmāvit. "Parce ei! Liber sit!" Nerō, recūsāre nōn ausus, "Liber es" inquit; "iam abire licet."

Nil actum reputa si quid superest agendum.  
*Don't consider that anything has been done if anything is left  
 to be done.*—LUCAN

## REVIEW 15 (LESSONS 57-60)

### —Vocabulary Drill—

A. Give the genitive, gender, and meaning of the following nouns.

|            |             |        |          |
|------------|-------------|--------|----------|
| adulēscēns | grātia      | mōs    | rūmor    |
| beneficium | īnfāns      | mulier | sanguis  |
| cohors     | lacrima     | opīniō | saxum    |
| custōs     | laus        | plēbs  | uxor     |
| equitātus  | lītus       | quiēs  | voluntās |
| explōrātor | magistrātus | rēmus  |          |

B. Give the other nominative forms, and the meanings, of the following pronouns and adjectives (for adjectives of one termination, give the genitive singular).

|                                         |          |
|-----------------------------------------|----------|
| aliquī                                  | quisquam |
| aliquis                                 | turpis   |
| quī ( <i>after sī, nisi, nē, num</i> )  | vehemēns |
| quis ( <i>after sī, nisi, nē, num</i> ) |          |

C. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs.

|           |        |           |          |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| aperiō    | dēsum  | parcō     | resistō  |
| ascendō   | ēripiō | pāreō     | revertor |
| coepī     | iaceō  | placeō    | rideō    |
| cōnfidō   | incolō | praeficiō | rumpō    |
| coniungō  | ineō   | praesum   | solvō    |
| cōnscendō | iūvō   | prōvideō  | studeō   |
| cōnsuēscō | mereor | rapiō     | sūmō     |
| cōnsulō   | mīror  | reficiō   | taceō    |
| dēdūcō    | morior | reiciō    | tribuō   |
| dēferō    | nāscor | repellō   | vertō    |
| dēscendō  | noceō  | reperiō   |          |

—Drill on Forms —

A. Give the following forms.

1. *genitive singular*: aliquis, vehemēns, magistrātus
2. *dative singular*: mōs, quisquam, sanguis
3. *accusative singular*: laus, litus, rēmus
4. *ablative singular*: equitātus, plēbs, turpis
5. *nominative plural*: vehemēns, rūmor, saxum
6. *genitive plural*: mulier, turpis, litus
7. *dative plural*: explōrātor, mōs, cohors
8. *accusative plural*: lacrima, rēmus, magistrātus

B. Give a synopsis of **rumpō**, active and passive, indicative and subjunctive, with meanings of the indicative, in the third person plural.

C. Give the following forms.

1. *the present passive infinitive of* dēferō, rapiō, prōvideō
2. *the perfect active infinitive of* aperiō, parcō, vīvō, praesum
3. *the future active infinitive of* vertō, tribuō, ascendō
4. *the pres. active part. of* incolō, rapiō, pāreō, morior, mīror
5. *the future passive participle of* cōnscendō, mereor, reiciō, solvō

D. Give all forms of the gerund of **cōnsulō**, **resistō**, **studeō**.

E. Give the complete declension of the comparative of **turpis**.

—Drill on Syntax —

A. Translate.

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Nē moriāmur.        | 6. Audācissimē pugnandō        |
| 2. Diū pugnātum est.   | hostēs vincet.                 |
| 3. Cōsulī placēbant.   | 7. Mātrī ā tē pārendum est.    |
| 4. Mūnitiōnī praefuit. | 8. Prīnceps capiendus erit.    |
| 5. Vēnit urbem vīsum.  | 9. Hoc resistendī causā fēcit. |
|                        | 10. Mē castrīs praeficiet.     |



## B. Translate.

- |                              |                                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. He will be born.          | 6. We shall win by resisting bravely. |
| 2. They have died.           | 7. He will be in charge of the camp.  |
| 3. We shall obey them.       | 8. We have come to watch the games.   |
| 4. Do not trust him.         | 9. He eats for the sake of living.    |
| 5. The horse must be killed. | 10. They harmed themselves.           |



## —Exercises—

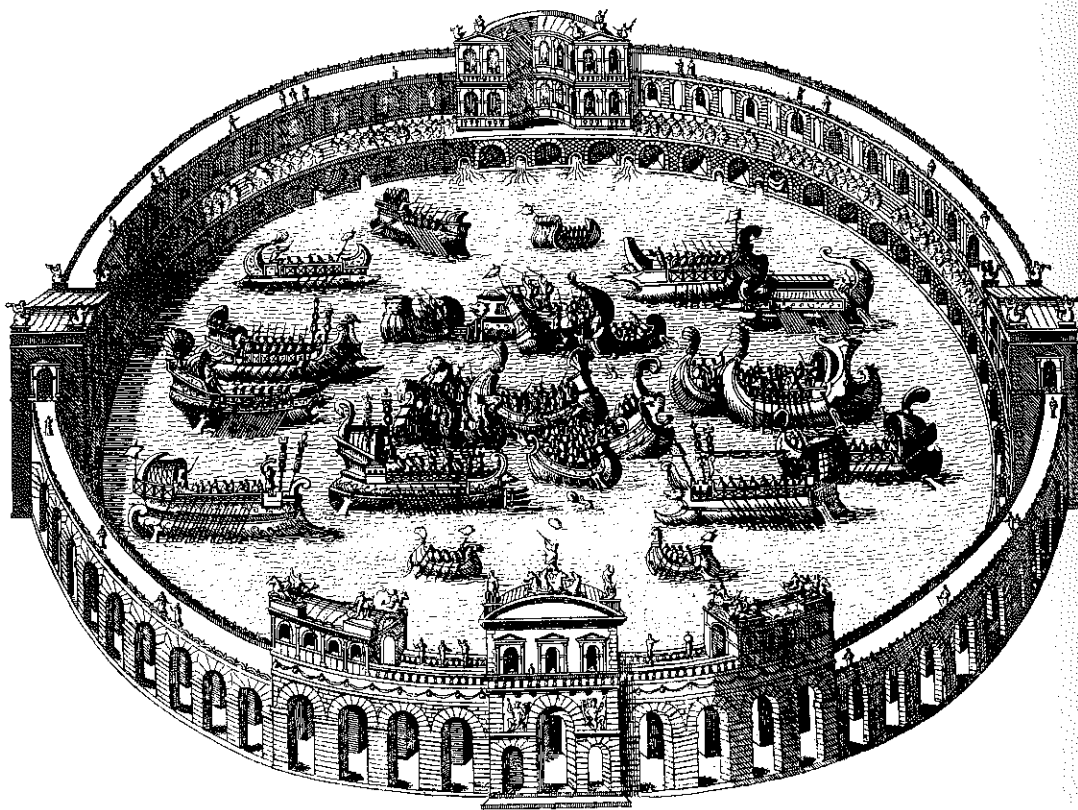
## A. Translate.

1. Accidit ut Mārcus classī praeesset itaque nāvēs longās hostium repellere posset. 2. Bellum cum illīs gentibus quae nōbīs nōn noceant crēdimus nōbīs nōn gerendum esse. 3. Hodiē repperimus quis mīlitibus morantibus imperāvisset nē impetum facerent. 4. Nōn licet nautīs nāvēs Corinthō solūtūrīs praedam portāre sēcum. 5. Omnēs mīlitēs quī in proeliō mortuī nōn sint paucīs mēnsibus domum reversūrōs scīmus. 6. Maxima multitudō cīvium in viīs urbis convēnerat imperātōris captī videndī causā quī ad forum carrō vehēbātur. 7. Peditēs in castrīs tot diēs morātī interficī quam diūtius manēre māluērunt. 8. Plēbs Rōmāna captīvōs quī Rōmam ā Britannīā relātī erant mīrāta est; erant autem quīdam quī eōrum cāsum dolērent. 9. Imperātōr rogāvit cūr lēgātus victōriam equitum ā dextrō cornū sibi nōn nūntiāvisset. 10. Custōdēs nocte castra hostium spectābant nē quis in campum dēscendere cōnārētur.

## B. Translate.

1. Does anyone know why the enemy wished to remain in camp rather than fight with our infantry? 2. Four of the scouts were accustomed to go out at night from the camp and try to set fire to the enemy's fortifications. 3. Since you do not know the enemy's plans, you must try to find out what they are intending to do

now. 4. Is there anyone who would say that he has seen a wiser or a braver general than Caesar? 5. I hope that all the citizens who are staying in this town will go with Lucius to the walls to resist the enemy. 6. Having advanced about twenty miles from the river that day, the tired army decided to halt near the hill. 7. Thousands of Romans were accustomed to assemble in the summer of each year to choose new consuls. 8. The army which was surrounded in the valley fought so fiercely that it was able to rout the enemy and arrive at its camp. 9. The centurion who had been put in command of the third cohort was unwilling to obey the lieutenant. 10. You must persuade your brother not to say anything to the consuls about this serious matter.



*"Nātāte aut Submergimīnī"*

A reconstruction of the Naumachia Augusti, a special amphitheatre built by Augustus for mock naval battles

## Summary of Case Uses

The following uses of the various cases can now be added to the list that precedes Review Lesson 8.

### Genitive

4. Of description and (5.) of measure (Lesson 51)  
*Est vir magnae auctoritātis. He is a man of great authority.*  
*Vidī turrī centum pedum. I saw a hundred-foot tower.*

### Dative

2. Of reference (Lesson 40)  
*Vōbīs hoc fēcī. I did this for you.*
3. Of purpose (Lesson 40)  
*Hae rēs ūsū sunt ad bellum. These things are useful for war.*
4. Double dative (Lesson 40)  
*Tū cūrae mihi es. You are a worry to me.*
5. With adjectives (Lesson 34)  
*Utrum oppidum propius marī est? Which town is nearer to the sea?*
6. Of possession (Lesson 53)  
*Mārcō erat gladius. Marcus had a sword.*
7. With intransitives (Lesson 57)  
*Placetne tibi? Does it please you?*
8. With compounds (Lesson 57)  
*Castrīs praeest. He is in charge of the camp.*
9. Of agent (Lesson 59)  
*Nōbīs currendum est. We must run.*

### Accusative

8. Accusative as adverb (Lesson 36)  
*Vos multum amat. He loves you much.*  
*Multa errat. He makes many mistakes.*
9. Of place to which without a preposition (Lessons 50 and 60)  
*Domum it. He goes home.*  
*Vēnērunt urbem vīsum. They came to see the city.*

### Ablative

#### Showing Separation

5. Of place from which without a preposition (Lesson 50)  
*Rūre venit. He comes from the country.*
6. Of cause (Lesson 39)  
*Timōre fugit. He fled because of fear.*

## 7. Of comparison (Lesson 33)

Fortiorem Mārcō numquam vīdī.

*I never saw a braver man than Marcus.*

## Showing Instrument or Circumstances

## 4. Of description (Lesson 51)

Mūrum magnā altitūdine adībat.

*He was approaching a wall of great height.*

## 5. Of specification (Lesson 37)

Flūmen est vīgintī pedum altitūdine. *The river is twenty feet in depth.*

## 6. Of degree of difference (Lesson 36)

Multō maior est quam tū. *He is much bigger than you.*

## 7. Ablative absolute (Lesson 51)

Litterīs acceptīs profectī sunt.

*Having received the letter, they set out.*

**Locative**

## 1. To show place where (Lesson 50)

Domī manēbunt. *They will stay at home.*

*Relief tondo of comic masks, the Clever Slave and the Irascible Old Man*





## Summary of Constructions with Verbs

**Complementary Infinitive.** The following verbs may require an infinitive to complete their meaning:

|                         |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| cōnor, <i>try</i>       | dēbeō, <i>ought</i>     | possum, <i>be able</i> |
| cōstituō, <i>decide</i> | dubitō, <i>hesitate</i> | temptō, <i>try</i>     |
| contendō, <i>hasten</i> | parō, <i>prepare</i>    | videor, <i>seem</i>    |

**Infinitive with Subject Accusative.** An infinitive phrase is used with the following verbs:

|                      |                           |                          |
|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| cōgō, <i>compel</i>  | polliceor, <i>promise</i> | verbs of saying, think-  |
| iubeō, <i>order</i>  | prohibeō, <i>prevent</i>  | ing, knowing, perceiving |
| patior, <i>allow</i> | spērō, <i>hope</i>        | (indirect statement)     |

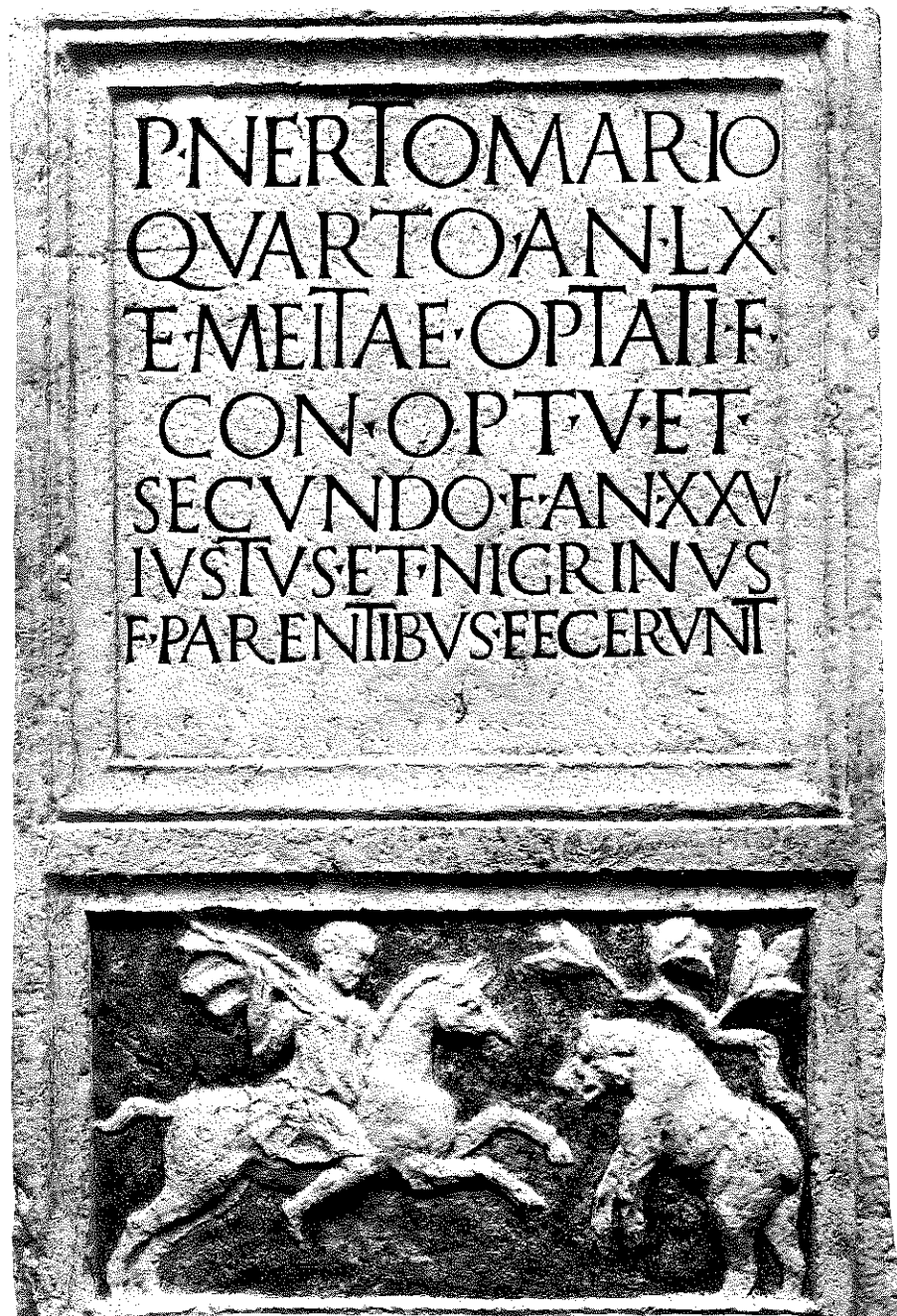
(In the passive such verbs require a complementary infinitive.)

**An Indirect Command** (substantive clause of purpose) is used with the following verbs:

| WITH ACCUSATIVE<br>OF THE PERSON | WITH DATIVE OF THE<br>PERSON | WITH ABLATIVE OF THE<br>PERSON WITH <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| hortor, <i>urge</i>              | imperō, <i>command</i>       | petō, <i>ask</i>                                          |
| moneō, <i>warn, advise</i>       | mandō, <i>command</i>        | postulō, <i>demand</i>                                    |
| ōrō, <i>beg</i>                  | permittō, <i>allow</i>       | quaerō, <i>ask</i>                                        |
| rogō, <i>ask</i>                 | persuādeō, <i>persuade</i>   |                                                           |

**A Substantive Clause of Result** is used with the following:

|                                  |                             |                           |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| accidit, <i>it happens</i>       | faciō, <i>see to it</i>     | necesse est, <i>it is</i> |
| mōs est, <i>it is the custom</i> | efficiō, <i>bring about</i> | <i>necessary</i>          |



*Tomb marker dedicated by Justus and Nigrinus to their deceased parents and brother*

## Supplementary Readings

### —The Story of Perseus—

(This supplementary selection is designed to be read after Review Lesson 8.)

#### PERSEUS AND POLYDECTES

Haec fābula ā poētīs dē Perseī rēbus gestīs nārrātur. Perseus filius erat Iovis, rēgis deōrum. Avus Perseī propter ōrāculum eum timēbat et cōsiliū cēpit quō poterat eum adhūc infāntem cum mātrem interficere. Itaque eōs inclūsit in arcam ligneam quam iussit in mare conicī. Tempestās magna mare turbābat et timor mortis et mātrem et infāntem occupāvit.

Iuppiter tamen omnia haec vīdit et filium servāre cōstituit. Itaque perdūxit arcam in īnsulam quae longē aberat, ubi Perseus cum mātrem multōs annōs habitāvit in pāce. Sed Polydectēs, rēx huius īnsulae, mātrem Perseī miserē amāvit et Perseō "Tuam mātrem," inquit, "in mātrimonium dūcam." Hoc tamen cōsiliū Perseum nōn delectāvit. Itaque Polydectēs Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Eum vocāvit ad rēgiam et "Tam dūdum," inquit, "tū adulēscēns es. Itaque nunc dēbēs arma capere et virtūtem ostendere. Hinc nāvigā et caput Medūsae ad mē reportā."

#### PERSEUS LEAVES THE ISLAND

Perseus ab īnsulā discessit et diū Medūsam frūstrā quaesīvit. Tandem per deōrum auxilium ad Medūsae sorōrēs pervēnit, ā quibus tālāria galeamque magicam cēpit. Atque Apollo et Minerva eī falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, ubi tālāria induerat, volāre potuit et hōc modō ad eum locum pervēnit ubi Medūsa cum reliquīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Mōnstra horribilia erant hae Gorgonēs, quārum capita serpentibus multis contēcta erant, et manūs ex aere factae.

#### THE FIGHT WITH THE GORGON

Iam Perseus Medūsam invēnerat—sed quō modō appropinquāre poterat ad hoc mōnstrum, cuius cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur? Propter hanc causam speculum Perseō Minerva dederat. Itaque ille tergum vertit et in speculum īspiciēbat. Hōc modō caput eius

ūnō ictū abscīdit. Reliquae Gorgonēs, quae ē somnō excitātae et irā commōtae sunt, Perseum interficere studēbant, sed Perseus galeam magicam induit. Ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum excessit.

Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopiae vēnit, in quibus Cēpheus rēx erat. Cēpheus et Neptūnus, maris deus, inimīci erant; itaque Neptūnus mōnstrum ferum ē marī cotīdiē mīsit quod hominēs dēvorābat. Cēpheus ōrāculum cōsultuit et ā deō iussus est fīliam mōnstrō trādere. Haec puella, quae Andromeda appellāta est, et pulchra et bona erat et ā patre amābātur; rēx tamen coāctus est facere illa quae deus iusserat.

### PERSEUS RESCUES ANDROMEDA

Ubi Andromeda ad litus dēducta est et ad rūpem adligāta (nam ita ōrāculum iusserat), Perseus subitō advolāvit. Tōtam rem audit et puellam videt. Simul mōnstrum procul cōspicitur. Iam magnā celeritāte ad locum ubi puella est mōnstrum appropinquat.

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium strīxit et in caelum altum volāvit. Diū et acriter cum mōnstrō pugnat. Tandem Perseus mōnstrum interfēcit et Andromeda salva erat. Prō hōc magnō beneficiō Cēpheus Perseō Andromedam in mātīmōnium dedit. In finibus Aethiopiae Perseus et Andromeda paucōs annōs habitāvērunt in magnō honōre. Sed tandem Perseus cum Andromedā mātrem quaesīvit, quam salvam invēnit in Polydectis īnsulā. Postea Polydectēs et avus Perseī, quod malī fuerant, ā Perseō interfectī sunt: ille in saxum cōnspectū Medūsae capitis conversus est; hic interfectus est discō quem Perseus in lūdīs iēceraat.

*Roman students with teacher*





— The Story of Ulysses —

(To be read after Review Lesson 15)

1. ULYSSES STARTS FOR HOME.

Urbem Trōiam ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessam esse satis cōstat; dē  
hōc enim bellō Homērus, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliada opus  
nōtissimum scripsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās captā, Graecī bellō fessī  
domum redire mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem parātis  
nāvēs dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam nactī magnō cum gaudiō 5  
solvērunt. Erat inter Graecōs Ulixēs quīdam, vir summae virtūtis ac  
prūdētiaē, quem nōn nūllī dīcunt dolum istum excōgitāsse quō  
Trōiam captam esse cōstet. Hic rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat,  
et paulō priusquam ad bellum cum reliquīs Graecīs profectus est,  
puellam fōrmōsissimam, nōmine Pēnelopēn, in mātrimonium dūx- 10  
erat. Nunc igitur cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōsūmpsisset,  
magnā cupiditatē patriae uxōrisque videndae ārdēbat.

2. THE LAND OF THE LOTUS-EATERS.

Postquam Graecī pauca mīlia passuum ā litore Trōiae prōgressi sunt,  
tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre pos-  
set, sed aliae aliam in partem disicerentur. Nāvis autem quā ipse  
Ulixēs vehēbātur vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta decimō diē ad  
litus Āfricae appulsa est. Ancoris iactis Ulixēs cōstituit nōn nūllōs ē 5  
sociīs in terram expōnere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent, et quālis  
esset nātūra eius regiōnis cognōscerent. Hī ē nāve ēgressi imperāta  
facere parābant. Sed dum fontem quaerunt, quōsdam ex incolīs in-  
vērunt atque ab eīs hospitio accepti sunt. Accidit autem ut maior  
pars victūs eōrum hominum in mīrō quōdam fructū, quem lōtum 10  
appellābant, cōsisteret. Quem cum Graecī gustāssent, patriae et so-  
ciōrum statim obliti cōfirmāvērunt sē semper in illā terrā māsūrōs,  
ut dulci illō cibō in perpetuum vescerentur.

1. 1. cōstat takes indirect statement, urbem . . . esse. 3. īnsidiās refers to the wooden horse. 7. quem, acc. subj. of excōgitāsse (excōgitāvisse) in indirect statement after dīcunt, who some (nōn nūlli) say had devised . . .
2. 3. aliae aliam in partem, some in one direction, others in another. 11. gustāssent = gustāvissent. 12. obliti (oblīviscor) governs objective gen. of patriae, sociōrum.

### 3. FORCIBLE RETURN TO THE SHIP.

Ulixēs cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāset, veritus nē sociī suī in periculō versārentur, nōn nullōs ē reliquīs mīsit, ut quae causa esset morae cognōscerent. Itaque hī in terram expositī ad vicum quī nōn longē aberat sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi  
 5 ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum causam veniendī docuērunt, atque eīs persuādere cōnātī sunt ut sēcum ad nāvem redīrent. Illī autem resistere ac sē manū dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam ex illō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, nūntiū rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. His rēbus cognitis ipse cum reliquīs quī in nāve relictī erant  
 10 ad eum locum vēnit; sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus ut suā sponte redirent, manibus vīntis invītōs ad nāvem trāxit. Tum quam celerrimē ex portū solvit.

### 4. THE CYCLOPS'S CAVE.

Tōtam noctem rēmīs contendērunt, et postridiē ad ignōtam terram nāvem appulērunt. Tum, quod nātūrā eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim sociīs in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōstituit. Explōrātōrēs paulum ā litore prōgressi ad spēluncam ingentem  
 5 pervēnērunt, quam incolī sēnsērunt; eius enim introitum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō hoc factūrōs, tamen spēluncam intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis in vāsīs ingentibus conditam invēnērunt. Dum mīrantur quis in eā sēde habitāret, sonitum terribilem  
 10 audivērunt, et oculīs ad ōstium tortīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem speciē et figurā, sed ingentī magnitudīne corporis. Cum autem animadvertissent mōnstrum ūnum modo oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ex Cyclōpibus, dē quibus iam audiverant.

### 5. TWO COMPANIONS ARE EATEN.

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant, quī īnsulam Siciliam praecipuēque montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum ignisque inventor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat. Graecī igitur simul ac mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene  
 5 exanimātī in interiōrem spēluncae partem refūgērunt, et sē abdere

3. 7. *manū, by force.*

4. 10. *tortīs (torqueō).*

5. 4. *simul ac, as soon as.*

cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (sic enim Cyclōps appellābatur) pecus suum in spēluncam compulit; deinde, cum saxō ingentī ōstium obstrūxisset, ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit. Hōc factō omnia oculō perlūstrābat. Cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre spēluncae parte esse abditōs, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī hominēs estis? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā vēnisse, sed Trōiā captā domum redeuntēs vī tempestātum ā cursū dēlātōs esse. Ōrāvit etiam ut sibi sine iniuriā abire licēret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivit ubi esset nāvis quā vectī essent. Ulixēs cum magnopere sibi praecavendum existimāret, respondit nāvem suam in saxa coniectam omnīnō frāctam esse. Ille autem nūllō respōnsō datō duo ē sociīs eius manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs carne vescī coepit.

## 6. THE GREEKS BEGIN TO DESPAIR.

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā praesentem mortem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est, humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vidisset Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem rei bene gerendae nōn omittendam arbitrātus, pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfigere voluit. Cum tamen nihil temere agendum existimāret, cōstituī explōrāre, priusquam hoc faceret, quā ratiōne ex spēluncā ēvādere posset. Cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sibi prōfutūrum intellēxit Polyphēmum interficere. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitudō ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovērī posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; quī cum intellēxissent quō in locō rēs esset, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen vehementer eōs hortātus est nē animōs dēmitterent; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam antea ē multis et magnīs periculīs ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrimine dī auxilium lātūrī essent.

## 7. ULYSSES FORMS A PLAN.

Ortā lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod prīdiē fēcit; nam correptīs duōbus virīs carne eōrum sine morā vescī coepit.

15. **sibi praecavendum (esse)**, *that he ought to take precautions.*

6. 4. **prōstrātus (prōsternere)**. 7. **priusquam hoc faceret**, *before he should do this.* 16. **neque dubium esse quīn**, *nor was there any doubt that.* Neg. expressions of doubt take **quīn** and subjunc.

- Deinde, cum saxum amovisset, ipse cum pecore suo ex spelunca progressus est; quod cum Graeci viderent, magnam in spem venerunt se paulo post evasuros. Statim ab hac spe repulsi sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnes oves exierunt, saxum reposuit. Reliqui omni spe salutis deposita se lamentis lacrimisque dederunt; Ulixēs vērō, qui, ut supra demonstravimus, magni fuit consili, etsi intellegebat rem in discrimine esse, tamen nondum omnino desperabat. Tandem, cum diu haec toto animo cogitavisset, hoc consilium cepit. E lignis quae in spelunca reposita erant magnam clavam delēgit. Hanc summā cum diligentia praeacutam fecit; tum, postquam sociis quid fieri vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī expectabat.

#### 8. NO MAN.

- Sub vesperum Polyphēmus in speluncam rediit, et eodem modo quo antea cenavit. Tum Ulixēs utrem vini prompsit, quem forte (id quod ei erat salutē) secum attulerat; et postquam magnum poculum vino complēvit, monstrum ad bibendum provocavit. Polyphēmus, qui numquam antea vinum gustaverat, poculum statim exhaustit; quod cum fecisset, tantam voluptatem percēpit ut iterum ac tertium poculum compleri iuberet. Cum quaesivisset quō nomine Ulixēs appellaretur, ille respondit se Neminem appellari; quod cum audivisset, Polyphēmus ita locutus est: "Hanc tibi grātiā pro tantō beneficio referam; te postrimum omnium devorābō." Hoc cum dixisset, cibi viniq̄ue plenus humi recubuit, et brevi tempore somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociis convocatis, "Habemus," inquit, "quam petivimus facultatem; ne tantam occasionem rei bene gerendae omittamus."

#### 9. POLYPHEMUS IS BLINDED.

- Hac oratione habitā extrēmā clavā igni calefecit, atque hac oculum Polyphēmī dormientis perfodit; quō factō omnes in diversās speluncae partes se abdidērunt. At ille hōc dolore oculi ē somnō excitātus clamōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum in speluncā errat, Ulixem manū prehendere conabatur; cum tamen iam omnino caecus esset, nullo modo id efficere potuit. Interea reliqui Cyclopēs clamōre auditō undique ad speluncam convenerant; et ad introitum adstantes quid Polyphēmus ageret quaesiverunt, et quam ob causam tantum clamōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit se graviter vulneratum esse, ac magnō do-

8. 3. *ei . . . salutē*, double dat., *for safety to him*.

9. 5. *cum*, *since*.



lōre adfici. Cum postea quaesivissent quis ei vim intulisset, respondit 10  
 Neminem id fecisse; quibus rebus auditis unus ē Cyclōpibus, "At si  
 nēmō," inquit, "tē vulnerāvit, nōn dubium est quin cōsiliō deōrum,  
 quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō adfectus  
 sis." Hoc cum dixisset, abiērunt Cyclōpēs eum in insāniam incidisse  
 arbitrātī. 15

*Archaic Greek Vase  
 painting showing the  
 blinding of Polyphemos by  
 followers of Ulysses*



#### 10. ESCAPE FROM THE CAVE.

Polyphēmus ubi sociōs suōs abisse sēnsit, furōre atque āmentiā im-  
 pulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem, cum ōstium invēnis-  
 set, saxum quō obstrūctum erat amōvit, ut pecus in agrōs exīret. Tum  
 ipse in introitū cōsēdit; et ut quaeque ovis ad hunc locum vēnerat,  
 eius tergum manibus tractābat, nē hominēs inter ovēs exīre possent. 5  
 Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis  
 quam in virtūte positam esse intellēxit. Itaque hoc cōsiliū iniit.  
 Primum ex ovibus trēs pinguissimās dēlēgit, quās cum inter sē  
 vīminibus coniūnxisset, ūnum ex sociīs suis ventribus eārum ita sub-  
 iēcit ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovēs hominem ferentēs ad ōstium 10  
 ēgit. Id accidit quod fore suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim postquam

10. 4. *ut, as.* Ut followed by indic. means *as*. 9. *ventribus, dat.* with com-  
 pound verb, *subiēcit*. 11. *Id . . . erat,* That happened which he suspected  
 would happen. *fore = futurum esse.*

terga ovium manibus tractāvit, eās praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs ubi rem tam fēliciter ēvēnisse vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ōrdine eōdem modō ēmīsīt; quō factō ipse novissimus ēvāsīt.

### 11. A PERILOUS DEPARTURE.

His rēbus ita cōfectīs Ulixēs, veritus nē Polyphēmus dolum cognōs-  
ceret, cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnis-  
sent, ab eis quī nāvī praesidiō relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā exceptī  
sunt. Hī cum iam diēs trēs continuōs reditum eōrum ānxiō animō  
5 exspectāvissent, suspicātī (id quidem quod erat) eōs in aliquod grave  
periculum incidisse, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs  
nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē  
proficiscī cōstituit. Itaque omnēs nāvem cōscendere iussit, et  
sublātīs ancoris paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā  
10 vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī violās, iūstam et  
dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc vōce audītā Polyphē-  
mus vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit. Ubi nāvem paulum  
ā lītore remōtam esse intellēxit, saxum ingēns sublātum in eam partem  
coniēcīt unde vōcem vēnisse sēnsit. Graecī autem, etsī nōn multum  
15 āfuit quīn nāvis eōrum mergerētur, tamen nullō damno acceptō cur-  
sum tenuērunt.

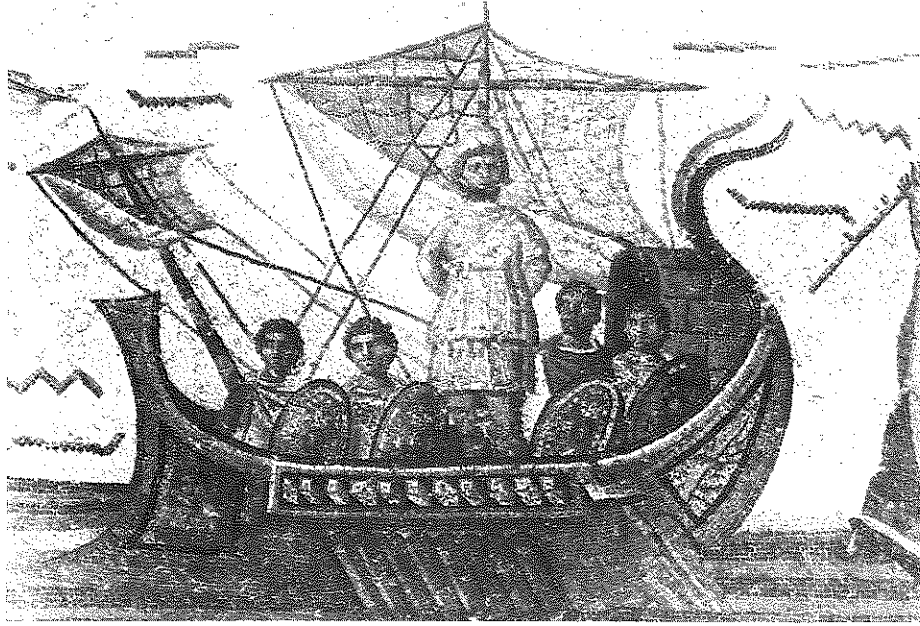
### 12. AEOLUS'S GIFT OF THE WINDS.

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam Aeoliam  
nāvem appulit. Haec patria erat ventōrum.

Hic rēx Aeolus vāstō antrō luctantēs ventōs tempestātēsque sonōrās  
imperio premit ac vinclīs et carcere frēnat. Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitio  
5 accēpit, atque eis persuāsīt ut ad reficiendās virēs paucōs diēs com-  
morārentur. Septimō diē, cum sē ex labōribus refēcissent, Ulixēs, nē  
annī tempore ā nāvigatione excluderētur, sibi proficiscendum statuit.  
Tum Aeolus, quī sciēbat Ulixem cupidissimum esse patriae videndae,  
eī magnum ūtrem dedit, in quō omnēs ventōs praeter ūnum inclū-  
10 serat. Favōnium modo solverat, quod ille ventus nāvigantī ab īnsulā  
Aeoliā Ithacam est secundus. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et  
grātīs prō tantō beneficiō āctīs ūtrem ad mālum adligāvit. Omnibus  
rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs meridiānō ferē tempore ex portū solvit.

11. 3. *nāvī praesidiō*, double dat. 14. *etsī . . . mergerētur*, although their  
ship was almost sunk.

12. 3. *vāstō antrō*, understand in before *vāstō*. 4. *vinclīs* = *vinculīs*.



*Ulysses and companions, Roman mosaic from Bardo Museum, Tunis*

### 13. THE WINDS UNLEASHED.

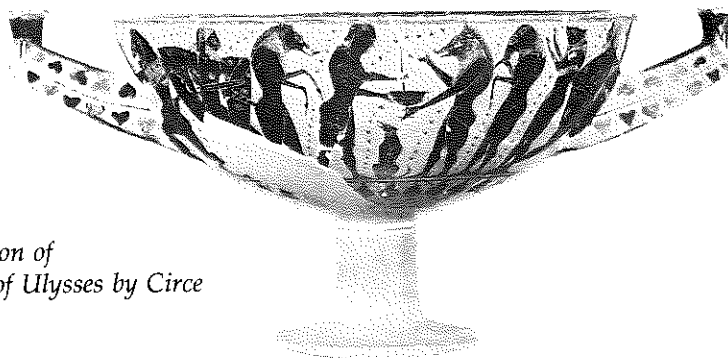
Novem diēs Graecī secundissimō ventō cursum tenuērunt; iamque in cōspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs lassitūdine cōfectus (ipse enim gubernābat) ad quiētem capiendam recubuit. At sociī, quī iam diū mīrābantur quid in illō ūtre inclūsum esset, cum ducem somnō oppressum vidērent, tantam occāsiōnem nōn omittendam arbitrātī sunt; crēdebant enim aurum et argentum ibi latēre. Itaque spē praedae adductī ūtrem sine morā solvērunt; quō factō ventī, velut agmine factō, quā data porta, ruunt et terrās turbine perflant. Hīc tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut illī cursum tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant profectī referrentur. Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit; ūtrem solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vidit. Tum vērō vehementer exārsit sociōsque obiūrgāvit, quod cupiditāte pecūniae adductī spem patriae videndae abiēcissent.

13. 8. *quā, where.* **ruunt, perflant,** understand **ventī** as subj.

14. **abiēcissent,** subjunc., implied indirect statement.

## 14. CIRCE'S ISLE.

- Brevi spatiō intermissō Graeci insulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt, in quā Circē, filia Sōlis, habitābat. Quō cum Ulixēs nāvem appulisset, in terram frūmentandī causā ēgrediendum esse statuit; nam cognōverat frūmentum quod in nāve habēret iam dēficere. Itaque sociīs ad sē
- 5 convocātis, quō in locō rēs esset et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs memoriā tenērent quam crudēli morte adfecti essent eī quī nūper ē nāve ēgressi essent, nēmō repertus est quī hoc negōtium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita essent, rēs in contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem Ulixēs omnium cōsensū sociōs in duās partēs dīvisit,
- 10 quārum alteri Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alteri ipse praeesset. Tum hī duo inter sē sortiti sunt uter in terram ēgrederētur. Eurylochō sorte ēvēnit ut cum duōbus et viginti sociīs rem susciperet.



*The transformation of  
the companions of Ulysses by Circe*

## 15. CIRCE'S PALACE.

- Hīs rēbus ita cōstitūtis eī quī sorte ducti erant in interiōrem partem insulae profecti sunt. Tantus tamen timor animōs eōrum occupāverat ut nōn dubitarent quīn ad mortem irent. Vix quidem poterant eī quī in nāve relictī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdebant enim sē sociōs suōs
- 5 numquam postea vīsūrōs. Illi autem aliquantum itineris prōgressi ad villam magnificam pervēnērunt, cuius ad ōstium cum adissent, cantum dulcissimum audīvērunt. Tanta autem fuit eius vōcis dulcēdō ut nūllō modō retinēri possent quīn iānuam pulsārent. Hōc factō ipsa Circē forās exiit, et summā cum benignitāte omnēs in hospitium

14. 6. **quam**, *how* 8. **vellet**, clause of characteristic. 10. **praeesset**, *was to command*, rel. clause of purpose.

15. 8. **retinēri possent quīn**, *could not be restrained from*. **Quīn** introduces subjunc. after neg. expressions of hindering.



invitavit. Eurylochus insidiās sibi comparārī suspicātus forīs expec- 10  
tāre cōstituit; at reliquī reī novitāte adductī villam intrāvērunt. Cēnam  
omnibus rēbus instrūctam invēnērunt, et iussū dominae libentissimē  
accubuērunt. At Circē vīnum quod servī apposuērunt medicāmentō  
quōdam miscuerat; quod cum Graeci bibissent, somnō oppressi sunt.

#### 16. ULYSSES DECIDES TO GO TO THE PALACE.

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, virgā  
aureā quam gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs  
subitō conversi sunt. Intereā Eurylochus ignārus quid in aedibus ager-  
ētur ad ōstium sedēbat. Postquam ad sōlis occāsum āxiō animō et  
sollicitō exspectāvit, sōlus ad nāvem regredi cōstituit. Eō cum vē- 5  
nisset, sollicitūdine ac timōre ita perturbātus fuit ut quae vīdisset vix  
nārrāre posset. At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in periculō versārī,  
et gladiō arreptō Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad istam  
domum dēmōnstrāret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem com-  
plexus obsecrāre coepit nē in tantum periculum sē committeret; sī 10  
quid gravius eī accidisset, omnium salūtem in summō discrimine fu-  
tūram. Ulixēs respondit sē nēminem invitum adductūrum; illi licēre,  
sī mallet, in nāve manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō praesidiō rem suscep-  
tūrum. Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāve dēsiluit et nūllō sequente  
sōlus in viam sē dedit. 15

#### 17. MERCURY TO THE RESCUE.

Aliquantum itineris prōgressus ad villam magnificam pervēnit; quam  
cum oculis perlūstrāset, statim intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim hanc  
esse eandem domum dē quā Eurylochus mentiōnem fēcisset. At cum  
līmen intrāret, subitō sē ostendit adulēscēns fōrmā pulcherrimā au- 5  
ream virgam gerēs. Hic Ulixem iam domum intrantem manū pre-  
hendit. "Quō," inquit, "ruis? Nōne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum?  
Hic inclūsī sunt amīci tuī ex hūmānā speciē in porcōs conversi. Num  
vīs ipse in eandem calamitātem venīre?" Ulixēs simul atque vōcem  
audīvit, deum Mercurium agnōvit; nūllis tamen precibus ab institūtō  
cōsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam 10  
quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina multum valēre dīcēbat. "Hanc  
cape" inquit, "et cum Circē tē virgā tetigerit, tū gladiō dēstrictō im-

16. 10. *sī quid . . . accidisset*, if anything serious should happen to him. *Acci-*  
*disset*, subjunc. in indirect statement.

17. 6. *Circēs*, gen. 11. *multum valēre*, was very strong.

petum in eam vidē ut faciās." Priusquam finem loquendī fēcit, mortālēs vīsūs mediō sermōne reliquit, et procul in tenuem ex oculis  
 15 ēvānuit auram:

#### 18. ULYSSES TURNS THE TABLES.

Brevi intermissō spatiō Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus iānuam pulsāvit, et foribus apertīs ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque antea facta sunt. Cēnam magnificē  
 5 īnstrūctam vidit, et accumbere iussus est. Ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnī plēnum Ulixī dedit. Ille etsī suspicābātur venēnum sibi parātum esse, tamen pōculum exhaustit; quō factō Circē caput eius virgā tetigit, atque ea verba dīxit quibus sociōs eius antea  
 10 in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta enim vīs erat eius herbae quam Ulixī Mercurius dederat ut neque venēnum neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut erat eī praeceptum, gladiō dēstrictō impetum in eam fēcit mortemque minitābātur. Circē cum artem suam nihil valēre sēnsisset, multīs cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre coepit nē sibi vītā adimeret.

#### 19. ALL TURNS OUT WELL.

Ulixēs ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs suōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem restitueret (certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse); nisi id factum esset, sē dēbita supplicia sūmptūrum ostendit. Circē hīs rēbus graviter com-  
 5 mōta sēsē eī ad pedēs prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iūrāndō cōfirmāvit omnia quae ille imperāset sē factūram. Tum porcōs in ātrium immittī iussit. Illi datō signō inruērunt. Cum ducem suum agnōvissent, magnō dolōre affectī sunt, quod nūllō modō eum dē rēbus suis certiōrem facere poterant. Circē tamen unguentō quōdam  
 10 corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō sunt omnēs statim in hūmānam speciem restitūtī. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amicōs suōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsīt, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs receptōs esse diceret. Illi autem hīs rēbus cognitis celeriter in domum Circēs sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, ūniversī laetitiae sē dēdidērunt.

13. *vidē ut faciās*, see that you make (subjunc. in substantive clause).

18. 3. *eōdem modō atque*, in the same way as. 8. *aliter . . . atque*, otherwise than.

19. 5. *eī*, dat. of reference, used rather than gen. *eius*.

## 20. ULYSSES'S DEPARTURE.

Postrīdiē eius diēi Ulixēs ex hāc īsulā quam celerrimē discēdere in  
 animō habēbat. Circē tamen cum id cognōvisset, ab odiō ad amōrem  
 conversa omnibus precibus eum ōrāre et obtestārī coepit ut paucōs  
 diēs apud sē morārētur; quā rē impetrātā tanta beneficia in eum con-  
 tulit ut facile eī persuādērētur ut diūtius manēret. Postquam tōtum 5  
 annum apud Circēn cōsūmpsit, Ulixēs magnō dēsideriō patriae suae  
 mōtus est. Itaque sociīs ad sē convocātis quid in animō habēret osten-  
 dit. Sed ubi ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita afflictam  
 invēnit ut ad nāvigandum paene inūtilis esset. Quō cognitō omnia  
 quae ad nāvēs reficiendās ūsuī erant comparārī iussit; quā in rē tantam 10  
 dīligentiam omnēs adhibēbant ut tertiō diē opus perficerent. At Circē  
 ubi omnia ad profectiōnem parāta vīdit, rem aegrē tulit, atque Ulixem  
 vehementer obsecrāvīt ut cōsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tem-  
 pore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, et idō-  
 neam tempestātem nactus nāvem solvit. Multa quidem perīcula Ulixī 15  
 subeunda erant priusquam in patriam suam pervenīret, quae tamen  
 hōc locō perscribere longum est.

20. 6. Circēn, Greek acc. form. patriae, obj. gen., for his country.

16. priusquam . . . pervenīret, before he would arrive.





At left: Roman remains in Greece

## Roman Civilization through Art

The following section contains background material about the special art categories and additional information about many of the photos in the text.

### HOUSES, GARDENS AND FURNISHINGS

The basic characteristic of ancient Italian\* houses is the *ātrium*, a reception hall which normally has a funnel-shaped roof with a central opening (*compluvium*) to collect rainwater and direct it to a shallow pool (*impluvium*) below, whence it was drained into a cistern with a wellhead. The placement of other units, *tablinum*, *ālae*, *cubicula*, *triclīnia*, *peristylum*, etc., so canonical in Pompeii, is much less standardized in other sites such as Herculaneum, Ostia, and Rome itself. The origin and derivation of the *ātrium* is in doubt. The primitive Roman dwelling, plentiful traces of which have been found on the Palatine and in the Forum, was a horseshoe-shaped hut, presumably of wattle and daub with a thatched roof, a ridgepole, central hearth, and shallow porch. These are not unlike primitive Greek buildings, but the contemporary funerary urns in the shape of huts show that the smoke-hole was in the gable at the front of the building, not in the roof above the hearth. For this reason, and also because of the difference in function, it is probably not correct to derive the *compluvium/impluvium* arrangement from the primitive hearth and smoke-hole. Since (if we may judge from their tombs) the Etruscans had houses with central reception halls, it may be that the Italians borrowed the atrium from them, their own ingenuity adding the water-collecting arrangements.

The most likely theory is that the atrium house developed from an enclosed yard, around which buildings were gradually added until they surrounded it completely. The next step was the addition of a portico around the courtyard, roofing it except for the center, as in the peristyle of Pompeii; then reducing the size of the central opening produced the true *ātrium*. The fact that the typical Italian town house turns in upon itself, with few windows to the outside, supports this theory of its origin.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. xii. Much of what we know of Roman gardens comes from paintings like this, which were intended to extend visually the space of cramped town houses. Recent work done with plaster casts of root systems and with fossilized pollen at Pompeii confirm what we learn from such paintings.

\* It is a misnomer to call such houses Roman, since at Pompeii, for example, the type appears long before the Roman period.

p. 3. Many Campanian houses have outdoor dining places. In this one the table foot is also a fountain jet. Once the meal was over, the mattresses were removed and the water turned on, making an attractive fountain and at the same time, washing away any crumbs and spills.

p. 4. This is not the plan of any particular house, but an attempt to derive a canonical plan for an early Campanian house from observations of the older houses at Pompeii. The rooms opening from the *ātrium* are usually bedchambers (*cubicula*). The *ālae*, in many houses, appear to have served as waiting rooms for clients, or office space for clerks. The rooms flanking the *tablinum* were dining rooms; in later houses one, at least, would be open to the garden for summer use.

p. 8. This view is through the two peristyles, the first a flower garden with a fountain and the second a vegetable garden. Beyond the columns there is a reception room for social purposes with a view of both peristyles. The long vista from the entrance of the house through the garden was one of the most charming features of Pompeian architecture.

p. 10. The small door just inside the front door of the house leads to one of the shops which flank the entrance. The three doors in the *ātrium* lead to a stairway and two bedrooms (*cubicula*); the large paintings of the *ātrium* were illustrations of the *Iliad*. The double doors in the *tablinum* belong to a large store cupboard. The mosaic on p. 150 is from the floor of this *tablinum*. A study/bedroom and a pantry open from the peristyle (which has a colonnade around three sides only). At the rear is a back door opening on a side street. In the garden of the peristyle is a little shrine of the household gods.

p. 11. In the *faucēs* ("throat"—the name given to the narrow entrance hall) another door on this side leads to the shop next door. The presence of these doors suggests that the shops were run by slaves or freemen of the family, who also served as doorkeepers to the house. The entrance must also have been guarded by a dog, for just inside the front door is a mosaic pavement showing a dog with the inscription *Cavē canem*. The door in the *ātrium* on this side leads to a bedroom with the single *āla* to its left. From the garden a passage runs alongside the *tablinum* to the *ātrium*; next to it is the entrance to a small dining room overlooking the colonnade. Off the colonnade on this side are a latrine and, far left, a large dining-room facing the garden.

p. 14. The Bay of Naples was a resort area for wealthy Romans. Seaside property was at such a premium that many people sank foundations into the sea and built their villas over the water.

p. 17 (*above*). Many of the older apartment houses in Italy today were built on a similar plan. Second-story apartments facing the street have stairways directly to the street. The other apartments are reached from galleries surrounding the central courtyard, which usually has in it a fountain for the use of tenants whose apartments do not have running water.

p. 17 (*below*). Trajan's market served for general trading and possibly for the distribution of grain to the populace. There were 150 shops, each with small living-quarters in the loft above it, a great two-storied hall, rooms with tanks for the sale of fish and liquids, and offices of administration. The market rose in tiers on the steep south slope of the Quirinal hill. This illustration has been placed in the section on housing primarily to show the arrangement of living-quarters above the shops, a plan found in most Roman cities, but it may be that in this case these quarters were for the overnight accommodation of merchants who had come to Rome to show their wares or samples to buyers from overseas. We know, for example, from a graffito at Pompeii, that the blacksmiths of Campania displayed their wares at Rome regularly.

p. 19. The funnel top in this elaborate bronze is covered by a lid with a figurine. The olive oil reservoir in the lamp is covered over to prevent spills, but the top is made funnel-shaped with a hole in the center for ease in filling. The wicks in the three spouts could be pulled up when they had burnt too low, by means of the hook on the chain. The large shield on the handle protected one's hand from the flames when the lamp was picked up.

p. 21. The one- and two-handled cups are from the house of the Poppaeus family at Pompeii, where a large silver service was found locked away in the cellar. The one-handled cup (*skyphos*) was for individual drinking; the two-handled *cantharus* was passed from person to person at the drinking bout following a banquet. The porringer and large silver serving dish are from Roman villas in Britain.

p. 25. Such small folding altars were used for domestic sacrifices of incense, libations of wine, etc. Folding tables of similar design have also been found in Pompeii.

In the brazier below, hot coals were raked into the curved hollow water-heater at the right; boiling water was drawn from the mask, while steam escaped through the swans at the top. Lukewarm water could be drawn from the tank at the left.

## FAMILY LIFE AND EDUCATION

The head of the household (*familia*) was the father (*paterfamiliās*). In law he had the power of life and death over all the members of the *familia*, both *servī* and *liberī*. Religious sanctions also bound the family together; the *pietās* which meant so much to the Romans involved primarily the mutual duties of parents and children toward each other.

Because artificial lighting was poor, the Roman family rose at dawn. The father, if he was a person of any importance, began the day by receiving his clients in the *tablinum* and *ātrium*; this was called the *salūtātiō*, and was followed by the *dēductiō*, as the clients escorted him down to the Forum, the center for both business and politics. His wife, having laid out the day's

work for the slaves (and even poor households had at least one slave), was free to spend the rest of the day in visits.

The children's day was spent in schooling and play. Roman children played with many of the same kinds of toys children use today, stick horses, jacks (using knucklebones), dolls, tops, hoops, marbles. The older children played house or shops; the boys might pretend to be gladiators or soldiers, perhaps with miniature weapons and armor. The evidence of the plastic arts seems to show that they might have miniature dog- or goat-drawn chariots for racing. Simple games included "Odd or Even?" and "How Many Fingers Do I Hold Up?" (*Bucca, bucca, quot sunt hīc?*). The more sophisticated games resembled backgammon (*duodecim scripta*) and chess or checkers (*lātrunculī*). There were also ball games played rather like our field hockey, football, and lacrosse (but without sticks), and a three-cornered catch called *trigōn*, in which as many balls as possible were kept going at one time.

Elementary education, which was given to both boys and girls, began with reading, writing, and arithmetic. Roman history was taught through literature, and the study of Greek language and literature was also begun early. Children of wealthy families might be tutored at home. Some of the great houses of Pompeii have schoolrooms where we can see scratched on the walls alphabets, tags from Vergil, geometric figures, and insults directed at the tutor. There were also elementary schools, public and private, located in or near the Forum. When the boys came of age, at 12-15 years, they were sent to schools run by Greek rhetors to learn rhetoric in Greek. Girls pursued the study of Greek and Roman literature with tutors at home. Boys finished their education by attaching themselves to some well-known orator (i.e. lawyer-politician) to learn oratory, history, and law. They might also be sent to Athens for a time to learn philosophy. Music and athletics, the core of Greek education, were considered unnecessary, even unsuitable, for good Romans.

The Romans had different kinds of marriage ceremonies, corresponding to different legal states of matrimony. The most elaborate was *cōnfarreatiō*, "spelt-cake-sharing" (the spelt cake was the Roman's most primitive form of bread). The bride dedicated her girlish clothes and her childhood toys to the *Lār* or *Larēs* of her household. A spear-point was then used to part her hair into three tresses which were wound around her head and fastened with woolen fillets. She was dressed in a white seamless tunic, saffron-colored hair net, veil and shoes (saffron was the Roman wedding color). As soon as the evening star appeared she was escorted to the groom's house in solemn procession, accompanied by boys and girls singing, and by matrons of honor (*prōnubae*) and by men carrying torches, as well as by her unmarried female friends carrying a distaff and spindle, symbols of her new duties as a wife. Nuts, cakes, and coins, symbols of wealth and fertility, were scattered among the bystanders. At the groom's door the torches were extinguished and thrown to the spectators, who scrambled to get them as lucky charms. The



bride then anointed the door with oil and wreathed the doorposts with woolen fillets. She was then lifted over the threshold by the young men, to keep her from stumbling, an inauspicious omen. Inside, the priest called *Flāmen Diālis*, surrounded by ten witnesses, sacrificed a sow and read the auspices from its entrails. The groom offered the bride fire and water, and she spoke the words "*Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia.*" The couple then sat on two seats covered with a single sheepskin, broke and ate a spelt-cake, and joined hands while the marriage contract was read and witnessed. There followed the marriage feast, and the singing of songs making fun of or insulting the bride and groom (to ward off the evil eye).

When a baby was born, it was placed on the floor at its father's feet, who recognized its legitimacy by picking it up. For the first week of its life it was thought to be vulnerable to evil spirits or the evil eye. Juno and Hercules were invoked to protect it. A couch for Juno and a table of food for Hercules were set up in the *ātrium*. At the end of this period, on the *diēs lustricus*, a male child was given a name, and a locket containing charms against the evil eye was hung around his neck.

When a Roman of good family died, the body was washed, dressed in the dead man's robes of office, and laid out on a bed in the *ātrium* with its feet toward the door. A branch of cypress was hung outside the door. During the mourning period the bereaved family did not wash, comb their hair, or change their clothes. On the day of the funeral, the body was carried to the forum, where a near relative pronounced a eulogy on the dead man, naming his chief accomplishments; these might also be written or depicted on signs carried in the funeral procession. The corpse was escorted outside the city walls by a band of musicians, hired female mourners singing dirges, and clients or hired actors wearing the wax masks of the dead man's ancestors (normally kept in the *tablinum* of the house) and dressed in their official garments. The heir carried a torch to light the funeral pyre, which was piled with offerings and anointed with perfumed oil. When the fire had burnt out, the bones were collected, washed in wine, and placed in an urn. The urn (or coffin, if the body was to be inhumed rather than cremated—both customs were used) was then placed in the tomb. Some days later the heir swept death out of the house with a special broom.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 27. Altar showing a wedding scene. The children are carrying the implements for the sacrifice with the incense and salted meal cakes used in elaborate Roman wedding ceremonies. The round dish carried by the boy is the *patera*, a special vessel used for pouring wine-offerings.

p. 29. The second scene on this relief may represent the moment when the father legitimizes the child by picking him up from the floor.

p. 32. This portrait comes from one of the largest bakeries in Pompeii, part of which is also a dwelling. The man in the picture is probably T. Terentius Neo, brother of T. Terentius Proculus, the baker. If so, he refers to himself in an election poster as *studiōsus* (in this context probably "law student"). This may be why he had his portrait painted holding a book, or the inclusion of a scroll and tablet may indicate that the subjects of the portrait were proud of their literacy.

p. 35. Note the living effect of Roman portraiture, in spite of the mutilations. This *paterfamiliās* seems well-endowed with the Roman ideal of *gravitās*. The fact that the child appears as a portrait bust indicates that he had predeceased his parents. The funeral scene below shows the procession of musicians, bier, family, and hired female mourners. Tearing the hair and beating the breast were Roman signs of mourning.

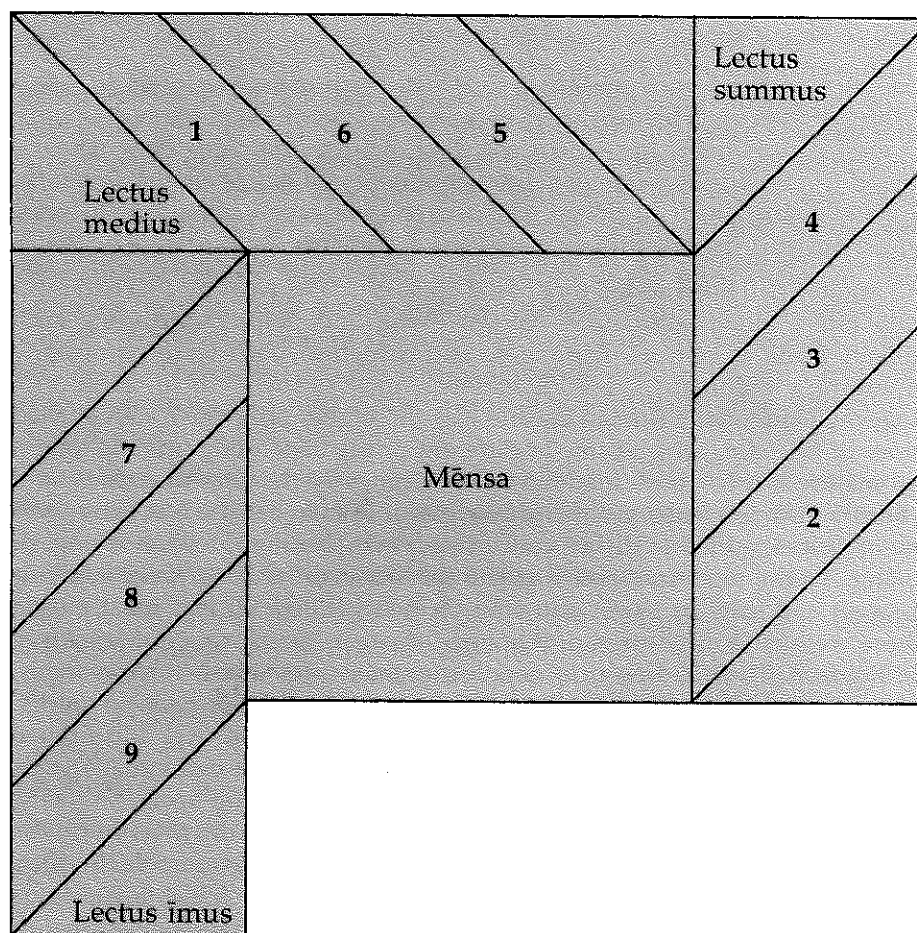
## FOOD AND EATING

The Romans ate three meals a day: a very light breakfast (*ientāculum*), bread moistened with olive oil or wine, sometimes accompanied by fruit or cheese; a lunch (*prandium*), also light, usually cold, often composed of leftovers from the evening before; and dinner (*cēna*), the substantial meal of the day. The *cēna*, because artificial light was so poor, was eaten early by our standards: it might begin at 2:00 or 3:00 P.M. It consisted of three parts: the *gustātiō* (appetizers) of eggs, shellfish, salad, and the like, accompanied by *mulsum*, wine flavored with honey; the *fercula*, the main part of the meal, made up of an odd number of courses of fish, poultry, and meat (the chief dish was the middle one of the series); and the *secunda mēnsa* or *secundae mēnsae* (dessert) of fruits and sometimes pastry. Wine was drunk during the *fercula* and *secunda mēnsa*. If the host was serving some especially prized wine it accompanied the dessert. Between the *fercula* and *secunda mēnsa* there was a pause during which offerings were made to the household gods. The meal was often followed by a drinking bout (*commissātiō*) during which a large wine cup was passed around and toasts were drunk.

Kitchens were very simple. If we may judge by Pompeii, many houses had no kitchen, using braziers to warm food bought already cooked. Only the larger houses had kitchens, and only the very wealthy had their own ovens. The ordinary kitchen was small, open to the sky, with a raised hearth to serve as a stove; the pots and pans sat on tripods and hot coals were raked under them. The number of coals determined the heat; a high heat was obtained by fanning them. Most people bought their bread from the bakery or made it at home and sent it to the bakery to be baked, first stamping it with the family monogram to be sure of getting the same loaves back.

The Romans reclined at meals, resting on the left elbow. Each diner might have a small couch to himself, but the normal arrangement was that of three

large sloping couches on three of the four sides of the table, the *triclinium*, with three diners on each couch. The slaves served from the open fourth side. There were places of greater and lesser honor, as follows:



1. Locus cōsulāris—guest of honor
2. Locus summus in lectō summō
3. Locus medius in lectō summō
4. Locus imus in lectō summō
5. Locus summus in lectō mediō
6. Locus medius in lectō mediō
7. Locus summus in lectō imō—host
8. Locus medius in lectō imō—member of host's family
9. Locus imus in lectō imō—member of host's family

Roman tableware was made of pottery of all grades from coarse to fine, glass, bronze, silver, and gold. The finer pottery and metalware were often beautifully decorated. Besides the various wine cups, there were plates and bowls of different sizes, as well as special dishes like eggcups. Spoons were used for soup and boiled eggs. Since there were no knives and forks in a place setting, a special slave carved the various dishes into bite-sized pieces, which were eaten with the fingers.

The staple food of the early Romans was a kind of pulse or spelt porridge. Later this was baked into a cake or wafer on a griddle. Eventually these were replaced by bread, which remained the staple food. A Roman proverb says: "*Pānis rādx vīnum cēna pauperōrum*" (the *rādx* was probably a turnip), and bread, wine and vegetables were the basic diet of the Romans throughout most of their history. By the late Republic and during the Empire some fish and poultry had been added for special occasions. The wealthy also had meat fairly often, along with more expensive fish and poultry (including such unlikely birds as parrots, flamingos, and ostriches). Fish were particularly important; the Romans knew 150 varieties, most of them edible, in all price ranges. Ubiquitous in Roman cuisine was the highly prized fish sauce called *garum* or *liquāmen*, which came at different prices depending on how long it had matured. It has been made in modern times by the ancient recipes, and is hardly distinguishable from anchovy paste. Roman cuisine was essentially one of sauces, added to dishes cooked simply by baking, broiling, frying, or boiling. To the modern western palate these sauces have odd combinations of sweet and salty or sweet and sour elements. Olive oil was mostly used where we would use butter, and honey for sugar, which was not known to the Romans. They had no rice, noodles, potatoes, tomatoes, corn, oranges, bananas, strawberries, raspberries, chocolate, coffee, tea, or distilled spirits. They drank a great variety of wines, however, from all over the Roman world. They seem to have had some concept of good and bad vintage years but believed in the fallacy that wines go on improving with age.

One curious feature of the more elaborate dinners was the attempt on the part of the cooks to show their skill by making one food resemble another, e.g. suckling pig disguised as a chicken, cakes made to look like boiled eggs, etc. In general the presentation of the food was as important as its taste.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 39. In most cities, fish, meat, and fresh fruits and vegetables were all sold at a central market called a *macellum*, rather than in shops scattered through the town. Such markets usually included a chapel, since the animals to be slaughtered were actually sacrificed to the gods.

p. 41. The relief shows a market stall. The dealer is using her cages of poultry and rabbits as a counter. Notice also the hamper in which the vegetables were carried.



pp. 44-45. In the northern provinces, the more old-fashioned custom was preserved of having only the men recline at table, while the women sat in chairs. At a Roman banquet the food and wines to be consumed might be set out on display for the guests to see (some of the great houses of Pompeii have a special room for this purpose). Here we see the wines set out on a table, while the dishes are displayed on a sideboard.

p. 48. The simplest kind of *thermopōlium* or cookshop, found in great numbers in any excavated Roman town, was a small open-fronted shop with a counter in which were sunk large pots to keep the food warm. Families too poor to maintain kitchens would buy their food here ready-cooked and carry it home. Some of the larger *thermopōlia* have tables inside or in a garden behind, where customers could eat their food; some also functioned as wine shops and gambling houses. This *thermopōlium* is one of the most elaborate: note the buffet counters with niches and stepped marble shelves for displaying food and drink, and the sign showing that one could buy vegetables, wine, and cheese. The counter to the left, at the wide opening to the street, has the food-warming pots sunk inside, a kind of ancient steam table. The garden for outdoor dining is to the right.

p. 52. Since bread and wine were staples in the diet, bakeries and wine shops were not centrally located, but scattered throughout the city. Wealthy families bought their wine in *amphorae* (i.e., by the barrel); poorer people bought a pitcherful at a time, like the boy in the picture.

p. 55. The popularity of seafood is shown by the widespread use of mosaics showing sea life in the decoration of dining rooms.

p. 57. The Romans knew a very large variety of edible fish and other seafood. In their decorations they were fond of scenes showing cupids at various occupations. This mosaic comes from the Basilica (public hall and courthouse) of Aquileia.

p. 59. Since there seems to be no place for this kind of wood-built counter in any of the numerous bakeries found in Pompeii, this picture probably represents a distribution of free bread to the populace, perhaps at the large opening from the Comitium into the Colonnade at the southeast corner of the Forum of Pompeii. The distributor in his white wool tunic is (by Roman standards) better dressed than the dark-wool clad people receiving the bread. The loaves are of a shape known from both Pompeii and Herculaneum, and possibly one of two kinds common in Campania today.

## BUSINESS AND INDUSTRY

Roman industry, crafts, and trades were as multifarious as ours. All the necessities of daily life had of course to be supplied, and as the great fortunes were more and more derived, not slowly from the land, but rapidly from

speculation, the principle of conspicuous waste created a growing demand for luxuries as well. Almost any kind of modern industry, craft, or trade can, *mūtātis mūtandis*, be matched in antiquity. The chief difference lies in the failure of the Romans to develop a machine-based technology, for they had no industrial revolution. The ingenuity of scientists produced inventions which could have revolutionized industry. For example, the principle of the steam-engine was widely understood, and numerous hydraulic devices had been developed, but these were thought of essentially as amusing toys, and were never applied to production methods. The institution which inhibited and replaced machine technology was that of slavery. In the long run the machine would no doubt have been more economical than the slave, whose upkeep was expensive, having to be maintained through the unproductive periods of extreme youth and old age—even when a faithful slave was rewarded with manumission, his former master had some obligation to support him—but the abundant supply of slaves, who could be bought or bred at home, meant that there was no immediate pressure to develop more efficient methods.

Consequently the Romans had nothing we would recognize as a factory. Some of the principles of mass production were understood and applied—for example, cheap terra cotta lamps of the same design and identical decoration are found in every part of the empire—but the place of the factory was held by the large slave workshops (*ergastēria*), or more often by the guilds of free proprietors of small slave-run workshops, who banded together to standardize their output, fix prices, and market their wares. Like our labor unions, these guilds functioned also as political factions, supporting particular candidates for public office. This is known from the election posters of Pompeii.

In the Roman world, with its good roads and harbors and its lack of trade barriers, the market for manufactured goods was very wide. The fine red pottery of Arretium, the bronzes of Campania, Italian glassware, Egyptian papyrus, the dyed woolen cloth of the Levant, etc., were sent to the furthest corners of the empire. A small ironmonger of Pompeii includes Rome on his list of eight market towns (the others are all near Pompeii). Presumably the guild of ironmongers there sent samples to Rome for exporters and foreign buyers to inspect. Rome was certainly not the only center of this kind. Wholesale buyers of processed woolen cloth must have flocked to Pompeii to view samples in the great cloth-processors' hall there, a colonnaded courtyard surrounded by dozens of large show windows, and offices for representatives of the various houses. The Square of the Corporations at Ostia was a similar construction, a park surrounded by many small offices in which various guilds and large trading corporations could install their representatives.

In the late republic and early empire great fortunes could be made in the import-export business. This trading could be engaged in by individuals with

capital, by the great commercial families, or by joint stock companies with capital invested by shareholders. The Knights (*Equitēs*) of Rome amassed huge fortunes safely by diversifying their investments. Investors with less capital who were willing to gamble (particularly freedmen) went in for more risky speculations, with even more dramatic returns and losses. A quick response on the part of an importer to the changing fads and fashions in fabrics for clothing, or in wines and foodstuffs, could make a fortune, particularly if he was able to be the first to meet the demand, before the market was flooded, prices fell, and the fickle wealthy turned to some new craze. The large businesses, family-run or shareholder-controlled, had branch offices in every part of the empire, and indeed well beyond its borders. The 80,000 Roman citizens massacred in Asia Minor at the orders of Mithridates of Pontus must have been there mostly to engage in trade, as also the Italian residents of Numidia slaughtered by Jugurtha. Spices were imported from Arabia, silk from China—this last at such a rate as to cause a serious gold drain in the early empire.

Banking practices kept pace with the expansion of big business. Ancient equivalents of checking accounts and bank loans can be identified.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 61. The tails and animal-skin garments show these vintners to be satyrs and the relief Dionysiac. However, ordinary humans pressed grapes in the same way, using a staff to support themselves and keep their balance.

p. 63. A dish to match one of these molds may be seen on p. 21. Silver utensils were probably sold by weight.

p. 65. The merchant appears to be showing the customer a book of samples. Notice the display of cushions and belts.

p. 72. Cutlery was probably made, sold and reconditioned in this shop. The display board contains pruning-hooks and knives.

p. 75. (*upper*) Each of these offices, lined up behind a portico, had its own sign in the form of a mosaic in the portico pavement. Many of the offices were maintained by shipowners from the provinces. (*lower*) The inscription reads *Nāvicul (ārii) Karthāg (iniēnsēs) dē suō*. "Independent Ship-Owners of Carthage" (*dē suō* = *suā sponte* or *per sē*).

p. 77. Notice the worker treading the cloth in a washtub. A good example of the Roman use of slaves where we would use machinery: the washtub has a human agitator. The handrails were to keep him from losing his balance as he jumped on the cloth. Such tubs with rails are found in the *fullōnicae* of Pompeii. The complete process seems to have been as follows: when it came from the weavers, the cloth was first soaked in an ammonia solution to remove the oil; then it was stretched on a frame over burning sulphur to bleach it; when it had dried it was hung up and teased with a comb to raise

the nap which was then shaved off; finally it was washed and pressed in a mangle.

p. 79. (l.) An assistant blows on the bellows. (r.) Various implements of the trade and a lock. Note the shield protecting the bellows man from the heat of the forge.

p. 81. This table of linear measures from the market at Leptis Magna in North Africa was used by the market commissioners to insure the honesty of vendors by providing a check for their measures. In the Forum at Pompeii there was a large stone table marked with linear measures. It had hollows carved out in its thick top corresponding to the various measures of volume. There was also a place for a set of standard weights.

p. 83. Scales with two pans were used, as well as steelyards, for weighing merchandise. Our word *balance* comes from the two-pan (*bilanx*) scales.

p. 86. These two coins issued in the reign of Hadrian (A.D. 117-138) are representative of two of the main denominations, the denarius in silver and the sestertius in bronze. The sestertius was worth one-quarter of a denarius (the ratio of a twenty-five cent piece to a dollar). The *ās* from earliest times was the basic unit, a denarius containing ten of them. In the denarius shown S C stands for *Senātūs cōsultō*, "by decree of the Senate"; the inscription reads *Pont(ificis) Max(imus) Tr(ibūnicia) Pot(estate), Cō(n)s(ul) III (tertium)*, "High Priest, with the power of a Tribune, Consul for the third time" (titles of Hadrian). Frequently the reverse of coins commemorates the acts of the emperors. Here the Emperor is shown enthroned; before him stands a woman with three children. *Libertās restitūta*, "freedom restored," may refer to Hadrian's approval of the principle that children born to a couple of whom one was a citizen and the other a slave would be classed as Roman citizens. The sestertius here shown has the same inscription as the denarius, with the addition of a warship, a common type on Roman coins. The obverse of imperial coins usually bears a portrait head of the emperor.

p. 87. The tablet contains a contract. The part containing the agreement is sealed with string and the seals of the eight witnesses; the unsealed part contains a summary of the contents.

p. 90. Consumption of olive oil was great. Perfumed oil was widely used both by men and women. At the baths one was rubbed with it before exercising, and at dinner parties guests were given bottles of it to pour on their hair. In cookery olive oil was used where we would use any kind of oil, fat, or butter; and in most of the empire olive oil was the only lamp oil. The third pressing oil tends to be rather watery. There must have been a good deal of trouble with lamps sputtering and going out, and at best the flame from olive oil is smoky and yellow.

p. 93. The *L* in the fourth line of the inscription is for *libertae*, so the meaning is "Publius Nonius Zethus, (Priest) of Augustus, had (this sarcophagus)



made for himself, for Nonia Hilara his fellow-freedwoman, (and) for his wife Nonia Pelagia, freedwoman of Publius (Nonius); Publius Nonius Heraclio." The inscription is incomplete in that there is no predicate for this last subject. The terminology tells us a good deal about these people. When a slave was manumitted he took the praenomen and nomen of his former master, keeping his own name as a cognomen. His son would keep the same praenomen and nomen but have a new cognomen, whereas in a family not of servile origin the son would keep the same nomen and cognomen but have a new praenomen. Therefore we can see that Zethus, Hilara, and Pelagia were all originally slaves of one Publius Nonius and were later manumitted (though Zethus is not called *libertus*, Hilara could not be his *conliberta* if he had not been a slave as well). Zethus then married Pelagia. Heraclio, since he is not said to be a freedman, was probably their son, born after they had been freed.

A grain mill consisted of an hour-glass-shaped stone turning on a conical stone. Grain was put into the funnel-shaped top of the upper stone and the meal which came out below was caught in a circular trough. The coarseness of the meal could be regulated by raising or lowering the upper stone on its pivot.

## MEDICINE

The science of medicine has always been empirical, a matter of making an educated guess as to what treatment will be efficacious and then trying it out. Methods of treatment have been refined over the centuries; principles of research remain unchanged. Part of the progress has been the isolation of diseases, the distinguishing of different diseases which have the same symptoms. For example, the cough (*tussis*) and the fever (*febris*) to the Romans were names of diseases, just as for us pneumonia, a disease a generation ago, is now a symptom.

We may, however, distinguish between folk medicine, in which the accumulated experience of a people is passed down informally by tradition, and scientific medicine, practiced by people specially trained and following some particular set of theories. For example, Hippocrates (460-359 B.C.) considered diseases to result from an imbalance in the four main fluids of the body, while Asclepiades (1st Century B.C.) blamed a slowing down of the movement of the atoms of the body; each treated his patients accordingly.

Until the third century B.C. Roman medicine was essentially folk medicine. An example of its methods can be found in the *Dē Agrī Cultūrā* of the elder Cato, especially his long passage on cabbage. A typical treatment: "The wild cabbage has very great powers. You should dry it and grind it up quite small. If you want to purge anyone, he shouldn't eat the day before; the next morning before he eats anything, give him the ground cabbage and four *cyathū* of water. Nothing else purges so well, neither hellebore nor scammony,

and without danger, and let me tell you it's good for the body. You'll cure people you had no hope of curing. This is how you treat someone who's going to be purged with this purge: give him this in water for seven days. When he wants to eat, give him roast meat. If he doesn't want to eat, give him cooked cabbage and bread, and let him drink a mild wine, diluted; he should bathe seldom, but be rubbed with oil. Anyone who has been purged this way will enjoy good health for a long time, and he won't catch any disease unless it's his own fault."

In 293 B.C. there was a plague in Rome so serious that the books of the Cumaean Sybil (originally sold by her to Tarquin the Proud) were consulted. The response was that the cult of the Greek god of healing, Asclepius, should be brought to Rome. The Romans sent an embassy to his greatest cult center at Epidaurus, and were given a snake embodying the god, which they brought back to Rome. As the barge was being brought up the Tiber, the snake slipped from it and swam to the Tiber Island. The temple of Aesculapius (as the Romans called him) was thus built on a spot which the god himself had chosen. A smaller shrine of the god was later placed in the Forum near the healing spring of Juturna.

With the arrival of Aesculapius, the Romans accepted Greek medical science more readily. Soon there were many Greek doctors at Rome, attached as private physicians to the great families or running their own hospitals and clinics. Later they received government support, and free medical treatment was made available to the people.

Medicine has also its religious side. In the temples of many of the gods are found votive offerings in the form of replicas of parts of the human body, testimonials to prayers for healing answered. The votive offerings demanded by Aesculapius are more informative. They were inscriptions describing the cure in some detail. To be healed by Aesculapius one had to make appropriate sacrifices and then spend the night sleeping in his temple (*incubatio*); the god appeared in a dream and gave his advice. The quality of his advice naturally depended upon the intuitions of the dreamer. Some cures are quite sensible—an obese man is told to eat less—some are magical, and must be classed as faith healing of psychosomatic disorders. The most interesting testimonials come from the long series at Epidaurus, but there are extant quite a number from Rome itself.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 94. The oculist may be applying a salve to the eyes. This relief from the sarcophagus of the Sossi at Ravenna may record the family's gratitude for a cure.

p. 98. Note the careful workmanship and the non-slip grips. These instruments are only a part of the collection found in the House of the Surgeon at Pompeii. There were also trepanning tools (rather like modern Italian lever

corkscrews), clamps for holding wounds or incisions open, and large hypodermic needles for injecting medicines into wounds or sores which had closed up.

## BATHS AND WATER SUPPLIES

The development of good municipal water supplies was one of Rome's greatest contributions to the ancient world. Before the emergence of the Romans as a world power, most cities and towns relied upon natural springs and streams, wells or rainwater collected in cisterns. Most people had to fetch their water from some central source, and contaminated water must have caused much disease. With the coming of the Romans there was hardly any place of importance which did not have its aqueducts. These covered stone channels brought water often from great distances, tunneling straight through hills and crossing valleys on great arches of brick, masonry, or (from the first century B.C.) poured concrete. Another way of getting the water across valleys was by the inverted siphon, an achievement less spectacular, but hardly less impressive when we remember that the water-tight pipe required had to be made by rolling and fusing sheets of lead. Water was plentiful: only four of Rome's many waters are still in use today, but they adequately supply the present city.

An aqueduct carried water from some upland lake or river (*caput aquarum*) to a reservoir (*castellum*) from which it was distributed to its various destinations. The *castella* at Nîmes (in France) and Thuburbo Maius (North Africa) were simple, regulated by gravity and size of pipe bores. Water for the public fountains was drawn off from the bottom, for the public baths above that, and for private use from the top of the tower. Hence in time of drought or in case of damage to the aqueduct, private users would be the first, and public fountains the last, to lose water. At Pompeii, where the important wool-finishing trade required a large supply of water, a more sophisticated system was used. The public fountains were supplied constantly, but the flow to baths, private houses, and the wool-factories could be regulated by adjusting gates so that the amount of water supplied depended on the time of day. More water went to the factories during working hours, to the baths in the afternoon, etc.

From the *castella* the water was brought by inverted siphons to various water-towers; these were often disguised as triumphal arches, built into city gates, etc. The towers provided the water pressure for adjacent buildings. Within the house the flow of water was regulated by stopcocks and faucets much like ours.

The great public baths were also a uniquely Roman institution. They began to appear early in the second century B.C., and reached their full development in the early empire. After that, more and bigger baths were built (there were 952 in the city of Rome by the fourth century of our era), but the plan

remained essentially the same. The term "baths" is a little misleading; they were more like very elegant versions of what today we would call community centers. There were warm and hot rooms (heated by hypocausts, hot air channels beneath the floors and in the hollow walls), and cold and hot baths and pools; but there were also many arrangements which we would not associate with baths. There were rooms for massage, rooms and open courtyards for exercises and games, often with trainers or coaches provided by the establishment; there were often tracks for running. There were large gardens, laid out with pleasant walks among trees and shrubs. There were lecture halls for lectures on philosophy, cooking, and other subjects, and for poetry-readings; there were public libraries of Greek and Latin books. Finally, there were often eating-houses and wineshops in or near the complexes. In other words, though the baths were luxurious, they did not necessarily make their patrons decadent or effete; the standard cinema image of fat old men lolling in steaming water might be replaced by that of large numbers of people earnestly improving their bodies and their minds. The variety of activities offered also explains why the Romans could spend so much time in the baths; the usual hour for the actual bathing was between two and three, but the establishments remained open until sunset.

There was no fixed routine for using the baths—one could use whatever facilities he liked—but a popular order was: warm room (*tepidarium*), hot room (*lacōnicum*), hot bath (in the *caldarium*), oil massage, physical exercise, cold plunge (in the *frigidarium*), the skin scraped with a special scraper (*strigilis*), a rub-down with a linen towel.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 106.** The central building is 750' × 380'; the grounds cover 33 acres; the entire complex, grounds and all, is raised 20' above ground level on huge vaults, making room for service passages and for storage. (*left*) The Hot Room (*Caldarium*) of the baths contained a basin of cool water so that bathers who were oppressed by the heat might refresh themselves.

**p. 110.** The Pons Aemilius, built under the supervision of members of the Gens Aemilia from 174 to 142 B.C., replaced the original wooden bridge below the Tiber Island, the Pons Sublicius.

**p. 113.** On this plan the *a*'s along the NE side mark the arcade which made a covered sidewalk for this side of the street. Behind it the foundation vaults are left open to form a long row of two-storied shops, each about 14' wide. The main entrance is up steps at *N*, though there are smaller access stairs flanking the lateral apses of the enclosure (also marked *a*).

The main block of the baths has four entrances (*b*); the two central ones lead through large vestibules to the disrobing rooms (*L*) or to the large central hall (*JB*). The three great cross-vaults of *B* are buttressed by three barrel vaults on each side. Under the ones at the four corners are pools; under the



central one to the NE a round basin. The large room marked **A** is an open air pool. The NE wall is covered with applied architectural decoration surrounding niches in which were numerous statues. This room is usually called the *frigidarium*. Through **C**, the *tepidarium*, one could reach the *caldarium* (**D**) with its central round hot pool. The two niches flanking the entrance had smaller hot pools. The outer entrances (**b**) led through antechambers (**H**) flanked by anointing rooms to the *palaestrae* (**G**), open-air exercising areas. These were surrounded on three sides by a portico, on the fourth by a series of alcoves (*exedrae*, marked **F** on the plan) for spectators and trainers. The service passages, running under not only the main block but the enclosed grounds as well, were reached from the open courtyards (on the plan **M** and the areas on each side of **M**). To the SW of the main block was a large garden, onto which opened a series of rooms (**c** and **E**) for lectures, recitations, etc. This garden was surrounded on the other three sides by a portico (**U**). At **P** there were large *exedrae*, sheltered spots overlooking the garden between their own columns and those of the portico. In chilly weather one could sit in room **R**, heated by hypocausts; if the weather was hot, in **Q**, which had fountains. Reached from **R** and **Q** were curved ambulatories, each half open, half covered by an arcade. The rooms marked **T** were libraries, one Greek, one Latin. **S** was a running track, with seats for spectators to the SW. The reservoirs (**V**), were 64 vaulted chambers in two stories, fed by a branch of the Aqua Marcia (**Z**).

## THE ARMY

For an account of the army in Caesar's day, see Book II of this series, Jenney, Scudder and Baade, *Second Year Latin*, Allyn and Bacon, Inc.

### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 117.** Constantine's triumphal arch is decorated mostly with sculpture taken from earlier monuments. The rectangular reliefs inside the arch and the figures over the columns came from the Basilica Ulpia in the Forum of Trajan. The circular reliefs are from an arch of Hadrian and the upper panels and sculptures are from an Arch of Marcus Aurelius. In reliefs showing an emperor, the emperor's head has been recut as a portrait of Constantine. Actually, only the decorative details and the small friezes date from Constantine's time.

**p. 122.** During the Republic it was usual for a general to have one cohort of elite troops as a bodyguard; this was called *cohors praetoriāna* (just as the general's headquarters was the *praetorium*). It was made up of men chosen for their valor and loyalty from the general's army, though the governor of a peaceful province might appoint to his *cohors praetoriāna* impoverished friends. In 27 B.C. Augustus established a bodyguard of nine praetorian

cohorts under the command of two Praetorian Prefects appointed by him from the class of Equites. Augustus merely kept these troops on hand in case of trouble. Under Tiberius, however, the Praetorians were all concentrated in one camp at Rome, and became a very powerful force in maintaining the imperial regime. Frequently there was only one Praetorian Prefect, and he served as a kind of Prime Minister to the Emperor. To be chosen for the Praetorian Cohorts was a great honor for a soldier, and the choice was long restricted to soldiers from Italy and the home provinces. The Praetorians' pay was three times that of the ordinary soldier. When an Emperor died without having made arrangements for the succession, the Senate theoretically chose his successor, the choice being ratified by the people; but since there was no nearby military force to match theirs, it was actually the Praetorians and their Prefect who made the choice. After the death of Commodus, the Praetorians actually sold the Empire at a formal auction to the highest bidder, Didius Julianus. Didius had not intended to attend the auction, but was talked into it by his wife and daughter. Arriving at the Praetorian camp after the gates were closed and the auction begun, he was hoisted up and did his bidding from the top of the wall. When Septimius Severus seized the throne, he replaced the Italians of the Cohorts with men from his own army, at the same time increasing the number in each cohort to 1000. By this time there were ten Praetorian Cohorts. The Praetorians were finally disbanded by Constantine.

p. 127. This triumphal procession shows captives, sacrificial bulls and triumphator. The *triumphus* was a religious rite celebrating the return of a victorious general. The general remained outside the gates until the Senate made arrangements for him to retain his *imperium* as he entered. If he entered the city before such arrangements were made, he automatically lost his *imperium* as he crossed the city's magical boundary, and could not triumph. The procession, which went through the Forum along the Sacra Via to the Capitolium, consisted of the magistrates and the Senate, trumpeters, paintings of battles and allegorical figures representing the cities, rivers, mountains, etc. of the enemy, the more impressive spoils of the war, the principal captives in chains, white bulls for sacrifice, the lictors, and then the Triumphator in a chariot drawn by four white horses, followed by his army. The Triumphator wore royal purple-dyed garments embroidered in gold, and carried a branch of laurel and an ivory sceptre. Behind him a public slave held a golden crown over his head and whispered to him "Remember that you are a human being!" (*Hominem tē mementō*). If to these facts we add that the general's face was painted red it seems obvious that he was for this one day Jupiter incarnate, since the garments, crown and sceptre were those of Jupiter, and since the earliest statue of Jupiter at Rome was of terra-cotta. The army sang coarse songs, insulting their general, to protect him from the envy of the gods. At the Capitolium the Triumphator laid his laurel branch in the lap of the god's statue and then offered a sacrifice of thanksgiving.

**pps. 131–132.** The artillery pieces were grouped under the general name of *tormenta* because they worked by torsion power. Women's hair was considered the best material for making the tightly-twisted bundles which powered these machines.

**p. 139.** Hadrian's Wall, built in A.D. 122, fifteen feet high by eight feet wide, was 73 miles long, protected by a series of fortresses, mile-castles, and turrets. North of it was a ditch twenty feet wide and ten feet deep. The photographs show a portion of the wall and the remains of a granary attached to one of the fortresses.

**p. 143.** In this scene Roman soldiers in Egypt prepare to celebrate a victory. The Romans loved "Egyptian" decorations, which seemed to them remote and exotic, in much the same way as the English did Chippendale's vision of China, neither being at all authentic. This is a detail from a very large semicircular mosaic which filled one of the apses of Sulla's Temple of Fortuna Primigenia at Praeneste (modern Palestrina).

## ENTERTAINMENT

**Theatre.** Dramatic performances formed part of the religious festivals (*lūdi*) of Rome. By and large, the Roman taste was for farce rather than comedy, melodrama rather than tragedy; above all, a Roman audience liked a spectacular effect. The native Italian drama consisted of extempore exchanges of slapstick and rude repartee among comically masked actors, interspersed with dances; the characters were probably stock types, the "theatre" a booth at the fair. In the third century B.C. both comedy and tragedy were introduced in translations from the Greek; later historical plays (on Roman themes) were invented, as well as comedies with Roman (not Greek) characters. It was not until 145 B.C. that theatres with fixed seats were built. These were temporary theatres of wood, and were taken down after the performance. Before this time spectators presumably had to bring their own seats, or stand. The first permanent theatre was built by Pompey in 55 B.C., and was followed by the theatres of Balbus and Marcellus in 13 B.C. These were the only permanent theatres at Rome; temporary wooden ones were still erected as the need arose.

Late republican and early imperial productions were lavish. At the opening of Pompey's theatre, in a tragedy about Agamemnon's return from Troy, the booty of Troy was brought on stage loaded on 600 mules. Under Nero, in a play called *The Fire*, a house was erected on stage, furnished, and then actually burnt down. To add realism to the acting the actors were allowed to keep anything they rescued from the blaze. Occasionally condemned criminals might take part in dramatic performances and actually be killed on the stage. In spite of these spectacular effects the Romans soon lost interest in the drama and turned more and more to comic opera (*mimi*) and ballet (*pantomimi*).

All of these forms of entertainment produced their popular stars; we know the names of many actors, singers, and dancers. There may even have been fan clubs—on the wall of an inn in Pompeii we find scribbled a notice of a meeting of men calling themselves *fanāticī Actiānī Anicētiānī*, fans of Actius Anicetus (an actor very popular at Pompeii).

### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 145.** From tomb frescoes it appears that the dance played an important part in Etruscan culture. Except for certain primitive ritual dances in honor of the Gods, performed by priests, the Romans did not dance. They did, however, enjoy watching Etruscan and Greek dancers perform.

**p. 150.** There is little literary evidence for any popularity of satyr-plays among the Romans, though they may have been performed in the more Hellenic atmosphere of Campania. In Athens a satyr-play accompanied each set of three tragedies. The basic plots are taken from mythology, but the chief interest lies in the amusing dances and antics of the impudent but cowardly chorus of satyrs. The Roman architect Vitruvius does give a brief description of appropriate scenery for satyr-plays, so perhaps they were performed in some parts of the Roman world. The mosaic of a backstage scene (from the floor of the tablinum of the House of the "Tragic Poet" in Pompeii) shows actors dressing for a satyr-play. Two actors wear goatskin loin-cloths, while another dons a goatskin tunic. The producer (possibly also the author) of the play sits with his hand resting on a tragic mask of a heroine. Behind him on the table is the mask of a tragic hero. The other mask in the box is that of an irascible old man from comedy. The figure in the long tunic is a flute player who accompanied songs on the stage; a piece of leather strapped across his mouth allows him to play the two flutes (actually shawms) simultaneously. The house of the "Tragic Poet" is so nicknamed because of the fact that its walls are frescoed with scenes from epic and tragedy.

**p. 152.** Two musical instruments which remained popular throughout antiquity appear in this tomb painting, the lyre (with a tortoise shell as a sounding board) and the double "flute" (in reality not a flute but a pair of shawms). In this painting two of the men wear himatia, the third, a toga. The Etruscans may be credited with the invention of the toga, which differs from the Greek himation in being trapezoidal and semicircular rather than rectangular. The himation was too bulky to be used as a military garment, on horseback or in battle, and the Etruscans solved this problem by removing two of the corners, keeping the essential width and length, which eliminated much of the weight. The Romans must have originally thought of the toga as a military uniform: hence it could be worn only by male citizens and was forbidden to respectable women. Hence also, the fact that the client had to wear the toga when he reported each morning to his patron's house (originally a military muster).



p. 155. The built-up hairdos were meant to increase the height of the actors. They also wore platform shoes.

p. 162. The Clever Slave taking sanctuary on an altar is a favorite theme of sculpture. The scene must have occurred in more than one comedy. At the end of Plautus' *Mōstellāria*, when the old master, Theopropides, discovers that he has been duped by his slave Tranio, he attempts to seize him and have him punished, but Tranio sits on the altar and refuses to leave it until the old man's wrath has been mollified. In the figure on the right the mouth of the actor can be seen through the mouth of the mask.

p. 167. The stock masks made it easy for the audience to follow the play, since they could tell at a glance the nature of any of the characters. The clever slave who saves his master from his father's wrath and helps him get the girl was a favorite character. He has direct lineal descendants in Harlequin and Mr. Punch.

p. 168. This theatre was built by Augustus in 13 B.C. and was dedicated to his nephew. It could hold 20,000. It is now the Palazzo Sermoneta near the Roman Forum. The exterior facade anticipates the Colosseum in the superposition of the three orders, Doric, Ionic, and Corinthian, one above the other. At the dedication of this theatre, Augustus' throne tipped over when he took his seat, so that he fell over on his back.

**Gladiators.** The Circus was the scene of the gladiatorial games. Unlike the plays and the races (*lūdī scaenici* and *lūdī circēnsēs*), these were not called *lūdī* but *mūnera* (i.e. "funeral offerings"). The *mūnera gladiātōrum* appear to have originated among the Etruscans as funeral games, human sacrifices to provide the dead man with brave companions in the other world, or perhaps to give him some kind of vitality beyond the grave by offering him the lives of others. The *mūnera* were brought to Rome for the funeral of Marcus Brutus in 264 B.C. The games kept their funeral significance for a century and a half; important men left money in their wills for funeral games or later memorial games. But at the same time the gladiatorial games also became an immensely popular entertainment. At Brutus' funeral only three pairs of gladiators had fought; at the funeral of Titus Flamininus in 174 B.C. there were 37 pairs, and shortly after that 100 pairs became standard. In 105 B.C. the giving of games passed for the most part into the hands of the Aediles; they were not at first required by law to put on games, but a lavish spectacle became in effect a bribe to the electorate for further political advancement. Politicians vied with each other in their attempts to please the urban mob; Julius Caesar in his Aedileship sponsored games in which 320 pairs of gladiators fought. The expense of such games was ruinous; but advancement to the Praetorship and Consulship guaranteed appointment to the lucrative governorship of a province. The expense of the gladiatorial games explains to a great degree the corruption and dishonesty of provincial government: the Proprætor or

Proconsul had to recoup his losses somehow, and he did it by fleecing the provincials.

Under the Empire this incentive for giving games disappeared, but the mob still demanded them. One cannot but deplore the waste of human life in these spectacles, but it is perhaps unfair to accuse the citizenry of blood-lust pure and simple. It was the spectacle of human bravery, not of slaughter, which they came to see; they complained vehemently if the gladiators were not well-trained. The rationalization of the philosophers, that the games taught one not to fear death when even slaves despised it, may have been perfectly sincere. At any rate the games continued under the Empire; lavish games not only insured an Emperor's popularity, but became a kind of sounding board to test the attitude of the people towards the government. The urban mob was not afraid to hiss when the Emperor appeared, if he had done something unpopular. He could tell from his reception just how he stood with the people of Rome. The gladiatorial games grew in scope under the emperors. Trajan celebrated his victories in Dacia by exhibiting 5000 pairs of gladiators on one occasion.

The first gladiators were probably prisoners of war, Samnites, Gauls, Thracians, Britons, etc.; much of the interest of the spectacle was for the Romans to observe the styles of fighting of the different nationalities. Slaves were then trained to fight in these styles, and other methods of fighting were developed. It was also possible for a free man to volunteer to be a gladiator, but in doing so he lost his citizenship and to some degree even his freedom, since he took an oath to obey orders like the slaves. Gladiators were trained by *lanistae* (trainers) in special schools run by the city or municipal government or by private individuals. The gladiators were given a special diet and kept on strict training. Suicides and attempts at escape were not uncommon, but many of the trainees developed great pride in their specialties.

Gladiators were trained in many different styles of fighting. The earliest kind of gladiator was probably the Samnite (*Samnis*). At first they would have been actual Samnite prisoners, but later native gladiators were taught to fight by their methods. The *Samnis* wore a visored helmet with a plume, a broad belt, a greave on the left leg only (the left leg would be exposed when he knelt behind his shield), and on his left shoulder the *galerus*, a piece of armor extending upward to protect his neck from side blows of a sword. His sword was the *spatha*, a broad two-edged sword without a point; his shield, the *scutum*. Other types derived from foreign methods of fighting were the *Thrax* (Thracian), the *Essedarius* (Charioteer), and the *Myrmillō* (armed in Gallic fashion). The *Thrax* wore a helmet and two greaves; he carried a small round shield (*parma*) and a curved sword (*sica*). The lightly-armed *Essedarius* fought from the *essedum*, a light two-wheeled British war chariot drawn by two horses. The *Myrmillō* was armed as a Gaul with sword and shield; his name comes from that of a fish which was represented on his helmet.

The Romans preferred to pit one style of fighting against another; one of the favorite combinations was a *Thrāx* against a *Myrmillō*. At some point some *lanista* hit upon the idea of having the *Myrmillō* opposed by a fisherman, and so gladiators were trained to fight with a net and a three-pronged fish-spear. They were called *Rētiārīi* (Netmen), and had no defensive armor except occasionally the *galērus*. The *Rētiārius* proved so popular that soon a special opponent for him began to be trained, the *Secūtor* (Follower; apparently the *Rētiārius*' tactic was to keep withdrawing until he saw a chance to throw his net to good effect). The *Secūtor* was armed like the *Samnīs*, but with a different sort of helmet, and without the *galērus*, since he had no need to protect his neck from sword blows. This contest of a more heavily against a more lightly armed man was varied further by the introduction of the *Laqueārius* (Noose-man), armed only with a lasso and a curved piece of wood with which to disarm the *Secūtor* by twitching his sword from his grasp. Other specialty fighters were the *Dimachaerus* (Two-dagger-man) who fought with a dagger in each hand, the *Hoplomachus* (Armor-fighter) who wore a breastplate as well as greaves and a visored helmet, and the *Andābata* who was heavily armed but had a helmet-visor with no eye-holes, so that he fought blind and had to find his opponent by the sounds he made.

Some of the wealthier private citizens had gladiatorial schools of their own to supply such games as they might give, and some towns ran their own schools. The *ēditor* (giver of the games) might hire gladiators from a *lanista* who was in business for himself, keeping a troupe of gladiators to rent out. The *ēditor* might get a consignment of prisoners who had been condemned to death (he had to make sure that each was either killed or returned to prison), but this was unpopular with the crowd, since the prisoners would not be trained fighters.

When there were to be games, advertisements (*programmata*) would be circulated and painted on walls. One such, from Pompeii, reads:

*A(ulī) Suetti Certi Aedilis familia gladiatōria pugnāb(it) Pompe(i)īs pr(idiē) k(alendās) Iūniās; vēnatiō et vēla erunt.*

"The gladiatorial troupe of the Aedile Aulus Suetlius Certus will fight at Pompeii on the day before the Kalends of June (30 May); there will be an animal show and awnings."

The *vēla*, for which the *ēditor* had to pay extra, were stretched over the seating part of the amphitheatre to shield spectators from the sun.

On the evening before the games, the gladiators were given an especially lavish meal, at which time connoisseurs who planned to bet on the games could come and inspect the gladiators.

The games were held in the Forum, the Circus, or in an amphitheatre. The first amphitheatre at Rome was that of Caesar's friend Curio, who for his games had two theatres built back to back. When the theatrical performances

were over, the two theatres revolved, carrying the audiences with them, until they joined into one amphitheatre for the gladiatorial games. Rome went on using wooden amphitheatres until the reign of the Flavians, although other cities had had stone buildings for some time (Pompeii's stone amphitheatre, for example, was built in 80 B.C.). Vespasian, Titus and Domitian built the Amphitheatrum Flavium (which we usually call the Colosseum) on the site of the great lake of Nero's Golden House.

On the day of the games, very early while the spectators were still arriving, criminals who had been sentenced *ad bestias* were exposed to wild animals. This spectacle was not considered very entertaining, and was probably performed to raise the blood-lust of the animals and make them fiercer for the next show, the *vēnātiō* (hunt), in which specially trained gladiators (*bestiarii*) hunted or fought with wild animals, or the wild animals fought with each other. These shows had some of the fascination of the zoo, since every effort was made to import exotic animals which had not been seen before. The Romans especially liked to pit animals from different parts of the world against each other, lions against tigers, elephants against wild oxen, etc. The search for novelty led to some strange contests: for example, a man with his foot tied to the leg of a bull, fights a lion whose leg is tied to the foot of a man who is fighting the bull.

The spectacle was not always bloody. Animals might merely be shown in carefully constructed natural habitats, or trained animals might do tricks, as in our circuses. We hear of panthers trained to pull a chariot, and stranger still, of elephants trained to walk a tightrope. A favorite spectacle was one in which a concert artist in the guise of Orpheus (the legendary poet whose songs charmed wild animals) played and sang while trained wild animals crept out of their dens to lie down around him and listen to the music. During the games celebrating the opening of the Colosseum, an insufficiently trained bear spoiled the effect by killing and eating the singer.

At noon many of the spectators left for lunch. To give those who had brought their lunch something to look at, the *gladiatōrēs meridiānī*, condemned criminals, were brought in. One was armed and made to kill another who was not; then the arms were taken from him and given to a third, who killed him, and so on. This was not considered very interesting.

The afternoon began with a great parade (*pompa*) of gladiators wearing special parade armor. They were accompanied by musicians, who continued to play during the fighting. First came a *prōlūsiō*, a preliminary skirmish with wooden swords. Amateurs among the spectators who wished to try their skill could duel with the experts using these harmless weapons. Then followed what everyone had been waiting for, the actual combats of the gladiators themselves.

If a gladiator found himself at the mercy of his opponent, he raised a finger to show he surrendered. It was then up to the *ēditor* to decide whether or not he was to be killed. The killing of a gladiator cost the *ēditor* money, so



his impulse must usually have been to spare him. Since his aim was popularity however, he usually let himself be guided by the wishes of the people, who waved handkerchiefs if they wanted the fallen gladiator spared. If they wanted him killed they displayed upturned thumbs, the symbol of the *coup de grâce*, a sword-thrust through the throat. A man who had fought bravely would usually be spared. After a number of victories a gladiator might be set free at the demand of the audience. He was then presented with a wooden sword, which signified that though still a slave, he no longer had to fight in the arena unless he wished. He might end his days teaching other gladiators; if he was willing to fight, he might be able to buy his freedom or be set free by popular acclamation.

The smaller towns appear to have supported loyally their own gladiators. On one occasion, games between the gladiators of Pompeii and of Nuceria caused such a riot in the amphitheatre at Pompeii that the Emperor closed the amphitheatre for ten years.

Though gladiators were at the bottom of the social scale, they were often popular heroes, particularly with the ladies. The gladiators must have teased each other about what ladies' men they were. We find scratched on the walls of one of the gladiators' schools at Pompeii:

*Crēscē(n)s rētiā(rius), pūpārū nocturnārū, matūtīnārū, aliārū  
mēdicus.*

"Crescens the Net-man, doctor for nighttime dolls, daytime dolls,  
and others."

*Suspīrium puellārū Celadus T(h)r(āx).*

"Celadus the Thracian, the sigh of the girls."

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 158.** This picture shows a combat between two *Samnītēs* (or *Secutōrēs*,) since they do not wear the *galērus*.

**p. 172.** (left), a *Secūtor* has killed a *Rētiārius*; (above), a *Samnīs* delivers the *coup de grâce*.

**p. 178.** The armor in this picture is parade armor, not the armor used in actual fighting.

**p. 188.** Outer view of the Colosseum. An enormous awning drawn by ropes fixed to beams in the top outside cornice provided shade. The substructure contained arrangements for elevators to raise the animals to the arena. Sixty-six of the seventy ground-floor archways on the outside are numbered with Roman numerals. A spectator entered the arch corresponding to the number on his ticket and was led by an ingenious system of stairways to the section where his seat was. The masts which held the awning were put through holes in the cornice and supported by the projecting consoles. A special detachment of the navy was stationed at Rome to rig this awning.

p. 193. The tiers of seats for spectators rose to four stories, and accommodated 45–50,000 people. The basement was used for stage properties and cages for wild beasts.

p. 202. In this picture the artist has relied solely on literary descriptions since at that time there had been no archeological evidence. Some of the things shown in the picture are mounted and unmounted gladiators, boxing and wrestling, and in the center a representation of the *Lūdus Trōiānus*, a close-order horseback drill.

**Chariot Races.** Another class of *lūdī* were the chariot races, *lūdī circēnsēs*. Like the theatrical performances, they had a primarily religious significance. They were held in honor of various gods, but they also provided entertainment immensely popular with all classes of Romans.

The races were held in the various *circī* of Rome, the largest of which was the Circus Maximus, lying in the valley between the Palatine and Aventine Hills. This racecourse was thought to have been laid out by King Tarquinius Priscus (616–579 B.C.). It was continually enlarged and remodeled (notably by Julius Caesar) until by the fourth century it could seat 385,000. In the photograph of the model on p. 215, at the near end of the Circus are the *carcerēs* flanking the entrance gate with the box for the giver of the games above it. On either side of the *carcerēs* was a tower (*oppidum*) where the musicians were placed. The two-storied imperial box on the far side of the Circus was connected with the imperial palace on the Palatine Hill behind it. The monumental gate in the curved end of the Circus was called the *porta triumphālis*. It was used only when the triumphal procession of a victorious general passed through the Circus on its way to the Forum. The columns on curved bases were the *mētae*, the markers for the turns. These were joined by the *spīna*, a wall 4' high and 12' wide. In the center of the *spīna* was the underground altar of Consus, the god of the stream whose course had been put underground to make room for the racecourse. It was uncovered on his festivals in August and December. Near it was an obelisk of Ramses II brought from Egypt. Also on the *spīna* were numerous small temples, fountains, and statues (notable among them one of Victory). The lap markers were seven large wooden eggs, one of which was removed after each lap; and seven bronze dolphins, one of which was turned over after each lap (the egg was the symbol of Castor and Pollux, the horse-taming gods; the dolphin, of Neptune, creator of the horse). The Circus was 1800' × 350'.

A day of races began with a parade (*pompa*) which proceeded from the Capitolium through the Forum to the Circus and once around the track. The *pompa* was led by the magistrate giving the games, riding in a triumphal chariot and wearing triumphal costume, scarlet tunic, wide-bordered toga, golden crown, and ivory sceptre. He was followed by the images of the gods on carts or litters, each accompanied by his own priests. There were also musicians.

After the procession the presiding magistrate took his place in his box above the starting gates (*carcerēs*). When he signaled the start by dropping a handkerchief, the gates were opened and the race began. These starting gates, twelve in number, were arranged across the end of the Circus on a slant so as to equalize the distance. The chariots, usually four in number, and with four horses each, made seven laps (about four and a half miles) around the central barrier. The two center horses were harnessed to the chariot pole, the outside ones tied directly to the chariot. The left-hand horse, the one on the inside at the turns, was considered to be the most important. Because of the difficulty of controlling four horses at once, the driver had the reins tied around his waist. He carried a knife to cut them so as not to be dragged if the chariot should smash into the barriers or be overturned. The chariots were light and tipped easily, and there was great danger of their going over at the turns; the driver had to keep them balanced with movements of his body. To facilitate this, his short tunic was strapped close to his body. To provide some protection from the other chariots if there should be an accident, the charioteer wore boots and a helmet-like cap.

As the chariots began their last lap, a chalk line was drawn across the end of the course, and the first chariot to cross it was the winner. Spirits ran high during the races, bets were laid (both form sheets and programs were published), and charioteers and horses were cheered enthusiastically. An additional dimension was added to the interest by the curious fact that the factions or teams of charioteers became associated with specific political views, so that the races became a place for the demonstration of partisan feelings.

In Greece, chariot racing had been essentially a rich man's sport, since each team was owned, and its charioteer hired, by an individual; but at Rome chariot racing was engaged in by companies, each of which had its own distinctive color, worn by its charioteers. Teams and charioteers were hired from these companies (*factionēs*) by the government or the giver of the games. The two original factions were the Red and the White. At the beginning of the imperial period the Blue and the Green were added. The Greens were backed by the emperors and the mob, the Blues by the senatorial aristocracy. The other two factions may at first have been backed by opponents of the imperial system. Toward the end of the third century the Whites joined the Greens, and the Reds joined the Blues, leaving only the Blue and the Green.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 158. Many mosaics show children pretending they are taking part in chariot races or gladiatorial fights. These may be merely fanciful scenes, but there is some evidence, both literary and archeological, that children did entertain themselves in this way.

**p. 198.** The crude but vivacious relief shows the chariots circling the *spina*. The *mētae* show up clearly in the picture, as well as some of the decorations of the *spina*. The row of *carcerēs* may be seen at the left, with the giver of the games in his box above; the columned structure to the right may represent the imperial box.

**p. 215.** Besides the Colosseum and the Circus, two sets of imperial baths can be seen, the Baths of Trajan behind the Colosseum and the Baths of Caracalla in the upper right-hand corner. In the foreground are the wharves and warehouses to receive freight brought up the Tiber on barges.

### LAW AND GOVERNMENT

For an account of Roman political institutions, see Book III of this series, Jenney, Scudder, and Coffin, *Third Year Latin*, Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1984, pp. 1-19.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 210.** The provincial capitals copied the facilities of Rome with baths, basilicas, etc. In this model of the remains of the Severan Forum at Leptis, one sees the temple with its high podium in the foreground; here orators could address the people. In the background are seen the remains of the great basilica, faced on this side with a row of shops.

**p. 216.** An actual view of the basilica which appears at the far end of the model on p. 210. This basilica has a tribunal at each end of its central hall.

**p. 221.** This basilica was begun by Julius Caesar in 54 B.C. and dedicated by Augustus in A.D. 12. The illustration shows the basilica as rebuilt by Diocletian. This type of building was developed by the Romans to provide a sheltered place near a forum for various types of business, including court trials.

**p. 222.** Like the Basilica Julia, the Basilica at Pompeii had a central hall surrounded by aisles; unlike it, it had a tribunal at one end but no upper gallery. The archives of legal documents were found under the raised tribunal at the far end. In the floor of the tribunal there were two holes. When the presiding officer called for a document, a clerk from the archives could find it and hand it up through one of the holes.

**p. 232.** The Forum at Rome was a low-lying area between the Palatine and Capitoline Hills, utilized from early times as a market-place and as a meeting place for the Comitia and Senate. Over the centuries it became crowded with temples, basilicas, shops and monuments, all erected with no general plan in mind, so that by the late Republic the Forum Romanum, seat of the government of most of the Mediterranean world, presented a cluttered and haphazard appearance. Julius Caesar did a good deal of remodeling, building the Basilica Julia opposite the Basilica Aemilia so that the Forum was bordered



by the colonnades of the two buildings along both its long sides; and moving the platform where speakers stood to address the Comitia from in front of the Curia to one end of the Forum, thus marking a third side of a long rectangle. Insofar as religious sanctions allowed, the space in the midst was cleared of the monuments of earlier ages. This refurbished Forum was still too small for all the business which it had to accommodate; thus Caesar built a new small forum, the Forum Julium, at the rear of the Curia. It consisted of a rectangular area surrounded by a colonnade with shops behind it, and at one end the temple of Venus Genetrix. The design may have been meant to echo the newly rearranged Forum Romanum with the porticoed basilicas along both sides and the Temple of Concord and the Temple of Vesta at the ends. At any rate, this design became canonical for future Fora. Augustus completed Caesar's remodeling of the Forum Romanum by completing the Basilica Julia and by closing the fourth side of the rectangle with the Temple of the Deified Julius Caesar. He also built the Forum Augusti, on much the same plan, with the temple of Mars Ultor at one end. It had no shops, but it did improve on Caesar's plan by the addition of two large apses behind its colonnade; these had some of the amenities of a basilica, providing sheltered areas for the carrying on of various sorts of business. The Emperors Vespasian and Nerva opened up more space in the center of the city by building small forums of similar design. In this picture the columns in the foreground are those of the Temple of Saturn. Through them can be seen the Arch of Septimius Severus, the Senate House, and the remains of the Basilica Aemilia. On the right the Temple of Vesta is seen beyond the remains of the Basilica Julia.

**p. 228.** This statue, saved from the melting pot because it was erroneously thought to be a portrait of Constantine, now dominates Michelangelo's beautiful piazza on the Capitoline Hill. It was originally gilt. The gilding had disappeared, but is now reappearing through some odd chemical process. It is a superstition among modern Romans that when the gilding is again complete, the strange upright tuft between the horse's ears will sing and this will be the end of the world. (The mistaken portrait of Constantine was preserved because Constantine was the emperor who legalized and favored Christianity.)

**p. 226.** Trajan built the largest of the imperial Fora, a very long rectangle, one of whose short sides was contiguous to a long side of the Forum Augusti. Like the other Fora, it had a temple at one end, and colonnades around it; it also had larger versions of the two apses of the Forum Augusti. Trajan departed from the plan of the other Fora by adding a large basilica. To accommodate the trying of court cases, this basilica had an apsidal tribunal at each end. In this illustration, we are looking through the columns of the basilica toward the temple area. In front of the remains of the temple stands the Column of Trajan, covered with a sculptured account of the Emperor's

Dacian campaigns spiraling around it. It was flanked on each side by libraries, one Greek, one Latin. The series of imperial Fora was probably built to realize a project of Caesar's city planning to open up a new civic center in the Campus Martius and to connect it to the old one by a line of open piazzas. Trajan's Forum completed this plan but at great expense, since a spur of the Capitoline Hill had to be removed to make room for it. The top of Trajan's Column marks the height of this spur.

**p. 237.** This strange city carved from living rock gives free reign to architectural flights of fancy. In Italy this type of architecture appears only in villas and tombs as it was considered too frivolous for official civic architecture or for dignified town houses.

**p. 244.** This Curia was built by the Emperor Diocletian on the plan and site of that built by Julius Caesar as part of his design for remodeling the Forum Romanum. The earlier Curia was on a site dating back to King Tullus Hostilius, occupying one corner of the Forum with the Comitia in front of it. Caesar built the new Curia further back and moved the Comitia speakers' platform (Rostra) to one end of the Forum. If the voting was close, an actual count was taken by having the senators file out through the two doors at the far end, the "aye's" through one door, and the "no's" through the other.

## TRANSPORTATION

Not the least of Rome's contributions to western civilization was the paved road. She began her road building in response to military exigencies, but the roads, once built, served the purposes of trade, communication, and even pleasure trips. Under the Pax Romana, movement from one part of the Empire to another was unrestricted, and travel was relatively easy over a vast network of roads which stretched eventually from Mesopotamia to Lisbon, from upper Egypt to the north of England, altogether nearly 100,000 of our miles. This elaborate network began with Rome's need for military communications within Italy itself, starting with the Via Appia (312 B.C.), connecting Rome with Capua, and continuing until, by the end of the Republic, almost any part of Italy could be reached by one of the great roads, the routes (and in some cases even the pavement) of which are still in use today. The Empire saw the extension of the network to the provinces. These roads were marked every thousand paces with milestones; measurements were from a golden milestone set up in the Forum Romanum by Augustus. Roman road-building took little account of the actual terrain; the roads were for the most part quite straight, crossing valleys on arched bridges, cutting through hills by man-made terraces or cuts. When the cuts and bridges had been made, the route of the road was marked by parallel ditches 15 to 20 feet apart. The earth was then dug out from between the ditches (road-building was done by soldiers as part of their basic training) and the exca-

vation leveled. A *pavimentum* of sand and lime, forming a kind of mortar, was then laid. On top of this went the *stātūmen*, a layer of large flagstones, then the *rūdus*, a layer of gravel and lime rammed down into a kind of concrete. The next layer, the *nucleus*, was also a concrete, this time of dirt, lime and pieces of brick. On top went the *summum dorsum* or *summa crusta*, the final pavement, made of polygonal blocks of flint or basalt, of concrete, or of rammed flint gravel. The center of the road was made a little higher than the edges, to facilitate drainage. The depth of all these strata was 5 to 10 feet. On marshy ground the road was laid on rafts. The Romans had many kinds of vehicles for travel or transport over these roads. For freight there were at least three kinds of wagons: the *carrus*, with sloping sides like an ox cart, and two spoked wheels; the *plaustrum*, a heavier version of the *carrus*, with solid wheels, used for the transport of somewhat heavier items, particularly farm produce; and the *sarrācum*, a much more solidly built vehicle, with smaller wheels (perhaps 4 instead of 2), used to carry amphorae of wine, blocks of stone, etc. These freight wagons were drawn by oxen, or sometimes by donkeys. The army truck of the Romans, used to transport troops, was the *clabulāre*, an open four-wheeled wagon with wickerwork sides. Another specialized vehicle of the Romans was the *arcera*, a closed-in, padded four-wheeled cart used as an ambulance for the transport of sick or aged people. For ordinary passengers there were four vehicles. Two which could be hired outside city gates and at various points along the major roads were the *essedum* and the *cisium*; these were both two-passenger, mule-drawn two-wheeled gigs. The *cisium* was lighter and faster, the *essedum* more solid and steady; a driver would be hired with the *cisium*, but the *essedum* could be driven by anyone. Slower, but more comfortable, were the *raeda* and the *carrūca*. The *carrūca* was a four-wheeled mule-drawn cart with a cover; there was room in it to recline or even to sleep; the *raeda* was a much larger cart, also four-wheeled and mule-drawn, which had several seats and could take a large party with their luggage. Especially adapted to the use of ladies were the two-wheeled *carpentum*, for use in the city, and the four-wheeled *pīlentum*, used for driving short distances. Except for the *carpentum*, whose use was restricted to matrons and Vestal Virgins (and later to women of the imperial family), no wheeled traffic was allowed in the cities between sunrise and the tenth hour (about 4:00 P.M.). This ruling was to insure the safety of pedestrians; deliveries would be made during the evening or at night. For through traffic, some towns provided a kind of ringroad in the form of a street that followed the city wall from gate to gate on the inside. This was the long way around, and at Pompeii the manure-truck drivers must have been in the habit of taking a short cut, for we find a notice on one of the houses near the north gate: *Stercorārī, ad mūrūm prōgredere. Sī prē(n)sus fueris, (ut) poena(m) patiāre neces(s)e est. Cavē.* "Manure-truck driver, go along by the wall. If you get caught, you will have to pay the penalty. So look out." Because no wheeled vehicles could be used in the towns and cities, the

wealthier people used litters (*lecticae*) and sedan chairs (*sellae*). The *lectica* whose poles were carried on the shoulders of stalwart slaves, lifting its occupant above the mob, could be closed with a cover and side curtains; the occupant rode in a reclining position, and could even sleep. The poles of the *sella* were slung from the slaves' shoulders by leather straps. There was also a kind of litter called a *basterna* which was carried by two mules.

With the mule-drawn carts the average rate of travel, allowing for stops for changes of mules, would have been about 5 MPH; a government courier might average twice that rate. Travel accommodations were very poor; most country inns were dirty and there was danger of both fire and robbers. Many wealthy people maintained little houses where they could put up for the night, and in the cities the custom of hereditary guest-friendship (*hospitium*) made up for the lack of good hotels. By *hospitium* families in different cities made more or less permanent arrangements for putting each other up (this is why *hospēs* can be translated either "guest" or "host;" it really means "guest-friend," a member of a family with which one's own family has entered into *hospitium*).

Sea travel was much less comfortable and more dangerous than travel by land. The Romans were not by nature or inclination good sailors; their merchant fleet was gradually acquired by their bringing into alliance Italian towns which had fleets of their own. In an early treaty with Carthage, Rome renounced all claim to trade in Africa and Spain. Trade relations did develop with the Greek city of Massilia (Marseilles), and from here Rome's interests were extended a little way along the Spanish coast. After Rome's surprising victory in the First Punic War (the Romans had so little idea of shipbuilding that they had to copy a grounded Carthaginian warship), her ships traveled freely through the western Mediterranean. The east was at first shut off by the activities of the piratical privateers of Illyria; but by the beginning of the second century B.C. there were already many Roman businesses with offices at the free port of Delos, and also at Rhodes. The two chief kinds of ships were the warships (*nāvēs longae*) and the freight and passenger ships (*nāvēs onerariae*). Speed and maneuverability were the chief requirements for the warships; they relied more on oars than sails, and under battle conditions did not even carry sails. The Romans used both triremes and quinqueremes, with three and five banks of oars respectively. A quinquereme was about 120 feet by 17 feet and carried 300 sailors and rowers, 120 soldiers, and 20 officers; it naturally had to put ashore to allow the men to sleep or to eat any substantial meal.

A *nāvis oneraria* was 70 to 80 feet long by 18 to 20 feet wide. It was decked, with a cabin aft, and carried passengers as well as freight. The Romans rated ships by amphorae, and the ordinary ships carried 3000 to 4000 amphorae; modern estimates rate the average ship at 50 tons. These merchant ships relied primarily on sails, though they also carried sweeps. The masts, unlike those of warships, were permanently fixed: a vertical mainmast amidships,



carrying a large square or trapezoidal sail and a small triangular sail above it, and a slanted mast forward carrying a jib. Three-masted vessels were rare. The ships were not really very sea-worthy, and ordinarily made only coasting voyages, and these between mid-March and early October. They made 70 to 90 miles per day. Roman trade routes covered the Mediterranean and Black Seas, the north Atlantic coast of Africa, the English Channel, the Red Sea, the Persian Gulf, and much of the Indian Ocean.

### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 103.** Pont du Gard, Provence, France. This splendid piece of Roman road engineering carried an aqueduct on the upper level and a roadway on the lower level. It is mentioned here because it is a good illustration of the Romans' disregard of the nature of the terrain when building roads.

**pp. 249–250.** The relief and the model taken from it represents a *carrūca*, a covered wagon for more luxurious travel; the passengers could sleep while traveling.

**pp. 250–253.** Mosaic and model show a *cisium*, a light fast two-passenger gig which could be hired outside the gates of cities and towns.

**p. 254.** A *nāvis onerāria*. Note the steering oar. The figure of the god (in this case Bacchus) represents the vessel's patron and also serves to identify it.

**p. 258.** This represents one of the smaller ships which navigated rivers, particularly the Nile, Danube, Rhone and Rhine. The inscription near the stern is the name of the ship, Isis, and the adjective form of the place she hails from, the area called Ciminia in Etruria.

**p. 261.** Claudius constructed the harbor to the left but as more protection was needed, Trajan constructed the hexagonal harbor to the right. A canal connected them with the Tiber and is now the Fiumicino mouth of the river. Claudius made his harbor by building two moles into the sea and placing a long artificial island bearing a lighthouse (*left* in the illustration) between them. Trajan's harbor was excavated out of the dry land. Claudius' harbor was about 10 million square feet in area, Trajan's about half that.

### FASHION AND CLOTHING

The basic garment of both men and women in ancient Rome was the *tunica*, a plain woolen garment with a neck-hole, either sleeveless or short-sleeved. It reached the ankles, but was normally pulled up through the belt worn around the waist to shorten it; it would be girt up to above the knee for active occupations, otherwise it was calf-length. The *tunica* was worn alone by slaves and workmen, and by men of any class in the privacy of the home; it was the "shirt-sleeves" dress of the Romans. Besides the belt around the waist, women wore another belt girt beneath the bosom, the *strophium*; and

over the basic *tunica* matrons wore the *stola*, a long-sleeved tunic with a flounce sewn on the bottom, so that it reached the ankles. The basic outer garment of antiquity was a straight piece of woolen cloth wrapped around the body, the midpoint of its long side being placed under the right arm and the two ends being thrown over the left shoulder and arm. The Greek *himation*, a rectangular garment of this kind, might be as big as two yards by four. The Romans knew the *himation* under two names, calling it *pallium* when worn by men, *palla* when worn by women; it was essentially an outdoor wrap. The *palla* might be a little more elaborate than the *pallium*, with embroidery, fringe, etc. *Tunica*, *stola*, and *palla* were the normal street dress of a respectable Roman lady; other women were forbidden the use of the *stola*. Men who were citizens of Rome were permitted (and on some occasions required) to wear a special variant of the *himation*, the *toga*. The *toga* was an Etruscan invention, an adaptation of the *himation* for military use, particularly for horseback riding. The *himation*, with its great weight of cloth on the left arm, was a very inconvenient garment for any kind of active occupation; yet if it were shortened it would be difficult to wear, since it was just this weight of cloth over the left arm, front and back, that kept it from falling off. The Athenians solved the problem of military wear by cutting off all the extra cloth at the ends of the *himation* and holding it on with a safety pin, thus creating the garment called a *chlamys*. The Etruscans, who also wore the *himation*, solved the problem in a different way. They cut off only the corners of the *himation*, leaving enough length of cloth over the left arm to hold the garment on, but reducing considerably the voluminous folds which so hampered the movement of the left arm. The resulting garment, of trapezoidal shape, was what the Romans called the *toga*. The fact that the *toga* was originally a military uniform explains why its use was restricted to Roman citizens, since originally citizenship depended on service in the army. In time the *toga* grew in size, still keeping its trapezoidal shape. Eventually a double version was developed, two trapezoids joined along their long sides and folded over on this line before being wrapped around the body. Part of the inner trapezoid was then pulled out over the outer one at the breast, forming the *sinus*. In its largest form the *toga* was a formal garment, requiring a good deal of time and trouble to drape properly; then its use began to be more and more restricted to special occasions. A citizen had to wear the *toga* when he paid his morning call on his patron (no doubt a relic of the days when the morning *salūtātiō* represented a military muster of clients in uniform). It also had to be worn at all religious ceremonies, including plays, races, and gladiatorial games, and whenever the citizen was exercising his rights, as at elections, *comitia*, etc. Young boys wore a *toga* with a broad purple-dyed stripe until they came of age, when they were given plain white togas. The broad stripe was also worn by Senators, and a narrower one by the Equites. When the *toga* had reached a size which made it inconvenient for less formal occasions, new garments were developed for dinner parties.

This outfit was called the *synthesis* ("ensemble"), and consisted of a *tunica* and smallish *pallium* in the same color or in harmonizing colors. As the toga grew larger, it also became inconvenient as a military uniform, and was replaced by the *sagum*, a cloak like the Greek chlamys, more or less square and pinned on the right shoulder. Generals wore a slightly larger, purple-dyed version called a *palūdāmentum*. Another larger version of the chlamys, the *lacerna*, served as an overcoat or raincoat in cold or wet weather; it might even be worn over the toga, except on formal occasions. For traveling, a large cape (*paenula*) with a hood (*cucullus*) attached was worn. Indoors, men and women wore sandals (*soleae*) with a narrow strap around the ankle and another between the toes; these were removed for meals. Outdoors men wore *calcei*, sandals fastened on with straps so broad that they covered the foot, so that these might really be called shoes or, when the straps were wound also around the leg, boots. The *calceus* varied in style according to the rank of the wearer. Soldiers wore *caligae*, hob-nailed boots, and peasants wore wooden shoes, *sculpōneae*. Except for the developments noted above, styles in dress did not change among the Romans as they do with us; hair styles, however, did vary a good deal, especially women's. Much use was made of hot curling-irons, dyes and bleaches, and false hair-pieces.

#### *Illustrations in the Text*

p. 266. A Roman matron in *tunica*, *stola*, and *palla*. The Consul's boots are the senatorial version of the *calcei*.

p. 271. This painting may represent a young bride having her hair parted into the traditional three tresses. The elaborate turning on the leg of the chair was a popular design in the early empire. The box on the table is decorated with ivory.

p. 272. The pearl earrings and necklace (perhaps of emeralds) resemble jewelry found in excavations. Portraits of this kind were often painted on the lids of wooden coffins.

p. 276. Etruscan men, as well as women, wore elaborate brooches and other jewelry. The costumes of Roman men were not adorned with jewelry although they did wear rings.

p. 281. The objects are a mirror, two earrings, a finger ring, four hairpins, a comb, a small rouge box and a coin.

p. 283. Glass vases of this kind were used for cosmetic oils.

p. 288. Ladies' hair styles began to become fantastically elaborate toward the end of the first century of our era. Occasionally a female portrait bust would be made with detachable hair, and the subject would leave a bequest to have new hair carved as the styles changed, so that after her death her portrait would never be out of fashion.

p. 299. During most of the Republican period and in the early Empire men were short-haired and clean-shaven, like this portrait head of Augustus' friend Agrippa, although fashionable young men might cultivate carefully-trimmed beards. A full beard was the mark of a philosopher. The Emperor Hadrian brought beards back into fashion, and hair was worn a little longer.

## RELIGION

**State Religion and Private Worship.** Roman religion was animistic in its origins: that is, the primitive Romans believed that literally everything had will or intention (*nūmen*, originally = "nod"). Not only human beings were capable of purposive action, but also animals, inanimate objects, natural processes, events, and abstract qualities. In a sense, all these were persons, but it would be a mistake to think of them as really having personality—merely intention and the power to carry it out. Yet all these *nūmina* could be communicated with to some degree. If it became necessary for a farmer to cut down a grove of trees, he would address the *nūmen* of the grove politely, expressing his intention and the hope that the *nūmen* would accept, for example, one pig in payment. He would then kill a pig. If all went well, and if the pig appeared from its internal organs to be a healthy one, the price had been accepted, but if something untoward happened during the process (an *ōmen*, i.e. *ausmen*, "something heard") or the pig appeared to be diseased, the process had to be repeated until the *nūmen* was satisfied. In other words, the three chief parts of Roman religion consisted of what we would call prayer, sacrifice, and divination. A Roman was surrounded by countless *nūmina*: there were separate gods of the door, the hinge, and the threshold; of cattle-breeding, horse-breeding, sheep-breeding; of the planted seed, the sprouted seed, the growing plant, of the various diseases of plants; of a normal birth, of a breech birth, of a baby's first cry, of tooth-cutting, of learning to walk—in short, of everything. The names of many of these divinities were known, but countless more were not. As new *nūmina* were identified they were given names, but the Romans in their recorded prayers usually betray a good deal of nervousness on this subject, listing a number of possible names and then adding "or whatever name you would prefer to be called by." In 390 B.C. a citizen heard a voice telling him to inform the consuls that the Gauls were approaching Rome. On the spot where the voice was heard, the city dedicated an altar to Aius Locutius ("Telling Speaker"), a god hitherto unknown and never heard from again.

The system of paying the gods for their services led to a kind of *quid pro quo* religion, an almost contractual concept of the duties of men and gods toward each other. If a god was paid the proper honors, he was expected to do his part. If he did not, there must have been something wrong with the way the honors were paid: a wrong word was said, the god was called by the wrong name, it was the wrong day, etc. Much depended on the exact



performance of a fixed ritual arrived at empirically (it worked this way last time; best not change it) and followed in painful detail. Some of the preserved hymns and prayers were in such archaic language that the later Romans no longer knew what they meant, but they went on repeating them because they seemed to work. The observation of omens (*augūrium*) was developed to an exact science. The usual methods were observation of the flight of birds and inspection of the internal organs of sacrificial animals. This contractual aspect in one sense made the performance of religious duties easy. The gods did not require that their worshippers love them or (strangely enough!) even believe in them, only that they do certain things. But this arrangement left the Romans at a loss if, after all honors had been duly paid, things still went wrong. If this happened, they had to turn to their Etruscan neighbors, who had a much more detailed system of inspecting the sky and the organs of victims; or to the Greek Apollo, either at his oracle at Delphi or in the recorded prophecies of his Sybil at Cumae in the south of Italy.

In this religion, so simple in concept, so complex in its ritual, a good deal of technical knowledge must have been needed. A priesthood probably developed fairly early. The priests were not a separate family, but rather the *patrēs*, the heads of families, and it was from this group that the priests of the community were drawn. Those gods whose functions affected the whole community would naturally be worshipped in common. Thus they acquired a higher rank than the gods whose functions affected primarily the individual or the family. These gods were Jupiter (Diou-pater, Sky-father), Juno/Diana, Mars, Vesta, Janus, and Quirinus. Jupiter was the god of the sky and the weather, hence the chief god. Juno and Diana may originally have been the same goddess, a goddess of the sky and of light, the female principle of which Jupiter is the male; but these aspects became separated, and the goddess became two goddesses. Juno is the protectress of women, the goddess of marriage and childbirth, and through her connection with Jupiter, the highest goddess. Diana is a goddess of light, especially of the moon and hence of the night sky, and as bringer of light (under the name Lucina), also a goddess of childbirth. The two goddesses were never totally separated in this last function. The goddess Juno Lucina who assists at births is both Juno and Diana. Mars is a god of harvests, hence the god of war, since the object of primitive warfare was to destroy the enemy's crops and keep him from destroying yours. Insofar as such an abstract concept could be thought of as a person, he was also the ancestor of the Roman race. Vesta was the goddess of the fire on the hearth, essentially a domestic divinity, but in a time when fire-making was difficult, the public hearth, where a fire was kept going at all times, was important. Janus was a god of going (his name contains the same root as *eō*, *īre*), whose importance arose from the magical practice of surrounding a settlement with a special ditch over which spirits of the dead and supernatural powers in general could not pass. The ditch protected the community, but such magical powers as the community itself

possessed could not be taken out against an enemy unless some passages were made through the invisible barrier. Such a passage was called a *Janus*, a word applied both to bridges over the magical ditch (hence perhaps the word *pontifex*, "bridge maker" for a priest) and gates through the wall which followed it. Quirinus was, so to speak, the Mars of the Sabines, and was brought to Rome when the Romans and Sabines were amalgamated into one nation (eighth century B.C.). Jupiter, Mars, and Quirinus had special priests, called *flāminēs*, and may represent a primitive supreme triad.

These gods were not pictured in human form. Jupiter was represented by a piece of flint (lightning), Mars by a spear, Vesta by the fire on the hearth. The Romans did not have any mythology. They did not even have temples, for their *templa* were simply consecrated areas, sometimes containing an altar. Temples, statues and anthropomorphism seem to have been introduced by the Etruscan lords of Rome, traditionally by the first Tarquin. The Romans recognized the chief triad of the Etruscans as their own Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva (a goddess of wisdom and crafts). For these they built the Capitolium, a temple on the citadel of Rome. These three gods remained the chief official gods of Rome, and are often called the Capitoline Triad. Through the terra cotta sculptures of Vulca of Veii, the Etruscans also taught the Romans to think of their gods in human forms.

The Etruscan pantheon had already been considerably Hellenized; and the Romans also undoubtedly had made contacts with Greek religion and its attendant mythology through the Greeks of South Italy. The second Tarquin had bought books of prophecy from the Sybil of Apollo at Cumae. The Sybilline Books were consulted when Roman or Etruscan methods of divination did not provide sufficiently clear answers. The advice, when interpreted, was often that the Romans should import the worship of some Greek god. The Roman feeling that there were many gods which they did not know made them hospitable to new deities like Apollo, Cybele, and Aesculapius; in other Greek gods they recognized gods whom they already knew under different names. Thus they identified Zeus with Jupiter, Hera with Juno, Artemis with Diana, Ares with Mars, and Hestia with Vesta. They recognized other gods important in the Greek pantheon as minor gods of their own, and this identification added to the importance of some of the gods of farm and household, elevating them to the level of the state cult. Thus Neptune, a god of water, was assimilated to the sea-god Poseidon, Minerva to Athena, Venus to Aphrodite, the fire-god Vulcan to Hephaestus, Mercury, the god of trade, to Hermes, and Ceres to Demeter. Along with Apollo, who had no Roman counterpart, these were the twelve major gods of the Roman state. Janus and Quirinus, having no Greek counterparts, declined somewhat in importance.

To some degree the myths of the Greek gods were transferred to their Roman counterparts, but more as subjects for literary treatment than as any part of the theology. Legend, history, and also folk-tales, were more impor-

tant to the Romans than myth, but from the myths the Romans did derive some notions of the characters and personalities of the various gods, as well as of their family relationships to each other.

These developments of the state cult seem to have had little or no effect on domestic worship. The family continued to honor all the little *nūmina* of everyday life, and when it did chance to worship the gods of the major pantheon, it was in their more homely guise of gods of the household. For example, a cloth-processor of Pompeii would worship Venus of Pompeii (as the goddess of his city), Minerva (as the goddess of the cloth-trades), Mercury (as the god of profit in business). These three gods were probably this man's *Dī Penātēs* ("gods who dwell in the store-cupboard"). Literary sources tell us of domestic cults of the Penates, the Lar or Lares, Vesta, the Genius of the *paterfamiliās*, and occasionally the Juno of his wife. Every man had his own Genius, perhaps a personification of his power of procreation, viewed as a kind of benevolent guardian spirit; a woman had not a Genius but a Juno. The Lares seem definitely to have been attached to particular locations. When a family changed dwellings it changed Lares, though it took its Penates with it. Hence it may be that the *Genius loci*, who also is mentioned, is the same as the Lar. Vesta, who had no image but was the fire on the hearth, may have been the protectress of the family and particularly of its perpetuation.

A system of vows and votive offerings is typical of the contractual nature of Roman religion: the Romans made use of vows where we would use prayers. A vow (*vōtum*) is the promise of some kind of payment (a sacrifice or a gift) to be made to the god only after he has granted a particular favor. If the god did not grant the wish, the promised payment would not be made. If he did, the vow had to be fulfilled scrupulously or the votary would risk the future enmity of the god he had cheated. Vows, usually made in writing and attached to the statue of the god, were kept on file and periodically checked by the priests. When the vow had been paid, a commemorative tablet was set up at the votary's expense, showing what the vow was and sometimes depicting the favor which the god had granted. Cicero mentions paintings of shipwrecks hanging in temples, presented by people who had been saved from them through a vow; many Roman temples contain replicas of parts of the body healed as the result of a vow.

The domestic gods may have been the objects of more love and devotion than those of the state, but their relationship with their worshippers remained basically legalistic and contractual. For something which we would recognize as a religion, we must look to the mystery cults. The chief of these were the cult of Bacchus or Liber (which seems to have combined elements of the Orphic and Eleusinian Mysteries of Greece), the cult of Isis (a Hellenized version of the Egyptian goddess), that of Mithras (a Persian sun-god), and Christianity. These religions had a number of things in common. They had initiation rituals and levels of initiation, separate priesthoods, a doctrine of personal immortality and beatitude, and a state of grace to be achieved by

a sacramental union with a resurrected god. Some of these religions were at first viewed with suspicion by the conservative Romans, who had the same distaste for enthusiasm in religion as did the Church of England in the 18th century. In the end the natural hospitality of the Romans toward foreign gods won out. Even Christianity would probably have been accepted on these terms, had it not been for its intolerance of other gods, its steady refusal to syncretize its god with those of other faiths, and its insistence on virtues which seemed foolish to the pagan mind.

### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 1.** From a room perhaps devoted to the Mysteries of Dionysus (Bacchus). The *cista mystica* (mystic basket) contains the secret objects sacred to Dionysus. The matron unveils the basket and then washes her hands before handling the objects.

**p. 300.** The central figure, offering incense from a box with a sacrificial plate (*patera*), represents the *genius* of the *paterfamiliās*. Such a figure is often shown carrying a cornucopia. The two dancing figures in boots and girt-up tunics, holding drinking horns from which a stream of wine flows into small buckets, are the Lares. The bearded and crested serpent approaching an altar to eat the offering is another way of depicting a Lar.

**p. 303.** The statues lining the colonnade are those of the Chief Vestals. The Vestal Virgins' chief task was to keep alight the fire (which was Vesta herself) in the temple of Vesta, the public hearth of Rome. The maintenance of this fire was considered so important to the stability of the empire that Constantine went on supporting this cult long after he had made Christianity the official state religion. The temple was not closed until A.D. 382. There were six Vestals; each served for thirty years, after which she might marry. When vacancies occurred, new Vestals were chosen by lot from a list of twenty girls nominated by the Pontifex Maximus; the girls had to be between six and ten years of age, and anyone might be chosen, there being no exemptions. A Vestal spent ten years learning the duties, ten years performing them, and ten years teaching them to novices. The Vestals had many privileges: they were released from the *potestās* of their fathers (though the Pontifex Maximus might have a Vestal beaten if she allowed the fire to go out, buried alive if she proved unchaste). When they left their convent they were accompanied by a lictor and took precedence even over the Consuls. They had special seats at the games; anyone who harmed them or a person under their protection was put to death. Because they were considered incorruptible, wills were entrusted to their keeping.

**p. 306.** The temple, partly reconstructed from the fragments found, is shown in the relief as it looked in antiquity. It was burned six times and always rebuilt in the original round shape which, derived from primitive round



thatched huts, shows the antiquity of the cult. When the sacred fire did go out it had to be rekindled by friction, which also suggests the antiquity of the worship, as does the fact that water used in the rites had to come from a spring, rather than from the mains. Within the temple was also a separate compartment which no one might enter, containing the Penates of Rome, especially the Palladium, a sacred image connected with Athena, which Aeneas had brought from Troy.

p. 308. A belief in the *fascinum*, the Evil Eye, still persists in many parts of the world, even among educated people. A person possessed of the Evil Eye brings misfortune to whomever he looks at, by malice or even involuntarily. The charms which are used against the Evil Eye today are those used in antiquity: coral, ivory, ox-horns, hunchbacks, the hand with the forefinger and little finger extended, the protruding tongue, as well as sharp objects of all kinds. These are thought of as being able to destroy the spell by a kind of symbolic blinding, but the original associations are almost certainly phallic. This mosaic, which resembles a more elaborate version found in Antioch on the Orontes, shows the eye rendered harmless by a lance and menaced by a variety of horns, fangs, talons, claws, and stings. Similar charms, usually more frankly phallic, are found in Pompeii at the entrances to houses, in dining rooms and latrines, and over the ovens in bakeries.

p. 313. Sacrifices were an important part of the Roman religious rites. The animal victim was decked out and brought to the altar. If it struggled or tried to escape, the sacrifice was considered unsuccessful. With his head veiled to keep him from hearing unpropitious sounds (and usually accompanied by a flute-player for the same reason) the priest read the prayer, being careful not to change any words, even if the antiquity of the prayer made it unintelligible to him. The priest then sprinkled the victim's head with ground spelt mixed with salt, and then with wine. When the beast had been killed its entrails were inspected. If there was something wrong, another animal of the opposite sex was sacrificed, and if its entrails were also not propitious it was a sign that the god had not accepted the sacrifice. All this was done in the morning; in the evening the entrails of the victim (if found satisfactory) were sprinkled with salt, spelt, and wine and burnt on the altar, while the persons making the offering cooked and ate the rest of the victim. This relief represents the *suovetaurilia*, a special sacrifice of a pig, a sheep, and an ox.

p. 318. The Pantheon at Rome is a temple of the Olympian gods erected by the Emperor Hadrian. The original temple on this spot was erected by Augustus' friend M. Vipsanius Agrippa in 27–25 B.C. as part of the development of a new civic center in the Campus Martius, which included a set of baths behind it. It was completely rebuilt, to his own design, by the Emperor Hadrian, who nevertheless modestly preserved the original inscription *M(ārcus) Agrippa, L(ūci) f(ilius), Cō(n)s(ul) tertium fēcit*. It is not known precisely to what gods it was dedicated. The present building has seven niches for

statues, and the original temple had in it at least three, those of Mars, Venus, and the deified Julius Caesar. Hence it was probably intended to lend a religious sanction to Augustus' regime, since these three gods were all connected with him; Julius Caesar as his adoptive father, Venus as the mother of Aeneas and grandmother of Iulus, and Mars as the Avenger, who aided Augustus in punishing the murderers of his adoptive father. The practice of finding a religious basis for the emperors' rule led to the deification of deceased, and eventually of living, emperors. Considered an architectural masterpiece of ancient Rome, the Pantheon is now a Christian church and a national shrine. It is the burial place of King Victor Emmanuel I, King Humbert I, and the painter Raphael.

p. 321. The emperor sacrificing to Diana from a *patera* is probably paying a vow made for a successful hunt. The ancient countryside was dotted with many small shrines of this kind, dedicated to various gods.

p. 322. The funeral dance was not a Roman custom but may have been practised in the Greek-influenced cities of southern Italy.

p. 323. In this relief from a tomb, the victory of the charioteer may symbolize triumph over death.

p. 324. The goddess is not dressed as a huntress in this picture, despite her bow. This painting may represent her as a goddess of health.

p. 328. The so-called Temple of Fortuna Virilis may actually have been that of Portunus, the god of Rome's original landing place on the Tiber.

p. 332. Like the tomb of Augustus, Hadrian's tomb is a larger version of an old Etruscan tomb style—a cylinder of masonry with a mound of earth on top, which was planted with cypress. In papal times the tomb was made into a fortress. The angel on the top commemorates a vision of one of the popes, who during a plague, dreamt that he saw an angel alight on the building and sheathe his sword. Very shortly after this dream, the plague ended. In thanksgiving, the pope had the angel carved and placed on top of the building.

p. 333. Like the Temple of Isis at Pompeii, the one depicted here has a stage-like area at the top of a high flight of steps. The painting represents the morning service (corresponding to the Christian Matins). Two priests, accompanied by a flute-player, perform a sacrifice, while another sings a hymn or intones a prayer. On the stage two more priests shake the *sistra* (sacred rattles) while a third displays a vase of holy water taken from the Nile (note that he covers his hands with his sleeves to avoid touching the sacred vase with his hands). The connection with Egypt is shown not only by the linen costumes of the priests, but by the sphynxes and the presence of tame ibises. Isis was originally an Egyptian goddess, wife of her brother Osiris and mother of Horus. Osiris was killed by his wicked brother Set who dismem-

bered his body and threw the pieces into the Nile. Isis gathered all the pieces after much searching and reassembled Osiris' body; then, assisted by Horus, she defeated Set, restored Osiris to life, and returned him to power. When the Ptolemies, the Macedonian kings of Egypt, were looking for a state religion which would be acceptable to both their Greek and their Egyptian subjects, they looked to this myth, and with the help of Greek philosophers and Egyptian priests, succeeded in interpreting it in Greek terms. The myth remained essentially the same, and this new cult, in spite of its artificial origins, had great appeal, quickly spreading from Egypt to all parts of the Hellenistic world. At this point it was still a public cult, rather than a true mystery religion, but from it developed a mystery in which Isis gradually assumed the leading position, being now identified with literally all the goddesses known in antiquity. These goddesses were thought of as being merely different names of one goddess, whose true name was Isis. The cult of Isis, brought to Rome after the Second Punic War, was viewed at first with suspicion by the Romans, who found it too emotional or evangelistic. Eventually it gained a solid foothold, and was widespread by the time of the late Republic. Its appeal at first (like that of Christianity) was to the lower classes; during the early Empire it was popular with the numerous nouveaux riches, and later we hear of upper-class devotees. The religion had a separate trained priesthood, who shaved their heads and wore white linen garments. They enjoined on their congregations abstinence, asceticism, purifications and penances, and regular attendance at religious services, promising them a perception of the divine life and personal immortality. There were daily offices and annually recurring feasts. The "Easter" of Isis-worship, celebrated on March 5, marked the opening of the sailing season and honored Isis as patroness of navigation; it was called the Embarkation of Isis (*Isidis nāvigium*) and involved the loading of an Egyptian ship with precious offerings and committing it to the sea. The "Christmas" feast, held at the onset of winter, was some kind of cult drama, re-enacting the grief of Isis at the death of Osiris and her joy at his resurrection. The worshippers hoped for sacramental union with Isis (if they were women) or Osiris (for men).

**p. 339.** The frieze, from the wall surrounding the altar itself, probably depicts the actual dedication of the altar, which commemorated Augustus' pacification of Spain and Gaul and his restoration of peace to the Roman world.

**p. 355.** The large temple in the foreground is that of Jupiter Capitolinus. Jupiter Capitolinus, his sister/wife Juno, and his daughter Minerva are the three deities that make up the Capitoline Triad. The worship of triads of gods was a feature of Etruscan religion which the Tarquins brought to Rome. Beyond the temple can be seen the Colonnades of the Forum of Julius Caesar, part of the Forum of Augustus (at the extreme right) and the Forum of Trajan (left of the Forum of Augustus.)

## PALACES

The development of the palace as the official residence of the chief of state began late and proceeded gradually among the Romans. In republican times there was no official state residence (except those of the Pontifex Maximus and the Vestal Virgins), though most of the *nobiles*, the class from whom the consuls were elected, lived on the fashionable Palatine Hill. Residence here became a kind of symbol of membership in this class (Cicero, when he had arrived politically, bought a house on the Palatine); and Ovid could speak of the Palatine as the residence of the leaders of Rome ("*sub . . . ducibus . . . Palatia fulgent*"). The imperial residence on the Palatine grew larger and larger until at the end of the classical period the name of the hill had become the word for any elaborate official residence; *palātium*, *palazzo*, *palais*, *palace*.

Augustus' own house on the Palatine was an ordinary upper-class residence. The growth of the palace as such went hand in hand with the growth of the Emperor's powers and responsibilities, as reflected in the size of the bureaucracy (slaves and freedmen at first) which was under his direct control. These civil servants, from clerks up to cabinet ministers, were all members of the Emperor's household, and for convenience and efficiency lived in the Emperor's house.

Tiberius enlarged the imperial residence by building vaults over the street to the north of the Palatine. On these foundations rose a complex of buildings surrounding a central courtyard. Caligula extended this complex still further by adding a throne room or reception hall and a basilica or hall of justice in the forum below, these rooms being connected with the upper levels of the palace by a covered ramp. Claudius built still further out to the north, right up to the south wall of the House of the Vestals.

Up to this point, though the grandeur of the architecture may have been meant to impress both citizen and foreigner with the emperor's importance, the palaces had been essentially office buildings, designed to house the huge machinery of the imperial bureaucracy. Nero, however, who was (unfortunately for him, as it turned out) more of an artist than an administrator, conceived a palace as a building of architectural beauty, a luxurious pleasure-house. His first palace, the so-called *Domus Transitoria*, was restricted in size by the smallness of the area available, though he used most of the Palatine Hill, demolishing much of his predecessors' construction. A small section of the *Domus Transitoria* has been found in the foundations of the later Flavian palace. A fountain of colored marbles in the shape of a theatre façade shows the elegance of Nero's conception. When the great fire had destroyed a large part of central Rome, Nero found that on the land thus vacated he could give free rein to his imagination. The result was the famous Golden House. The *Domus Aurea*, which covered perhaps 370 acres in the center of the city, consisted primarily of colonnaded buildings surrounding a central park; the buildings were overlaid with semi-precious stone and mother-of-pearl. In the park was a large lake, around which stood a series of pavilions designed



to look like villages from the outside, while the surrounding land was landscaped to resemble forests, plowed fields and meadowlands. The whole park was a microcosm of the countryside, a true *rūs in urbe*. One of the buildings overlooking the lake has been excavated and contains many rooms, most of them carefully arranged to provide a view of the lake and the landscape, all of them decorated with a riot of fanciful fresco. There are courtyards within the building, and several fountains, one a huge cascade tumbling down several stories to pass through one of the rooms.

With the accession of the Flavian emperors the Golden House was demolished. Vespasian and Titus, to dramatize their new fiscal policies, used its site for a number of public buildings, one of which, the Colosseum, occupies the position of Nero's great lake. These two emperors apparently lived in a portion of the Golden House which survived. It was Domitian who built the large Flavian palace on the Palatine Hill, the palace which remained, with few changes, throughout the period of Rome's greatness, and the remains of which are to be seen today.

All Roman magnates had several country places, and the Emperors, we may assume, were no exception. Because much of the imperial bureaucracy had to accompany the Emperor wherever he went, the imperial villas had to be very large, including (besides the usual parklands, gardens, and other pleasure-grounds, dining halls, baths, reception rooms, etc.) office space and dwellings for large numbers of civil servants, as well as barracks and parade grounds for the imperial bodyguard. There must have been a great number of these non-urban palaces, but only four are well known from their remains: Tiberius' villa on the island of Capri, Hadrian's villa at Tibur (modern Tivoli) near Rome, the villa of Maximianus at Piazza Armerina in Sicily, and Diocletian's palace at Split (Spalato) in modern Yugoslavia.

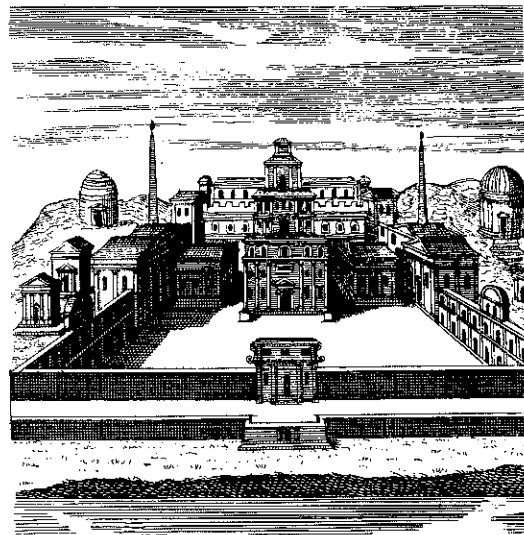
#### *Illustrations in the Text*

**p. 12.** An elegant miniature palace of many small rooms, baths and courtyards, this round building is separated from the palace by a circular moat crossed by ingenious folding drawbridges. This artificial island may have been a retreat for the emperor or even a kind of zoo for exotic birds and animals.

**p. 345.** The difference between Diocletian's retreat at Spalato and Hadrian's at Tivoli reflects the changes in the state of the Empire. In Hadrian's time the Empire was at peace internally; Diocletian's settlement followed a century of civil wars. Note its resemblance to the Roman fort on p. 140. This palace was built as a retreat for his retirement after he had conquered the empire and organized its administration (A.D. 245-313). This extraordinary complex of buildings, a self-contained and easily defendable palace-fortress, formed the basis for the later town. Its architectural devices constitute a transitional

style between imperial Roman and Byzantine construction. The hexagonal building (right center) was the Emperor's mausoleum and is now the city cathedral.

pp. 349–351. This complex consists of two sections, the private part of the palace at the bottom, the more public apartments at the top. The public part stands at the top of the *Clivus Palātīnus*, the street which runs from the upper end of the Forum (near the Arch of Titus) to the top of the Palatine. The central room (B) is a large reception hall or *ātrium*—we might also call it the throne room. Its niches held great statues of the gods in basalt. (C) is a little basilica with a tribunal to house the emperor's judicial functions. (A) was a private chapel. These three rooms open into a colonnaded garden with an elaborate fountain in the center. The almost square room beyond (E) was the state dining hall, with a view over the garden and (through the openings at the sides) two smaller open courtyards (F is one of them) filled with pools and fountains. The rooms at the left of the bottom complex are in two stories, as the hill slopes down toward the Circus Maximus. The emperor could watch the races (at the left of the plan) from the curved concave colonnade.



## Latin Expressions Sometimes Encountered in English

These expressions are from many sources, some known, some not. They come from classical authors, medieval proverbs, legal Latin, terms of logic and scholastic disputation, the liturgy of the Roman Catholic Church. Pronunciation varies: some are pronounced as if they were English, some as Classical Latin, some in the manner of Church Latin.

### — Abbreviations —

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A.D., Anno Domini               | op. cit., opus citatum          |
| A.M., Ante Meridiem             | P.M., Post Meridiem             |
| D.V., Deo Volente               | P.S., Post Scriptum             |
| et al., et alia                 | pro and con, pro et contra      |
| etc., et cetera                 | pro tem., pro tempore           |
| e.g., exempli gratia            | Q.E.D., Quod Erat Demonstrandum |
| ibid., ibidem                   | q.v., quod vide                 |
| i.e., id est                    | R.I.P., Requiescat In Pace      |
| I.N.R.I., Iesus Nazarenus Rex   | SPQR, Senatus Populusque        |
| Iudaeorum                       | Romanus                         |
| infra dig., infra dignitatem    | verb. sat, verbum sat sapienti  |
| nem. con., nemine contradicente | vs., versus                     |
| N.B., Nota Bene                 |                                 |

a fortiori, *from a stronger position, i.e., all the more so*  
 ab ovo, *from the egg, i.e., from the very beginning*  
 ad hoc, *for this (particular purpose)*  
 ad hominem, *for the man, i.e., by interest or prejudice rather than truth or logic*  
 ad infinitum, *to eternity, i.e., endlessly*  
 ad nauseam, *to nausea, i.e., to the point of being disgusting*  
 alias, *otherwise (named)*  
 alibi, *elsewhere, i.e., evidence of absence from a given place*  
 Alma Mater, *foster mother, nurse (used of a school or college)*  
 alumnus, *foster child, nurseling (used of a graduate of an Alma Mater)*  
 Anno Domini, *in the year of our Lord*  
 ante bellum, *before the war (used, in the South, especially of the War between the States)*

ante meridiem, *before noon*  
 argumentum ex silentio, *an argument based on silence, i.e., an attempt to prove something by the absence of evidence to the contrary*  
 Ars gratia artis, *Art for the sake of art (alone)*  
 Ars longa, vita brevis, *Art is long, life short.*  
 bona fide, *in good faith, i.e., real, without deceit*  
 Carpe diem, *Seize the day, i.e., live in the present.*  
 casus belli, *an occasion of war, i.e., an excuse for making war*  
 ceteris paribus, *all other things being equal*  
 Credo, *I believe (the opening of the Christian creed; used generally of any set of firm beliefs)*  
 Cui bono? *To whose advantage? (Lit., to whom for a good?)*  
 cum grano salis, *with a grain of salt, i.e., with some allowance*  
 cum laude, *with praise (of academic distinctions)*  
 data, *things given (as a basis for proof or investigation)*  
 de facto, *on the basis of fact, i.e., in reality*  
 De gustibus non est disputandum, *One ought not to argue about tastes.*  
 de jure, *on the basis of right, i.e., legally*  
 De minimis non curat lex, *The law does not care about the smallest things, i.e., The Law does not concern itself with trivial matters (a legal maxim).*  
 De mortuis nil nisi bonum, *(Say) nothing but good of the dead.*  
 de novo, *anew*  
 Deo volente, *God willing*  
 Dies Irae, *Day of wrath (Judgment Day) (the opening words of a hymn by Thomas of Celano)*  
 Dominus vobiscum, *The Lord be with you.*  
 Dramatis Personae, *masks of the drama, i.e., characters in the play*  
 E pluribus unum, *one from many (used, in an ancient poem, of the ingredients in a stew)*  
 Ecce homo, *Behold the man! (Pilate's words, presenting Jesus to the populace)*  
 emeritus, *discharged, i.e., retired*  
 et alia, *and other things*  
 et cetera, *and the rest*  
 ex cathedra, *from the chair, i.e., with authority*  
 Ex nihilo nihil fit, *Nothing is made from nothing.*  
 ex officio, *on the basis of his office, i.e., by virtue of his position*  
 ex post facto, *on the basis of something done afterwards, i.e., retroactive*  
 ex tempore, *out of the moment, i.e., on the spur of the moment, without preparation*  
 exeat, *let him go out (a permission to leave)*  
 exeunt, *they go out (a stage direction)*  
 exit, *he goes out (a stage direction)*  
 Festina lente, *Make haste slowly.*  
 fiat, *let it be done (a term for an absolute command)*  
 genius loci, *the spirit of the place*



Gloria in excelsis, *Glory in the highest (the opening words of the Greater Doxology)*  
 habeas corpus, *that you may have the body (a common-law writ requiring that a person be brought before a court without delay)*  
 ibidem, *in that same place (used to refer to a passage already cited)*  
 id est, *that is*  
 ignis fatuus, *foolish fire, i.e., the will-o'-the-wisp*  
 in esse, *in being, i.e., existing*  
 in extremis, *among the last things, i.e., at the point of death*  
 in flagrante delicto, *while the crime is blazing, i.e., (caught) in the act*  
 In hoc signo vinces, *In this sign you will conquer (the words heard by the Emperor Constantine when he saw the sign of the cross or the monogram of Christ).*  
 in loco parentis, *in the place of a parent*  
 in medias res, *into the midst of things, i.e., without preamble*  
 In Memoriam, *to the memory of*  
 in posse, *in possibility, i.e., potentially*  
 in propria persona, *in one's own character, i.e., without disguise*  
 in situ, *in place, i.e., in its original position*  
 in toto, *on the whole, i.e., generally or entirely*  
 in vacuo, *in emptiness, i.e., without considering other factors*  
 In vino veritas, *In wine there is truth.*  
 infra dignitatem, *beneath one's dignity*  
 inter alia, *among other things*  
 Ipse dixit, *He himself said so (used of an assertion supported only by someone's authority, without further proof).*  
 ipso facto, *by that very fact*  
 lapsus calami, *a slip of the pen*  
 lapsus linguae, *a slip of the tongue*  
 litteratim, *letter by letter, literally*  
 locum tenens, *one holding a place, i.e., a substitute*  
 magna cum laude, *with great praise (of academic distinctions)*  
 magnum opus, *a great work, i.e., a masterpiece*  
 materfamilias, *mother of the family, matriarch*  
 mea culpa, *by my fault*  
 Memento mori, *Remember to die, i.e., remember that you are mortal.*  
 Mens sana in corpore sano, *a sound mind in a sound body*  
 minutiae, *trifles, minor details*  
 mirabile dictu, *amazing to say*  
 modus operandi, *method of working*  
 Morituri te salutamus, *We, destined to die, salute you (said by gladiators to the sponsor of the games before the fighting began).*  
 multum in parvo, *much in little*  
 mutatis mutandis, *having changed the things which must be changed, i.e., after making all necessary changes or transpositions*  
 ne plus ultra, *no more beyond, i.e., the summit of achievement*

nemine contradicente, *no one contradicting, i.e., unanimous*  
 Nil desperandum, *Nothing is to be despaired of, i.e., one must never lose hope.*  
 nolens volens, *willy-nilly*  
 non compos mentis, *not sound of mind*  
 non sequitur, *it does not follow (used of an illogicality)*  
 nota bene, *note well*  
 Nunc dimittis, *Now lettest thou (thy servant) depart (in peace) (the opening words of the song of Simeon, used as a hymn).*  
 O tempora! O mores! *Oh, the times! Oh, the customs!*  
 obiter dictum, *said by the way, i.e., a parenthetical remark, (in law) an incidental opinion, not pertinent to the case at hand*  
 opus citatum, *the work previously cited*  
 pace, *by the leave of (used to express polite disagreement)*  
 pari passu, *at an equal pace, i.e., in an equal proportion*  
 paterfamilias, *father of the family, patriarch*  
 Paternoster, *Our Father (the opening words of the Lord's Prayer; used as a title for it)*  
 Pax vobiscum, *Peace be with you.*  
 peccavi, *I have sinned*  
 per annum, *by the year, annually*  
 per capita, *by heads, i.e., for each individual*  
 per diem, *by the day, each day*  
 per se, *in itself, intrinsically*  
 pons asinorum, *bridge of donkeys (a name for Euclid's fifth proposition, the diagram for which resembles a bridge, so called because some students could not pass it; used of a difficult stage in any study)*  
 Post hoc ergo propter hoc, *After this, therefore because of this, i.e., the false argument that any event which follows another must be a result of it.*  
 post meridiem, *after noon*  
 post mortem, *after death (used as a contraction of post mortem examination)*  
 post scriptum, *written afterwards*  
 prima facie, *by first appearance, i.e., obvious on the face of it*  
 pro bono publico, *for the people's good*  
 pro et contra, *for and against*  
 pro forma, *for form's sake, as a matter of form*  
 pro rata, *according to a fixed (share), i.e., in proportion*  
 pro tempore, *for the time being*  
 quasi, *as if, i.e., as it were; in a certain sense*  
 quid pro quo, *something for something, i.e., something in return, tit for tat*  
 Quod erat demonstrandum, *Which was to be demonstrated (used at the end of a logical proof)*  
 quod vide, *which see (used to refer to another entry or article in a dictionary or encyclopedia)*  
 rara avis, *a rare bird, i.e., an extraordinary person or thing*

*reductio ad absurdum*, *reduction to absurdity*, i.e., disproving a proposition by arguing from it to an impossible conclusion

*Requiescat in pace*, *May he rest in peace.*

*sanctum sanctorum*, *holy of holies* (used of any very private place)

*Senatus Populusque Romanus*, *the Senate and the Roman People* (summing up the sovereign power of Rome)

*seriatim*, *in series*

*Sic transit gloria mundi*, *Thus passes the glory of the world.*

*sine die*, *without a day* (appointed for reassembly)

*sine qua non*, *without which not*, i.e., an indispensable condition, a necessity

*status quo ante*, *the condition in which (matters were) before*

*sub rosa*, *under the rose*, i.e., secretly, privately (the rose being a symbol of secrecy)

*sui generis*, *of its own kind (and no other)*, i.e., unique

*summa cum laude*, *with highest praise* (of academic distinctions)

*summum bonum*, *the highest good* (a term in ethics)

*Sursum corda*, *(Lift) up your hearts* (the opening words of a versicle of Christian liturgy).

*tabula rasa*, *a smoothed tablet*, i.e., a blank page (used to refer to the mind before it has received sensory perceptions from the outside world)

*Te Deum*, *(We praise) Thee God* (the opening words of a famous Christian hymn).

*Tempus fugit*, *Time flies.*

*terra firma*, *solid earth*

*terra incognita*, *unknown land*, i.e., undiscovered territory

*ultima Thule*, *furthest Thule* (a remote northern land of legend); used of any very distant place

*Vade mecum*, *Go with me* (a name for a handbook to be carried at all times)

*verbatim*, *word by word*, i.e., in the same words

*Verbum sat sapienti*, *A word to the wise is sufficient.*

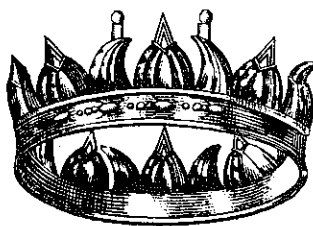
*versus*, *against*

*vice versa*, *the order having been changed*, i.e., conversely

*viva voce*, *by the living voice*, i.e., orally

*vivat*, *may he live*, i.e., long live . . .

*vox populi*, *the voice of the people*



# Appendix



*Part of a bronze breastplate with protective divinities*





*Agrippina*

# Inflections

## —Nouns—

### FIRST DECLENSION

*Puella, f., girl*

|      | SINGULAR                         | PLURAL                           |
|------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>puella, a girl</i>            | <i>puellae, girls</i>            |
| GEN. | <i>puellae, of a girl</i>        | <i>puellārum, of girls</i>       |
| DAT. | <i>puellae, to a girl</i>        | <i>puellis, to girls</i>         |
| ACC. | <i>puellam, a girl</i>           | <i>puellās, girls</i>            |
| ABL. | <i>puellā, by or with a girl</i> | <i>puellis, by or with girls</i> |

### SECOND DECLENSION

*Amīcus, m.,  
friend*

*Filius, m.,  
son*

*Puer, m.,  
boy*

*Ager, m.,  
field*

#### SINGULAR

|      |               |               |               |              |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| NOM. | <i>amīcus</i> | <i>filius</i> | <i>puer</i>   | <i>ager</i>  |
| GEN. | <i>amīcī</i>  | <i>fīlī</i>   | <i>puerī</i>  | <i>agrī</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>amīcō</i>  | <i>fīliō</i>  | <i>puerō</i>  | <i>agrō</i>  |
| ACC. | <i>amīcum</i> | <i>fīlium</i> | <i>puerum</i> | <i>agrum</i> |
| ABL. | <i>amīcō</i>  | <i>fīliō</i>  | <i>puerō</i>  | <i>agrō</i>  |

#### PLURAL

|      |                 |                 |                 |                |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>amīcī</i>    | <i>fīlī</i>     | <i>puerī</i>    | <i>agrī</i>    |
| GEN. | <i>amīcōrum</i> | <i>fīliōrum</i> | <i>puerōrum</i> | <i>agrōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>amīcīs</i>   | <i>fīliīs</i>   | <i>puerīs</i>   | <i>agrīs</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>amīcōs</i>   | <i>fīliōs</i>   | <i>puerōs</i>   | <i>agrōs</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>amīcīs</i>   | <i>fīliīs</i>   | <i>puerīs</i>   | <i>agrīs</i>   |

**note:** The vocative is always the same as the nominative, except of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension, which have **-e** in the vocative. Proper nouns ending in **-ius**, and **filius**, have the vocative ending in **-i**.

Verbum, N., *word*

| SINGULAR |        | PLURAL |          |
|----------|--------|--------|----------|
| NOM.     | verbum | NOM.   | verba    |
| GEN.     | verbī  | GEN.   | verbōrum |
| DAT.     | verbō  | DAT.   | verbīs   |
| ACC.     | verbum | ACC.   | verba    |
| ABL.     | verbō  | ABL.   | verbīs   |

## THIRD DECLENSION

|                               |                             |                             |                            |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Frāter, m.,<br><i>brother</i> | Soror, f.,<br><i>sister</i> | Iter, n.,<br><i>journey</i> | Tempus, n.,<br><i>time</i> |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|

## SINGULAR

|      |         |         |          |          |
|------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| NOM. | frāter  | soror   | iter     | tempus   |
| GEN. | frātris | sorōris | itineris | temporis |
| DAT. | frātrī  | sorōrī  | itinerī  | temporī  |
| ACC. | frātre  | sorōrem | iter     | tempus   |
| ABL. | frātre  | sorōre  | itinere  | tempore  |

## PLURAL

|      |           |           |            |            |
|------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
| NOM. | frātrēs   | sorōrēs   | itinera    | tempora    |
| GEN. | frātrum   | sorōrum   | itinerum   | temporum   |
| DAT. | frātribus | sorōribus | itineribus | temporibus |
| ACC. | frātrēs   | sorōrēs   | itinera    | tempora    |
| ABL. | frātribus | sorōribus | itineribus | temporibus |

## THIRD DECLENSION—I-STEMS

|                           |                          |                         |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ignis, m.,<br><i>fire</i> | Urbs, f.,<br><i>city</i> | Mare, n.,<br><i>sea</i> |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|

## SINGULAR

|      |       |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| NOM. | ignis | urbs  | mare  |
| GEN. | ignis | urbis | maris |
| DAT. | ignī  | urbī  | marī  |
| ACC. | ignem | urbem | mare  |
| ABL. | igne  | urbe  | marī  |

## PLURAL

|      |         |         |         |
|------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | ignēs   | urbēs   | maria   |
| GEN. | ignium  | urbium  | marium  |
| DAT. | ignibus | urbibus | maribus |
| ACC. | ignēs   | urbēs   | maria   |
| ABL. | ignibus | urbibus | maribus |

## FOURTH DECLENSION

Passus, m., *pace*Cornū, n., *horn*

|      | SINGULAR | PLURAL   | SINGULAR | PLURAL   |
|------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| NOM. | passus   | passūs   | cornū    | cornua   |
| GEN. | passūs   | passuum  | cornūs   | cornuum  |
| DAT. | passui   | passibus | cornū    | cornibus |
| ACC. | passum   | passūs   | cornū    | cornua   |
| ABL. | passū    | passibus | cornū    | cornibus |

## FIFTH DECLENSION

Dies, m. and f., *day*Rēs, f., *thing*

|      | SINGULAR | PLURAL | SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|------|----------|--------|----------|--------|
| NOM. | diēs     | diēs   | rēs      | rēs    |
| GEN. | diēi     | diērum | rei      | rērum  |
| DAT. | diēi     | diēbus | rei      | rēbus  |
| ACC. | diem     | diēs   | rem      | rēs    |
| ABL. | diē      | diēbus | rē       | rēbus  |

## IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS

Deus, m.,  
*god*Dea, f.,  
*goddess*Domus, f.,  
*house*Vis, f.,  
*force, strength*

## SINGULAR

|      | deus | dea  | domus     | vīs |
|------|------|------|-----------|-----|
| NOM. | deus | dea  | domus     | vīs |
| GEN. | dei  | deae | domūs, -ī | vīs |
| DAT. | deō  | deae | domui, -ō | vī  |
| ACC. | deum | deam | domum     | vim |
| ABL. | deō  | deā  | domō, -ū  | vī  |



## PLURAL

|      |                 |        |               |         |
|------|-----------------|--------|---------------|---------|
| NOM. | deī, diī, dī    | deae   | domūs         | vīrēs   |
| GEN. | deōrum, deum    | deārum | domuum, -ōrum | vīrium  |
| DAT. | deīs, diīs, dīs | deābus | domibus       | vīribus |
| ACC. | deōs            | deās   | domōs, -ūs    | vīrēs   |
| ABL. | deīs, diīs, dīs | deābus | domibus       | vīribus |

## PARSING

To parse a noun give: (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, and (6) rule for the case.

Example: In the sentence **Victōrēs oppidum magnum per virōs occupāvērunt**, the noun **oppidum** would be parsed as follows:

**oppidum**: second declension; **oppidum, oppidī**; neuter (gender); singular (number); accusative (case), direct object of the verb occupāvērunt.

*Lady performing on the cithara—fresco from Pompeii*



## —Adjectives—

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

*Malus, bad*

## SINGULAR

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| NOM. | malus | mala  | malum |
| GEN. | malī  | malae | malī  |
| DAT. | malō  | malae | malō  |
| ACC. | malum | malam | malum |
| ABL. | malō  | malā  | malō  |

## PLURAL

|      | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.   |
|------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | malī    | malae   | mala    |
| GEN. | malōrum | malārum | malōrum |
| DAT. | malīs   | malīs   | malīs   |
| ACC. | malōs   | malās   | mala    |
| ABL. | malīs   | malīs   | malīs   |

*Miser, wretched**Sacer, sacred*

## SINGULAR

|      | MASC.   | FEM.     | NEUT.   | MASC.  | FEM.    | NEUT.  |
|------|---------|----------|---------|--------|---------|--------|
| NOM. | miser,  | misera,  | miserum | sacer, | sacra,  | sacrum |
| GEN. | miserī, | miserae, | miserī  | sacrī, | sacrae, | sacrī  |
| etc. | etc.    | etc.     | etc.    | etc.   | etc.    | etc.   |

## THIRD DECLENSION—THREE ENDINGS

*Celer, swift*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

|      | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.   | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
|------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | celer   | celeris | celere  | celerēs   | celerēs   | celerīa   |
| GEN. | celeris | celeris | celeris | celerium  | celerium  | celerium  |
| DAT. | celerī  | celerī  | celerī  | celeribus | celeribus | celeribus |
| ACC. | celerem | celerem | celere  | celerēs   | celerēs   | celerīa   |
| ABL. | celerī  | celerī  | celerī  | celeribus | celeribus | celeribus |

## THIRD DECLENSION—TWO ENDINGS

*Brevis, short*

|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.  | M. AND F. | NEUT.    |
|------|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| NOM. | brevis    | breve  | brevēs    | brevia   |
| GEN. | brevis    | brevis | brevium   | brevium  |
| DAT. | brevī     | brevī  | brevibus  | brevibus |
| ACC. | brevem    | breve  | brevēs    | brevia   |
| ABL. | brevī     | brevī  | brevibus  | brevibus |

## THIRD DECLENSION—ONE ENDING

*Audax, bold*

|      |         |         |           |           |
|------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | audāx   | audāx   | audācēs   | audācia   |
| GEN. | audācis | audācis | audācium  | audācium  |
| DAT. | audācī  | audācī  | audācibus | audācibus |
| ACC. | audācem | audāx   | audācēs   | audācia   |
| ABL. | audācī  | audācī  | audācibus | audācibus |

*Vesta*

—Declension of Comparatives —

*Certior, more certain*

|      | SINGULAR  |           | PLURAL      |             |
|------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.     | M. AND F.   | NEUT.       |
| NOM. | certior   | certius   | certiōrēs   | certiōra    |
| GEN. | certiōris | certiōris | certiōrum   | certiōrum   |
| DAT. | certiōrī  | certiōrī  | certiōribus | certiōribus |
| ACC. | certiōrem | certius   | certiōrēs   | certiōra    |
| ABL. | certiōre  | certiōre  | certiōribus | certiōribus |

*Plūs, more*

|      | SINGULAR  |        | PLURAL    |          |
|------|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.  | M. AND F. | NEUT.    |
| NOM. | —         | plūs   | plūrēs    | plūra    |
| GEN. | —         | plūris | plūrium   | plūrium  |
| DAT. | —         | —      | plūribus  | plūribus |
| ACC. | —         | plūs   | plūrēs    | plūra    |
| ABL. | —         | plūre  | plūribus  | plūribus |

DECLENSION OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*Alius, another*

*Ūnus, one*

|      | SINGULAR |       |       |       |      |       |
|------|----------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| NOM. | alius    | alia  | aliud | ūnus  | ūna  | ūnum  |
| GEN. | alius    | alius | alius | ūnūs  | ūnūs | ūnūs  |
| DAT. | aliī     | aliī  | aliī  | ūnī   | ūnī  | ūnī   |
| ACC. | alium    | aliam | aliud | ūnum  | ūnam | ūnum  |
| ABL. | aliō     | aliā  | aliō  | ūnō   | ūnā  | ūnō   |

The plural of *alius* is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

|      | Duo, <i>two</i> |        |        | Trēs, <i>three</i> |        |        |
|------|-----------------|--------|--------|--------------------|--------|--------|
|      | MASC.           | FEM.   | NEUT.  | MASC.              | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
| NOM. | duo             | duae   | duo    | trēs               | trēs   | tria   |
| GEN. | duōrum          | duārum | duōrum | trium              | trium  | trium  |
| DAT. | duōbus          | duābus | duōbus | tribus             | tribus | tribus |
| ACC. | duōs, duo       | duās   | duo    | trēs               | trēs   | tria   |
| ABL. | duōbus          | duābus | duōbus | tribus             | tribus | tribus |

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE  |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| fortis   | fortior     | fortissimus  |
| vēlōx    | vēlōcior    | vēlōcissimus |
| miser    | miserior    | miserrimus   |
| ācer     | ācrior      | ācerrimus    |

## COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE                   | COMPARATIVE              | SUPERLATIVE             |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| bonus, <i>good</i>         | melior                   | optimus                 |
| malus, <i>bad</i>          | peior                    | pessimus                |
| magnus, <i>great</i>       | maior                    | maximus                 |
| parvus, <i>small</i>       | minor                    | minimus                 |
| multus, <i>much</i>        |                          | plūrimus                |
| multum, <i>much</i>        | plūs                     | plūrimum                |
| multī, <i>many</i>         | plūrēs                   | plūrimī                 |
| senex, <i>old</i>          | senior (maior nātū)      | maximus nātū            |
| iuvenis, <i>young</i>      | iūnior (minor nātū)      | minimus nātū            |
| idōneus, <i>suitable</i>   | magis idōneus            | maximē idōneus          |
| exterus, <i>outer</i>      | exterior                 | extrēmus (or) extimus   |
| īferus, <i>below</i>       | īferior                  | īfimus (or) īmus        |
| posterus, <i>following</i> | posterior                | postrēmus (or) postumus |
| superus, <i>above</i>      | superior                 | suprēmus (or) summus    |
| (cīs, citrā)               | citerior, <i>hither</i>  | citimus                 |
| (in, intrā)                | interior, <i>inner</i>   | intimus                 |
| (prae, prō)                | prior, <i>former</i>     | primus                  |
| (prope)                    | propior, <i>nearer</i>   | proximus                |
| (ultrā)                    | ulterior, <i>farther</i> | ultimus                 |
| facilis, <i>easy</i>       | facilior                 | facillimus              |



## COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE                     | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE  |
|------------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| difficilis, <i>difficult</i> | difficilior | difficillimū |
| similis, <i>like</i>         | similior    | simillimū    |
| dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>    | dissimilior | dissimillimū |
| humilis, <i>low</i>          | humilior    | humillimū    |

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

| POSITIVE           | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|
| lātē (lātus)       | lātius      | lātissimē   |
| pulchrē (pulcher)  | pulchrius   | pulcherrimē |
| miserē (miser)     | miserius    | miserrimē   |
| fortiter (fortis)  | fortius     | fortissimē  |
| ācritē (ācer)      | ācrius      | ācerrimē    |
| facile (facilis)   | facilius    | facillimē   |
| bene (bonus)       | melius      | optimē      |
| male (malus)       | peius       | pessimē     |
| magnopere (magnus) | magis       | maximē      |
| parum (parvus)     | minus       | minimē      |
| diū                | diūtius     | diūtissimē  |

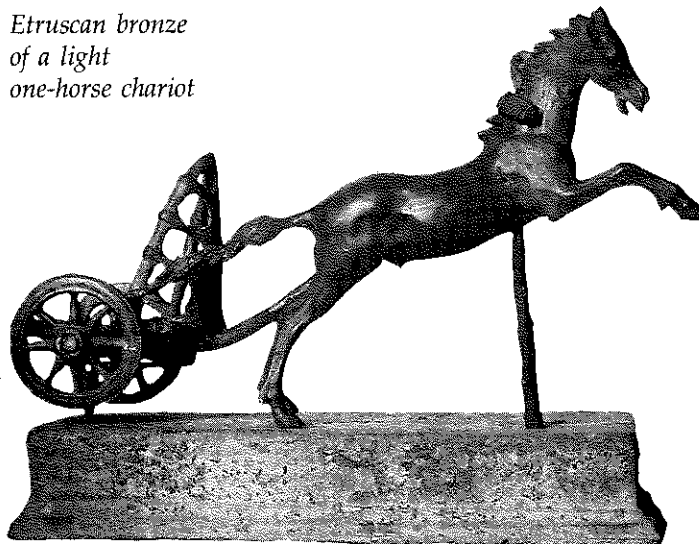
## NUMERALS

| CARDINALS         | ORDINALS        |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. ūnus, -a, -um  | prīmus, -a, -um |
| 2. duo, duae, duo | secundus, alter |
| 3. trēs, tria     | tertius         |
| 4. quattuor       | quārtus         |
| 5. quīnque        | quīntus         |
| 6. sex            | sextus          |
| 7. septem         | septimus        |
| 8. octō           | octāvus         |
| 9. novem          | nōnus           |
| 10. decem         | decimus         |
| 11. ūndecim       | ūndecimus       |
| 12. duodecim      | duodecimus      |
| 13. tredecim      | tertius decimus |
| 14. quattuordecim | quārtus decimus |
| 15. quīndecim     | quīntus decimus |
| 16. sēdecim       | sextus decimus  |

## NUMERALS

| CARDINALS                             | ORDINALS          |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 17. septendecim                       | septimus decimus  |
| 18. duodēvigintī                      | duōdēvicēsīmus    |
| 19. ūndēvigintī                       | ūndēvicēsīmus     |
| 20. vīgintī                           | vicēsīmus         |
| 21. vīgintī ūnus<br>(ūnus et vīgintī) | vicēsīmus prīmus  |
| 29. ūndētrīgintā                      | ūndētrīcēsīmus    |
| 30. trīgintā                          | trīcēsīmus        |
| 40. quadrāgintā                       | quadrāgēsīmus     |
| 50. quīnquāgintā                      | quīnquāgēsīmus    |
| 60. sexāgintā                         | sexāgēsīmus       |
| 70. septuāgintā                       | septuāgēsīmus     |
| 80. octōgintā                         | octōgēsīmus       |
| 90. nōnāgintā                         | nōnāgēsīmus       |
| 100. centum                           | centēsīmus        |
| 200. ducentī, -ae, -a                 | ducentēsīmus      |
| 300. trecentī                         | trecentēsīmus     |
| 400. quadringentī                     | quadringentēsīmus |
| 500. quīngentī                        | quīngentēsīmus    |
| 600. sescentī                         | sescentēsīmus     |
| 700. septingentī                      | septingentēsīmus  |
| 800. octingentī                       | octingentēsīmus   |
| 900. nōngentī                         | nōngentēsīmus     |
| 1000. mīlle                           | mīllēsīmus        |
| 2000. duo mīlia                       | bis mīllēsīmus    |

*Etruscan bronze  
of a light  
one-horse chariot*



—Pronouns—

PERSONAL

|      | FIRST PERSON    |                     | SECOND PERSON  |                     | THIRD PERSON                                    |
|------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
|      | Ego, <i>I</i> . |                     | Tū, <i>you</i> |                     | Is, <i>he</i> ; ea, <i>she</i><br>id, <i>it</i> |
|      | SINGULAR        | PLURAL              | SINGULAR       | PLURAL              | For declension see p. 444                       |
| NOM. | ego             | nōs                 | tū             | vōs                 |                                                 |
| GEN. | meī             | { nostrum<br>nostrī | tuī            | { vestrum<br>vestrī |                                                 |
| DAT. | mihi            | nōbīs               | tibi           | vōbīs               |                                                 |
| ACC. | mē              | nōs                 | tē             | vōs                 |                                                 |
| ABL. | mē              | nōbīs               | tē             | vōbīs               |                                                 |

REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON

Meī, *of myself*

THIRD PERSON

Suī, *of himself, herself, itself*

SECOND PERSON

Tui, *of yourself*

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

|      | SINGULAR     | PLURAL       |
|------|--------------|--------------|
| GEN. | suī          | suī          |
| DAT. | sibi         | sibi         |
| ACC. | sē (or) sēsē | sē (or) sēsē |
| ABL. | sē (or) sēsē | sē (or) sēsē |

DEMONSTRATIVE

Hic, *this*

|      | SINGULAR |       |       | PLURAL |       |       |
|------|----------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.  | NEUT. |
| NOM. | hic      | haec  | hoc   | hī     | hae   | haec  |
| GEN. | huius    | huius | huius | hōrum  | hārum | hōrum |
| DAT. | huic     | huic  | huic  | hīs    | hīs   | hīs   |
| ACC. | hunc     | hanc  | hoc   | hōs    | hās   | haec  |
| ABL. | hōc      | hāc   | hōc   | hīs    | hīs   | hīs   |

*Ille, that*

|      | SINGULAR |        |        | PLURAL  |         |         |
|------|----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.   | NEUT.  | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.   |
| NOM. | ille     | illa   | illud  | illī    | illae   | illa    |
| GEN. | illius   | illius | illius | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| DAT. | illī     | illī   | illī   | illis   | illis   | illis   |
| ACC. | illum    | illam  | illud  | illōs   | illās   | illa    |
| ABL. | illō     | illā   | illō   | illis   | illis   | illis   |

*Iste, that, that of yours**Ipse, self*

|      | SINGULAR |        |        | PLURAL |        |        |
|------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.   | NEUT.  | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
| NOM. | iste     | ista   | istud  | ipse   | ipsa   | ipsum  |
| GEN. | istius   | istius | istius | ipsius | ipsius | ipsius |
| DAT. | istī     | istī   | istī   | ipsī   | ipsī   | ipsī   |
| ACC. | istum    | istam  | istud  | ipsum  | ipsam  | ipsum  |
| ABL. | istō     | istā   | istō   | ipsō   | ipsā   | ipsō   |

The plural is regular.

*Is, that, he*

|      | SINGULAR |      |       | PLURAL |       |       |
|------|----------|------|-------|--------|-------|-------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.  | NEUT. |
| NOM. | is       | ea   | id    | eī     | eae   | ea    |
| GEN. | eius     | eius | eius  | eōrum  | eārum | eōrum |
| DAT. | eī       | eī   | eī    | eīs    | eīs   | eīs   |
| ACC. | eum      | eam  | id    | eōs    | eās   | ea    |
| ABL. | eō       | eā   | eō    | eīs    | eīs   | eīs   |

*Idem, same*

|      | SINGULAR |         |         | PLURAL   |          |          |
|------|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.    | NEUT.   | MASC.    | FEM.     | NEUT.    |
| NOM. | īdem     | eadem   | idem    | eīdem    | eaedem   | eadem    |
| GEN. | eiusdem  | eiusdem | eiusdem | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| DAT. | eīdem    | eīdem   | eīdem   | eīsdem   | eīsdem   | eīsdem   |
| ACC. | eundem   | eandem  | idem    | eōsdem   | eāsdem   | eadem    |
| ABL. | eōdem    | eādem   | eōdem   | eīsdem   | eīsdem   | eīsdem   |

## RELATIVE

*Quī, who, which, that*

|      | SINGULAR |       |       | PLURAL |        |        |
|------|----------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
| NOM. | quī      | quae  | quod  | quī    | quae   | quae   |
| GEN. | cuius    | cuius | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. | cui      | cui   | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. | quem     | quam  | quod  | quōs   | quās   | quae   |
| ABL. | quō      | quā   | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

## INTERROGATIVE

*Quis, who? what?*

|      | SINGULAR  |       | PLURAL |        |        |
|------|-----------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
| NOM. | quis      | quid  | quī    | quae   | quae   |
| GEN. | cuius     | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. | cui       | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. | quem      | quid  | quōs   | quās   | quae   |
| ABL. | quō       | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

The adjective **quī**, *what*, is declined like the relative **quī**.

## INDEFINITE

*Aliquis, some one*

|      | SINGULAR  |          | PLURAL    |           |           |
|------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.    | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| NOM. | aliquis   | aliquid  | aliquī    | aliquae   | aliqua    |
| GEN. | alicuius  | alicuius | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| DAT. | alicui    | alicui   | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| ACC. | aliquem   | aliquid  | aliquōs   | aliquās   | aliqua    |
| ABL. | aliquō    | aliquō   | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

The adjective is **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**.

**Quis**, *any one*, is declined like **aliquis** without **ali-**.

**Quī**, **qua**, **quod**, the adjective *any*, is declined like **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod** without **ali-**.



Quīdam, *a certain (one)* (the pronoun)

|      | SINGULAR  |          | PLURAL    |           |           |
|------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.    | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| NOM. | quīdam    | quiddam  | quīdam    | quaedam   | quaedam   |
| GEN. | cuiusdam  | cuiusdam | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| DAT. | cuidam    | cuidam   | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |
| ACC. | quendam   | quiddam  | quōsdam   | quāsdam   | quaedam   |
| ABL. | quōdam    | quōdam   | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

Quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *certain* (the adjective)

|      | SINGULAR |          |          |
|------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.     | NEUT.    |
| NOM. | quīdam   | quaedam  | quoddam  |
| GEN. | cuiusdam | cuiusdam | cuiusdam |
| DAT. | cuidam   | cuidam   | cuidam   |
| ACC. | quendam  | quandam  | quoddam  |
| ABL. | quōdam   | quādam   | quōdam   |

PLURAL

The plural is declined like the plural of the pronoun.

Quisquam, *any one*

|      | SINGULAR  |                     |
|------|-----------|---------------------|
|      | M. AND F. | NEUT.               |
| NOM. | quisquam  | quidquam (quicquam) |
| GEN. | cuiusquam | cuiusquam           |
| DAT. | cuiquam   | cuiquam             |
| ACC. | quemquam  | quidquam (quicquam) |
| ABL. | quōquam   | quōquam             |

(This is substantive only; there is no plural.)

Quisque, *each*

Quisque, quidque is declined like quis, quid with -que added. Quīque, quaeque, quodque, the adjective, is declined like quī, quae, quod with -que added.

## — Verbs —

## FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum

STEMS: vocā-, vocāv-, vocāt-

| ACTIVE VOICE                   |             | PASSIVE VOICE                           |            |        |                                |
|--------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| INDICATIVE                     |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| PRESENT                        |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| <i>I call, am calling</i>      |             | <i>I am called</i>                      |            |        |                                |
| vocō                           | vocāmus     | vocor                                   | vocāmur    |        |                                |
| vocās                          | vocātis     | vocāris                                 | vocāminī   |        |                                |
| vocat                          | vocant      | vocātur                                 | vocantur   |        |                                |
| IMPERFECT                      |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| <i>I was calling</i>           |             | <i>I was being called</i>               |            |        |                                |
| vocābam                        | vocābāmus   | vocābar                                 | vocābāmur  |        |                                |
| vocābās                        | vocābātis   | vocābāris                               | vocābāminī |        |                                |
| vocābat                        | vocābant    | vocābātur                               | vocābantur |        |                                |
| FUTURE                         |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| <i>I shall call</i>            |             | <i>I shall be called</i>                |            |        |                                |
| vocābō                         | vocābimus   | vocābor                                 | vocābimur  |        |                                |
| vocābis                        | vocābitis   | vocāberis                               | vocābiminī |        |                                |
| vocābit                        | vocābunt    | vocābitur                               | vocābuntur |        |                                |
| PERFECT                        |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| <i>I have called, I called</i> |             | <i>I have been called, I was called</i> |            |        |                                |
| vocāvī                         | vocāvimus   | vocātus<br>(-a, -um)                    | sum        | vocātī | {<br>sumus<br>estis<br>sunt    |
| vocāvistī                      | vocāvistis  |                                         | es         |        |                                |
| vocāvit                        | vocāvērunt  |                                         | est        |        |                                |
| PLUPERFECT                     |             |                                         |            |        |                                |
| <i>I had called</i>            |             | <i>I had been called</i>                |            |        |                                |
| vocāveram                      | vocāverāmus | vocātus<br>(-a, -um)                    | eram       | vocātī | {<br>erāmus<br>erātis<br>erant |
| vocāverās                      | vocāverātis |                                         | erās       |        |                                |
| vocāverat                      | vocāverant  |                                         | erat       |        |                                |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have called**I shall have been called*

|           |             |                      |                          |                     |                                |
|-----------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| vocāverō  | vocāverimus | vocātus<br>(-a, -um) | {<br>erō<br>eris<br>erit | vocātī<br>(-ae, -a) | {<br>erimus<br>eritis<br>erunt |
| vocāveris | vocāveritis |                      |                          |                     |                                |
| vocāverit | vocāverint  |                      |                          |                     |                                |

SUBJUNCTIVE  
PRESENT

|       |         |         |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| vocem | vocēmus | vocer   | vocēmur  |
| vocēs | vocētis | vocēris | vocēminī |
| vocet | vocent  | vocētur | vocentur |

## IMPERFECT

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| vocārem | vocārēmus | vocārer   | vocārēmur  |
| vocārēs | vocārētis | vocārēris | vocārēminī |
| vocāret | vocārent  | vocārētur | vocārentur |

## PERFECT

|           |             |                      |                        |                     |                             |
|-----------|-------------|----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| vocāverim | vocāverīmus | vocātus<br>(-a, -um) | {<br>sim<br>sīs<br>sit | vocātī<br>(-ae, -a) | {<br>sīmus<br>sītis<br>sint |
| vocāverīs | vocāverītis |                      |                        |                     |                             |
| vocāverit | vocāverint  |                      |                        |                     |                             |

## PLUPERFECT

|            |              |                      |                              |                     |                                   |
|------------|--------------|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| vocāvissem | vocāvissēmus | vocātus<br>(-a, -um) | {<br>essem<br>essēs<br>esset | vocātī<br>(-ae, -a) | {<br>essēmus<br>essētis<br>essent |
| vocāvissēs | vocāvissētis |                      |                              |                     |                                   |
| vocāvisset | vocāvissent  |                      |                              |                     |                                   |

IMPERATIVE  
PRESENT*Call**Be called*

|      |        |        |          |
|------|--------|--------|----------|
| vocā | vocāte | vocāre | vocāminī |
|------|--------|--------|----------|

## FUTURE

*You, he, they shall call**You, he, they shall be called*

|        |          |         |          |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|
| vocātō | vocātōte | vocātor | _____    |
| vocātō | vocantō  | vocātor | vocantor |

## INFINITIVES

|       |                                            |                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| PRES. | vocāre, <i>to call</i>                     | vocārī, <i>to be called</i>              |
| PERF. | vocāvisse, <i>to have called</i>           | vocātus esse, <i>to have been called</i> |
| FUT.  | vocātūrus esse, <i>to be about to call</i> | _____                                    |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |                                 |                                    |
|-------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| PRES. | vocāns, <i>calling</i>          | _____                              |
| PERF. | _____                           | vocātus, <i>having been called</i> |
| FUT.  | vocātūrus, <i>about to call</i> | vocandus, <i>to be called</i>      |

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

|      |                             |                              |
|------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| GEN. | vocandī, <i>of calling</i>  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.)       |
| DAT. | vocandō, <i>for calling</i> | SUPINE                       |
| ACC. | vocandum, <i>calling</i>    | ACC. vocātum, <i>to call</i> |
| ABL. | vocandō, <i>by calling</i>  | ABL. vocātū, <i>to call</i>  |

## SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

STEMS: monē-, monu-, monit-

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I advise, am advising**I am advised*

|       |         |         |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| moneō | monēmus | moneor  | monēmur  |
| monēs | monētis | monēris | monēmini |
| monet | monent  | monētur | monentur |

## IMPERFECT

*I was advising**I was being advised*

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| monēbam | monēbāmus | monēbar   | monēbāmur  |
| monēbas | monēbātis | monēbāris | monēbāmini |
| monēbat | monēbant  | monēbātur | monēbantur |

| FUTURE                |           |                           |            |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------------|------------|
| <i>I shall advise</i> |           | <i>I shall be advised</i> |            |
| monēbō                | monēbimus | monēbor                   | monēbimur  |
| monēbis               | monēbitis | monēberis                 | monēbiminī |
| monēbit               | monēbunt  | monēbitur                 | monēbuntur |

| PERFECT                          |           |                                           |       |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------|-------|
| <i>I have advised, I advised</i> |           | <i>I have been advised, I was advised</i> |       |
| monuī                            | monuimus  | monitus                                   | sum   |
| monuisti                         | monuistis | (-a, -um)                                 | es    |
| monuit                           | monuērunt |                                           | est   |
|                                  |           | monitī                                    | sumus |
|                                  |           | (-ae, -a)                                 | estis |
|                                  |           |                                           | sunt  |

| PLUPERFECT           |            |                           |        |
|----------------------|------------|---------------------------|--------|
| <i>I had advised</i> |            | <i>I had been advised</i> |        |
| monueram             | monuerāmus | monitus                   | eram   |
| monuerās             | monuerātis | (-a, -um)                 | erās   |
| monuerat             | monuerant  |                           | erat   |
|                      |            | monitī                    | erāmus |
|                      |            | (-ae, -a)                 | erātis |
|                      |            |                           | erant  |

| FUTURE PERFECT              |            |                                  |        |
|-----------------------------|------------|----------------------------------|--------|
| <i>I shall have advised</i> |            | <i>I shall have been advised</i> |        |
| monuerō                     | monuerimus | monitus                          | erō    |
| monueris                    | monueritis | (-a, -um)                        | eris   |
| monuerit                    | monuerint  |                                  | erit   |
|                             |            | monitī                           | erimus |
|                             |            | (-ae, -a)                        | eritis |
|                             |            |                                  | erunt  |

| SUBJUNCTIVE |          |          |           |
|-------------|----------|----------|-----------|
| PRESENT     |          |          |           |
| moneam      | moneāmus | monear   | moneāmur  |
| moneās      | moneātis | moneāris | moneāminī |
| moneat      | moneant  | moneātur | moneantur |

| IMPERFECT |           |           |            |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| monērem   | monērēmus | monērer   | monērēmur  |
| monērēs   | monērētis | monērēris | monērēminī |
| monēret   | monērent  | monērētur | monērentur |



## PERFECT

|          |            |           |   |     |   |           |   |       |
|----------|------------|-----------|---|-----|---|-----------|---|-------|
| monuerim | monuerimus | monitus   | { | sim | { | monitī    | { | sīmus |
| monueris | monueritis | (-a, -um) | { | sīs | { | (-ae, -a) | { | sītis |
| monuerit | monuerint  |           | { | sit | { |           | { | sint  |

## PLUPERFECT

|           |             |           |   |       |           |   |         |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|---|-------|-----------|---|---------|
| monuissem | monuissēmus | monitus   | { | essem | monitī    | { | essēmus |
| monuissēs | monuissētis | (-a, -um) | { | essēs | (-ae, -a) | { | essētis |
| monuisset | monuissent  |           | { | esset |           | { | essent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Advise**Be advised*

|      |        |        |          |
|------|--------|--------|----------|
| monē | monēte | monēre | monēmini |
|------|--------|--------|----------|

## FUTURE

*You, he, they shall advise**You, he, they shall be advised*

|        |          |         |          |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|
| monētō | monētōte | monētor | _____    |
| monētō | monentō  | monētor | monentor |

## INFINITIVES

|       |                                       |                                    |
|-------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| PRES. | monēre, to advise                     | monērī, to be advised              |
| PERF. | monuisse, to have advised             | monitus esse, to have been advised |
| FUT.  | monitūrus esse, to be about to advise |                                    |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |                                     |                                       |
|-------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| PRES. | monēns, -entis, advising            | _____                                 |
| PERF. | _____                               | monitus, -a, -um, having been advised |
| FUT.  | monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise | monendus, -a, -um, to be advised      |

| GERUND |                              | GERUNDIVE                      |
|--------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| GEN.   | monendī, <i>of advising</i>  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.)         |
| DAT.   | monendō, <i>for advising</i> | SUPINE                         |
| ACC.   | monendum, <i>advising</i>    | ACC. monitum, <i>to advise</i> |
| ABL.   | monendō, <i>by advising</i>  | ABL. monitū, <i>to advise</i>  |

## THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum

STEMS: reg-, rēx-, rēct-

| ACTIVE VOICE                 |           | PASSIVE VOICE                         |            |                    |       |
|------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|------------|--------------------|-------|
| INDICATIVE                   |           |                                       |            |                    |       |
| PRESENT                      |           |                                       |            |                    |       |
| <i>I rule, am ruling</i>     |           | <i>I am ruled</i>                     |            |                    |       |
| regō                         | regimus   | regor                                 | regimur    |                    |       |
| regis                        | regitis   | regeris                               | regimini   |                    |       |
| regit                        | regunt    | regitur                               | reguntur   |                    |       |
| IMPERFECT                    |           |                                       |            |                    |       |
| <i>I was ruling</i>          |           | <i>I was being ruled</i>              |            |                    |       |
| regēbam                      | regēbāmus | regēbar                               | regēbāmur  |                    |       |
| regēbās                      | regēbātis | regēbāris                             | regēbāmini |                    |       |
| regēbat                      | regēbant  | regēbātur                             | regēbantur |                    |       |
| FUTURE                       |           |                                       |            |                    |       |
| <i>I shall rule</i>          |           | <i>I shall be ruled</i>               |            |                    |       |
| regam                        | regēmus   | regar                                 | regēmur    |                    |       |
| regēs                        | regētis   | regēris                               | regēmini   |                    |       |
| reget                        | regent    | regētur                               | regentur   |                    |       |
| PERFECT                      |           |                                       |            |                    |       |
| <i>I have ruled, I ruled</i> |           | <i>I have been ruled, I was ruled</i> |            |                    |       |
| rēxī                         | rēximus   | rēctus<br>(-a, -um)                   | sum        | rēctī<br>(-ae, -a) | sumus |
| rēxistī                      | rēxistis  |                                       | es         |                    | estis |
| rēxit                        | rēxērunt  |                                       | est        |                    | sunt  |

## PLUPERFECT

*I had ruled**I had been ruled*

|         |           |                     |   |      |                    |   |        |
|---------|-----------|---------------------|---|------|--------------------|---|--------|
| rēxeram | rēxerāmus | rēctus<br>(-a, -um) | { | eram | rēctī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | erāmus |
| rēxerās | rēxerātis |                     |   | erās |                    |   | erātis |
| rēxerat | rēxerant  |                     |   | erat |                    |   | erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled**I shall have been ruled*

|         |           |                     |   |      |                    |   |        |
|---------|-----------|---------------------|---|------|--------------------|---|--------|
| rēxerō  | rēxerimus | rēctus<br>(-a, -um) | { | erō  | rēctī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | erimus |
| rēxeris | rēxeritis |                     |   | eris |                    |   | eritis |
| rēxerit | rēxerint  |                     |   | erit |                    |   | erunt  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|       |         |         |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| regam | regāmus | regar   | regāmur  |
| regās | regātis | regāris | regāmini |
| regat | regant  | regātur | regantur |

## IMPERFECT

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| regerem | regerēmus | regerer   | regerēmur  |
| regerēs | regerētis | regerēris | regerēmini |
| regeret | regerent  | regerētur | regerentur |

## PERFECT

|         |           |                     |   |     |                    |   |       |
|---------|-----------|---------------------|---|-----|--------------------|---|-------|
| rēxerim | rēxerimus | rēctus<br>(-a, -um) | { | sim | rēctī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | simus |
| rēxeris | rēxeritis |                     |   | sis |                    |   | sitis |
| rēxerit | rēxerint  |                     |   | sit |                    |   | sint  |

## PLUPERFECT

|          |            |                     |   |       |                    |   |         |
|----------|------------|---------------------|---|-------|--------------------|---|---------|
| rēxissem | rēxissemus | rēctus<br>(-a, -um) | { | essem | rēctī<br>(-ae, -a) | { | essēmus |
| rēxisēs  | rēxisēs    |                     |   | essēs |                    |   | essētis |
| rēxisset | rēxisset   |                     |   | esset |                    |   | essent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Rule**Be ruled*

|      |        |        |          |
|------|--------|--------|----------|
| rege | regite | regere | regimini |
|------|--------|--------|----------|

| FUTURE                          |          |                                     |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| <i>You, he, they shall rule</i> |          | <i>You, he, they shall be ruled</i> |          |
| regitō                          | regitōte | regitor                             | _____    |
| regitō                          | reguntō  | regitor                             | reguntor |

| INFINITIVES |                                    |                                 |  |
|-------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| PRES.       | regere, to rule                    | regī, to be ruled               |  |
| PERF.       | rēxisse, to have ruled             | rēctus esse, to have been ruled |  |
| FUT.        | rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule | _____                           |  |

| PARTICIPLES |                         |                           |  |
|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| PRES.       | rēgens, ruling          | rēctus, having been ruled |  |
| PERF.       | _____                   | regendus, to be ruled     |  |
| FUT.        | rēctūrus, about to rule |                           |  |

| GERUND |                     | GERUNDIVE              |  |
|--------|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| GEN.   | regendī, of ruling  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.) |  |
| DAT.   | regendō, for ruling | SUPINE                 |  |
| ACC.   | regendum, ruling    | ACC. rēctum, to rule   |  |
| ABL.   | regendō, by ruling  | ABL. rēctū, to rule    |  |

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

STEM: audī-, audīv-, audīt-

| ACTIVE VOICE                       |         | PASSIVE VOICE     |           |
|------------------------------------|---------|-------------------|-----------|
| INDICATIVE                         |         |                   |           |
| PRESENT                            |         |                   |           |
| <i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i> |         | <i>I am heard</i> |           |
| audiō                              | audimus | audior            | audimur   |
| audis                              | auditis | audiris           | audimini  |
| audit                              | audiunt | auditur           | audiuntur |

## IMPERFECT

*I was hearing**I was being heard*

|          |            |            |             |
|----------|------------|------------|-------------|
| audiēbam | audiēbāmus | audiēbar   | audiēbāmur  |
| audiēbās | audiēbātis | audiēbāris | audiēbāminī |
| audiēbat | audiēbant  | audiēbātur | audiēbantur |

## FUTURE

*I shall hear**I shall be heard*

|        |          |          |           |
|--------|----------|----------|-----------|
| audiam | audiēmus | audiar   | audiēmur  |
| audiēs | audiētis | audiēris | audiēminī |
| audiet | audient  | audiētur | audientur |

## PERFECT

*I have heard, I heard**I have been (was) heard*

|           |            |           |       |           |         |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| audīvī    | audīvimus  | audītus   | { sum | audītī    | { sumus |
| audīvistī | audīvistis | (-a, -um) | { es  | (-ae, -a) | { estis |
| audīvit   | audīvērunt |           | { est |           | { sunt  |

## PLUPERFECT

*I had heard**I had been heard*

|           |             |           |        |           |          |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| audīveram | audīverāmus | audītus   | { eram | audītī    | { erāmus |
| audīverās | audīverātis | (-a, -um) | { erās | (-ae, -a) | { erātis |
| audīverat | audīverant  |           | { erat |           | { erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard**I shall have been heard*

|           |             |           |        |           |          |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|
| audīverō  | audīverimus | audītus   | { erō  | audītī    | { erimus |
| audīveris | audīveritis | (-a, -um) | { eris | (-ae, -a) | { eritis |
| audīverit | audīverint  |           | { erit |           | { erunt  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|        |          |          |           |
|--------|----------|----------|-----------|
| audiam | audiāmus | audiar   | audiāmur  |
| audiās | audiātis | audiāris | audiāminī |
| audiat | audiant  | audiātur | audiantur |



## IMPERFECT

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| audīrem | audīrēmus | audīrer   | audīrēmur  |
| audīrēs | audīrētis | audīrēris | audīrēmini |
| audīret | audīrent  | audīrētur | audīrentur |

## PERFECT

|           |             |           |       |           |         |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|
| audiverim | audiverimus | audītus   | { sim | audītī    | { sīmus |
| audiverīs | audiverītis | (-a, -um) | { sīs | (-ae, -a) | { sītis |
| audiverit | audiverint  |           | { sit |           | { sint  |

## PLUPERFECT

|            |              |           |         |           |           |
|------------|--------------|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| audīvissem | audīvissemus | audītus   | { essem | audītī    | { essēmus |
| audīvisēs  | audīvisētis  | (-a, -um) | { essēs | (-ae, -a) | { essētis |
| audīvisset | audīvisset   |           | { esset |           | { essent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

| <i>Hear</i> |        | <i>Be heard</i> |          |
|-------------|--------|-----------------|----------|
| audī        | audīte | audire          | audīmini |

## FUTURE

| <i>You, he, they shall hear</i> |          | <i>You, he, they shall be heard</i> |           |
|---------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| audītō                          | audītōte | audītor                             | —         |
| audītō                          | audiuntō | audītor                             | audiuntor |

## INFINITIVES

|       |                                     |                                  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| PRES. | audire, to hear                     | audīrī, to be heard              |
| PERF. | audīvisse, to have heard            | audītus esse, to have been heard |
| FUT.  | audītūrus esse, to be about to hear | —                                |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |                                   |                                     |
|-------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| PRES. | audiēns, -entis, hearing          | —                                   |
| PERF. | —                                 | audītus, -a, -um, having been heard |
| FUT.  | audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear | audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard     |

| GERUND |                              | GERUNDIVE              |                         |
|--------|------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| GEN.   | audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.) |                         |
| DAT.   | audiendō, <i>for hearing</i> | SUPINE                 |                         |
| ACC.   | audiendum, <i>hearing</i>    | ACC.                   | audītum, <i>to hear</i> |
| ABL.   | audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>  | ABL.                   | audītū, <i>to hear</i>  |

### THIRD CONJUGATION—VERBS IN -IŌ

PRINCIPLE PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

STEMS: capi-, cēp-, capt-

| ACTIVE VOICE              |                | PASSIVE VOICE                  |           |
|---------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-----------|
| INDICATIVE                |                |                                |           |
| PRESENT                   |                |                                |           |
| <i>I take, am taking</i>  |                | <i>I am taken</i>              |           |
| capiō                     | capimus        | capior                         | capimur   |
| capis                     | capitis        | caperis                        | capimini  |
| capit                     | capiunt        | capitur                        | capiuntur |
| IMPERFECT                 |                |                                |           |
| <i>I was taking</i>       |                | <i>I was being taken</i>       |           |
| —                         | capiebam, etc. | capiebar, etc.                 |           |
| FUTURE                    |                |                                |           |
| <i>I shall take</i>       |                | <i>I shall be taken</i>        |           |
| capiam                    | capiēmus       | capiar                         | capiēmur  |
| capiēs                    | capiētis       | capieris                       | capiēmini |
| capiet                    | capient        | capietur                       | capientur |
| PERFECT                   |                |                                |           |
| <i>I took, have taken</i> |                | <i>I have been (was) taken</i> |           |
| cēpī, etc.                |                | captus sum, etc.               |           |
| PLUPERFECT                |                |                                |           |
| <i>I had taken</i>        |                | <i>I had been taken</i>        |           |
| cēperam, etc.             |                | captus eram, etc.              |           |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have taken**I shall have been taken*

cēperō, etc.

captus erō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

capiam

capiāmus

capiar

capiāmur

capiās

capiātis

capiāris

capiāmini

capiat

capiant

capiātur

capiantur

## IMPERFECT

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

## PERFECT

cēperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

cēpisse, etc.

captus essem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Take**Be taken*

cape

capite

capere

capimini

## FUTURE

*You, he, they shall take**You, he, they shall be taken*

capitō

capitōte

capitor

———

capitō

capiuntō

capitor

capiuntor

## INFINITIVES

PRES. capere, to take

capī, to be taken

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken

captus esse, to have been taken

FUT. captūrus esse, to be about to  
take

## PARTICIPLES

|       |                                         |                                           |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| PRES. | capiēns, -ientis, <i>taking</i>         | _____                                     |
| PERF. | _____                                   | captus, -a, -um, <i>having been taken</i> |
| FUT.  | captūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to take</i> | capiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be taken</i>    |

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

|      |                             |                             |
|------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| GEN. | capiendī, <i>of taking</i>  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.)      |
| DAT. | capiendō, <i>for taking</i> | SUPINE                      |
| ACC. | capiendum, <i>taking</i>    | ACC. captum, <i>to take</i> |
| ABL. | capiendō, <i>by taking</i>  | ABL. captū, <i>to take</i>  |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

## PRINCIPAL PARTS:

sum, esse, fuī

possum, posse, potuī

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I am**I am able, I can*

|     |       |        |          |
|-----|-------|--------|----------|
| sum | sumus | possum | possumus |
| es  | estis | potes  | potestis |
| est | sunt  | potest | possunt  |

## IMPERFECT

*I was**I was able, I could*

|      |        |         |           |
|------|--------|---------|-----------|
| eram | erāmus | poteram | poterāmus |
| erās | erātis | poterās | poterātis |
| erat | erant  | poterat | poterant  |

## FUTURE

*I shall be**I shall be able*

|      |        |         |           |
|------|--------|---------|-----------|
| erō  | erimus | poterō  | poterimus |
| eris | eritis | poteris | poteritis |
| erit | erunt  | poterit | poterunt  |

## PERFECT

*I was, have been**I have been able, I could*

|        |         |          |           |
|--------|---------|----------|-----------|
| fuī    | fuius   | potuī    | potuimus  |
| fuisti | fuistis | potuisti | potuistis |
| fuit   | fuērunt | potuit   | potuērunt |

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been**I had been able*

|        |          |          |            |
|--------|----------|----------|------------|
| fueram | fuerāmus | potueram | potuerāmus |
| fuerās | fuerātis | potuerās | potuerātis |
| fuerat | fuerant  | potuerat | potuerant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been**I shall have been able*

|        |          |          |            |
|--------|----------|----------|------------|
| fuerō  | fuerimus | potuerō  | potuerimus |
| fueris | fueritis | potueris | potueritis |
| fuerit | fuerint  | potuerit | potuerint  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|     |       |        |          |
|-----|-------|--------|----------|
| sim | sīmus | possim | possīmus |
| sīs | sītis | possis | possītis |
| sit | sint  | possit | possint  |

## IMPERFECT

|       |         |        |          |
|-------|---------|--------|----------|
| essem | essēmus | possem | possēmus |
| essēs | essētis | possēs | possētis |
| esset | essent  | posset | possent  |

## PERFECT

|        |          |          |            |
|--------|----------|----------|------------|
| fuerim | fuerīmus | potuerim | potuerīmus |
| fuerīs | fuerītis | potuerīs | potuerītis |
| fuerit | fuerint  | potuerit | potuerint  |

## PLUPERFECT

|         |           |           |             |
|---------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| fuissem | fuissēmus | potuissem | potuissēmus |
| fuissēs | fuissētis | potuissēs | potuissētis |
| fuisset | fuissent  | potuisset | potuissent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|           |      |                  |  |
|-----------|------|------------------|--|
| <i>Be</i> |      | <i>(lacking)</i> |  |
| es        | este |                  |  |



FUTURE  
*You, he, they shall be* (lacking)

|      |        |
|------|--------|
| estō | estōte |
| estō | suntō  |

INFINITIVES

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                    |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| PRES. | esse, <i>to be</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | posse, <i>to be able</i>           |
| PERF. | fuisse, <i>to have been</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | potuisse, <i>to have been able</i> |
| FUT.  | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">futūrus esse,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">or</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">fore</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">to be about to be</div> </div> | (lacking)                          |

PARTICIPLES

|       |                                      |                                                        |
|-------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. | (lacking)                            | potēns, -entis (used as an adjective), <i>powerful</i> |
| FUT.  | futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i> | (lacking)                                              |

PRINCIPAL PARTS: volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish*  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*  
 mālō, mälle, mālui, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

|      |         |          |            |        |          |
|------|---------|----------|------------|--------|----------|
| volō | volumus | nōlō     | nolumus    | mālō   | mālumus  |
| vīs  | vultis  | nōn vīs  | nōn vultis | māvis  | māvultis |
| vult | volunt  | nōn vult | nōlunt     | māvult | mālunt   |

IMPERFECT

|         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
|---------|---------|---------|

FUTURE

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| volam | nōlam | mālam |
|-------|-------|-------|

PERFECT

|       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| voluī | nōluī | mālui |
|-------|-------|-------|

PLUPERFECT

|          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| volueram | nōlueram | mālueram |
|----------|----------|----------|

## FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō

nōluerō

māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

velim

velimus

nōlim

nōlimus

mālim

mālimus

velīs

velītis

nōlīs

nōlītis

mālīs

mālītis

velīt

velint

nōlit

nōlint

mālit

mālint

## IMPERFECT

vellem

nōllem

māllem

## PERFECT

voluerim

nōluerim

māluerim

## PLUPERFECT

voluissem

nōluissem

māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

(lacking)

nōlī

nōlite

(lacking)

## FUTURE

(lacking)

nōlitō  
nōlitōnōlitōte  
nōluntō

(lacking)

## INFINITIVES

PRES.

velle

nōlle

mālle

PERF.

voluisse

nōluisse

māluisse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.

volēns

nōlēns

(lacking)

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry.*

| PRESENT INDICATIVE |              |             |             |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| ACTIVE             |              | PASSIVE     |             |
| ferō               | ferimus      | feror       | ferimur     |
| fers               | fertis       | ferris      | ferimini    |
| fert               | ferunt       | fertur      | feruntur    |
| INDICATIVE         |              | SUBJUNCTIVE |             |
| ACTIVE             | PASSIVE      | ACTIVE      | PASSIVE     |
| IMPERFECT          |              | PRESENT     |             |
| ferēbam            | ferēbar      | feram       | ferar       |
| FUTURE             |              | IMPERFECT   |             |
| feram              | ferar        | ferrem      | ferrer      |
| PERFECT            |              | PERFECT     |             |
| tulī               | lātus sum    | tulerim     | lātus sim   |
| PLUPERFECT         |              | PLUPERFECT  |             |
| tuleram            | lātus eram   | tulisse     | lātus essem |
| FUTURE PERFECT     |              |             |             |
| tulerō             | lātus erō    |             |             |
| IMPERATIVE         |              |             |             |
| PRESENT            |              |             |             |
| fer                | ferite       | ferre       | ferimini    |
| FUTURE             |              |             |             |
| fertō              | fertōte      | fertor      | _____       |
| fertō              | feruntō      | fertor      | feruntor    |
| INFINITIVES        |              |             |             |
| PRES.              | ferre        | ferri       |             |
| PERF.              | tulisse      | lātus esse  |             |
| FUT.               | lāturus esse | _____       |             |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |         |          |
|-------|---------|----------|
| PRES. | ferēns  | _____    |
| PERF. | _____   | lātus    |
| FUT.  | lātūrus | ferendus |

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

|      |          |                        |
|------|----------|------------------------|
| GEN. | ferendī  | (see Fut. Pass. Part.) |
| DAT. | ferendō  | SUPINE                 |
| ACC. | ferendum | ACC. lātum             |
| ABL. | ferendō  | ABL. lātū              |

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, īī (īvī), itum, go.

| INDICATIVE     |          | SUBJUNCTIVE     | INFINITIVES |               |
|----------------|----------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| PRESENT        |          | PRESENT         | PRES.       | īre           |
| eō             | īmus     | eam             | PERF.       | isse (ivisse) |
| īs             | ītis     |                 | FUT.        | itūrus esse   |
| it             | eunt     |                 |             |               |
| IMPERFECT      |          | IMPERFECT       | PARTICIPLES |               |
|                | ībam     | irem            | PRES.       | īēns, euntis  |
|                |          |                 | FUT.        | itūrus        |
|                |          | PERFECT         |             |               |
|                |          | ierim (īverim)  | GERUND      |               |
| FUTURE         |          |                 | GEN.        | eundī         |
|                | ībo      |                 | DAT.        | eundō         |
|                |          | PLUPERFECT      | ACC.        | eundum        |
|                |          | īsem (īvissem)  | ABL.        | eundō         |
| PERFECT        |          | IMPERATIVE      |             |               |
|                | īī (īvī) | PRES. ī, īte    | SUPINE      |               |
| PLUPERFECT     |          | FUT. ītō, ītōte | ACC.        | itum          |
|                | ieram    | ītō, euntō      | ABL.        | itū           |
| FUTURE PERFECT |          |                 |             |               |
|                | ierō     |                 |             |               |

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.*

| INDICATIVE     |       | SUBJUNCTIVE  | INFINITIVES      |             |
|----------------|-------|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| PRESENT        |       | PRESENT      | PRES.            | fieri       |
| fīō            | fīmus | fiam         | PERF.            | factus esse |
| fīs            | fītis |              |                  |             |
| fīt            | fīunt |              |                  |             |
|                |       | IMPERFECT    |                  |             |
|                |       | fierem       |                  |             |
| IMPERFECT      |       |              | PARTICIPLES      |             |
| fīebam         |       |              | PRES.            | _____       |
|                |       |              | PERF.            | factus      |
|                |       |              | FUT.             | faciendus   |
|                |       | PERFECT      |                  |             |
|                |       | factus sim   |                  |             |
| FUTURE         |       |              | GERUNDIVE        |             |
| fiam           |       |              | (SEE FUT. PART.) |             |
|                |       | PLUPERFECT   |                  |             |
|                |       | factus essem |                  |             |
| PERFECT        |       |              |                  |             |
| factus sum     |       |              |                  |             |
| PLUPERFECT     |       |              |                  |             |
| factus eram    |       |              |                  |             |
| FUTURE PERFECT |       |              |                  |             |
| factus erō     |       |              |                  |             |

#### PARSING

To parse a verb give: (1) conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, and (8) rule.

Example: In the sentence **Pater filiō praemium mittit**, **mittit** would be parsed as follows:

**mittit**: third conjugation; principal parts, **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum**; active voice; indicative mood; present tense; third person; singular number; agrees with the subject **pater**. Rule: A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.





*Bronze of Alexander the Great on his horse Bucephalus*

# Word Formation

## —Prefixes—

### A. On adjectives

1. in-, not: *amicus, friendly, inimicus, unfriendly*
2. per-, very: *magnus, large, permagnus, very large*
3. sub-, somewhat: *albus, white, subalbus, whitish*

### B. On verbs

1. ab-, ā-, abs-, away, off: *sum, be, absum, be away*
2. ad-, to, towards, near, for: *eō, go, adeō, go to*
3. ante, before: *cēdō, move, antecēdō, precede*
4. com-, con-, co-, together, completely, forcibly: *faciō, make, cōficiō, finish*
5. dē-, down, utterly: *mittō, send, let go, dēmittō, lower*
6. dis-, dī-, apart, in different directions: *teneō, hold, distineō, hold apart*
7. ē-, ex-, out, completely: *faciō, do, efficiō, accomplish*
8. in-, in, on, against: *capiō, take, incipiō, take on, begin*
9. inter-, between, at intervals, to pieces: *eō, go, intereō, go to pieces, perish*
10. ob-, towards, to meet, in opposition: *pugnō, fight, oppugnō, attack*
11. per-, through, thoroughly: *moveō, move, permoveō, move deeply*
12. prō-, por-, forward: *videō, see, prōvideō, foresee*
13. red-, re-, back, again: *capiō, take, recipiō, take back*
14. sed-, sē-, apart: *claudō, shut, sēclūdō, shut away*
15. sub-, up to, under, to the aid: *veniō, come, subveniō, come to the aid*
16. trāns-, trā-, across, over: *dūcō, lead, trādūcō, lead across*

— Suffixes —

**A. Making nouns from verbs**

1. -tor, -tōris, m., the agent or doer of the action (-er): vincere, conquer, victor, conqueror
2. -or, -ōris, m., the abstract noun: amāre, love, amor, love
3. -iō, -iōnis, f. } the name of the action: con + dicere, agree, condi-  
-tiō, -tiōnis, f. } ciō, agreement; oppugnāre, attack, oppugnātiō, at-  
-tus, -tūs, m. } tack; advenīre, arrive, adventus, arrival
4. -men, -minis, n., the means or result of the action: flūere, flow, flūmen, a stream

**B. Making nouns from adjectives**

- |                     |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -ia, -iae, f.       | } the abstract noun (-ness): audax, bold, audācia, bold-<br>ness; amīcus, friendly, amīcitia, friendship; liber, free,<br>libertās, liberty; magnus, large, magnitūdō, great size |
| -tia, -tiae, f.     |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -tās, -tātis, f.    |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -tūdō, -tūdinis, f. |                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**C. Making adjectives from nouns**

1. -tus, -ta, -tum, having (-ed): turris, tower, turrītus, turreted; cornū, horn, cornūtus, horned
2. -ālis, -āle } pertaining to: nātūra, nature, nātūrālis, natural; mīles,  
-āris, -āre } mīlitis, soldier, mīlītāris, military; cīvis, citizen, cīvīlis, civil  
-īlis, -īle }
3. -timus, -tima, -timum, belonging to: mare, sea, maritimus, of the sea

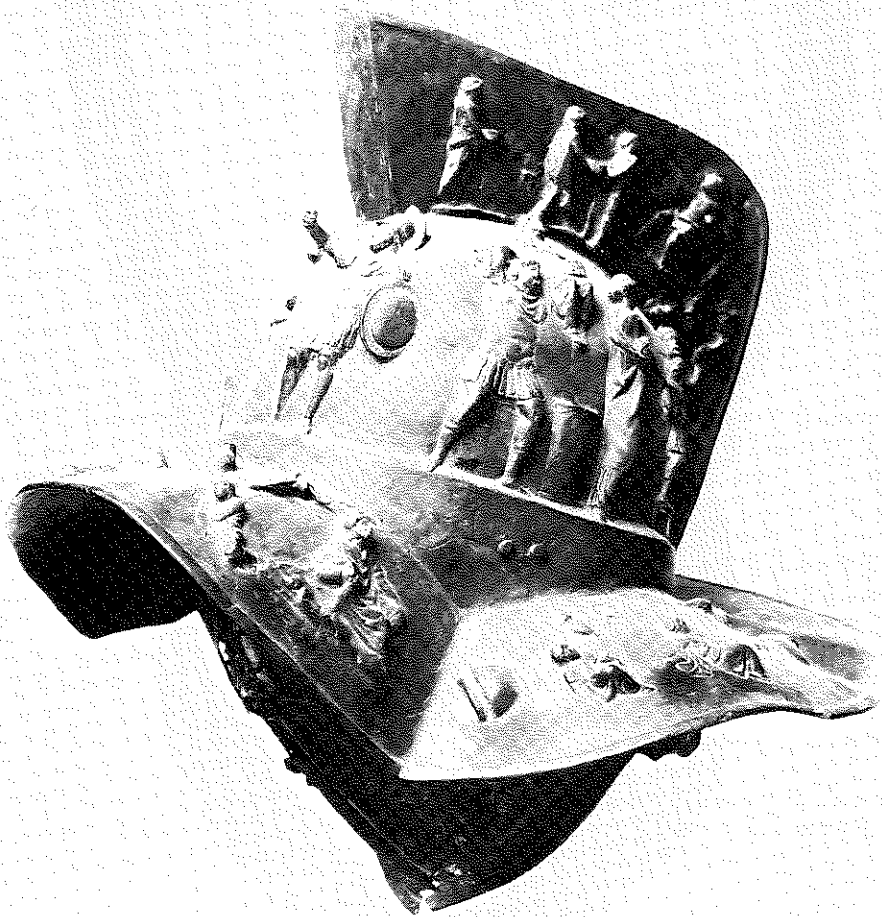
**D. Making adjectives from verbs**

1. -ax, -ācis, having an aggressive tendency (-ing): audeō, dare, audāx, daring
2. -idus, -ida, -idum, tending to (-ing): cupio, desire, cupidus, desirous
3. -īvus, -īva, -īvum, having the passive tendency (-ed): capiō, captum, capture, captīvus, captive
4. -īlis, -īle, having the passive quality (-ble): ūtor, use, ūtilis, usable, useful

**E. Verb suffixes**

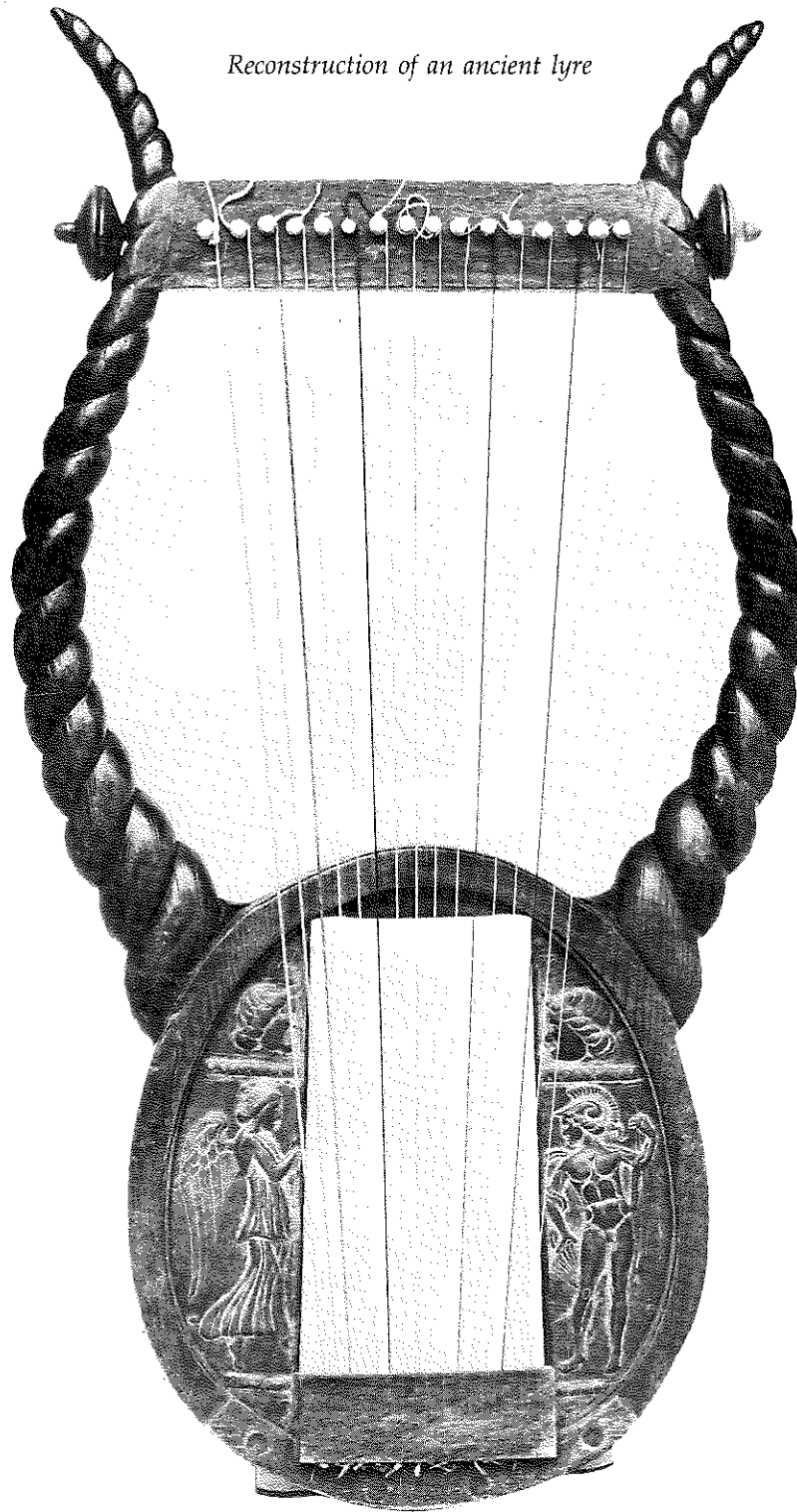
1. -scō, -scere, —, —, begin: cognōscō, begin to know, cōnsuēscō, begin to be accustomed
2. -tō, -tāre, -tāvī, -tātum, try to do, keep doing: capiō, catch, captō, try to catch; sequor, follow, sector, -ārī, keep following

# Vocabularies



*Gladiator's bronze parade helmet from Pompeii*

*Reconstruction of an ancient lyre*





# Latin-English

Words which appear in the vocabularies are marked by the number of the Lesson in which each occurs.

## A

- ā**, **ab**, prep., with **abl.**, from, away from, by; **ā tergō**, in the rear. 5
- abdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put away, hide.
- abdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away.
- abeō**, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, go away.
- abiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw away.
- abscidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, cut off.
- absum**, **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, be away, be distant, be absent. 32.
- ac**, conj. (same as **atque**), and, and also, and even; **simul ac**, as soon as. 21, 36
- accēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go to, approach. 39
- accidō**, -ere, **accidī**, —, fall upon, happen. 48
- accipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, accept. 24
- accumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, recline (at table).
- ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., sharp, fierce. 18
- aciēs**, -eī, f., straight line, line of battle. 31
- ācritē**, adv., sharply, fiercely. 31
- ad**, prep., with **acc.**, to, near, toward, for, at. 5
- addūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, bring to; influence. 41
- adeō**, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, go toward, approach (followed by **acc.**). 52
- adferō**, -ferre, **attulī**, **allātum**, bring up, bring to, report. 52
- adficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, afflict.
- adhaereō**, -haerere, -haesī, -haesum, cling to.
- adhibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, hold to, apply, employ.
- adhūc**, adv., up to this time, still.
- adimō**, -ere, -ēmi, -emptum, take away.
- adligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind to, bind.
- adstō**, -stāre, -stitī, stand by or near.
- adsum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be near, be present. 32
- adulēscēns**, -centis, m., young man, youth. 58
- adventus**, -ūs, m., arrival, approach. 29
- advolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly to, fly in.
- aedēs**, -is, f., temple; pl., house. 54
- aedificium**, -i, n., building. 46
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build.
- Aeduī**, -ōrum, m., the Aeduans, a Gallic tribe.
- aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, sick. 54
- aegrē**, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely. 54; **aegrē ferre**, to take it hard.
- Aegyptius**, -a, -um Egyptian.
- Aeneadēs**, -ae, m., follower of Aeneas.
- Aenēās**, -ae, m., Aeneas.
- Aeolia**, -ae, f., Aeolia.
- Aeolus**, -ī, m., Aeolus, god of the winds.
- aequē**, equally. 33
- aequus**, -a, -um, level, equal, fair, just, like. 33
- aes**, **aeris**, n., bronze.
- aestās**, -tātis, f., summer; **primā aestate**, at the beginning of summer. 20, 36
- aestus**, -ūs, m., heat, tide.
- aetās**, -tātis, f., age. 53
- Aethiopa**, -ae, f., Ethiopia.
- Aetna**, -ae, f., Etna, a volcano in Sicily.
- affligō**, -fligere, -flixī, -flictum, damage.
- Āfrica**, -ae, f., Africa. 10
- Āfricānus**, -a, -um, African, Africanus (as a cognomen).
- ager**, **agrī**, m., field, territory. 4
- aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, approach, attack. 51
- agmen**, -minis, n., line of march, marching column; **novissimum agmen**, rear; **primum agmen**, van. 56

- agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize.  
 agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive; do; grātiās  
 agere, give thanks. 22, 58  
 agricola, -ae, m., farmer. 1  
 Alba, -ae, f., Alba Longa, a city.  
 Albanus, -a, -um, Alban (of Alba).  
 albus, -a, -um, adj., white. 13  
 Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander (the Great).  
 aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, an-  
 other's; foreign, strange. 37  
 alii . . . alii, some . . . others. 37  
 aliquantum, -ī, n., somewhat, some.  
 aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., some. 58  
 aliquis, aliquid, pron., someone, some-  
 thing. 58  
 aliter, adv., otherwise.  
 alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other. 37  
 alius . . . alius, one . . . another. 37  
 Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., Alps.  
 altē, adv., on high, deeply.  
 alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two),  
 one (of two). 37  
 alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (of  
 two). 37  
 altitūdō, -inis, f., height, depth. 44  
 altum, -ī, n., the deep, the sea.  
 altus, -a, -um, adj., high, tall, deep. 6  
 Amāta, -ae, f., Amata, wife of Latinus,  
 king of the Latins.  
 ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stroll, walk. 10  
 āmentia, -ae, f., madness.  
 amicitia, -ae, f., friendliness, friendship. 2  
 amīcus, -a, -um, adj., friendly; friendly to  
 (with dat.). 13  
 amīcus, -ī, m., friend. 4  
 āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum, lose. 28  
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love; like. 2  
 amor, -ōris, m., love, longing, passion.  
 āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move  
 away, remove.  
 amplus, -a, -um, large, ample, distin-  
 guished. 33  
 an, conj., or. 45  
 Anchīsēs, -ae, m., Anchises, father of  
 Aeneas.  
 ancora, -ae, f., anchor. 56  
 Ancus, -ī, m., Ancus.  
 Androclus, -ī, m., Androclus.  
 Andromeda, -ae, f., Andromeda.  
 anhēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to pant.  
 animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, turn one's  
 mind to, notice.  
 animal, -ālis, n., animal. 16  
 animus, -ī, m., mind, spirit; pl., courage.  
 11  
 annōn, or not. 45  
 annus, -ī, m., year. 4  
 ānser, -eris, m., goose.  
 ante, adv., before, ago. 8  
 ante, prep., with acc., before, in front of.  
 8  
 antea, adv., before, formerly.  
 antiquus, -a, -um, old-fashioned, old, of  
 old, ancient, former. 23  
 Antōnius, -ī, m., Antonius.  
 antrum, -ī, n., cave.  
 anxius, -a, -um, adj., troubled, anxious.  
 aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertum, open, expose.  
 apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed. 54  
 Apollō, -inis, m., Apollo, god of music,  
 medicine, prophecy.  
 appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, address, call,  
 name. 7  
 appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive  
 to, with or without navem, put in.  
 Appius, -a, -um, adj., Appian.  
 Appia Via, f., Appian Way, a famous  
 road, running from Rome to Southern  
 Italy.  
 Appius, -ī, m., Appius, a praenomen.  
 appōnō, -ere, apposui, appositum, put  
 near, set before, serve.  
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approach,  
 draw near (with ad and acc., or with  
 dat.). 53  
 apud, prep., used with accusative,  
 among, in the presence of, near, at the  
 house of. 39  
 aqua, -ae, f., water. 1  
 aquaeductus, -ūs, m., aqueduct.  
 Arar, Araris, m., the Arar, now the Saone  
 (a river in France).  
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think. 50  
 arbor, -oris, f., tree. 40  
 arca, -ae, f., box, chest. 1  
 Ardea, -ae, f., Ardea, a town in Latium.

**ardeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum**, be on fire, burn, blaze.  
**arēna, -ae, f.**, sand, arena.  
**argentum, -ī, n.**, silver, money.  
**Arīōn, -onis, m.**, Arion.  
**Aristidēs, -is, m.**, Aristides.  
**arithmētica, -ae, f.**, arithmetic.  
**arma, -ōrum, n.**, arms, weapons, defensive arms, weapons for close fighting. 11  
**armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, arm, equip. 42  
**arripīō, -ere, arripui, arreptum**, snatch up.  
**ars, artis, f.**, art, skill; branch of learning.  
**Ascanius, -ī, m.**, Ascanius, son of Aeneas.  
**ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum**, climb up. 60  
**Asia, -ae, f.**, Asia. 10  
**asylum, -ī, n.**, place of refuge, asylum.  
**at, conj.**, yet, but yet.  
**Atalanta, -ae, f.**, Atalanta.  
**Athēnae, -ārum, f.**, Athens. 50  
**Athēniēnsis, -e, m.**, Athenian.  
**atque, conj.** (same as **ac**), and, and also, and even; as; **simul atque (ac)**, as soon as. 21, 36  
**ātrium, -ī, n.**, atrium, the principal apartment of a Roman house.  
**auctor, -ōris, m.**, author, originator, founder, sponsor. 56  
**auctōritās, -tātis, f.**, authority, influence, prestige. 26  
**audācia, -ae, f.**, boldness, daring. 12  
**audācter, adv.**, boldly, rashly. 31  
**audāx, -ācis, bold, daring.** 18  
**audeō, -ēre, ausus sum**, dare. 55  
**audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum**, hear, listen to. 30  
**augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum**, increase, strengthen. 56  
**Augustus, -ī, m.**, Augustus.  
**aura, -ae, f.**, air, breeze.  
**Aurelius, -ī, m.**, Aurelius.  
**aureus, -a, -um**, golden, of gold. 34  
**auris, -is, f.**, ear. 46  
**aurum, -ī, n.**, gold. 42  
**aut, conj.**, or; **aut . . aut**, either . . or. 21  
**autem, conj.** (always postpositive), however, but, moreover, and. 42  
**auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum**, help, bring aid.

**auxilium, -ī, n.**, aid, help; pl., auxiliary forces, troops, reinforcements. 11  
**avis, avis, f.**, bird. 26  
**avus, -ī, m.**, grandfather.

## B

**barbarus, -a, -um**, foreign, strange, barbarous, barbarian, uncivilized. 33  
**Baucis, -idis, f.**, Baucis.  
**beātus, -a, -um, adj.**, happy, well-off.  
**Belgae, -ārum, m.**, Belgians.  
**bellum, -ī, n.**, war; **bellum gerere**, wage war, **bellum inferre**, make war on, make an attack on (with dat.). 5, 22, 52  
**bene, adv.**, well, fully. 9  
**beneficium, -ī, n.**, kindness, favor. 59  
**benignē, adv.**, kindly, in a kind way.  
**benignitās, -tātis, f.**, kindness.  
**bibō, -ere, bibī, drink.** 25  
**bīdūum, -ī, n.**, period of two days, two days.  
**bis, num. adv.**, twice. 55  
**bonitās, -tātis, f.**, kindness, goodness.  
**bonum, -ī, n.**, good thing; in pl., goods.  
**bonus, -a, -um (comp., melior; sup., optimus), adj.**, good. 6, 35  
**brevis, -e, adj.**, short, brief; **brevi tempore** or **brevi**, in a short time, soon. 18  
**brevitās, -tātis, f.**, shortness, brevity.  
**breviter, adv.**, briefly. 31  
**Britannia, -ae, f.**, Britain. 21  
**Britannus, -a, -um**, British, as noun, Briton. 18  
**Brūtus, -ī, m.**, Brutus.  
**Būcephala, -ae, f.**, Bucephala, a town on the Hydaspes founded by Alexander.  
**Būcephalus, -ī, m.**, Bucephalus, the name of Alexander's horse.

## C

**C.**, abbreviation for **Gāius, -ī, m.**  
**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum**, fall. 55  
**caecus, -a, -um**, blind.

- caedēs, -is, f., slaughter, murder. 54**  
**caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, cut, cut down, kill. 55**  
**caelum, -ī, n., sky, heavens. 5**  
**Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar. 15**  
**calamitās, -tātis, f., calamity, misfortune, disaster. 43**  
**calefaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factum, to make warm, heat.**  
**calidus, -a, -um, hot. 43**  
**campus, -ī, m., plain, (level) field. 4**  
**Campus Martius, The Field of Mars, originally used for military exercises and athletic sports.**  
**canis, -is, m. or f., dog. 26**  
**Cannae, -ārum, f., Cannae, village in Apulia.**  
**canō, -ere, cecini, —, sing; prophesy.**  
**cantus, -ūs, m., singing.**  
**capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum, take, capture; cōnsilium capere, form (make) a plan. 24**  
**Capitolinus, -a, -um, adj., of (on) the Capitoline Hill, Capitoline.**  
**Capitolium, -ī, n., Capitoline Hill.**  
**captivus, -a, -um, adj., captive.**  
**captivus, -ī, m., captive, prisoner. 11**  
**captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, catch.**  
**Capua, -ae, f., Capua.**  
**caput, -itis, n., head. 15**  
**Carbo, -ōnis, m., Carbo.**  
**carcer, carceris, m., prison.**  
**carmen, -minis, n., song, poem, incantation. 15**  
**carō, carnis, f., flesh.**  
**carrus, -ī, m., cart, wagon. 12**  
**Carthaginiēnsēs, -ium, m., Carthaginians.**  
**Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city in Africa. 50**  
**Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman.**  
**castigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rebuke, punish.**  
**castra, -ōrum, n., camp. 11**  
**cāsus, -ūs, m., fall, chance; accident, fate. 56**  
**causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; quā dē cāusā for which reason: causā, for the sake of.**  
**cavus, -a, -um, hollow. 13, 39, 59**  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, move, give way, yield, withdraw. 23**  
**celer, celeris, celere, adj., quick, swift, speedy. 18**  
**celeritās, -tātis, f., swiftness, speed. 14**  
**celeriter, adv., quickly, swiftly; quam celeritē, as quickly as possible. 31, 36**  
**cēna, -ae, f., dinner. 21**  
**cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dine, sup.**  
**centum, num. adj., indecl., one hundred, a hundred. 21**  
**centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion. 44**  
**Cēpheus, -ī, m., Cepheus.**  
**certāmen, -inis, n., contest, struggle; certāmen pedum, foot race.**  
**certē, adv., surely, certainly. 33**  
**certus, -a, -um, adj., sure, certain; certiorē, (-ēs) facere, make more certain, inform; certior (-em) fierī, be informed. 33**  
**cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., the other, the rest (of). 56**  
**Christiānus, -a, -um Christian.**  
**cibus, -ī, m., food. 28**  
**Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero.**  
**Cimōn, -ōnis, m., Cimon, an Athenian general.**  
**Cincinnātus, -ī, m., Cincinnatus.**  
**circā, adv., about; as prep., with acc., about, around**  
**Circē, -ēs, abl. -ē, f., Circe.**  
**circiter, adv., about, approximately. 55**  
**circum, prep., with acc., around, about; adv., about, around. 39**  
**circumveniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventum, come around, surround. 41**  
**cīvis, -is, m. and f., citizen, fellow citizen. 16**  
**cīvitās, -tātis, f., citizenship, citizenry, state. 27**  
**clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout repeatedly.**  
**clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, shout. 10**  
**clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, noise. 26**  
**clārus, -a, -um, bright, clear; famous. 23**  
**classis, -is, f., fleet. 53**  
**Claudius, -ī, m., Claudius.**  
**claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close. 38**  
**clāva, -ae, f., stick, club.**

**Cleopatra**, -ae, f., Cleopatra.  
**coepī**, -isse, **coeptum** began. 58  
**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think over.  
**cognōmen**, -inis, n., surname; new (added) name.  
**cognōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out, learn; (in perf., know). 39  
**cōgō**, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, collect, compel (with inf.). 22  
**cohors**, **cohortis**, f., cohort. 59  
**collis**, -is, m., hill. 40  
**colloquium**, -ī, n., conversation, conference. 51  
**committō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust (to); **proelium committere**, join (begin) battle, begin an engagement. 28  
**commoror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay, stay.  
**commoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move thoroughly, upset, alarm. 41  
**commūnis**, -e, adj., common, general. 47  
**comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, get; prepare; buy; compare. 53  
**compellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive together.  
**comperiō**, -īre, -perī, -pertum, find out, discover.  
**complector**, -plectī, -plexus sum, embrace, grasp.  
**compleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, fill up, complete. 41  
**complūrēs**, -a, adj., quite a few, several. 56  
**cōnātus**, -ūs, m., attempt, effort.  
**concurrō**, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run together, run.  
**condiciō**, -ōnis, f., condition, terms, 43  
**condō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put away.  
**condūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring together.  
**cōnferō**, -ferre, -tulī, **collātum**, bring together, collect; compare, (refl.) proceed. 52  
**cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, accomplish; exhaust. 24  
**cōnfidō**, -ere, -fīsus sum, trust (used with dat. of person, abl. of thing) entrust. 57  
**cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strengthen; encourage; declare; **pācem cōnfirmāre**, arrange (establish) peace. 10

**congregior**, -gredī, -gressus sum, meet, come together. 51  
**coniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, hurl. 24  
**coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, join together, unite. 60  
**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt (used with infin.). 50  
**cōnscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb; board, go aboard. 60  
**cōnscrībō**, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, enroll, enlist. 53  
**cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, m., agreement, unanimity.  
**cōnsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, pursue, overtake, obtain, gain. 51  
**cōnservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save, keep. 49  
**cōnsidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down, encamp, settle. 56  
**cōnsilium**, -ī, n., plan, advice, foresight; **cōnsilium capere**, form a plan; **cōnsilium inīre**, adopt a plan. 11, 24, 60  
**cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, halt, take a stand; **cōnsistere in** + abl., consist of.  
**cōnspectus**, -ūs, m., sight, view.  
**cōnspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at attentively, observe closely. 41  
**cōnstat** (impers.), it is well-known, it is evident.  
**cōnstituō**, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, set up, determine, decide; establish; **diem cōstituere**, appoint a day. 23  
**cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -ēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; in the perfect tenses, be accustomed. 58  
**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, f., habit, custom. 43  
**cōnsul**, -ulis, m., consul. 14  
**cōnsulō**, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, with acc., consult; with dat., consult the interests of, take counsel for. 57  
**cōnsūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume.  
**contegō**, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover.  
**contendō**, -ere, -dī, -tentum, strive, struggle, hasten. 23  
**contineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold together, restrain; bound. 32  
**continuuus**, -a, -um, adj., continuous, without interruption.



**contrā**, adv., *opposite, on the contrary, in reply.*

**contrā**, prep., with acc., *against, opposite.* 8

**contrōversia**, -ae, f., *quarrel, argument.*

**conveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come together, assemble, meet.* 30. **convenit**, impers. *it is convenient.* 56

**conventus**, -ūs, m., *meeting, gathering.*

**convertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn, change, transform.*

**convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call together, assemble, summon.* 7

**coorior**, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *arise.*

**cōpia**, -ae, f., *plenty, supply; pl., troops, forces.* 11

**cor**, cordis, n., *heart*

**Corinthus**, -ī, f., *Corinth.* 50

**Coriolānus**, -ī, m., *Coriolanus.*

**Cornēlius**, -ī, m., *Cornelius.*

**cornū**, -ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army); ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing; ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing.* 29, 34

**corpus**, -oris, n., *body.* 15

**corripio**, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, *grasp quickly or violently, seize, snatch.*

**Cortōna**, -ae, f., *a town of Etruria.*

**cotidiē**, adv., *daily, every day.* 36

**crās**, adv., *tomorrow.* 9

**crassus**, -a, -um, *fat.*

**crēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *trust, believe (used with dat.).* 39

**creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *appoint, elect.*

**Creōn**, Creontis, m., *Creon.*

**crēscō**, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow, increase.* 38

**Crēta**, -ae, f., *Crete.*

**Creūsa**, -ae, f., *Creusa.*

**Croesus**, -ī, m., *Croesus.*

**crūdēlis**, -e, *cruel, unmerciful.*

**cum**, prep., with abl., *along with, with.* 6

**cum**, conj., *when, since (with subjunctive), although (with subjunctive).*

**cum primum**, *as soon as (used with indic.), when first.* 49

**cupidē**, *eagerly.*

**cupiditās**, -tātis, f., *desire (for), greed (for) (used with genitive).* 40

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *eager; eager (for), desirous (of) (used with genitive).* 34

**cupiō**, -ere, cupivī, cupitum, *want, wish, desire.* 24

**cūr**, adv., *why?* 9

**cūra**, -ae, f., *care, anxiety.* 12

**Curiātius**, -ī, m., *Curiatius.*

**currō**, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.* 25

**cursus**, -ūs, m., *running, course; quick motion.* 29

**custōs**, -ōdis, m., *guard, guardian.* 59

**Cyclōps**, -ōpis, m., *Cyclops; pl. Cyclopes.*

## D

**damnum**, -ī, n., *damage, injury.*

**Daunus**, -ī, m., *Daunus, king, father of Turnus.*

**dē**, prep., with abl., *down from, from; about, concerning; of; quā dē causā, for which (this) reason, on this account.* 5

**dea**, -ae, f., *goddess.* 4

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *owe, ought. grā-tiam dēbere, be under an obligation.* 20

**decem**, num, adj., indecl., *ten.* 21

**decimus**, -a, -um, num, adj., *tenth.* 21

**dēdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *give up.*

**dēducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead down; lead away, bring down; escort; launch (a ship).* 60

**dēfendō**, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, *defend.* 22

**dēferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring; report.* 60

**dēfessus**, -a, -um, adj., *tired.* 49

**dēficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *revolt, desert (used with ā, ab and abl.); fail, be deficient.* 41

**dēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down; disappoint.*

**deinde**, adv., *then, next.* 36

**dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *please.* 14

**dēleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy.*

**dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose.* 23

**Delphī**, -ōrum, m., *Delphi, a town famous for its oracle of Apollo.*

**delphīnus**, -ī, m., *dolphin.*

**dēmittō, -ere, mīsi, -missum**, send down, let go down, lower, let fall.

**dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, point out, show. 10

**dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum**, drive away.

**dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**, put down, put aside, give up, lay aside.

**dērideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum**, mock, laugh at.

**dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -scēsum**, climb down, descend. 60

**dēsiderium, -ī, n.**, desire, longing.

**dēsiliō, -ire, -uī, —**, leap down.

**dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum**, leave off, stop, desist. 38

**dēsperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, lose hope, despair.

**dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum**, draw.

**dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, defutūrus**, be lacking. 57

**dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, frighten off, deter.

**deus, -ī, m.**, god. 4

**dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, eat, devour.

**dexter, -tra, -trum, adj.**, right, right-hand; **ā dextrā**, on the right. 34

**dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum**, say, tell. 25

**dictis, -ōris, m.**, dictator.

**Didō, Didōnis, f.**, Dido, queen of Carthage.

**diēs, -ēī, m. and f.**, day; **diēs cōstitutā**, the appointed day; **multō diē**, late in the day. 31

**difficilis, -e, adj.** (superl., **difficillimus**), difficult. 34

**difficultās, -tātis, f.**, difficulty. 43

**diligēns, -gentis, adj.**, careful, diligent. 33

**diligenter, adv.**, carefully, diligently. 33

**diligentia, -ae, f.**, diligence, care. 15

**dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum**, send (let go) in different directions, let go away, send away, dismiss. 41

**discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, go away, depart, leave. 23

**disciplīna, -ae, f.**, instruction, teaching.

**discipulus, -ī, m.**, student.

**discō, -ere, didici, learn.** 53

**discrīmen, -inis, n.**, danger, crisis.

**discus, -ī, m.**, discus.

**disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum**, throw apart, scatter.

**dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**, distribute, arrange, post.

**dissimilis, -e** (superl., **dissimillimus**), unlike, unlike to (with dat.). 34

**diū, adv.**, for a long time, long; **quam diū**, how long? 9 **diūtius**, for a longer time, any longer; **diutissimē**, for a very long time, for the longest time. 36

**dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum**, tear apart.

**dīversus, -a, -um**, turned apart, different.

**dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visum**, divide, share.

**dō, dare, dedī, datum**, give, grant; **in fugam dare**, to put to flight; **poenam dare**, to pay the penalty; **sē in viam dare**, to start on one's way; in compounds, put, place.

**doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum**, teach, show, inform (used with two accusatives). 20

**doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitum**, grieve, be sorry, grieve for. 56

**dolor, -ōris, m.**, pain, grief, suffering, sorrow. 44

**dolus, -ī, m.**, trick, craft.

**domesticus, -a, -um**, household.

**domina, -ae, f.**, mistress (of a house).

**dominus, -ī, m.**, master, lord, owner. 12

**domus, -ūs, f.** (locative, **domī**), house, home; **domī**, at home; **domum** (acc.), homeward, home. 29, 50

**donō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to give; to present. house

**dōnum, -ī, n.**, gift, present. 5

**dormiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum**, sleep. 30

**dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, be in doubt, doubt; hesitate (used with infin.). 38

**dubius, -a, -um**, doubtful, uncertain.

**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum**, lead, bring; **in matrimōnium dūcere**, marry; **sortēs dūcere**, draw lots. 22

**dūdum, adv.**, a while ago; **iam dūdum**, for a long time now.

**dulcēdo, dulcēdinis, f.**, sweetness.

**dulcis, -e, adj.**, pleasant, sweet.

**dum, conj.**, while, as long as; until.

**duo, duae, duo, num. adj.**, two. 21

**duodecim**, num. adj., indecl., *twelve*. 21  
**duodēvigintī**, num. adj., indecl., *eighteen*. 47  
**dūrus**, -a, -um, *hard, harsh*. 34  
**dux, ducis**, m., *leader, guide*. 14

## E

**ē** or **ex**, prep., with abl., *out of, from; of*. 5  
**ēbrius**, -a, -um, *drunk*.  
**edō**, -ere, **ēdī**, **ēsum**, *eat*. 25  
**ēdō**, -ere, **ēdidī**, **ēditum**, *give forth; produce*.  
**ēdūcō**, -ere, -**dūxī**, -**dūctum**, *lead out*.  
**efficiō**, -ere, -**fēcī**, -**fectum**, *accomplish, bring about; complete, put into effect*. 48  
**ego, meī**, pers. pron., I. 26  
**ēgredior**, -**gredī**, -**gressus sum**, *go out, disembark*. 51  
**ēgregius**, -a, -um, *outstanding*. 54  
**elephantus**, -ī, m., *elephant*.  
**Elissa**, -ae, f., *Elissa*, also called *Dido*, queen of Carthage.  
**ēmīcō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *spring out, leap forth*.  
**ēmīttō**, -ere, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, *send out, let out*.  
**emō**, *emere*, **ēmī**, **ēemptum**, *take; buy*. 55  
**enim**, conj., postpositive, *for*. 42  
**ēnūntiō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *report, announce, declare*. 41  
**eō**, *ire*, **ī** (**ivī**), **itum**, *go*. 52  
**eō**, adv., *there, thither, to that place*. 36  
**eōs**, *them*.  
**Epīrus**, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a district in north-western Greece.  
**epistula**, -ae, f., *a letter, an epistle*. 13  
**eques**, -itis, m., *horseman, knight*; pl., *cavalry*. 25 **magister equitum**, *Master of Horse, second in command to a dictator*.  
**equester**, -tris, -tre, adj., (of) *cavalry*.  
**equitātus**, -ūs, m., *cavalry*. 59  
**equus**, -ī, m., *horse*. 4  
**erat**, *was*.  
**ergō**, adv., *therefore, then*. 45

**ēripiō**, -ere, -**ripuī**, -**reptum**, *rescue*. 57  
**errō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *wander; make a mistake*. 42  
**est**, *is*.  
**et**, conj., *and, also, even; et . . . et*, both . . . and. 2, 21  
**etiam**, adv., *also, even; nōn solum . . . sed etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . .* 30  
**etsī**, conj., *even if, although*.  
**Eurōpa**, -ae, f., *Europe*. 3  
**Eurylochus**, -ī, m., *Eurylochus*.  
**evādō**, -ere, -**vāsī**, -**vāsum**, *get out, get away, escape*.  
**evānēscō**, -ere, **evānuī**, *vanish away*.  
**eveniō**, -ire, -**vēni**, -**ventum**, *come out; turn out, happen*.  
**ex**, *from, out of, on the basis of, of; ex ordine*, *in order*. 5  
**exanimō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *make lifeless; kill*.  
**exārdescō**, -ere, **exārsī**, -**arsum**, *blaze up*.  
**excēdō**, -ere, -**cessī**, -**cessum**, *go out, leave, depart*. 23  
**excipio**, -ere, -**cēpī**, -**ceptum**, *receive*.  
**excitō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *arouse, awaken*.  
**exclāmō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *shout out*.  
**exclūdō**, -ere, -**sī**, -**sum**, *shut out, cut off*.  
**excōgitō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *think out, think up*.  
**exeō**, -ire, -**ī** (**-ivī**), -**itum**, *go out*. 52  
**exerceō**, *ēre*, -**uī**, -**itum**, *train, practice, exercise*. 53  
**exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*. 29  
**exhauriō**, -ire, -**hausī**, -**haustum**, *drain*.  
**existimō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *think, suppose, consider*. 39  
**exitus**, -ūs, m., *departure, way out; outcome, end*. 29  
**expellō**, -ere, -**pulī**, -**pulsum**, *drive out, drive away*. 28  
**explōrātor**, -ōris, m., *scout*. 59  
**explōrō**, -āre, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, *search out, explore, reconnoiter*. 56  
**expōnō**, -ere, -**posuī**, -**positum**, *set forth, explain; land; array*. 41  
**exprimō**, -ere, -**pressī**, -**pressum**, *squeeze out*.

**expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, take by storm.  
**exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, await; wait for.

7

**expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, breathe out; expire, die.

**exterior, -ius**, outer. 35

**extrēmus, -a, -um**, outermost, farthest, last; end of. 35

**exturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, drive out

## F

**faber, fabrī, m.**, smith.

**Fabius, -ī, m.**, a Roman gens.; **L. Fabius Maximus**, Hannibal's enemy.

**Fabricius, -ī, m.**, Fabricius.

**fābula, -ae, f.**, story. 13

**fac**: imperative of **faciō**.

**facile, adv.**, easily; **minus facile**, less easily. 36

**facilis, -e, adj.**, easy. 18

**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum**, make, do; **certiōrem (ēs) facere**, inform; **iter facere**, march; **fac (facite) ut**, see to it that. 24

**facultās, -tātis, f.**, opportunity, chance; ability. 53

**Faliscus, -a, -um, adj.**, of Falerii, a people north of Rome.

**falx, falcis, f.**, sickle; curved sword.

**fāma, -ae, f.**, report; rumor; reputation. 11

**famēs, -is, abl. -ē, f.**, hunger, famine.

**familia, -ae, f.**, household.

**familiāris, -e**, belonging to the household, of the family, intimate; **rēs familiāris, reī familiāris, f.**, family property.

**Favōnius, -ī, m.**, the West Wind.

**fēlicitās, -tātis, f.**, good luck.

**fēliciter, adv.**, happily, successfully, fortunately. 33

**fēlix (gen. fēlicis)**, happy, fortunate, lucky. 33

**fēmina, -ae, f.**, woman, wife. 1

**fenestra, -ae, f.**, window. 21

**ferē, adv.**, almost, nearly. 55

**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**, bear, carry, bring, take; relate. 52

**ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron, sword, swords, weapons; **ferrō et igne**, with fire and sword. 42

**ferus, -a, -um**, wild, fierce, savage. 6

**fessus, -a, -um, adj.**, tired, weary.

**fidēlis, -e, adj.**, faithful, loyal. 34

**fidēs, -eī, f.**, faith, loyalty; pledge; confidence. **in fidem, in fidē**, under the protection. 46

**fidus, -a, -um**, faithful, reliable, loyal.

**figūra, -ae, f.**, shape.

**fīlia, -ae, f.**, daughter. 4

**fīlius, -ī, m.**, son. 4

**finis, -is, m.**, end; boundary; pl., territory. 16

**fīnitimī, -ōrum, m.**, neighbors. 23

**fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj.**, neighboring. 23

**fīō, fierī, factus sum**, be made; become; happen. **certior (certiōrēs) fierī**, be informed. 54

**Flaccus, -ī, m.**, Flaccus, a cognomen.

**Flāminius, -ī, m.**, C. Flaminius, defeated and killed at Trasumenus.

**flōs, flōris, m.**, flower. 44

**fluctus, -ūs, m.**, wave. 29

**flūmen, -inis, n.**, river, stream. 15

**fōns, fontis, m.**, spring.

**forās, adv.**, (to) outside, outdoors.

**foris, -is, f.**, door.

**forīs, adv.**, out of doors, outside.

**fōrma, -ae, f.**, appearance, beauty.

**fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj.**, beautiful.

**forte, adv.**, by chance, by accident.

**fortis, -e, adj.**, brave. 18

**fortiter, adv.**, bravely; **quam fortissimē**, as bravely as possible. 31

**fortūna, -ae, f.**, fortune, chance, luck. 1

**forum, forī, n.**, forum, marketplace. 46

**Forum, -ī, n.**, the Forum (in Rome). 46

**fossa, -ae, f.**, ditch. 44

**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum**, break. 38

**frāter, -tris, m.**, brother. 14

**frēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, bridle; restrain.

**frigidus, -a, -um**, cold. 43

**frōns, frontis, f.**, forehead.

**frūctus, -ūs, m.**, fruit; reward.

**frūmentārius, -a, -um**, pertaining to grain, of grain; **rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f.**, grain supply, forage. 31

**frumentor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *fetch grain*.  
**frumentum**, -ī, n., *grain*. 5  
**frustrā**, adv., *in vain*. 55  
**fuga**, -ae, f., *flight, exile; in fugam dare*,  
*put to flight*. 11  
**fugiō**, -ere, fūgī, **fugitum**, *flee*. 24  
**fūr**, fūris, m., *thief*.  
**furor**, -ōris, m., *madness, rage*.

## G

**Gāius**, -ī, m., *Gaius*.  
**galea**, -ae, f., *helmet*.  
**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*. 1  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul*.  
**Gallus**, -a, -um, *Gallic, Gaul (noun)*. 18  
**gaudium**, -ī, n., *joy, gladness*. 32  
**gēns**, gentis, f., *nation, family, clan*. 16  
**genus**, -eris, n., *kind, class, sort, race*. 44  
**Germānia**, -ae, f., *Germany*. 3  
**Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German*. 15  
**gerō**, -ere, gessī, **gestum**, *bear, wear; carry on; bellum gerere, wage war; rēs gestae, deeds, accomplishments*. 22, 31  
**Geta**, -ae, m., *Geta*.  
**gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*. 4  
**glōria**, ae, f., *fame, glory*. 40  
**Gorgō**, -onis, f., *a Gorgon*.  
**gradior**, -i, **gressus sum**, *walk, go*.  
**Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*. 21  
**Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek*. 15  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*. 15  
**grammatica**, -ae, f., *grammar, elementary study of literature*.  
**grātē**, *gratefully, pleasantly*. 13  
**grātia**, -ae, f., *influence, favor; gratitude, welcomeness, pleasingness; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, feel gratitude; grātiām dēbēre, be under an obligation; grātiām referre, show gratitude; grātiā, for the sake*. 58, 59  
**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, welcome, grateful*. 13  
**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, serious*. 18  
**gravitās**, -tātis, f., *heaviness, seriousness, weightiness, severity*.

**graviter**, adv., *weightily, heavily; seriously, grievously, deeply, severely*. 31  
**gubernō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *steer*.  
**gustō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *taste*.

## H

**habeō**, -ēre, habuī, -itum, *have, hold, keep; consider; orātiōnem habēre, deliver a speech; grātiām habēre, feel gratitude*. 17, 44, 58  
**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *live, dwell*. 7  
**Hannibal**, -balis, m., *Hannibal*.  
**Hannō**, Hannōnis, m., *Hanno, A Carthaginian general*.  
**Helvētia**, -ae, f., *Helvetia*. 21  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian*. 18  
**herba**, -ae, f., *herb, plant, grass*. 37  
**Herculāneum**, -ī, n., *Herculaneum*.  
**herī**, adv., *yesterday*. 9  
**hiberna**, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters, winter camp*. 44  
**hic**, adv., *here, at this point*.  
**hic**, haec, hoc, gen. **huius**, dem. pron. and adj., *this; this . . . here, the latter; he, she, it*. 25  
**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *spend the winter, winter*. 55  
**hiems**, hiemis, f., *winter*. 20  
**Hippomenēs**, -is, m., *Hippomenes*.  
**Hispānia**, -ae, f., *Spain*. 3  
**Hispānus**, -a, -um, *Spanish*. 15  
**hodiē**, adv., *today*. 9  
**Homērus**, -ī, m., *Homer*.  
**homō**, -inis, m. or f., *human being, man*. 27  
**hōra**, -ae, f., *hour*. 13  
**Horātius**, -ī, m., *Horatius*.  
**horribilis**, -e, adj., *dreadful, horrible*.  
**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *encourage, urge*. 50  
**hortus**, -ī, m., *garden*. 27  
**hospes**, -itis, *guest; stranger; host*. 53  
**hospitium**, -ī, n., *hospitality*.  
**Hostilius**, -ī, m., *Hostilius, a cognomen*.  
**hostis**, -is, m., *enemy (of the State); pl., the enemy*. 16  
**hūc**, adv., *here, to this place*. 36  
**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj., *human*.



**humī**, locative of **humus**, on the ground.  
**humus**, -ī, f., earth, soil; grave.  
**Hydaspēs**, -is, m., a river of India.

## I

**iaceō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, lie. 58  
**iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw. 24  
**iam**, adv., now, already; **nōn iam**, no longer; **iam dūdum**, now for a long time. 9  
**iānua**, -ae, f., door. 31  
**Iāsōn**, Iāsonis, m., Jason.  
**ibi**, adv., there, in that place. 9  
**ictus**, -ūs, m., stroke, blow.  
**idem**, eadem, **idem**, dem. pron. and adj., the same. 37  
**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., suitable. 34  
**igitur**, conj., postpositive, therefore, then.  
**ignārus**, -a, -um, adj., ignorant, unknowing.  
**ignis**, -is, m., fire. 16  
**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, not know, be ignorant of.  
**ignōtus**, -a, -um, adj., unknown, strange.  
**Īlias**, -adis, f., the Iliad.  
**ille**, illa, illud, gen., illius, dem. pron. and adj., that; that . . . there; the former; he, she, it. 25  
**illūc**, adv., there, to that place there. 36  
**imber**, -bris, m., rain, shower.  
**immānitās**, immānitātis, f., inhumanity, cruelty.  
**immortālis**, -e, adj., undying, immortal. 47  
**imparātus**, -a, -um, unprepared.  
**impedimentum**, -ī, n., hindrance; pl., heavy baggage. 11  
**impediō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hinder. 30  
**impeditus**, -a, -um, hindered, handicapped, in difficulty. 49  
**impellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive on.  
**imperātor**, -ōris, m., commander, general, emperor. 14  
**imperium**, -ī, n., command, sovereignty, military power, empire, government. 14  
**imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, levy (soldiers); order, command (governs dat., followed

by **ut** with the subjunctive); order (acc.) from (dat.) 45  
**impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, obtain by request, gain one's request.  
**impetus**, -ūs, m., attack, onrush; **impetum facere in** (acc.), attack. 29  
**īmus**, -a, -um, lowest; lowest part of; bottom of. 35  
**in**, prep., with abl., in, on, upon, over; with acc., into, onto, against, towards, for. 5  
**incendō**, -ere, -cendi, -cēsum, set on fire, burn; arouse. 49  
**incertus**, -a, -um, uncertain.  
**incidō**, -ere, -cidi, —, fall on, fall upon, fall into.  
**incipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin. 24  
**incito**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stir up, arouse. 41  
**includō**, -ere, -sī, -sum, shut in.  
**incolō**, -ere, -uī, — (intrans.), live, dwell; (trans.), inhabit, live in. 58  
**incolumis**, -e, adj., unharmed.  
**inde**, adv., from here, hence; from there, thence. 59  
**Indī**, -ōrum, m., Indians.  
**induō**, -ere, -duī, -dūtum, put on.  
**ineō**, -ire, -iī (ivī), -itum, enter, begin, **consilium inire**, adopt a plan. 60  
**infāns**, -antis, m. or f., baby. 59  
**infectus**, -a, -um, adj., not done.  
**inferior**, -ius, lower. 35  
**inferō**, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring upon, carry onward, inflict; **bellum inferre**, make (offensive) war on, (with dat.); **signa inferre**, advance (to the attack). 52  
**inferus**, -a, -um, low.  
**īnfirmus**, -a, -um, lowest, bottom of. 35  
**ingēns**, ingentis, adj., huge.  
**ingrātus**, -a, -um, ungrateful, unpleasing, unwelcome.  
**inimicitia**, -ae, f., enmity, unfriendliness.  
**inimicus**, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; unfriendly to (used with dat.); **inimicus**, -ī, m., (personal enemy). 13  
**iniquus**, -a, -um, adj., uneven, unfavorable; unfair. 33  
**initium**, -ī, n., beginning. 51

iniūria, -ae, f., injustice, injury, wrong. 21  
 inopia, -ae, f., want, lack, need, poverty. 12  
 inquam, inquis, inquit, say. 32  
 inruō, -ere, -ruī, —, rush in.  
 insānia, -ae, f., insanity.  
 insidiae, -arum, f., ambush, trap, plot.  
 43  
 instituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum, establish,  
 build, set up; determine. 53  
 instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, pile up,  
 arrange, draw up, equip. 38  
 insula, -ae, f., island. 1  
 integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched, un-  
 diminished; whole, entire; upright. 54  
 intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand.  
 39  
 inter, prep. with acc., between, among; in-  
 ter sē, (nōs, vōs) each other, one another.  
 intereā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.  
 53  
 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill. 24  
 interim, adv., meanwhile. 9  
 interior, -ius, adj., inner. 35  
 intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, inter-  
 rupt, stop, pause; lose; intermissus, -a,  
 -um, interposed; of time, having elapsed.  
 41  
 intimus, -a, -um, inmost. 35  
 intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.  
 introitus, -ūs, m., entrance.  
 inūtilis, -e, adj., useless.  
 inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon,  
 find. 30  
 invenīrī, to be found.  
 inventor, -ōris, m., discoverer.  
 invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite.  
 invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsius, dem.  
 pron. and adj., self, himself, etc.; ego  
 ipse, I myself; nōs ipsī, we ourselves; tū  
 ipse, you yourself; vōs ipsī, you your-  
 selves. 37  
 ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath. 12  
 irāscor, -ī, irātus sum, become angry.  
 is, ea, id, gen., eius, dem. pron. and  
 adj., this, that; he, she, it, they. 25  
 iste, ista, istud, gen., istius, dem. pron.  
 and adj., that, that of yours.

ita, adv., so (manner), in such a way, thus.  
 48

Italia, -ae, f., Italy. 1

itaque, adv., and so, therefore. 31

item, adv., likewise. 55

iter, itineris, n., a route; journey, march;  
 magnum iter, a forced (unusually long)  
 march; ex itinere, (from) on the march;  
 iter facere, march. 15, 24

iterum, adv., a second time, again.

Ithaca, -ae, f., Ithaca.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, bid (used  
 with acc. and inf.). valere iubeō, bid fare-  
 well. 32

iucundus, -a, -um, pleasing.

iūdex, -icis, m., juror; judge. 26

iūdicium, -ī, n., trial; judgment. 43

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, judge, consider.  
 39

iugum, -ī, n., ridge; yoke.

Iūlia, -ae, f., Julia. 13

Iūlius, -ī, m., Julius. 13

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join. 38

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, swear; iūs iūran-  
 dum, n., oath.

iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; iūs iūr-  
 andum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath. 44

iussus, ūs, m., order, command.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., right, just. 33

Iūturna, -ae, f., Iuturna, a nymph, sister  
 of Turnus.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid. 58

iuvenis, -e, young.

## L

L. = Lūcius.

lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, to slip

labor, -ōris, m., difficulty, hardship, work.  
 27

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, labor, suffer, be  
 hard pressed. 7

lac, lactis, n., milk.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 59

lacus, -ūs, m., lake.

**Laelius**, -ī, m., a gentile name.  
**laetitia**, -ae, f., gladness.  
**laetus**, -a, -um, adj., happy, joyful, glad. 33  
**lāmenta**, -ōrum, n. pl., lamentations.  
**lapis**, -idis, m., stone. 26  
**Lārinās**, **Lārinātis**, adj., of Larinum.  
**lassitūdō**, -dinis, f., weariness.  
**lātē**, adv., widely; **longē lātēque**, far and wide. 11  
**lateō**, -ēre, -uī, be hidden, lie hidden.  
**Latīnī**, -ōrum, m., the Latins.  
**Latinus**, -ī, m., Latinus.  
**lātītūdō**, -inis, f., width. 44  
**latrō**, -ōnis, m., pirate, bandit.  
**latus**, -eris, n., side, flank. 56  
**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide. 6  
**laudō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise. 2  
**laus**, **laudis**, f., praise. 59  
**Lāvīnia**, -ae, f., Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus and Queen Amata.  
**lavō**, -āre, **lāvī**, **lautum**, wash. 38  
**lectus**, -ī, m., dining couch, bed. 31  
**lēgātus**, -ī, m., lieutenant (second in command to a general); ambassador, envoy. 4  
**legiō**, -ōnis, f., legion. 26  
**legō**, -ere, **lēgī**, **lēctum**, choose; gather; read. 39  
**leō**, **leōnis**, m., lion.  
**levis**, -e, adj., light (in weight or importance), slight. 54  
**leviter**, adv., lightly, slightly. 54  
**lēx**, **lēgis**, f., law. 27  
**libenter**, adv., gladly, willingly.  
**libentissimē**, adv., most willingly, most gladly.  
**liber**, **librī**, m., book. 12  
**liber**, -era, -erum, adj., free. 8 **liberī**, -ōrum, m., children. 40  
**liberālītās**, -ātis, f., generosity, liberality.  
**liberē**, adv., freely, frankly. 11  
**liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free, free. 10  
**libertās**, -ātis, f., freedom, liberty. 26  
**licet**, -ēre, -uit, impers. (with dat.) it is permitted. 56  
**ligneus**, -a, -um, adj., of wood, wooden.  
**lignum**, -ī, n., wood; piece of wood.

**līmen**, -inis, n., threshold.  
**lingua**, -ae, f., tongue, language. 1  
**littera**, -ae, f., letter of the alphabet; pl., letter, an epistle. 1  
**litus**, -oris, n., shore (of the sea). 59  
**locus**, -ī, m., pl., **loca**, n., place; location, situation. 12  
**longē**, adv., by far, far off; **longē lātēque**, far and wide. 11  
**longinquus**, -a, -um, adj., far off, distant, remote.  
**longus**, -a, -um, adj., long (usually of space); **nāvis longa**, warship. 6  
**loquor**, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, speak, talk. 50  
**lōtus**, -ī, f., lotus.  
**Lūcius**, -ī, m., Lucius. 13  
**luctor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, struggle, wrestle.  
**lūdō**, **lūdere**, **lūsī**, **lūsum**, play, mock. 38  
**lūdus**, -ī, m., game, play; school. 4  
**lūna**, -ae, f., moon. 40  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, f., light; **primā lūce**, at daybreak, at dawn. 20, 36  
**Lȳdia**, -ae, f., a country of Asia Minor.

## M

**M.** = Marcus.  
**Macedonia**, -ae, f., Macedonia, a country in Northern Greece  
**Macedonicus**, -a, -um, Macedonian.  
**Maecēnās**, -ātis, m., Maecenas, a famous Roman patron of letters.  
**magicus**, -a, -um, magical.  
**magis**, adv., comp. of **magnopere**, more greatly, more. 34  
**magister**, -trī, m., master, teacher, director.  
**magister equitum**, the Master of the Horse (cavalry) was the title of the Dictator's second-in-command.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, m., magistracy, public office, magistrate. 59  
**magnificē**, adv., splendidly, magnificently.  
**magnificus**, -a, -um, adj., splendid, magnificent.  
**magnitūdō**, -inis, f., size, greatness, great size. 44

**magnopere** (comp., **magis**; sup., **maximē**), adv., *greatly*. 34  
**magnus**, -a, -um (comp., **maior**; sup., **maximus**), adj., *large, great, loud; much* (of money). 6  
**maior**, -ius, comp. of **magnus**, adj., *greater, larger*; **maior nātū**: see **nātū**. 35  
**male**, adv., *badly, insufficiently*. 9  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui** (**magis** and **volō**, *wish more*), *wish rather, prefer*. 53  
**malus**, -a, -um (comp., **peior**; sup., **pes-simus**), adj., *bad, evil*. 6  
**mālus**, -ī, m., *mast*.  
**mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *entrust to; com-mand, instruct*. 45  
**maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, *stay, re-main*. 17  
**Mānlius**, -ī, m., *Manlius*, a gentile name.  
**manus**, -ūs, f., *hand; band*, (of men). 29  
**Mārcellus**, -ī, m., *Marcellus*.  
**Mārcius**, -ī, m., *Marcus*.  
**Mārcus**, -ī, m., *Marcus*. 13  
**Mārcus Antōnius**, **Mārci Antōni**, m., *Marc Antony*  
**mare**, -is, n., *sea*. 16  
**maritimus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the sea*. 54  
**Mārtius**, -a, -um, *of Mars*, (god of war).  
**māter**, -tris, f., *mother*. 14  
**mātrimōnium**, -ī, n., *marriage*; **in mātri-mōnium dūcere**, *marry*.  
**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten*.  
**maximē** adv., *most, most greatly, especially*. 34  
**maximus**, -a, -um, adj., sup. of **magnus**; **maximus nātū**: see **nātū**. 35  
**Maximus**, -ī, m., *Maximus*, a cognomen.  
**mea**, *my*.  
**Mēdēa**, -ae, f., *Medea*.  
**medicāmentum**, -ī, n., *drug*.  
**medicus**, -ī, m., *doctor, physician*.  
**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*; **mediā nocte**, *at midnight*; (**in**) **mediō monte**, *halfway up the mountain*. 35  
**Medūsa**, -ae, f., *Medusa*, a Gorgon.  
**meī**, (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself*. 40  
**melior**, -ōris, comp. of **bonus**, adj., *better*. 35  
**memoria**, -ae, f., *memory*.

**memoriā tenēre**, *hold by (in) the memory, remember*. 1, 23  
**mēns**, **mentis**, f., *mind*. 44  
**mēnsa**, -ae, f., *table, course*; **secunda mēnsa**, *dessert*. 21  
**mēnsis**, -is, m., *month*. 53  
**mentiō**, -iōnis, f., *mention*.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader*. 44  
**Mercurius**, -ī, m., *Mercury*.  
**mereor**, -ērī, **meritus sum**, *deserve, earn*. 60  
**merīdiānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of midday, noon-day*.  
**merīdies**, -ēī, m., *midday, noon, the south*. 31  
**mēta**, -ae, f., *turning-post (in circus); goal, end*.  
**meus**, -a, -um, poss. adj., *my, mine*. 6  
**mīles**, -itis, m., *soldier*. 14  
**mīlia**, -ium, n., *thousands*; **mīlia pas-suūm**, *miles*. 30  
**mīlitāris**, -e, *of soldiers, military*. 54  
**mīlle**, adj., indecl., *a thousand; one thou-sand; mille passūs, a mile*. 21, 29  
**Minerva**, -ae, f., *Minerva*.  
**minimus**, -a, -um, *smallest, very small; see parvus*. 35  
**minitor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten*.  
**minor**, adj., *smaller; see parvus*. 35  
**Minucius**, -ī, m., a gentile name.  
**mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, wonder at, be surprised*. 60  
**mīrus**, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, strange*. 49  
**misceō**, -ēre, **miscuī**, **mixtum**, *mix*.  
**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *unhappy, wretched, unfortunate, poor*. 8  
**misere**, adv., *wretchedly, desperately*. 11  
**miseria**, -ae, f., *misery, wretchedness, unhappiness*.  
**miserīcordia**, -ae, f., *mercy, pity*.  
**mittō**, -ere, **mīsī**, **missum**, *send, let go*. 22  
**modo**, adv., *only; just now, lately*.  
**modus**, -ī, m., *measure, degree; way, man-ner, method*; **quō mōdō**, *by what way? in what manner? how?*; **quem ad modum**, *to what degree? how?* 28  
**moenia**, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls*.

**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, warn, advise, inform. 17  
**mōns, montis, m.**, mountain, hill; (in) **mediō monte**, halfway up the mountain. 16, 35  
**mōnstrum, -ī, n.**, portent; monster.  
**mora, -ae, f.**, delay. 40  
**Morinī, -ōrum, m.**, the Morini, a Belgic people.  
**morior, mori, mortuus sum, (moritūrus)**, die. 60  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, delay. 50  
**mors, mortis, f.**, death. 16  
**mortalis, -e, adj.**, mortal.  
**mortuus, -a, -um, adj.**, having died, dead. 60  
**mōs, mōris, m.**, custom, habit; pl., character. 58  
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum**, move; affect; with **castra**, break. 17  
**mox, adv.**, soon. 14  
**Mūcius, -ī, m.**, Mucius, a gentile name.  
**mulier, -eris, f.**, woman, wife. 59  
**multitūdō, -inis, f.**, great number, crowd. 27  
**multō, by much**. 36  
**multum, adv.**, much. 36  
**multus, -a, -um, adj.**, much; pl., many.  
**multā nocte**, late at night; **ad multam noctem**, until late at night; **multō diē**, late in the day. 6, 31  
**mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum**, fortify, build. 30  
**mūnitio, -ōnis, f.**, fortification. 54  
**mūrus, -ī, m.**, wall. 28

## N

**nam, conj.**, for. 30  
**nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum**, get, obtain, find.  
**nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, relate, tell. 7  
**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, be born; be found. 60  
**nātū, m., abl., by birth; maior nātū**, older; **maximus nātū**, eldest. 35  
**nātūra, -ae, f.**, nature. 1

**nauta, -ae, m.**, sailor. 3  
**nāvigātiō, -iōnis, f.**, sailing, voyage.  
**nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, sail. 2  
**nāvis, -is, f.**, ship; **nāvēs dēdūcere**, launch ships; **nāvis longa**, warship; **nāvēsolvere**, cast off, set sail. 16, 59, 60  
**nē, conj.**, in order that not, that not, lest.  
**nē, adv.**, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not . . . even (the emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem**). 53  
**-ne**, interrog. particle (enclitic). 3  
**nec, conj.** (same as **neque**), and not. 31  
**necessārius, -a, -um, adj.**, necessary; (as noun) relative. 54  
**necesse**, defective adj., necessary. 48  
**necne**, or not. 47  
**necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, kill, slay.  
**negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, deny, say . . . not. 39  
**negōtium, -ī, n.**, business, task, trouble. 40  
**nēmō, —, dat., nēminī, abl., nullō, m.**, no one. 46  
**Nēmō, —, m.**, Noman, Polyphemus's name for Ulysses.  
**Neptūnus, -ī, m.**, Neptune, god of the sea.  
**neque, conj.**, and . . . not, nor, neither; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor. 31  
**nesciō, -īre, nescivī or nesciī**, not know. 39  
**neuter, -tra, -trum**, pron. and adj., gen. **neutrius**, neither (of two). 37  
**niger, -gra, -grum, adj.**, black. 13  
**nihil**, also **nīl**, defective noun, n., nothing; as adv., not at all. 28  
**nisi, conj.**, if . . . not, unless, except. 34  
**nō, nāre, nāvī, —, swim, float.**  
**nōbilis, -e, adj.**, famous, of high birth, noble, well-bred, well-known. 34  
**nōbīs, to us.**  
**noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, harm, injure (with dat.). 57  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (nōn and volō)**, not wish, be unwilling. 53  
**nōmen, -inis, n.**, name. 15  
**nōn, adv.**, not; **nōn modo or solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also. 2  
**nōndum, adv.**, not yet. 36



nōnne, interrog. particle, in questions expecting the answer *yes*. 3  
 nōnus, -a, -um, num, adj., *ninth*. 21  
 nōs, nostrum, pron., pl. of *ego*, *we*. 26  
 noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. and adj., *our, ours*. 8  
 nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *well known, famous*. 33  
 novem, num. adj., indecl., *nine*. 21  
 novitās, -tātis, f., *strangeness, newness*.  
 novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange*; rēs novae, *revolution*; novissimus, -a, -um, *latest, last, rearmost*; novissimum agmen, *rear*. 13, 31, 56  
 nox, noctis, f., *night*; mediā nocte, *at midnight*; multā nocte, *late at night*; ad multam noctem, *until late at night*. 26, 31  
 nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare, naked, unprotected*.  
 nullus, -a, -um, adj., gen. nullius, *not any, none, no*. 37  
 num, interrog. particle, in questions expecting the answer *no*; 10; *if, whether*. 47  
 Numa, -ae, m., *Numa*.  
 numerus, -ī, m., *number, group*. 11  
 numquam, adv., *never*. 36  
 nunc, adv., *now*. 9  
 nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *announce, report*. 7  
 nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message, news*. 4  
 nūper, adv., *recently*.

## O

Ō, interj., *O, Oh!*  
 ob, prep., with acc., *because of, on account of; for the purpose of*. 8  
 obiurgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *reprove, blame*.  
 obliviscor, -livisci, -litus sum, *forget* (used with gen.).  
 obscurus, -a, -um, adj., *dark, hidden*.  
 obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *beseech, plead*.  
 obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage*. 54  
 obsideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *besiege*.  
 obstruō, -ere, -struxi, -structum, *block*.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *implore* (in the name of the gods).  
 obtineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *keep hold on, hold* (against opposition); *have; get a hold on, prevail*. 39  
 occāsio, -ōnis, f., *opportunity*.  
 occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting, downfall, a going down*; sōlis occāsus, *sunset, sundown, the west*. 29, 40  
 occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *kill, cut down*. 41  
 occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize, capture*. 2  
 Octāviānus, -ī, m., *Octavian, a cognomen of the emperor Augustus*.  
 octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth*. 21  
 octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight*. 21  
 oculus, -ī, m., *eye*. 46  
 odium, -ī, n., *hatred*.  
 offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, *present, offer*.  
 officīna, -ae, f., *workshop*.  
 officium, -ī, n., *duty*. 32  
 ōlim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly, some day*. 25  
 omittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *pass by, let go*.  
 omninō, adv., *altogether, in all, at all*. 55  
 omnis, -e, adj., *every, all*; pl., *everyone, everything*. 18  
 onus, -eris, n., *burden, load*. 44  
 opiniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, expectation; reputation*. 59  
 oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is proper, it is necessary* (used with acc. of person and inf.). 56  
 oppidum, -ī, n., *town*. 5  
 opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *crush, overpower, ruin*. 41  
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack*. 10  
 optimē, adv., *best*. 36  
 optimus, -a, -um, *best, very good, excellent*; see bonus. 35  
 opus, operis, n., *work*. 44  
 ōra, -ae, f., *coast, shore*.  
 ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech*; orātiōnem habere, *deliver a speech*. 44

**orbis**, -is, m., circle, wheel; **orbis terrarum**, the (inhabited) world. 43  
**ōrdō**, -inis, m., order, rank. **ex ōrdine**, in order. 53  
**orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, arise, rise. 55  
**ornāmentum**, -ī, n., adornment; pl., jewelry.  
**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, decorate, bedeck.  
**ōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beg, ask. 45  
**ōs**, **ōris**, n., mouth; face. 56  
**os**, **ossis**, n., bone.  
**ostendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, display, show. 53  
**ōstium**, -ī, n., doorway, mouth.  
**ovis**, -is, f., sheep.

## P

**P.** = **Pūblius**.

**paedagōgus**, -ī, m., attendant, a slave who accompanied children to and from school.  
**paene**, adv., almost. 36  
**Palātium**, -ī, n., Palatine Hill.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh. 56  
**pānis**, -is, m., bread, loaf. 16  
**pār**, **paris**, adj., equal; equal to (used with dat.); (as noun) the equal of (with gen.). 34  
**parātus**, -a, -um, adj., ready, prepared. 13  
**parcō**, -ere, **pepercī**, **parsum**, spare (used with dat.). 57  
**pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, **paritum**, obey (used with dat.). 57  
**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare for, prepare. 2  
**pars**, **partis**, f., part, direction; **magna pars**, majority, greater part. 27  
**parvus**, -a, -um (comp., **minor**; sup., **minimus**), adj., small, little. 6  
**passus**, -ūs, m., pace; **mille passūs**, a mile; **milia passuum**, miles. 29, 30  
**pāstor**, -ōris, m., shepherd, herdsman.  
**pater**, -tris, m., father; in pl., senators. 14  
**patior**, **patī**, **passus sum**, suffer, permit, allow (used with acc. and inf.). 50  
**patria**, -ae, f., country, native land. 2

**paucī**, -ae, -a, adj., few, a few. 23  
**paulum**, -ī, n., a little; **paulō**, by a little, a little; **paulō ante**, a little while before, a short time ago; **paulō postea**, a little while afterward (later). 36  
**Paulus**, -ī, m., Paulus, a cognomen.  
**pauper**, -eris, adj., poor, poverty-stricken.  
**pāx**, **pācis**, f., peace. 20  
**pectus**, -oris, n., breast.  
**pecūnia**, -ae, f., wealth; money. 13  
**pecus**, -oris, n., cattle, flock (of sheep or goats).  
**pedes**, -itis, m., foot soldier; pl., infantry. 25  
**peior**, **peiūs**, adj., worse; see **malus**. 35  
**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, push, rout, defeat. 49  
**Pēnelopē**, -ēs, acc., -ēn, f., Penelope.  
**per**, prep., with acc., through, across; by, by means of. 8  
**percipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, feel.  
**perducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead through, conduct.  
**perficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish, accomplish, complete. 42  
**perflō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blow through or over.  
**perfodiō**, -ere, -fōdī, -fossūm, dig through, pierce through.  
**pergrātus**, -a, -um, very pleasing, welcome, or grateful.  
**periculum**, -ī, n., danger, risk. 5  
**perlongus**, -a, -um, very long.  
**perlūstrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, survey, examine.  
**permagnus**, -a, -um, very big, large, or great.  
**permittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust, permit. 50  
**permovēō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move deeply, alarm. 49  
**permultus**, -a, -um, very much; pl., very many.  
**perpetuus**, -a, -um, adj., continuous, perpetual; in **perpetuum**, forever.  
**Persae**, -ārum, m. pl., the Persians.  
**perscribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, write in detail, write in full.

**Perseus**, -ī, m., *Perseus*.

**persuādēō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade* (used with the dat., followed by *ut* with the subjunctive). 45

**perterreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *terrify*. 42

**pertineō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *extend (to)*, *pertain (to)*. 39

**perturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *alarm*, *upset*, *throw into confusion*. 56

**pervenio**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *reach*, *arrive*. 30

**pēs**, **pedis**, m., *foot*; **certāmen pedum**, *foot race*. 27

**peissimus**, adj., *worst*; see **malus**. 35

**petō**, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *attack*; *aim at*, *head for*, *seek*; *beg*, *ask* (takes acc. of the thing and ā or ab with abl. of the person). 25

**Philemon**, -ōnis, m., *Philemon*.

**Phrygia**, -ae, f., *Phrygia*.

**pietās**, -tātis, f., *family loyalty*.

**pilum**, -ī, n., *javelin*. 42

**pinguis**, **pingue**, adj., *fat*.

**placeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *please (with dat.)*; *used impersonally*, **placet** (with dat.), *it seems good (to)*. 57

**plebs**, **plēbis**, f., *common people*, *plebeians*. 59

**plēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *full*.

**plūres**, -ium, pl. adj., comp. of **multī**, *more*, *several*. 35

**plūrimus**, sup. of **multus**, *most*. 35

**plūs**, **plūris**, n., *more*, *a larger amount*. 35

**pōculum**, -ī, n., *cup*.

**poena**, -ae, f., *penalty*, *punishment* (thought of as a debt to be paid); **poenās dare**, *pay the penalty*, *suffer punishment*; **poenam sūmere**, *inflict punishment*. 12

**Poenī**, -ōrum, m., *Carthaginians*.

**poēta**, -ae, m., *poet*. 1

**polliceor**, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise* (usually with *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, and fut. infin.) 50

**Polydectēs**, -ae, acc. -ēn, m., *Polydectes*.

**Polyphēmus**, -ī, m., *Polyphemus*.

**polypūs**, -ī, m., *octopus*.

**Pompeii**, -ōrum, m., *Pompeii*, a town of Campania.

**Pompōnius**, -ī, m., *Pomponius*.

**pōmum**, -ī, n., *fruit*, *apple*.

**pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positum**, *put*, *set*, *place*, *locate*; (with **castra**), *pitch*. 22

**pōns**, **pontis**, m., *bridge*. 16

**populus**, -ī, m., *people*, *nation*, *tribe*. 12

**porcus**, -ī, m., *pig*, *swine*.

**porta**, -ae, f., *gate*. 3

**portō**, -āre, **āvī**, -ātum, *carry*. 2

**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor*, *port*. 29

**Porus**, -ī, m., *Porus*, a king of India.

**possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, *can*, *be able*. 32

**post**, adv., *after(wards)*, *later*. 8

**post**, prep., with acc. (of place), *behind*; (of time), *after*; adv., *afterward*. 8

**posteā**, adv., *after that time*, *afterward*, *thereafter*. 9

**posterus**, -a, -um (comp., **posterior**; sup., **postrēmus**), adj., *following*, *next*; (as noun, pl.), *posterity*, *descendants*. 34

**posthāc**, adv., *hereafter*, *after this*.

**postquam**, conj., *after*. 36

**postrēmus**, -a, -um, sup. of **posterus**, adj., *last*.

**postrīdiē**, adv., *the next day*.

**postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand* (used with acc. and ā or ab with abl.). 45

**potēns**, **potentis**, adj., *powerful*. 18

**potenter**, adv., *powerfully*. 31

**potentia**, -ae, f., *power*, *ability*.

**potestās**, -tātis, f., *power*, *opportunity*. 43

**potior**, -irī, -itus sum, *get possession of*, *take possession of* (used with abl.). 55

**potis**, *defective adj.*, *able*.

**prae**, prep. with abl., *before*.

**praeacūtus**, -a, -um, adj., *sharp* (at the end), *pointed*.

**praecaveō**, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *beware*, *be on guard*, *take precautions*.

**praecipio**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *give instructions*.

**praecipuē**, adv., *especially*.

**praeda**, -ae, f., *booty*. 56

**praedicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *foretell*, *predict*.

**praedor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *plunder*, *rob*.

**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *place over* or *in command of*, *put in charge of* (used with acc. and dat.). 57

**praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**, send ahead, let go ahead.

**praemium, -ī, n.**, reward. 32

**praenōmen, -inis, n.**, given name, first name, praenomen.

**praesēns, -sentis, adj.**, present; immediate.

**praeses, -idis, m.**, guardian, protector.

**praesidium, -ī, n.**, protection, guard, garrison. 32

**praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be at the head of, be in command of (with dat.). 57

**praeter, prep.**, with acc., beyond, except, besides. 39

**praetereā, adv.**, besides, besides that. 45

**praetereō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum**, go by.

**precēs, -um, f.**, prayers, pleas.

**prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm**, take, grasp.

**premō, -ere, pressī, pressum**, press; crush, overpower, suppress. 38

**prīdiē, adv.**, on the day before.

**prīmus, -a, -um, adj.**, first, foremost; first part of, early; **prīmā aestāte**, at the beginning of summer; **prīmā lūce**, at daybreak; **prīmā nocte**, early in the night; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible; **prīmō**, at first (in contrasts); **prīmum**, for the first time, first (in a series). 21, 35, 36

**prīnceps, -cipis, m.**, chief. 26

**prior, -ius, adj.**, former, earlier; first. 35

**Prīscus, -ī, m.**, Priscus.

**prius, adv.**, before, previously. 36

**priusquam, adv.**, before.

**prīvātus, -a, -um, adj.**, private (opposed to **pūblicus**). 47

**prō, prep.**, with abl., in front of; in proportion to; for, (= instead of), in place of, in exchange for; in defense of, in behalf of. 39

**prōbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, prove; approve of. 38

**prōclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, shout forth.

**procul, adv.**, at some distance. 45

**procus, -ī, m.**, suitor.

**prōducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, lead forward, bring forth. 49

**proellium, -ī, n.**, battle. 11

**profectiō, -ōnis, f.**, departure.

**proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum**, set out; depart. 50

**prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum**, step (go) forward, advance, go forth. 51

**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, prevent, keep . . . from. 20

**prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**, throw forward; **sē prōicere**, prostrate oneself.

**prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum**, bring out.

**prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, move forward.

**prope, adv.**, nearly, almost; as prep., with acc., near. 35

**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, hurry, hasten.

**propinquus, -a, -um, adj.**, near, nearby; (as noun), relation, kinsman. 34

**propior, -ius (sup., proximus), adj.**, nearer; see **prope**. 34

**prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**, set forth, put forth, propose. 49

**propter, prep.**, with acc., on account of, because of. 8

**prosternō, -ere, prostrāvī, prostrātum**, knock down.

**prostrātus, -a, -um**, lying down.

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī**, be of advantage, profit.

**prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum**, carry forward; in pass., with instr., abl., sail forth.

**prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum**, foresee, provide for. 57

**prōvincia, -ae, f.**, province, esp. the Roman province, a part of southern Gaul, now called Provence. 1

**prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, call forth, challenge, invite.

**proximē, adv.**, next, most recently, lately.

**proximus, -a, -um, adj.**, nearest, next, last (preceding or following); see **propior**. 34

**prūdēns, -entis, adj.**, foresighted, wise, prudent. 54

**prūdentē, adv.**, wisely, prudently. 54

**prūdentia, -ae, f.**, foresight, wisdom.

**pūblicus, -a, -um, adj.**, belonging to the people; public, (opposed to **prīvātus**); **rēs publica**, commonwealth, state, republic, government. 31

**Pūblius**, -ī, m., *Publius*, a praenomen.  
**puella**, -ae, f., *girl*. 1  
**puer**, **puerī**, m., *boy*. 4  
**pugna**, -ae, f., *fight*. 21  
**pugnātum est**, *fighting occurred, the fighting occurred*.  
**pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*. 2  
**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, noble, fine*. 8  
**pulchrē**, adv., *beautifully, nobly*. 11  
**pulsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *knock at, beat*.  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think*. 39  
**Pyrenaeus**, -a, -um, adj., *montēs Pyrenaei, the Pyrenees*.  
**Pyrrhus**, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, on the east coast of the Adriatic*.

## Q

**Q** = **Quintus**.  
**quā**, adv., *where, by which way*.  
**quā dē causā**, *for which reason*. 39  
**Quādī**, -ōrum, m., *Quadi, the name of a fierce German tribe*.  
**quaerō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum, *seek, inquire, ask, (takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with ē, ex, ā, ab, or dē)*. 45  
**quam**, adv. and conj., *how? how! than, as; with superlatives, as . . . as possible; quam diū, how long?* 33  
**quam ob rem**, *why?, for which reason?*  
**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how great? how large? how much?* 47  
**quārtus**, -a, -um, *numerical adj., fourth*. 21  
**quasi**, adv., *as if, as it were*.  
**quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four*. 21  
**quattuordecim**, num. adj., indecl., *fourteen*. 47  
**-que** (an enclitic), conj., *and*. 3  
**quī**, **qua**, **quod**, (after **sī**, **nīsī**, **num**, and **nē**), *any*. 58  
**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, that*. 27  
**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, interrog. adj., *what? which?* 28

**quia**, conj., *because*.  
**quicquid**, n., *whatever* (used in affirmative expressions).  
**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever*.  
**quid**, *what?*  
**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** or **quoddam**, indef. pron. and adj., *a certain, one, certain, some*. 51  
**quidem**, adv., *postpositive, to be sure, indeed, at least, at any rate, as a matter of fact; nē . . . quidem, not even* (see under **nē**). 53  
**quies**, -ētis, f., *rest, sleep*. 58  
**quin**, conj., *how not, that not, but that, from —ing*.  
**quīndecim**, num. adj., indecl., *fifteen*. 47  
**quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five*. 21  
**quīntus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *fifth*. 21  
**Quīntus**, ī, m., *Quintus, a praenomen*.  
**quis**, **quid**, interrog. pron., *who? what?* 28. indef. pron., *anyone, anything; nē, quis, nē quid, no one, nothing*. 58  
**quisquam**, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*. 58  
**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, pron. and adj., *each one, every one, each*. 37, 58  
**quō**, rel. adv., *where, to which place, interrog. adv., where? to what place?* 36  
**quod**, conj., *because*. 21  
**quōmodo**, interrog. adv., *how?*  
**quoque**, adv., *postpositive, also, too* (**quoque** adds only the one word — noun or pronoun — which it follows; see **etiam**). 53  
**quot**, adj., indecl., *how many?* 47

## R

**rapiō**, -ere, -uī, **raptum**, *seize, snatch*. 57  
**ratio**, -ōnis, f., *account, manner, plan, reason, system*. 54  
**recēns**, **recentis**, adj., *fresh, new, recent*. 54  
**recidō**, -ere, -cidī, -casum, *fall back*.  
**recipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, **receptum**, *take back*,



- accept, receive; recover; in *fidem recipere*, take under one's protection; *sē recipere*, return, retreat. 38, 40, 46
- recumbō, -ere, recubui**, lie back.
- recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, refuse.
- reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, give back, restore. 28
- redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum**, go back, return, come back. 52
- redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum**, buy back, redeem
- reditus, -ūs, m.**, return.
- redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductum**, lead back, bring back. 23
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum**, bring back, carry back; report; **pedem referre**, go back, return, give ground, retreat; **gratiam referre**, show gratitude. 52, 58
- reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**, repair, restore. 60
- refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —**, flee back.
- refulgeō, -ēre, refulsī, —**, shine brightly.
- rēgia, -ae, f.**, king's house, palace.
- rēgina, -ae, f.**, queen. 13
- regiō, -ōnis, f.**, direction, district, region. 43
- rēgnum, -ī, n.**, kingdom; kingship. 5
- regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum**, rule. 22
- regredior, -ī, -gressus**, go back.
- Rēgulus, -ī, m.**, Regulus.
- reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectum**, throw back, repulse. 60
- relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum**, leave, leave behind. 22
- reliquus, -a, -um, adj.**, remaining, the rest of. 23
- remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus**, stay behind, stay back, remain.
- remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**, send back, let go back. 38
- removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, move back. 38
- rēmus, -ī, m.**, oar. 59
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, bring back a message, report, bring back word (of). 49
- repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum**, drive back, drive away. 60
- repente, adv.**, suddenly. 55
- reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**, find, discover. 60
- repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**, store.
- reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, carry back, bring back.
- repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, fight against.
- requiescō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum**, rest, sleep.
- requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum**, search for (again), require.
- rēs, rei, f.**, matter, affair, respect, event, fact, task, exploit; thing, business function, science, property, profit, position; pl. the physical universe, conditions, circumstances, deeds, situation. **rēs frumentāria**, grain supply, forage; **rēs pūblica**, commonwealth, state, republic, government; **rēs gestae**, deeds, accomplishments; **rēs novae**, revolution; **omnibus rebus**, in all respects. 31, 57
- resistō, -ere, restitī, —**, resist. 57
- respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōsum**, answer, reply. 20
- respōsum, -ī, n.**, answer, reply.
- restituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum**, restore.
- retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum**, hold back. 20
- revertor, -ī, reversus sum**, turn back, return. 60
- revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, call back.
- rēx, rēgis, m.**, king. 14
- Rhēnus, -ī, m.**, the Rhine (river). 51
- rhētorica, -ae, f.**, rhetoric, oratory.
- Rhodanus, -ī, m.**, the Rhone (river).
- rideō, -ēre, risī, risum**, smile, laugh, laugh at. 58
- rīpa, -ae, f.**, bank (of a stream). 54
- rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, ask, ask for (used with two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing; also with *ut* and the subj.). 45
- Rōma, -ae f.**, Rome. 3
- Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj.**, Roman, of Rome. 15
- Rōmulus, -ī, m.**, Romulus.
- rugitus, rugītus, m.**, roar, roaring.
- rūmor, -ōris, m.**, rumor. 58
- rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum**, burst, break. 58

**ruō, -ere, ruī, ruitum, rush.**  
**rūpēs, -is, f., cliff, reef, rock, crag.**  
**rūrsus, adv., back, again, back again. 51**  
**rūs, rūris, n., country, countryside; (loc.)**  
*in the country, at one's country place. 50*  
**Rutulī, -ōrum, m., the Rutulians.**

## S

**Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj., Sabine.**  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., sacred, holy;**  
**Via Sacra, The Sacred Way, a street in**  
**the Forum in Rome; as neut. pl. noun,**  
*religious ceremonies, rituals. 8*  
**saepe, adv., often. 9**  
**sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. 49**  
**Saguntum, -ī, n., Saguntum.**  
**Salamis, Salamīnis, f., Salamis, an island**  
*off Athens.*  
**saliō, -īre, saluī, saltum, leap.**  
**salūs, -ūtis, f., health; safety, salvation,**  
*well-being, welfare. 20*  
**salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, greet.**  
**salvus, -a, -um, adj., safe.**  
**sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood. 58**  
**Sardēs, -ium, f., Sardis. 49**  
**satis, defective noun, enough; (used with**  
*gen.); as adv., enough. 48*  
**saxum, -ī, n., stone, rock. 59**  
**scapha, -ae, f., skiff, small boat.**  
**Schoeneus, ī, m., Schoeneus, a king of**  
*Boeotia.*  
**scientia, -ae, f., knowledge.**  
**sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, know. 39**  
**Scipiō, -ōnis m., (1) P. Cornelius Scipio,**  
*defeated at Ticinus. (2) P. Cornelius Sci-*  
*pio Africanus Maior, the conqueror of*  
*Hannibal.*  
**scribo, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write. 25**  
**scūtum, -ī, n., shield. 42**  
**sē: see suī; inter sē: see inter.**  
**secundus, -a, -um, adj., following, favor-**  
*able; second. 21*  
**sēd, conj., but. 2**  
**sēdecim, num. adj., indecl., sixteen. 47**  
**sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit. 17**  
**sēdēs, -is, f., seat, residence.**  
**sella, -ae, f., chair, seat. 21**  
**semper, adv., always. 9**  
**senātor, -ōris, m., senator. 40**  
**senātus, -ūs, m., senate. 29**  
**senex, -is (comp., senior;) adj., old; as a**  
*subst., old man. 35*  
**sententia, -ae, f., opinion. 43**  
**sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel, realize. 39**  
**septem, num. adj., indecl., seven. 21**  
**septendecim, num. adj., indecl., seven-**  
*teen. 47*  
**septimus, -a, -um, num., seventh. 21**  
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow. 51**  
**sermō, sermōnis, m., conversation.**  
**serpēs, -entis, f., serpent, snake.**  
**serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, be slave to, serve**  
*(used with dat.).*  
**Servius, -ī, m., Servius.**  
**servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, guard, save, keep.**  
*10*  
**servus, -ī, m., slave. 4**  
**sex, num. adj., indecl., six. 21**  
**sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., sixth. 21**  
**sī, conj., if. 21. sī quis, sī qua, sī quid,**  
*if anyone or if anything. 58*  
**Sibylla, -ae, f., the Sibyl (a prophetess).**  
**sic, adv., so (manner), in this way (used**  
*with verbs). 48*  
**Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily. 21**  
**signum, -ī, n., sign, signal, military stand-**  
*ard, statue; signa inferre, wage (offensive)*  
*warfare on, attack. 11, 52*  
**silentium, -ī, n., silence.**  
**silva, -ae, f., forest. 1**  
**similis, -e, adj., like, similar (used with**  
*dat.); superl. simillimus. 18*  
**similiter, adv., in like manner, similarly. 31**  
**simillimē, adv., most similarly. 36**  
**simul, adv., at the same time; simul atque**  
*(ac), as soon as. 36*  
**sine, prep., with abl., without. 6**  
**sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, left-hand.**  
*34*  
**socius, -ī, m., comrade, ally. 12**  
**sōl, sōlis, m., sun; sōlis occāsus, sunset,**  
*sundown, the west. 40*  
**Sōl, Sōlis m., Sol or Helius, the Sun God.**  
**sollicitūdō, -inis, f., anxiety, worry.**

**sollicitus**, -a, -um, adj., *troubled, worried*.  
**Solōn**, **Solōnis**, m., *Solon, Athenian lawgiver*.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. **sōlius**, *only, alone*; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*. 37

**solvō**, -ere, **solvī**, **solūtum**, *loose, untie, set free, pay*; **nāvem (nāvēs) solvere**, or **solvere** *alone, cast off, set sail*. 57

**somnus**, -ī, m., *sleep*.

**sonitus**, -ūs, m., *sound, noise*.

**sonōrus**, -a, -um, adj., *sounding, loud*.

**Sōracte**, -is, n., *Soracte, a high mountain in Etruria*.

**soror**, -ōris, f., *sister*. 14

**sortior**, -īrī, -ītus **sum**, *draw lots*.

**spatium**, -ī, n., *space; space (period) of time, distance, interval*. 49

**speciēs**, -eī, f., *sight, appearance*. 46

**spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *look at*. 2

**speculum**, -ī, n., *mirror*.

**spēlunca**, -ae, f., *cave, cavern*.

**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope*; with acc., *hope for*. 39

**spēs**, **speī**, f., *hope*. 31

**spīna**, -ae, f., *thorn*.

**sponte**, abl. sing., f., *free will*; with **suā**, *voluntarily, of one's own accord*.

**statim**, adv., *immediately, at once*. 36

**statiō**, -ōnis, f., *picket-post, picket*.

**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *set, decide*.

**stella**, -ae, f., *star*. 40

**stō**, -āre, **steti**, **stātum**, *stand*. 10

**strepitus**, ūs, m., *noise, uproar*; of geese, *cackling*.

**stringō**, -ere, **strīnxī**, **strictum**, *draw*.

**studeō**, ēre, **studuī**, —, *be eager for, desire*. 57

**studiōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *studious, enthusiastic*.

**studium**, -ī, n., *eagerness, enthusiasm, zeal*. 49

**stultus**, -a, -um, adj., *foolish, stupid*.

**sub**, prep., with acc. after verbs of motion, *close under, under, close to, up to, to the foot of*; with words denoting time, *toward, about*; with abl. of place, *at the foot of, under, close to*. 5

**subeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *undergo*.

**subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *put under*.

**subitō**, adv., *suddenly*. 43

**sublātus**; see **tollō**.

**subsidiūm**, -ī, n., *aid, support*; in pl., *reinforcements*. 37

**sui** (gen.), reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*; **inter sē**, (to or with) *each other, one another*. 40, 46

**sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *be, is, am, are, etc.* 3

**summus** (sup. of **superus**), adj., *highest, top of*. 35

**sūmō**, -ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *take, assume*; **poenam** or **supplicium sūmere dē** (abl.) *punish*. 58

**sunt**, *are, there are*.

**super**, prep., with acc., *over, above*.

**Superbus**, -ī, m., *Superbus, "The Proud"*.

**superior**, -ius, *higher*. 35

**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *surpass, defeat*. 7

**supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment* (used with **dare** and **sūmere** as **poena** is).

**suprā**, adv., *above*. 55

**surgō**, -ere, **surrēxī**, **surrēctum**, *rise, stand up*. 22

**suscipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *undertake*. 56

**suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus **sum**, *suspect*.

**sustineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *hold up, hold in check, withstand*. 32

**sustulī**; see **tollō**.

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. adj., *belonging to the subject, his, her, their, its (own: not used in the nom. case)*. 40

**Syrācūsae**, -ārum, f., *Syracuse*.

## T

**taceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be silent, become silent*. 60

**tālāria**, -ium, n. pl., *winged sandals*.

**tālis**, -e, adj., *of such a kind, such*. 48

**tam**, adv. of degree, *so* (used with adjectives and adverbs). 48

**tamen**, conj., *nevertheless, still, yet*. 30

tandem, adv., at length, at last, finally. 36  
 tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch. 55  
 tantus, -a, -um, adj., so much, so great, so big, such a great, such a large. 48  
 Tarquinius, -ī, m., Tarquin.  
 tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover. 56  
 Tellus, -ī, m., Tellus, an Athenian.  
 tellus, tellūris, f., the earth (as a planet). 43  
 tēlum, -ī, n., weapon, missile, offensive weapon. 11  
 temerē, adv., rashly, thoughtlessly.  
 tempestās, -tātis, f., storm, weather. 49  
 templum, -ī, n., temple, sacred area.  
 temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try, attempt. 10  
 tempus, -oris, n., time. 15  
 teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold; memoriā tenēre, hold by (in) memory, remember. 17, 23  
 tenuis, -e, adj., thin.  
 tergum, -ī, n., back; ā tergō, in the rear, (from) behind. 32  
 terra, -ae, f., earth, land, country. 3  
 terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten. 20  
 terribilis, -e, adj., terrible.  
 terror, -ōris, m., fright, terror.  
 tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third. 21  
 tertium, adv., a third time.  
 Themistocles, -is, m., Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.  
 Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly.  
 Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace.  
 Ticinus, -ī, m., Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.  
 timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear, be afraid. 17  
 timor, -ōris, m., fear. 26  
 toga, -ae, f., toga. 37  
 tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, lift up, raise, remove. 52  
 tonitrus, -ūs, m., thunder.  
 torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum, twist, turn.  
 tot, adj., indecl., so many. 48  
 tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 37  
 tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, handle.  
 trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, surrender; hand down. 22  
 trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across. 41

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, draw, drag. 38  
 trāns, prep., with acc., across, over. 8  
 trānseō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, cross. 52  
 trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, pierce.  
 trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry across (with two accusatives); transport.  
 Trasumēnus, -ī, m., Trasumenus, a lake of Etruria.  
 tredecim, num. adj., indecl., thirteen. 47  
 trēs, tria, num. adj., three. 21  
 tribūnus, -ī, m., tribune. 42  
 tribuō, -uere, -uī, tributum, assign, grant. 60  
 tristis, -e, sad, grim. 33  
 triumphus, -ī, m., triumphal procession, triumph.  
 Trōia, -ae, f., Troy. 21  
 Trōiānus, -a, -um, adj., Trojan. 18  
 tū, tuī, pers. pron., you; pl., vōs. 26  
 tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. 3  
 tuī (gen.), reflex. pron., of yourself; see tū. 40  
 Tullius, -ī, m., Tullius.  
 Tullus, -ī, m., Tullus.  
 tum, adv., then, at that time. 9  
 turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stir up.  
 turbō, turbinis, m., whirlwind.  
 Turnus, -ī, m., Turnus, Prince of the Rutuli, an Italic tribe.  
 turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful; ugly. 57  
 turris, -is, f., (turrim, acc. sing.) tower. 40  
 tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe. 51  
 tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., your, yours. 6

## U

ubi, interrog. adv., where? 3. rel. adv., where, when. 9  
 Ulixēs, -is, m., Ulysses.  
 ūllus, -a, -um, adj., gen. ūllius, any. 37  
 ulterior, -ius adj., farther. 35  
 ultimus, -a, -um, adj., farthest. 35  
 umquam, adv., ever. 43  
 unda, -ae, f., wave.  
 unde, rel. adv., whence, from which; interrog. adv., whence?, where from? 37

**undecim**, num. adj., indecl., *eleven*. 21  
**undēvigintī**, num. adj., indecl., *nineteen*. 47

**undique**, adv., *from all sides, from everywhere; on all sides*. 37

**ūngō**, -ere, **ūnxī**, **ūnctum**, *anoint*.

**unguentum**, -ī, n., *ointment*.

**ūniversī**, -ōrum, m., *all together, one and all*.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. **ūnīus**, *one, a single*. 21

**urbānus**, -a, -um, *pertaining to a city, urban*.

**urbs**, **urbis**, f., *city*. 16

**ūsus**, -ūs, m., *use; advantage, practice, experience*. 29

**ut**, **utī**, conj., *in order that, that* (followed by subjunctive clause of purpose); *so that* (followed by subjunctive clause of result); *just as, as, how, when, since* (followed by indicative). 36, 44, 48

**ūter**, **ūtris**, m., *skin, used as a bag or bottle, wine-skin*.

**uter**, **utra**, **utrum**, pron. and adj., gen. **utrius**, rel. and interrog., *which* (of two). 37

**uterque**, -traque, -trumque, pron. and adj., *each* (of two). 37

**utī**: see **ut**.

**ūtilis**, -e adj., *useful, profitable*. 33

**ūtilitās**, -tātis, f., *usefulness, utility*.

**ūtor**, **utī**, **ūsus sum**, *use* (used with abl.). 55

**utrum**, conj., *not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, whether; utrum . . . an . . . , whether . . . or . . . ; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not*. 47

**uxor**, -ōris, f., *wife*. 59

## V

**vadum**, -ī, n., *shallows, ford*. 43

**valēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be well, be strong; valē, as greeting, farewell, goodbye; iubēre valēre, to bid farewell*. 38

**validē**, adv., *strongly*. 36

**validus**, -a, -um, adj., *strong*. 34

**vallēs**, -is, f., *valley*. 42

**vāllum**, -ī, n., *rampart*. 44

**Varrō**, -ōnis, m., *Varro*.

**vās**, **vāsis**, pl., **vāsa**, -ōrum, n., *dish, vessel*.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, devastate*. 49

**vāstus**, -a, -um, adj., *huge, enormous*.

**vehemēns** (gen. **vehementis**), adj., *forceful, violent*. 57

**vehementer**, adv., *violently, extremely, exceedingly, vigorously*. 57

**vehō**, -ere, **vexī**, **vectum**, *carry, transport; in pass., usually with an instr. abl., nāve, currū, etc., travel, sail, ride*. 53

**Veīī**, -ōrum, m., *Veii, an Etruscan city*. 49

**vel**, conj., *or, or even, or if you wish; even; vel . . . vel, either . . . or*. 42

**velut**, or **velutī**, adv., *as if, just as if*.

**vēndō**, -ere, **vēndidī**, **vēnditum**, *sell*. 54

**venēnum**, -ī, n., *poison*.

**veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, **vēntum**, *come*. 30

**venter**, -tris, m., *belly*.

**ventus**, -ī, m., *wind*. 40

**Venus**, **Veneris**, f., *Venus, goddess of love*.

**Venusia**, -ae, f., *Venusia, a town of Apulia, birthplace of Horace*.

**verbum**, -ī, n., *word*. 5

**verē**, adv., *truly*. 13

**vereor**, -ēri, -itus sum, *fear, dread*. 51

**Vergilius**, -ī, m., *Vergil*.

**vērītās**, -tātis, f., *truth, trueness*.

**vērō**, *in truth, indeed; but, however*. 42

**versor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *be busy, be involved*.

**vertō**, -ere, **vertī**, **versum**, *turn*. 60

**vērus**, -a, -um, adj., *true*. 13

**vēscor**, **vēscī**, *feed on* (with abl.).

**vesper**, -erī, m., *evening*.

**vester**, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *your, yours*. 8

**vestis**, -is, f., *clothing*. 46

**Vesuvius**, -ī, m., *Vesuvius, a volcano in Campania*.

**vetus**, gen. **veteris**, adj., *old*. 54

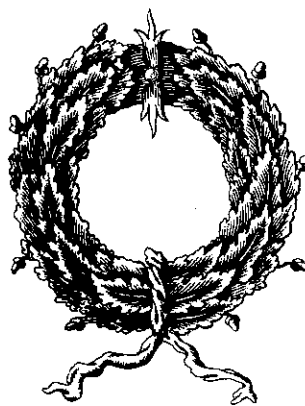


**via**, -ae, f., road, way, street; **Via Appia**: see under **Appia Via**; **Via Sacra**: see under **sacer**. 3  
**victor**, -ōris, m., victor; (in apposition) victorious. 37  
**victōria**, -ae, f., victory. 21  
**vīctus**, -ūs, m., living; food, victuals.  
**vīcus**, -ī, m., village, street.  
**videō**, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see. 17  
**videor**, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem, appear. 50  
**vigilia**, -ae, f., wakefulness; watchfulness; watch (i.e., a quarter of the night). 46  
**vīgintī**, num. adj., indecl., twenty. 21  
**villa**, -ae, f., farmhouse; country house, villa. 3  
**vīmen**, -inis, n., pliant twig, osier.  
**vinciō**, -īre, vīnxī, vīctum, bind.  
**vinculum**, (vinculum), -ī, n., bond, chain.  
**vincō**, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat, be victorious, win. 22  
**vīnum**, -ī, n., wine. 28  
**violō**, -āre, āvī, -ātum, dishonor, violate.  
**vir**, -ī, m., man, husband; hero. 4  
**vīres**, see **vīs**.  
**virga**, -ae, f., wand.  
**virtūs**, -tūtis, f., manliness, courage, bravery. 27  
**vīs**, vīs, f., force, violence; pl., vīrēs,  
**vīrium**, strength, might. 46

**vīsus**, -ūs, m., sight, view, vision.  
**vīta**, -ae, f., life. 1  
**vīvō**, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, be alive, live. 56  
**vīvus**, -a, -um, adj., alive.  
**vix**, adv., scarcely, hardly, with difficulty. 55  
**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call. 2  
**Volcānus**, -ī, m., Vulcan, the god of fire.  
**volō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly. 7  
**volō**, velle, voluī, —, be willing, wish. 53  
**Volsci**, -ōrum, m., pl., the Volscians, a people in Italy.  
**voluntas**, -tātis, f., willingness, wish, consent. 58  
**voluptās**, -tātis, f., pleasure.  
**Volusēnus**, -ī, m., Volusenus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.  
**vōs**: see **tū**. 26  
**vōx**, vōcis, f., voice. 20  
**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound. 7  
**vulnus**, -eris, n., wound. 15

## Z

**Zama**, -ae, f., a town in Numidia, scene of Hannibal's defeat.



# English-Latin

## A

ability, *facultās*

able: be able, *possum*

aboard: go aboard, *cōnscendō*

about, *circiter*, *circum*, *dē*; about to, see Particles, Lesson 41; bring about, *efficiō*

above, *suprā*

absent: be absent, *absum*

accept, *accipiō*, *recipiō*

accident, *cāsus*

accomplish, *cōnficiō*, *perficiō*

accomplishments, *rēs gestae*

account, *ratio*; on account of, *ob*, *propter*

accustomed: be (or) become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō*

across, *trāns*; lead across, *trādūcō*

adopt a plan, *cōnsilium ineō*

advance, *prōgredior*, *signum* (*signa*) *inferō*

advantage, *ūsus*

advice, *cōnsilium*

advise, *moneō*

affair, *rēs*

Africa, *Āfrica*

afraid: be afraid, *timeō*

after, *post*, *postea*, *postquam*

afterward, afterwards, *post*, *postea*

again, *rūrsus*

against, *contrā*, *in*

age, *aetās*

aid, (noun) *auxilium*, *subsidium*; (verb) *iuvō*

aim at, *petō*

alarm, *commoveō*, *permoveō*, *perturbō*

alive, *vīvus*; be alive, *vivō*

all, *omnis*; in all, at all, *omnīnō*; not at all, *nihil*; from all sides, on all sides, *undique*

allow, *patior*

ally, *socius*

almost, *ferē*, *paene*, *prope*

alone, *sōlus*

already, *iam*

also, *etiam*, *quoque*; and also, *atque* (*ac*); not only . . . but also . . . , *nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam . . .*

although, *cum*, *quamquam*

altogether, *omnīnō*

always, *semper*

am, see be

ambassador, *lēgātus*

ambush, *insidiae*

among, *apud*, *inter*

ample, *amplus*

ancient, *antīquus*

anchor, *ancora*

and, *atque* (*ac*), *autem*, *et*; and also, and besides, and even, *atque* (*ac*); and not, *neque* (*nec*); and so, *itaque*; both . . . and . . . , *et . . . et . . .*

anger, *ira*

animal, *animal*

announce, *nūntiō*, *ēnuntiō*

another, *alius*; another's, belonging to another, *aliēnus*; one another, to one another, with one another, *inter sē* (*nōs*, *vōs*)

answer, *respondeō*

anxiety, *cūra*

any, *quī*, *ullus*; not any, *nullus*; any longer, *diūtius*, *iam*; at any rate, *quidem*

anyone, *quis*, *quisquam*

anything, *quid*, *quidquam*

appearance, *speciēs*

appointed day, *diēs cōstitutā*

approach, (noun) *adventus*; (verb) *accēdō*, *adeō*, *aggredior*, *appropinquō*

approve of, *probō*

approximately, *circiter*

are, see be

arise, *orior*

arm, *armō*

arms, defensive arms, *arma*

army, *exercitus*; army on the march, *agmen*

around, *circum*; come around, *circumveniō*

arouse, *incendō*, *incitō*

arrival, *adventus*

arrow, *sagitta*  
 as, *ut*  
 Asia, *Asia*  
 ask, ask for, *orō, petō, quaerō, rogō*  
 assemble, *conveniō, convocō*  
 assign, *tribuō*  
 assume, *sūmō*  
 at, see Ablative of Time When, Lesson 25, and Locative Case, Lesson 50  
 Athens, *Athēnae*  
 attack, (noun) *impetus*; (verb) *aggredior, impetum faciō, oppugnō, petō*  
 attempt, *cōnor, temptō*  
 attentively: look at attentively, *cōspiciō*  
 author, *auctor*  
 authority, *auctoritās*  
 auxiliary forces, auxiliary troops, *auxilia*  
 await, *expectō*  
 away: be away, *absum*; drive away, *expellō*; go away, *discēdō*; lead away, *dēdūcō*; let go away, send away, *dīmittō*; away from, *ā, ab*

## B

baby, *infāns*  
 back, (noun) *tergum*  
 bad, *malus*; rather bad, too bad, *peior*; very bad, *pessimus*; badly, *male*  
 baggage, *impedimenta*  
 band, *manus*  
 bank, *rīpa*  
 barbarian, barbarous, *barbarus*  
 base, *turpis*  
 battle, *proelium*; battle signal, *signum proeli*; line of battle, *acies*; join battle, *proelium committō*  
 be, *sum*; be able, *possum*; be absent, be away, be distant, *absum*; be afraid, *timeō*; be alive, *vivō*; be at the head of, be in command of, *praesum*; be born, be found, *nāscor*; be eager for, *studeō*; be hard pressed, *labōrō*; be in doubt, *dubitō*; be informed, *certior fiō*; be lacking, *dēsum*; be made, *fiō*; be near, be present, *adsum*; be punished, *poenam dō*; be silent, *taceō*; be sorry, *doleō*; be

strong, be well, *valeō*; be surprised, *mīror*; be under an obligation, *grātiā dēbeō*; be unwilling, *nōlō*; be willing, *volō*; be sure, *quidem*  
 bear, *ferō, gerō*  
 beautiful, *pulcher*  
 beautifully, *pulchrē*  
 because, *quod*; because of, *ob, propter*  
 become, *fiō*; become accustomed, *cōnsuēscō*  
 bed, *lectus*  
 been, see *be*; having been, see Participles, Lesson 41, and Ablative Absolute, Lesson 51  
 befall, *accidō*  
 before, *ante, antea*  
 beg, *orō, petō*  
 begin, *incipiō, ineō*; began, *coepi*; begin battle, *proelium committō*  
 beginning, *initium*; at the beginning of summer, *primā aestāte*  
 behalf: on behalf of, *pro*  
 behind, *post*; leave behind, *relinquō*  
 being, see Ablative Absolute, Lesson 51; human being, *homō*  
 believe, *crēdō*  
 belonging: belonging to another, *aliēnus*; belonging to the people, *pūblicus*  
 besides, *praeter, praeterea*; besides that, *praeterea*; and besides, *atque (ac)*  
 best, (adjective) *optimus*, (adverb) *optimē*  
 betake oneself, *mē (tē, sē, etc.) cōnferō*  
 better, (adjective) *melior*, (adverb) *melius*  
 between, *inter*  
 beyond, *praeter*  
 bid, *iubeō*; bid farewell, *valēre iubeō*  
 big, *magnus*; too big, bigger, *maior*  
 bird, *avis*  
 birth: by birth, *nātū*; of high birth, *nōbilis*  
 black, *niger*  
 blood, *sanguis*  
 board, *cōnscendō*  
 body, *corpus*  
 bold, *audāx*  
 boldly, *audācter*  
 boldness, *audācia*  
 book, *liber*  
 booty, *praeda*

born: be born, *nāscor*  
 both, see *uterque*; both . . . and . . . , *et*  
 . . . *et* . . .  
 bottom of, *imū*, *infimū*  
 bound, *contineō*  
 boundary, *finis*  
 boy, *puer*  
 brave, *fortis*  
 bravely, *fortiter*  
 bravery, *virtūs*  
 bread, *pānis*  
 break, *frangō*, *rumpō*; break camp, *castra*  
*moveō*  
 bred: well bred, *nōbilis*  
 bridge, *pōns*  
 briefly, *brēviter*  
 bright, *clārus*  
 bring, *dēferō*, *ferō*; bring about, *efficiō*;  
 bring back, *redūcō*, *referō*; bring back  
 word of, *renūntiō*; bring forth, *prōdūcō*;  
 bring to, *adferō*; bring together, *cōnferō*;  
 bring up, *adferō*; bring upon, *inferō*  
 Britain, *Britannia*  
 British, *Britannus*  
 Briton, *Britannus*  
 broad, *lātus*  
 brother, *frāter*  
 build, *aedificō*, *instituō*, *mūniō*  
 building, *aedificium*  
 burden, *onus*  
 burn, *incendō*  
 burst, *rumpō*  
 business, *negōtium*  
 but, *autem*, *sed*, *vērō*  
 buy, *emō*  
 by, *ā*, *ab* (see Ablative of Personal Agent,  
 Lesson 20)

## C

Caesar, *Caesar*  
 calamity, *calamitās*  
 call, *appellō*, *vocō*; call together, *convocō*  
 camp, *castra*; break camp, *castra moveō*;  
 pitch camp, *castra pōnō*  
 Campus (Martius), *Campus*  
 can, *possum*

captive, *captīvus*  
 capture, *capiō*, *occupō*  
 care, *cūra*, *diligentia*  
 careful, *diligēns*  
 carry, *dēferō*, *ferō*, *portō*, *vehō*; carry back,  
*referō*; carry on, *gerō*; carry onward,  
*inferō*  
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*  
 cart, *carrus*  
 cause, *causa*  
 cavalry, *equitātus*, *equitēs* (from *eques*)  
 centurion, *centuriō*  
 certain, *certus*, *quidam*; a certain one,  
*quidam*  
 certainly, *certē*  
 chair, *sella*  
 chance, *cāsus*, *facultās*, *fortūna*  
 character, *mōrēs* (from *mōs*)  
 check, hold in check, *sustineō*  
 chief, *princeps*  
 children, *liberī*  
 choose, *dēligō*, *legō*  
 circle, *orbis*  
 citizen, fellow citizen, *civis*  
 citizenship, citizenry, *civitās*  
 city, *urbs*  
 clan, *gēns*  
 class, *genus*  
 clear, *clārus*  
 climb, *cōnscendō*; climb down, *dēscendō*;  
 climb up, *ascendō*  
 close, *claudō*  
 closely: observe closely, *cōnspiciō*  
 clothing, *vestis*  
 cohort, *cohors*  
 cold, *frigidus*  
 collect, *cōgō*, *cōnferō*  
 column, marching column, *agmen*  
 come, *veniō*; come around, *circumveniō*;  
 come together, *congregior*, *conveniō*;  
 come upon, *inveniō*  
 command, (noun) *imperium*; be in com-  
 mand of, *praesum*; place or put in com-  
 mand of, *praeficiō*; (verb) *imperō*, *mandō*  
 commander, *imperātor*  
 common, *commūnis*; the common people,  
*plēbs*  
 commonwealth, *rēs pūblica*

companion, *socius*  
 compare, *comparō, conferō*  
 compel, *cōgō*  
 complete, *compleō, efficiō, perficiō*  
 comrade, *socius*  
 concerning, *dē*  
 condition, *condiciō*  
 conference, *colloquium*  
 confidence, *fidēs*  
 confusion: throw into confusion, *perturbō*  
 conquer, *vincō*  
 conqueror, *victor*  
 consent, *voluntās*  
 consider, *existimō, iudicō*  
 consul, *cōsul*  
 consult, consult the interests of, *cōsulō*  
 convenient: it is convenient, *convenit*  
 conversation, *colloquium*  
 Corinth, *Corinthus*  
 couch: dining couch, *lectus*  
 counsel: take counsel for, *cōsulō*  
 country, *patria, rūs*; in the country, at  
     one's country place, *rūrī* (from *rūs*);  
     country house, *villa*  
 countryside, *rūs*  
 courage, *animī, virtūs*  
 course, *cursus, mēsa*  
 cover, *tegō*  
 cross, *trāseō*  
 crowd, *multitūdō*  
 crush, *opprimō, premō*  
 custom, *cōsuētūdō, mōs*  
 cut, cut down, *caedō, occidō*

## D

daily, *cotidiē*  
 danger, *periculum*  
 dare, *audeō*  
 daring, (noun) *audācia*; (adjective) *audāx*  
 daughter, *fīlia*  
 dawn: at dawn, *prīmā lūce*  
 day, *diēs*; on the appointed day, *diē cō-*  
     *stitutā*; every day, *cotidiē*; late in the  
     day, *multō diē*; some day, *olim*  
 daybreak: at daybreak, *prīmā lūce*  
 dead, *mortuus*  
 death, *mors*  
 decide, *cōstituō*  
 declare, *cōfirmō*  
 deeds, *rēs gestae*  
 deep, *altus*  
 deeply, *altē, graviter*; move deeply,  
     *permoveō*  
 defeat, *pellō, superō, vincō*  
 defend, *dēfendō*  
 defensive arms, *arma*  
 degree, *modus*; to what degree, *quem ad*  
     *modum*  
 delay, (noun) *mora*; (verb) *moror*  
 deliver a speech, *orātiōnem habeo*  
 demand, *postulō*  
 deny, *negō*  
 depart, *discēdō, proficiscor*  
 departure, *exitus*  
 depth, *altitūdō*  
 descend, *dēscendō*  
 descendants, *posterī*  
 desert, *dēficiō*  
 deserve, *mereor*  
 desire, (noun) *cupiditās*; (verb) *cupiō,*  
     *studeō*  
 desirous, *cupidus*  
 desperately, *miserē*  
 dessert, *secunda mēsa*  
 destined, see Participles, Lesson 41  
 determine, *cōstituō*  
 devastate, *vāstō*  
 die, *morior*; having died, *mortuus*  
 difficult, *difficilis*  
 difficulty, *difficultās, labor*; in difficulty,  
     *impeditus*; with difficulty, *aegrē, vix*  
 diligence, *diligentia*  
 diligent, *diligēns*  
 diligently, *diligenter*  
 dining couch, *lectus*  
 dinner, *cēna*  
 direction, *pars, regiō*  
 director, *magister*  
 disaster, *calamitās*  
 discover, *reperiō*  
 disembark, *ēgredior*  
 disgraceful, *turpis*  
 dismiss, *dimittō*  
 display, *ostendō*



distance, *spatium*; at some distance, *procul*  
distant: be distant, *absum*  
district, *regiō*  
ditch, *fossa*  
do, *agō, faciō*; do not, *nōlī, nōlite*  
dog, *canis*  
don't, *nōlī, nōlite*  
door, *iānuā*  
doubt: be in doubt, *dubitō*  
down: down from, *dē*; a going down, *occāsus*; climb down, *dēscendō*; cut down, *caedō, occidō*; hand down, *trādō*; lead down, *dēducō*; sit down, *cōnsidō*  
downfall, *occāsus*  
drag, *trahō*  
draw, *trahō*; draw near, *appropinquō*; draw up, *instruō*  
drink, *bibō*  
drive, *agō*; drive away, *expellō*; drive back, *repellō*; drive out, *expellō*  
duty, *officium*  
dwell, *habitō, incolō*; dwell in, *incolō*

## E

each, each one, *quisque*; each of two, *ut-erque*; each other, *inter sē (nōs, vōs)*  
eager, *cupidus*; be eager for, *studeō*  
eagerly, *cupidē*  
eagerness, *studium*  
ear, *auris*  
early: early in the night, *prīmā nocte*; ear-lier, *prior*  
earn, *mereor*  
earth, *terra*  
easily, *facile*  
easy, *facilis*  
eat, *edō*  
effect: put into effect, *efficiō*  
eight, *octō*  
eighteen, *duodēvigintī*  
eighth, *octāvus*  
either . . . or . . . , *aut . . . aut . . . , vel . . . vel . . .*  
eleven, *ūndecim*  
encamp, *cōnsidō*  
encourage, *cōnfirmō, hortor*

end, *exitus, finis*; the end of, *extrēmus*  
enemy, *inimicus, hostis*; the enemy, *hostēs*  
enlist, *cōnscribō*  
enough, *satis*  
enroll, *cōnscribō*  
enter, *ineō*  
enthusiasm, *studium*  
entire, *integer, tōtus*  
entrust, *committō, cōnfidō, mandō, permittō*  
envoy, *lēgātus*  
epistle, *epistula, litterae*  
equal, *aequus, pār*  
equip, *armō, instruō*  
especially, *maximē*  
establish, *instituō*  
Europe, *Eurōpa*  
even, *etiam*; and even, *atque (ac)*; not even, *nē . . . quidem*; or even, *vel*  
ever, *umquam*  
every, *omnis, quīque*; every day, *cotidiē*;  
everyone, *omnēs, quisque*; everything, *omnia, quidque*; from everywhere, *undique*  
except, *nisi, praeter*  
exchange: in exchange for, *prō*  
exercise, *exerceō*  
exhaust, *cōnficiō*  
exile, *fuga*  
expectation, *opiniō*  
experience, *ūsus*  
explain, *expōnō*  
explore, *explorō*  
expose, *aperiō*  
exposed, *apertus*  
extend, *pertineō*  
eye, *oculus*

## F

face, *ōs*  
fact: as a matter of fact, *quidem*  
fail, *dēficiō*  
fair, *aequus*  
faith, *fidēs*  
faithful, *fidēlis*  
fall, (noun) *occāsus*; (verb) *cadō*; fall upon, *accidō*

fame, *glōria*  
 family, *gēns*; **my family, your family,**  
 etc., *meī, tuī, etc.*  
 famous, *clārus, nōbilis, nōtus*  
 far, far off, by far, *longē*; far and wide,  
*longē latēque*; farther, *ulterior*; farthest,  
*extrēmus, ultimus*  
 farewell, *valē, valēte*; bid farewell, *valēre*  
*iubeō*  
 farmer, *agricola*  
 farmhouse, *vīlla*  
 farther, *ulterior*  
 farthest, *extrēmus, ultimus*  
 fate, *cāsus*  
 father, *pater*  
 favor, *beneficium, grātia*  
 fear, (noun) *timor*; (verb) *timeō, vereor*  
 feel, *sentīō*; feel gratitude, *grātiā habeo*  
 fellow citizen, *civis*  
 few, a few, *pauci*; quite a few, *complūrēs*  
 field, *ager, campus*  
 fierce, *ācer, ferus*  
 fiercely, *ācriter*  
 fifteen, *quīndecim*  
 fifth, *quīntus*  
 fight, (noun) *pugna*; (verb), *pugnō*  
 fill, fill up, *compleō*  
 finally, *tandem*  
 find, *inveniō, reperiō*; be found, *nāscor*;  
 find out, *cognōscō*  
 fine, *pulcher*  
 finish, *cōficiō, perficiō*  
 fire, *ignis*; with fire and sword, *ferrō et*  
*igne*; set on fire, *incendō*  
 first, *prīmus*; at first, *prīmō*; for the first  
 time, *prīmum*; when first, *cum prīmum*  
 five, *quīnque*  
 flank, *latus*  
 flee, flee from, *fugiō*  
 fleet, *classis*  
 flight, *fuga*  
 flower, *flōs*  
 fly, *volō*  
 follow, *sequor*  
 following, *posterus*  
 food, *cibus*  
 foot, *pēs*; at or to the foot of, *sub*  
 footsoldier, *pedes*

for, (conjunction) *enim, nam*; (preposi-  
 tion) *ad, in, prō*; in exchange for, *prō*;  
 for a long time, *diū*; for the first time,  
*prīmum*; for the sake of, *causā, grātiā*;  
 for which reason, *quā dē causā*; be eager  
 for, *studeō*; grieve for, *doleō*; prepare  
 for, *parō*; provide for, *prōvideō*; take  
 counsel for, *cōsulō*; wait for, *expectō*  
 forage, *rēs frūmentaria*  
 force, *vīs*; forces, *cōpiae*  
 forceful, *vehemēns*  
 ford, *vadum*  
 foreign, *aliēnus, barbarus*  
 foremost, *prīmus*  
 foresee, *prōvideō*  
 foresighted, *prūdēns*  
 forest, *silva*  
 form a plan, *consilium capiō*  
 former, *antiquus, prior*; the former, *ille*  
 formerly, *olim*  
 forth: bring forth, *prōducō*; go forth, *prō-*  
*gredior*; put forth, *prōpōnō*; set forth, *ex-*  
*pōnō, prōpōnō*  
 fortification, *mūnitio*  
 fortify, *mūniō*  
 fortunately, *fēliciter*  
 fortune, *fortūna*  
 forum, *forum*  
 forward: go forward, *prōgredior*; lead for-  
 ward, *prōducō*  
 founder, *auctor*  
 four, *quattuor*  
 fourteen, *quattuordecim*  
 fourth, *quārtus*  
 frankly, *liberē*  
 free, (adjective) *liber*; (verb) *liberō*; set  
 free, *liberō, solvō*  
 freedom, *libertās*  
 freely, *liberē*  
 fresh, *recēns*  
 friend, *amicus*; my friends, your friends,  
 etc., *meī, tuī, etc.*  
 friendly, *amicus*  
 friendship, *amicitia*  
 frighten, *terreō*  
 from, *ā, ab, dē, ē, ex* away from, *ā, ab*;  
 down from, *dē*; from all sides, from  
 everywhere, *undique*; from here, *inde*;

from where, from which, where from,  
unde; flee from, fugiō; keep . . . from  
. . . , prohibeō; order . . . from . . . ,  
impero  
front: in front of, ante, prō

## G

gain, cōsequor  
Gallic, Gallus  
game, lūdus  
garden, hortus  
garrison, praesidium  
gate, porta  
gather, legō  
Gaul, Gallia, Gallus  
general, (noun) imperātor; (adjective)  
commūnis  
German, Germānus  
Germany, Germānia  
get, comparō; get possession of, potior  
gift, dōnum  
girl, puella  
give, dō; give back, reddō; give ground,  
pedem referō; give way, cēdō  
glad, laetus  
gladness, gaudium  
glory, glōria  
go, eō, mē (tē, sē, etc.) cōferō; let go, mittō;  
go aboard, cōscendō; go away, discēdō;  
let go away, dīmittō; go back, redeō, pe-  
dem referō, revertor; let go back, remittō;  
go forth, go forward, prōgredior; go out,  
ēgredior, excēdō, exeō; go to, accēdō; go  
toward, adeō  
god, deus  
goddess, dea  
gold, aurum; of gold, aureus  
golden, aureus  
good, bonus  
goodbye, valē, valēte  
government, imperium  
grain, frūmentum; having to do with  
grain, frūmentārius; grain supply, rēs  
frūmentāria  
grant, tribuō  
grass, herba

grateful, grātus  
gratitude, grātia; feel gratitude, grātiā  
habeō; show gratitude, grātiā referō  
great, magnus; how great, quantus; so  
great, such a great, tantus; rather great,  
too great, maior; very great, maximus;  
great number, multitūdō  
greater, maior; the greater part, magna pārs  
greatest, maximus  
greatly, magnopere; more greatly, magis;  
most greatly, maximē  
greatness, magnitūdō  
Greece, Graecia  
Greek, Graecus  
grief, dolor  
grieve, grieve for, doleō  
grim, tristis  
ground: give ground, pedem referō  
group, numerus  
grow, crēscō  
guard, (noun) custōs, praesidium; (verb)  
servō, dēfendō  
guest, hospes

## H

habit, cōsuētūdō, mōs  
had, see have  
halfway up a (the) mountain, in mediō  
monte  
halt, cōsistō  
hand, manus; hand down, hand over,  
trādō  
handicapped, impeditus  
happen: it happens, accidit, fit  
happily, feliciter  
happy, felix, laetus  
harbor, portus  
hard, dūrus; be hard pressed, labōrō  
hardly, aegrē, vix  
hardship, labor  
harm, noceō  
harsh, dūrus  
has, see have  
hasten, contendō  
have, habeō have to, dēbeō  
having, see have

**he, hic, ille, is; he who, quī**  
**head, caput; be at the head of, praesum**  
**hear, audiō**  
**heavy, gravis**  
**height, altitūdō**  
**help, (noun) auxilium; (verb) iuvō**  
**Helvetia, Helvētia**  
**Helvetian, of the Helvetians, Helvētius**  
**hence, inde**  
**her, see she; for possession, see also suus**  
**here, hic, hūc; from here, inde; this . . .**  
**here, hic**  
**hero, vir**  
**hesitate, dubitō**  
**herself, ipsa, suī (see Lesson 40)**  
**high, altus; on high, altē; of high birth,**  
**nōbilis**  
**higher, altior, superior**  
**highest, altissimus, summus**  
**hill, collis, mōns**  
**him, see he**  
**himself, ipse, suī (see Lesson 40)**  
**hinder, impediō**  
**hindered, impeditus**  
**hindrance, impedimentum**  
**his, see he; for possession, see also suus**  
**hold, habeo, obtineō, teneō; hold back, re-**  
**tineō; hold in check, hold up, sustineō;**  
**hold together, contineō**  
**holy, sacer**  
**home, domus; at home, go home, etc., see**  
**Special Place Constructions, Lesson 50**  
**hope, (noun) spēs; (verb) spērō**  
**horn, cornū**  
**horse, equus**  
**horseman, eques**  
**host, hospes**  
**hostage, obses**  
**hostile, inimicus**  
**hot, calidus**  
**hour, hōra**  
**house, aedēs, domus; at the house of, apud;**  
**country house, villa**  
**how, quam, quemadmodum, quōmodo, ut;**  
**how great, how large, how much,**  
**quantus; how many, quot**  
**however, autem**  
**human being, homō**

**hundred, one hundred, centum**  
**hurl, coniciō**  
**husband, vir**

## I

**I, ego**  
**if, si; if . . . not, nisi**  
**immediately, statim**  
**immortal, immortalis**  
**in, in; in all, omninō; in back, in the rear,**  
**ā tergō; in difficulty, impeditus; in ex-**  
**change for, prō; in front of, ante, prō;**  
**in like manner, similiter; in such a way,**  
**ita; in that place, ibi; in the presence**  
**of, apud; in this way, sic; in truth, vērō;**  
**in vain, frūstrā**  
**increase, augeō, crēscō**  
**indeed, quidem, vērō**  
**infantry, peditēs (from pedes)**  
**inflict, inferō**  
**influence, (noun) auctoritās, grātia; (verb)**  
**adducō**  
**inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, doceō,**  
**moneō; be informed, certior fiō**  
**inhabit, incolō**  
**injure, noceō**  
**injustice, iniūria**  
**inmost, intimus**  
**inner, interior**  
**inquire, quaerō**  
**instead of, prō**  
**instruct, mandō**  
**intend: intending to, see Participles, Les-**  
**son 41**  
**interest: consult the interests of, cōsulō**  
**interrupt, intermittō**  
**interval, spatium**  
**into, in; put into effect, efficiō; throw into**  
**confusion, perturbō**  
**iron, ferrum**  
**is, see be**  
**island, insula**  
**it, hoc, id, illud; it happens, accidit, fit; it**  
**is convenient, convenit; it is necessary**  
**or proper, oportet; it is permitted, licet**

Italy, *Italia*  
 its, *eius, suus*  
 itself, *ipsum, sui* (see Lesson 40)

## J

javelin, *pilum*  
 join, *coniungō*; join battle, *proelium committō*; join together, *coniungō*  
 journey, *iter*  
 joy, *gaudium*  
 joyful, *laetus*  
 judge, (noun) *iūdex*; (verb) *iudicō*  
 judgment, *iudicium*  
 Julia, *Iūlia*  
 Julius, *Iūlius*  
 juror, *iūdex*  
 just, *aequus, iustus*  
 justice, *iūs*

## K

keep, *cōservō, servō*; keep . . . from, *prohibeō*  
 kill, *caedō, interficiō, occidō*  
 kind, genus; of such a kind, *tālis*  
 kindness, *beneficium*  
 king, *rēx*  
 kingdom, kingship, *rēgnum*  
 kinsman, *propinquus*  
 knight, *eques*  
 know, *sciō, cognōvi* (from *cognōscō*); not know, *nesciō*

## L

labor, *labōrō*  
 lack, *inopia*  
 lacking: be lacking, *dēsūm*  
 land, *terra*; native land, *patria*  
 language, *lingua*  
 large, *amplus, magnus*; how large, *quantus*;  
 rather large, too large, *maior*; so large,  
 such a large, *tantus*; very large,  
*maximus*

larger, *maior*; a larger amount, *plūs*  
 largest, *maximus*  
 last, *extrēmus, novissimus*; at last, *tandem*  
 late: late at night, *multā nocte*; late in the day, *multō diē*  
 latest, *novissimus*  
 latter: the latter, *hic*  
 laugh, laugh at, *rideō*  
 launch, *dēdūcō*  
 law, *iūs, lēx*  
 lay waste, *vāstō*  
 lead, *dūcō*; lead across, *trādūcō*; lead away, *dēdūcō*; lead back, *redūcō*; lead down, *dēdūcō*; lead forward, *prōdūcō*,  
 lead to, *addūcō*  
 leader, *dux*  
 learn, *cognōscō, discō*  
 least: at least, *quidem*  
 leave, *discēdō, excēdō, relinquō*; leave behind, *relinquō*; leave off, *dēsistō*  
 left, *reliquus, sinister*; left-hand, *sinister*;  
 on the left, *ā sinistrā*  
 legion, *legiō*  
 length: at length, *tandem*  
 less, (adjective) *minor*; (adverb) *minus*  
 lest, *nē*  
 let, see Hortatory Subjunctive, Lesson 43;  
 let go, *mittō*; let go away, *dimitto*; let go back, *remittō*  
 letter, *littera, litterae, epistula*  
 level, *aequus*  
 liberty, *libertās*  
 lie, *iaceō*  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*  
 life, *vīta*  
 lift up, *tollō*  
 light, (noun) *lūx*; (adjective) *levis*  
 like, (adjective) *aequus, similis*; in like manner, *similiter*; (verb) *amō*  
 likewise, *item*  
 line: straight line, line of battle, *aciēs*;  
 line of march, *agmen*  
 listen to, *audiō*  
 little, (noun) *paulum*; (adjective) *parvus*;  
 (adverb) *paulō, paulum*  
 live, *habitō, incolō, vivō*; live in, *incolō*  
 loaf, *pānis*  
 long, (adjective) *longus*; for a long time,



*diū*; (adverb) *diū* longer, (adverb) *diūtius*, iam; for a longer time, *diūtius*  
**longest**: for the longest time, *diutissimē*  
**look**: look at, *spectō*; look at attentively, *cōspiciō*  
**loose**, *solvō*  
**lord**, *dominus*  
**lose**, *āmittō*  
**loud**, *magnus*  
**love**, *amō*  
**lower**, *inferior*  
**lowest**, *imū*, *īnfimus*  
**loyal**, *fidēlis*  
**loyalty**, *fidēs*  
**Lucius**, *Lūcius*  
**luck**, *fortūna*  
**lucky**, *fēlix*

## M

**magistracy**, *magistrātus*  
**magistrate**, *magistrātus*  
**majority**, *magna pars*  
**make**, *faciō*; **be made**, *fiō*; **make a mistake**, *errō*; **make a plan**, *cōsiliū capiō*; **make war upon**, *bellum inferō*  
**man**, *homō*, *vir*; **our men**, *nostrī*; **young men**, *adulēscēns*  
**manliness**, *virtūs*  
**manner**, *modus*, *ratio*; **in like manner**, *similiter*  
**many**, *multī*; **how many**, *quot*; **rather many**, *plūrēs*; **so many**, *tot*; **too many**, *plūrēs*; **very many**, *plūrimī*; **many people**, *multī*  
**march**, (noun) *iter*; **army on the march**, *line of march*, *agmen*; (verb) *iter faciō*  
**marketplace**, *forum*  
**marsh**, *palūs*  
**master**, *dominus*, *magister*  
**matter**, *rēs*; **as a matter of fact**, *quidem*  
**me**, see I  
**means**: **by means of**, see Ablative of Means or Instrument, Lesson 9  
**measure**, *modus*  
**meet**, *congrēdiō*, *conveniō*  
**memory**, *memoria*

**merchant**, *mercātor*  
**message**, *nūntius*  
**messenger**, *nūntius*  
**midday**, *meridiēs*  
**middle of**, *medius*  
**midnight**, *media nox*  
**mile**, *mille passūs*  
**military**, *militāris*; **military power**, *imperium*; **military standard**, *signum*  
**mind**, *animus*, *mēns*  
**mine**, *meus*  
**misfortune**, *calamitās*  
**missile**, *tēlum*  
**mistake**: **make a mistake**, *errō*  
**mock**, *lūdō*  
**money**, *pecūnia*  
**month**, *mēnsis*  
**moon**, *lūna*  
**more**, (noun) *plūs*; (adjective) *plūrēs*; (adverb) *magis*, and see also Comparison, Lessons 33–36; **more often**, *saepius*; **wish . . . more**, *mālō*  
**moreover**, *autem*  
**most**, (adjective) *plūrimus*; (adverb) *maximē*, and see also Comparison, Lessons 33–36; **most often**, *saepissimē*  
**mother**, *māter*  
**mountain**, *mōns*; **halfway up the mountain**, *in mediō monte*  
**mouth**, *os*  
**move**, *cēdō*, *moveō*; **move back**, *removeō*; **move deeply**, *permoveō*; **move thoroughly**, *commoveō*  
**much**, (adjective) *magnus*, *multus*; **how much**, *quantus*; **so much**, *tantus*; (adverb) *multō*, *multum*  
**murder**, *caedēs*  
**must**, see Passive Periphrastic, Lessons 59 and 60  
**my**, *meus*  
**myself**, *ipse*, *meī* (see Lesson 40)

## N

**name**, (noun) *nōmen*; (verb) *appellō*  
**nation**, *gēns*, *populus*  
**native land**, *patria*  
**nature**, *nātūra*

**near**, *ad, prope, propinquus*; **be near**, *adsum*; **draw near**, *appropinquō*  
**nearby**, *propinquus*  
**nearer**, *propior*  
**nearest**, *proximus*  
**nearly**, *ferē, prope*  
**necessary**, *necesse, necessarius*; **it is necessary**, *necesse est, oportet*  
**neighbor**, *finitimus*  
**neighboring**, *finitimus*  
**neither**, (adjective) *neuter*; (conjunction) *neque (nec)*; **neither . . . nor**, *neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)*  
**never**, *numquam, nē . . . umquam*  
**nevertheless**, *tamen*  
**new**, *novus, recēns*  
**next**, (adjective) *posterus, proximus*; (adverb) *deinde*  
**night**, *nox*; **early in the night**, *primā nocte*; **late at night**, *multā nocte*  
**nine**, *novem*  
**nineteen**, *undēviginti*  
**ninth**, *nōnus*  
**no**, *nūllus, nihil*; **no one**, *nēmō, nē quis*  
**noble**, *nōbilis, pulcher*  
**nobly**, *pulchrē*  
**noise**, *clāmor*  
**noon**, *meridiēs*  
**nor**, *neque (nec)*  
**not**, *nōn*; **and . . . not**, *neque (nec)*; **if . . . not**, *nisi*; **or not**, *annōn, necne*; **not any**, *nūllus*; **not at all**, *nihil*; **not even**, *nē . . . quidem*; **not only . . . but also**, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*; **not yet**, *nōndum*; **not know**, *nesciō*; **say . . . not**, *negō*; **not wish**, *nōlō*  
**nothing**, *nihil, nē quid* (see Lesson 58)  
**now**, *iam, nunc*  
**number**, *numerus*; **great number**, *multitūdō*

## O

**oar**, *rēmus*  
**obey**, *pareō*  
**obligation: be under an obligation**, *grā-tiam dēbeō*  
**observe closely**, *cōspiciō*

**obtain**, *cōsequor*  
**of**, *dē, ē, ex*; see also Genitive of Possession, Lesson 18  
**off: far off**, *longē*; **leave off**, *dēsistō*  
**offensive weapon**, *tēlum*  
**office: public office**, *magistrātus*  
**often**, *saepe*; **more often**, *rather often*, *sae-pius*; **most often**, *saepissimē*  
**old**, *antiquus, senex, vetus*; **of old**, *old fashioned*, *antiquus*  
**older**, *maior nātū, senior*  
**oldest**, *maximus nātū*  
**on, in**; see also Ablative of Time When, Lesson 25  
**once: once upon a time**, *ōlim*; **at once**, *statim*  
**one**, *alius, quidam, ūnus*; **one another, to one another, with one another**, *inter sē (nōs, vōs)*; **one hundred**, *centum*; **one thousand**, *mille*; **no one**, *nēmō, nē quis* (see Lesson 58); **the one**, *alter*  
**oneself: betake oneself**, *mē (tē, sē, etc.) cōferō*  
**only**, *sōlus*; **not only . . . but also**, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*  
**onrush**, *impetus*  
**onto, in**  
**onward: carry onward**, *inferō*  
**open**, (adjective) *apertus*; (verb) *aperiō*  
**opinion**, *opiniō, sententia*  
**opportunity**, *facultās*  
**or, an, aut, vel**; **or not**, *annōn, necne*; **either . . . or, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel**; **whether . . . or, utrum . . . an**  
**order**, (noun) *ordō*; **in order that, in order to**, see Adverbial Clause of Purpose, Lesson 44; (verb) *imperō, iubeō*  
**originator**, *auctor*  
**other**, *alius*; **each other, to each other, with each other**, *inter sē (nōs, vōs)*; **the other, alter**; **the other(s)**, *cēteri*  
**ought**, *dēbeō*; see also Passive Periphrastic, Lessons 59 and 60  
**our, ours**, *noster*; **our men**, *nostrī*  
**ourselves**, *ipsī, nostrum* (see Lesson 40)  
**out: out of**, *ē, ex*; **way out**, *exitus*; **drive out**, *expellō*; **find out**, *cognōscō*; **go out**, *ēgredior, excēdō, exeō*; **point out**, *dēmōn-*

strō; **search out**, *explōrō*; **set out**,  
*prōficiscor*  
**outcome**, *exitus*  
**outer**, *exterior*  
**outermost**, *extrēmus*  
**outstanding**, *ēgregius*  
**over**, *in, trāns*; **hand over**, *trādō*; **place**  
**over**, *praefficiō*  
**overpower**, *opprimō*, *premō*  
**overtake**, *cōsequor*  
**owe**, *dēbeō*  
**own**: **his own**, *her own*, *its own*, *their*  
*own*, *suus*; **my own**, *meus*; **our own**,  
*noster*; **your own**, *tuus*, *vester*  
**owner**, *dominus*

## P

**pace**, *passus*  
**pain**, *dolor*  
**part**, *pars*; **greater part**, *magna pars*  
**pause**, *intermittō*  
**pay**, *solvō*; **pay the penalty**, *poenam dō*  
**peace**, *pāx*  
**penalty**, *poena*; **pay the penalty**, *poenam dō*  
**people**, *populus*; **good people**, *many people*,  
*etc.*, *boni*, *multi*, *etc.* (see Adjectives as Substantives, Lesson 6); **the**  
**common people**, *plēbs*; **belonging to**  
**the people**, *pūblicus*  
**permit**, *patior*, *permittō*; **it is permitted**,  
*licet*  
**persuade**, *persuadeō*  
**pertain**, *pertineō*  
**pile up**, *instruō*  
**pitch camp**, *castra pōnō*  
**place**, (noun) *locus*; **at one's country**  
**place**, *rūrī* (from *rūs*); **in that place**, *ibi*;  
**to this place**, *hūc*; **to that place**, *eō*, *illūc*;  
**to what place**, *quō*; (verb) *pōnō*; **place in**  
**command of**, *place over*, *praefficiō*  
**plain**, *campus*  
**plan**, *cōsiliūm*, *ratio*; **adopt a plan**, *cō-*  
*siliūm ineō*; **form or make a plan**, *cō-*  
*siliūm capiō*

**play**, *lūdō*  
**please**, *dēlectō*, *placeō*  
**pleasing**, *grātus*  
**pledge**, *fidēs*  
**plenty**, *cōpia*  
**plot**, *insidiae*  
**poem**, *carmen*  
**poet**, *poēta*  
**point out**, *dēmōnstrō*  
**poor**, *miser*  
**port**, *portus*  
**possession**: **get or take possession of**,  
*potior*  
**possible**: **as . . . as possible**, *quam* with  
*superlative*, Lesson 36; **as soon as possible**,  
*quam primum*  
**posterity**, *posterī*  
**power**, *potestās*; **military power**, *imperium*  
**powerful**, *potēns*  
**powerfully**, *potenter*  
**practice**, *ūsus*  
**practise**, *exerceō*  
**praise**, (noun) *laus*; (verb) *laudō*  
**prefer**, *mālō*  
**prepare**, *comparō*, *parō*; **prepare for**, *parō*  
**prepared**, *parātus*  
**presence**: **in the presence of**, *apud*  
**present**: **be present**, *adsum*  
**press**, *premō*; **be hard pressed**, *labōrō*  
**prestige**, *auctōritās*  
**prevent**, *prohibeō*  
**private**, *privātus*  
**proceed**, *mē* (*tē*, *sē*, *etc.*) *cōferō*  
**profitable**, *ūtilis*  
**promise**, *polliceor*  
**proper**: **it is proper**, *oportet*  
**propose**, *prōpōnō*  
**protection**, *praesidium*; **under the protec-**  
**tion**, *in fidē*, *infidem*  
**prove**, *probō*  
**provide for**, *prōvideō*  
**province**, *prōvincia*  
**prudent**, *prūdēns*  
**public**, *pūblicus*; **public office**, *magistrātus*  
**punish**, *poenam sūmō dē*; **be punished**,  
*poenam dō*  
**punishment**, *poena*  
**pursue**, *cōsequor*

push, *pellō*

put, *pōnō*; put forth, *prōpōnō*; put in charge of, put in command of, *praeficiō*; put into effect, *efficiō*

## Q

quarters: winter quarters, *hiberna*

queen, *rēgina*

quite a few, *complūrēs*

## R

race, *genus*

raise, *tollō*

rampart, *vallum*

rank, *ordō*

rashly, *audācter*

rate: at any rate, *quidem*

rather, see Comparison, Lessons 33–36:

rather large, *maior*; rather many, *plūrēs*;

rather often, *saepius*; rather small, *minor*; wish . . . rather, *mālō*

reach, *pervenio*

read, *legō*

ready, *parātus*

realize, *sentiō*

rear, *novissimum agmen*; in the rear, *ā tergō*

reason, *causa*, *ratio*; for which reason, *quā dē causā*

receive, *accipio*, *recipio*

recent, *recens*

reconnoiter, *explorō*

region, *regio*

reinforcements, *auxilia*

relate, *ferō*, *narrō*

relation, relative, *necessarius*, *propinquus*

remain, *maneo*

remaining, *reliquus*

remember, *memorā teneō*

remove, *tollō*

repair, *reficiō*

reply, *respondeō*

report, (noun) *fāma*; (verb) *adferō*, *dēferō*, *enūntiō*, *nūntiō*, *referō*, *renūntiō*

republic, *rēs pūblica*

repulse, *reiciō*

reputation, *fāma*, *opiniō*

rescue, *eripio*

resist, *resistō*

rest, *quiēs*; the rest of, *cēteri*, *reliquus*

restore, *reddō*, *reficiō*

restrain, *contineō*

retreat, *mē* (*tē*, *sē*, etc.) *recipio*, *pedem referō*

return, *mē* (*tē*, *sē*, etc.) *recipio*, *redeō*, *pedem referō*, *revertor*

revolt, *dēficiō*

revolution, *rēs novae*

reward, *praemium*

Rhine, *Rhēnus*

ride, *vehor*

right, (noun) *iūs*; (adjective) *dexter*, *iustus*;

on the right, *ā dextrā*

right-hand, *dexter*

rise, *orior*, *surgō*

risk, *periculum*

river, *flūmen*

road, *via*

rock, *saxum*

Roman, *Rōmānus*

Rome, *Rōma*; of Rome, *Rōmānus*

rout, *pellō*

route, *iter*

rule, *regō*

rumor, *fāma*, *rūmor*

run, *currō*

running: a running, *cursus*

## S

sacred, *sacer*

sad, *tristis*

safe, *tūtus*

safety, *salūs*

sail, *nāvigō*, *vehor*

sailor, *nauta*

sake: for the sake, *causā*, *grātiā*

same, *idem*; at the same time, *simul*

Sardis, *Sardēs*

- savage, *ferus*  
 save, *cōservō, servō*  
 say, *dicō, inquam*; say . . . not, *negō*  
 scarcely, *aegrē, vix*  
 school, *lūdus*  
 scout, *explōrātor*  
 sea, *mare*; of the sea, *maritimus*  
 search out, *explōrō*  
 seat, *sella*  
 second, *alter, secundus*  
 see, *videō*  
 seek, *petō, quaerō*  
 seem, *videor*  
 seize, *occupō, rapiō*  
 sell, *vēndō*  
 senate, *senātus*  
 senator, *senātor*  
 send, *mittō*; send away, *dīmittō*; send back, *remittō*  
 serious, *gravis*  
 set: set forth, *expōnō, prōpōnō*; set free, *liberō, solvō*; set on fire, *incendō*; set out, *prōficiscor*; set up, *cōstituō, instituō*  
 setting, *occāsus*  
 settle, *cōnsidō*  
 seven, *septem*  
 seventeen, *septendecim*  
 seventh, *septimus*  
 several, *complūrēs*  
 severe, *gravis*  
 severely, *graviter*  
 shallows, *vadum*  
 sharp, *ācer*  
 sharply, *ācriter*  
 she, *ea* (from *is*), *haec, illa*  
 shield, *scūtum*  
 ship, *nāvis*; war ship, *nāvis longa*  
 shore, *litus*  
 short, *brevis*  
 shout, (noun) *clāmō*; (verb) *clāmō*  
 show, *dēmōnstrō, doceō, ostendō*; show gratitude, *grātiam referō*  
 shut, *claudō*  
 Sicily, *Sicilia*  
 sick, *aeger*  
 side, *latus*; from or on all sides, *undique*  
 sight, *speciēs*  
 sign, *signum*  
 signal, *signum*  
 silent: be silent, *taceō*  
 similar, *similis*  
 similarly, *similiter*  
 since, *cum*  
 sister, *soror*  
 sit, *sedeō*; sit down, *cōnsidō*  
 six, *sex*  
 sixteen, *sēdecim*  
 sixth, *sextus*  
 size, *magnitūdō*  
 sky, *caelum*  
 slaughter, *caedēs*  
 slave, *servus*  
 sleep, (noun) *quiēs*; (verb) *dormiō*  
 small, *parvus*; rather small, too small, *minor*; very small, *minimus*  
 smaller, *minor*  
 smallest, *minimus*  
 smile, *rideō*  
 snatch, *rapiō*  
 so, *ita, sic, tam*; so great, so large, so much, *tantus*; so many, *tot*  
 soldier, *miles*  
 some, *aliqui, quīdam*; some . . . others, *alii* . . . *alii*; some day, *ōlim*; at some distance, *procul*  
 someone, *aliquis*  
 something, *aliquid*  
 son, *filius*  
 song, *carmen*  
 soon, *mox*; as soon as, *cum primum, simul* *atque (ac)*; as soon as possible, *quam primum*  
 sorrow, *dolor*  
 sorry: be sorry, *doleō*  
 sort, *genus*  
 south, *merīdiēs*  
 space, *spatium*  
 Spain, *Hispania*  
 Spanish, *Hispanus*  
 spare, *parcō*  
 speak, *loquor*  
 speech, *ōrātiō*; deliver a speech, *ōrātiōnem* *habeō*  
 speed, *celeritās*  
 spend the winter, *hiemō*  
 spirit, *animus*



sponsor, *auctor*  
 stand, *stō*; **stand up**, *surgō*; **take a stand**,  
     *cōsistō*  
 standard: **military standard**, *signum*  
 star, *stella*  
 state, *civitas*, *rēs pūblica*  
 stay, *maneō*  
 still, *tamen*  
 stir up, *incitō*  
 stone, *lapis*, *saxum*  
 stop, *dēsistō*, *intermittō*  
 storm, *tempestās*  
 story, *fābula*  
 straight line, *aciēs*  
 strange, *barbarus*, *mīrus*  
 stranger, *hospes*  
 street, *via*  
 strength, *vīrēs* (from *vīs*)  
 strengthen, *augeō*, *cōfirmō*  
 strive, *contendō*  
 strong, *validus*; **be strong**, *valeō*  
 strongly, *validē*  
 struggle, *contendō*  
 successfully, *fēliciter*  
 such, *tālis*; **such a great**, **such a large**,  
     *tantus*; **in such a way**, *ita*; **of such a**  
     **kind**, *tālis*  
 suddenly, *repente*, *subitō*  
 suffer, *labōrō*, *patior*  
 suffering, *dolor*  
 suitable, *idōneus*  
 summer, *aestās*; **at the beginning of sum-**  
     **mer**, *prīmā aestāte*  
 summon, *convocō*  
 sun, *sōl*  
 sundown, **sunset**, *sōlis occāsus*  
 supply, *cōpia*; **grain supply**, *rēs*  
     *frumentāria*  
 support, *subsidiūm*  
 suppose, *exīstimō*  
 sure, *certus*; **to be sure**, *quidem*  
 surely, *certē*  
 surpass, *superō*  
 surprised: **be surprised**, *mīror*  
 surrender, *trādō*  
 surround, *circumveniō*  
 swamp, *palūs*  
 swift, *celer*

swiftly, *celeriter*  
 swiftness, *celeritās*  
 sword, *ferrum*, *gladius*; **with fire and**  
     **sword**, *ferrō et igne*

## T

table, *mēsa*  
 take, *capiō*; **take a stand**, *cōsistō*; **take**  
     **back**, *recipiō*; **take counsel for**, *cōsulō*;  
     **take possession of**, *potior*  
 talk, *loquor*  
 task, *negōtium*  
 teach, *doceō*  
 teacher, *magister*  
 tear, *lacrima*  
 tell, *dīcō*, *narrō*  
 temple, *aedēs*  
 ten, *decem*  
 tenth, *decimus*  
 terms, *condiciō*  
 terrify, *perterreō*  
 territory, *ager*, *finēs*  
 than, *quam*; see also Ablative of Compar-  
     ison, Lesson 33  
 thank, *grātiās agō*  
 that, (demonstrative pronoun and adjec-  
     tive) *ille*, *is*; **that . . . there**, *ille*; **that**  
     **which**, *quod*; **at that time**, *tum*; **in that**  
     **place**, *ibi*; **to that place**, *eō*, *illūc*  
 their, *eorum* (from *is*), *hōrum*, *illō-*  
     *rum*, *suus*  
 them, see *they*  
 themselves, *ipsī*, *suī* (see Lesson 40)  
 then, *deinde*, *ergō*, *tum*  
 there, *eō*, *ibi*, *illūc*; **there is**, **there are**, etc.,  
     *est*, *sunt*, etc.; **that . . . there**, *ille*  
 therefore, *ergō*, *itaque*  
 they, *eī* (from *is*), *hī*, *illī*  
 thing, *rēs*  
 think, *arbitror*, *exīstimō*, *putō*  
 third, *tertius*  
 thirteen, *tredecim*  
 this, *hic*, *is*; **this . . . here**, *hic*; **in this**  
     **way**, *sic*; **to this place**, *hūc*  
 thoroughly: **move thoroughly**, *commoveō*

thousand, *mille*; thousands, *mīlia*  
 three, *trēs*  
 through, *per*  
 throw, *iaciō*; throw back, *reiciō*; throw  
 into confusion, *perturbō*; throw to-  
 gether, *coniciō*  
 thus, *ita*  
 time, *tempus*; at that time, *tum*; at the  
 same time, *simul*; for a long time, *diū*;  
 for a longer time, *diūtius*; for the first  
 time, *primum*; for the longest time,  
*diūtissimē*; once upon a time, *olim*  
 tired, *defessus*  
 to, *ad*; to be sure, *quidem*; to each other,  
*inter sē*; to that place, *eō*, *illūc*; to the  
 foot of, *sub*; to this place, *hūc*; to what  
 place, to which place, *quō*  
 today, *hodiē*  
 toga, *toga*  
 together: bring together, *cōnferō*; call to-  
 gether, *convocō*; come together, *congre-*  
*dior*, *conveniō*; hold together, *contineō*;  
 join together, *coniungō*; throw together,  
*coniciō*  
 tomorrow, *crās*  
 tongue, *lingua*  
 tonight, *hāc nocte*  
 too, *nimis*, *quoque*; see also Comparison,  
 Lessons 33–36; too big, too great, too  
 large, *maior*; too many, *plūrēs*; too  
 small, *minor*  
 top: on top of, *summus*  
 touch, *tangō*  
 toward, towards, *ad*, *in*; go toward, *adeō*  
 tower, *turris*  
 town, *oppidum*  
 trader, *mercātor*  
 train, *exerceō*  
 transport, *vehō*  
 trap, *insidiae*  
 tree, *arbor*  
 trial, *iūdicium*  
 tribe, *populus*  
 tribune, *tribūnus*  
 Trojan, *Trōiānus*  
 troops, *cōpiae*; auxiliary troops, *auxilia*  
 trouble, *negōtium*  
 Troy, *Trōia*

true, *vērus*  
 trumpet, *tuba*  
 trust, *confidō*, *crēdō*  
 truth: in truth, *vērō*  
 try, *cōnor*, *temptō*  
 turn, *vertō*  
 twelve, *duodecim*  
 twenty, *vīgintī*  
 twice, *bis*  
 two, *duo*

## U

ugly, *turpis*  
 unable: be unable, *nōn possum*  
 under, *sub*; under the protection, *in fidem*,  
*in fidē*; be under an obligation, *grātiās*  
*dēbeō*  
 understand, *intelligō*  
 undertake, *suscipio*  
 undiminished, *integer*  
 uneven, *iniquus*  
 unfair, *iniquus*  
 unfavorable, *iniquus*  
 unfortunate, *miser*  
 unfriendly, *inimicus*  
 unhappy, *miser*  
 unite, *coniungō*  
 unless, *nisi*  
 unlike, *dissimilis*  
 untie, *solvō*  
 untouched, *integer*  
 unwilling: be unwilling, *nōlō*  
 up: up to, *sub*; halfway up the mountain,  
*in mediō monte*; bring up, *adferō*; climb  
 up, *ascendō*; draw up, *instruō*; fill up,  
*compleō*; hold up, *sustineō*; lift up, *tollō*;  
 pile up, *instruō*; set up, *cōstituō*,  
*instituō*; stand up, *surgō*; stir up, *incitō*  
 upon: bring upon, *inferō*; come upon, *in-*  
*veniō*; fall upon, *accidō*; make war  
 upon, *bellum inferō*; once upon a time,  
*olim*  
 upset, *commoveō*, *perturbō*  
 urge, *hortor*  
 us, see *we*  
 use, (noun) *ūsus*; (verb) *ūtor*  
 useful, *utilis*

## V

vain: in vain, *frustrā*  
 valley, *vallēs*  
 van, *primum agmen*  
 Veii, *Veii*  
 very, see Comparison, Lessons 33–36;  
   very big, very great, very large, *maxi-*  
   *mus*; very many, *plūrimi*; very small,  
   *minimus*  
 victor, *victor*  
 victory, *victōria*  
 villa, *vīlla*  
 violence, *vīs*  
 violent, *vehemēns*  
 voice, *vōx*

## W

wage, *gerō*  
 wagon, *carrus*  
 wait for, *expectō*  
 wakefulness, *vigilia*  
 walk, *ambulō*  
 wall, *mūrus*  
 wander, *errō*  
 want, (noun) *inopia*; (verb) *cupiō*  
 war, *bellum*; warship, *nāvis longa*; make  
   war (on), *bellum inferō*; wage war, *bel-*  
   *lum gerō*  
 warn, *moneō*  
 warship, *nāvis longa*  
 was, see be  
 wash, *lavō*  
 waste: lay waste, *vāstō*  
 watch, (noun) *vigilia*; (verb) *spectō*  
 watchfulness, *vigilia*  
 water, *aqua*  
 wave, *fluctus*  
 way, *modus, via*; way out, *exitus*; in such  
   a way, *ita*; in this way, *sic*; give way,  
   *cēdō*  
 we, *nōs*  
 weapon, *tēlum*; weapons, *arma, ferrum*,  
   *tēla*; offensive weapon, *tēlum*  
 wear, *gerō*  
 weather, *tempestās*

welcome, *grātus*  
 welfare, *salūs*  
 well, *bene*; well bred, *nōbilis*; well known,  
   *nōtus*; be well, *valeō*  
 were, see be  
 west, *sōlis occāsus*  
 what, *quī, quid* (from *quis*); to what de-  
   gree, *quem ad modum*; to what place,  
   *quō*  
 wheel, *orbis*  
 when, *cum, ubi, ut*; when first, *cum*  
   *primum*  
 whence, *unde*  
 where, *quo, ubi*; from where, where from,  
   *unde*  
 whether, *num, utrum*  
 which, *quī, uter*  
 who, *quī, quis*  
 whole, *integer, tōtus*  
 why, *cūr*  
 wide, *lātus*; far and wide, *longē latēque*  
 widely, *latē*  
 width, *lātitudō*  
 wife, *fēmina, mulier, uxor*  
 wild, *ferus*  
 willing: be willing, *volō*  
 willingness, *voluntās*  
 win, *vincō*  
 wind, *ventus*  
 window, *fenestra*  
 wine, *vīnum*  
 wing (of an army) *cornū*  
 winter, (noun) *hiems*; winter quarters,  
   *hīberna*; (verb) *hiemō* spend the winter,  
   *hiemō*  
 wise, *prūdēns*  
 wish, (noun) *voluntās*; (verb) *cupiō, volō*;  
   wish . . . more, wish . . . rather, *mālō*;  
   not wish, *nōlō*  
 with, *cum*; see also Ablative of Means or  
   Instrument, Lesson 9, Ablative Abso-  
   lute, Lesson 51; with difficulty, *aegrē*,  
   *vix*; with each other, with one another,  
   *inter sē (nōs, vōs)*  
 within, see Ablative of Time Within  
   Which, Lesson 25  
 without, *sine*  
 withstand, *sustineō*

woman, *fēmina, mulier*

wonder, wonder at, *mīror*

wonderful, *mīrus*

woods, *silva*

word, *verbum*; bring back word of, *renūntiō*

work, (noun) *labor, opus*; (verb) *labōrō*

world, *orbis terrārum, tellus*

worn out, *dēfessus*

worse, (adjective) *peior*; (adverb) *peius*

worst, (adjective) *pessimus*; (adverb) *pessimē*

wound, (noun) *vulnus*; (verb) *vulnerō*

wretched, *miser*

wretchedly, *miserē*

write, *scribō*

wrong, *iniūria*

## Y

year, *annus*

yesterday, *herī*

yet, *tamen*; not yet, *nōndum*

yield, *cēdō*

you, *tū, vōs*

young man, *adulēscēns*

your, yours, *tuus, vester*

yourself, *ipse, tuī* (see Lesson 40); your-

selves, *ipsī, vestrum* (see Lesson 40)

youth, *adulēscēns*

## Z

zeal, *studium*

## Acknowledgments

- |                                                                                                                                 |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| i BBC Copyright Photograph                                                                                                      | 25 (both) Alinari/Scala                 |
| ii–iii BBC Copyright Photograph                                                                                                 | 27 Deutschen Archaeologischen Instituts |
| xii SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                                         | 29 Giraudon                             |
| 1 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                                           | 31 Deutschen Archaeologischen Instituts |
| 3 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                                           | 32 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 4 Fototeca Unione                                                                                                               | 35 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 5 <i>Pompeii and Herculaneum: The Glory and the Grief</i> by Marcel Brion. Published by Paul Elek. Merrimack Book Service, Inc. | 37 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 8 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                                           | 39 Fototeca Unione                      |
| 10 Museo della Civiltà Romana                                                                                                   | 41 Fototeca Unione                      |
| 11 Museo della Civiltà Romana                                                                                                   | 42 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 12 Gaetano Barone                                                                                                               | 44–45 Alinari/Scala                     |
| 13 The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York                                                                                     | 48 Fototeca Unione                      |
| 14 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                                          | 51 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives  |
| 17 (top) Alinari/Scala                                                                                                          | 52 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 17 (bottom) Fototeca Unione                                                                                                     | 55 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives  |
| 19 Alinari/Scala                                                                                                                | 57 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives  |
| 21 (two on left) Reproduced by Courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum                                                   | 59 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives  |
| 21 (middle) Alinari/Scala                                                                                                       | 61 SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives  |
| 21 (right) Alinari/Scala                                                                                                        | 63 Alinari/Scala                        |
| 23 Alinari/Scala                                                                                                                | 65 Alinari/Scala                        |
|                                                                                                                                 | 72 Alinari/Scala                        |
|                                                                                                                                 | 75 (both) Fototeca Unione               |
|                                                                                                                                 | 77 Alinari/Scala                        |



- |     |                                                                                                   |         |                                              |
|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------------|
| 79  | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 150     | Erich Lessing/MAGNUM PHOTOS                  |
| 81  | Deutschen Archaeologischen Instituts                                                              | 152     | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives          |
| 83  | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 155     | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives          |
| 86  | Courtesy of the Fogg Art Museum, Harvard University                                               | 158     | (top) Veronese, FPG                          |
| 87  | Fototeca Unione                                                                                   | 158     | (bottom) SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives |
| 90  | Fototeca Unione                                                                                   | 162     | Museo Vaticano                               |
| 93  | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 167     | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 94  | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 168     | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 98  | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 172-173 | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 103 | Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                                     | 174     | Giraudon                                     |
| 106 | Gaetano Barone                                                                                    | 178     | (all three) Alinari/Scala                    |
| 108 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                               | 184     | Museo Vaticano                               |
| 110 | Gaetano Barone                                                                                    | 198     | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 113 | Fototeca Unione                                                                                   | 210     | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 115 | Fototeca Unione                                                                                   | 215     | Alinari/Scala                                |
| 117 | Fototeca Unione                                                                                   | 216     | Fototeca Unione                              |
| 122 | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 221     | Fototeca Unione                              |
| 127 | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 222     | Fototeca Unione                              |
| 131 | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 226     | Gaetano Barone                               |
| 132 | Alinari/Scala                                                                                     | 228     | Ronald Sheridan                              |
| 139 | J. Allan Cash Ltd.                                                                                | 232     | Gaetano Barone                               |
| 140 | The Museum of Antiquities of the University and the Society of Antiquaries of Newcastle upon Tyne | 237     | Editorial Photocolor Archives                |
| 143 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                               | 242     | American Numismatic Society                  |
| 145 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                                                               | 244     | Fototeca Unione                              |
|     |                                                                                                   | 247     | Fototeca Unione                              |
|     |                                                                                                   | 249     | Fototeca Unione                              |

- |     |                                                              |     |                                          |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------|
| 250 | (both) Museo della Civiltà Romana                            | 321 | Franz Lazi, FPG                          |
| 253 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 322 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives      |
| 254 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 323 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives      |
| 258 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 324 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives      |
| 261 | Fototeca Unione                                              | 328 | Gaetano Barone                           |
| 262 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 332 | Editorial Photocolor Archives            |
| 266 | (both) Alinari/Scala                                         | 333 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives      |
| 271 | Erich Lessing/MAGNUM PHOTOS                                  | 334 | Courtesy Museum of Fine Arts, Boston     |
| 272 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                          | 339 | Fototeca Unione                          |
| 276 | SCALA/Editorial Photocolor Archives                          | 345 | Alinari/Scala                            |
| 281 | Erich Lessing/MAGNUM PHOTOS                                  | 349 | Fototeca Unione                          |
| 283 | Courtesy Museum of Fine Arts, Boston                         | 351 | Fototeca Unione                          |
| 284 | Courtesy Museum of Fine Arts, Boston                         | 355 | Fototeca Unione                          |
| 288 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 362 | Alinari/Scala                            |
| 289 | Giraudon                                                     | 364 | Alinari/Scala                            |
| 294 | Reproduced by Courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum | 366 | Landesmuseum, Trier                      |
| 299 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 371 | Gramstorff Bros., Inc.                   |
| 300 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 373 | Alinari/Scala                            |
| 303 | Fototeca Unione                                              | 374 | Courtesy Museum of Fine Arts, Boston     |
| 306 | (top) Fototeca Unione                                        | 378 | George Pickow from Three Lions, Inc.     |
| 306 | (bottom) Alinari/Scala                                       | 431 | Courtesy Museum of Fine Arts, Boston     |
| 308 | Alinari/Scala                                                | 432 | Alinari/Scala                            |
| 313 | Fototeca Unione                                              | 436 | The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York |
| 318 | Fototeca Unione                                              | 438 | Alinari/Scala                            |

442 Alinari/Scala

469 Museo Nazionale, Naples

466 Museo Nazionale, Naples

470 Museo della Civiltà Romana

473 Alinari/Scala

Cover From the MGM release *Ben Hur* © 1959 Loew's Incorporated

All photographs not otherwise credited are the work of the Allyn and Bacon staff photographer.

*A Renaissance map of ancient Rome*



# Grammatical Index

## A

*ā* or *ab* with ablative of agent, 110

**abbreviations**, 425

**ablative case**, absolute, 295; of accompaniment, 100, 147; of agent, 110; of cause, 223; of comparison, 190; of degree of difference, 204; of description, 296; of instrument, 53; of manner, 82; of means, 53; of place from which, 29; of place where, 15; of separation, 134; of specification, 212; of time when, 141; of time within which, 142; with *de* or *ex* instead of the genitive of the whole, 164; with (or without) prepositions, 29, 263, 290

**accusative case**, as adverb, 203; direct object, 10; of time, 170; of space, 170; place to which, 28; predicate accusative, 111; subject of infinitive, 180; with (or without) prepositions, 28–29, 290

**adjectives**, agreement, 33, first and second declensions, 33, 43, 437; in *-er*, 43, 437; third declension, 99, 437; irregular first and second declension, 212; comparison, regular, 189, 440; and irregular, 199, 440; declension of comparatives, 189, 439; ending in *-er*, *-eus*, *-ius*, *-ilis*, 194; defective comparisons, 200; declension of superlatives, 189; with dative, 195; indefinite, 340, 445; interrogative, 156, 445; numerals, 118; reflexive, 229–230, as nouns, 34

**adverbs**, formation, 60, 175; comparison, 203, 441

**agent**, ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 110; dative with passive periphrastic, 347

**agreement**, of adjectives, 33; of appositives, 124; of perfect passive, 105; of pronouns, 146; of relatives, 151; of verb with subject, 10

*aliquis*, 340, 445

*alius*, 212, 439

**apposition**, 124

*audāx*, 100, 438

*audiō*, 169–170, 245–247, 454

## B

*bonus*, comparison, 199

*brevis*, 99, 438

## C

*capiō*, 133–134, 245–247, 457

**cardinals**, list of, 119, 273, 441–442

*causā*, follows gerundive construction, 346

**causal clauses**, 204, 285

**cause**, ablative of, 223

*celer*, 99, 437

*certior*, 189, 439

**circumstantial clauses**, 284

**clauses**, causal, 204, 285; characteristic, 342; circumstantial, 284; concessive, 285; *cum*, 284; fearing, 267; purpose, 255–256; result, 277; temporal, 204

**comparative**, declension, 189, 439; meaning, 190

**comparison**, of adjectives, regular, 189–190, 194, 440; and irregular, 199, 440; of adverbs, 203, 441; defective, 200

**complementary infinitive**, 180

**concessive clauses**, 285

**conjugations**, *vocō*, 9, 38–39, 56, 61, 66, 70, 104–105, 245–247, 447; *moneō*, 95, 109, 245–247, 449; *regō*, 123, 128, 245–247, 452; *audiō*, 169–170, 245–247, 454; *capiō*, 133–134, 245–247, 457; *sum*, 15, 52, 56, 61, 245, 459; *possum*, 179, 459; *volō*, *nolō*, *mālō*, 309, 461; *ferō*, 301, 463; *eō*, 301, 464; *fiō*, 314, 465

**cum clauses**, 284

**cum enclitic**, 147

**cum primum**, 285

## D

**dative case**, of agent, 347; double, 230, of indirect object, 44; of possession, 310, of purpose, 230; of reference, 230; with adjectives, 195; with compound verbs, 335, with intransitive verbs, 335

*dea*, 21, 435–436

**declensions**, first, 2, 433; second, 20, 28, 433; third, 78, 82, 87–88, 434; fourth, 163, 435; fifth, 175, 435

**defectives**, 157, 200

**definite measurement** (genitive of measure), 296

**demonstratives**, 141, 211, 443–444

**deponent verbs**, 289

*deus*, 21, 435–436

*dō*, principal parts, 56; perfect tense, 61

*domus*, 163–164, 435–436; in expressions of place, 289

**double dative**, 230

*duo*, 118, 440

**duration of time**, 170

## E

*ē* or *ex*, place from which, 29

*ego*, 147, 443

**enclitic cum** 147; *nē*, 15–16

*eō*, 301, 464

**expressions of place**, 290

**extent of space**, 170

## F

*facilis*, comparison of, 194, 440

*ferō*, 301, 463

*fiō*, 314, 465

**future participles**, 238, 346

**future perfect**, 66

**future tense**, 38

## G

**genitive case**, of description, 296; of measure, 296; of possession, 20; of the whole, (partitive) 164; with *causā* and *gratiā*, 346

**gerund**, 352

**gerundive**, 346; with *ad* and accusative, 347; with *causā*, or *gratiā* and genitive, 346; with dative, 347; with *sum* to form passive periphrastic, 347

*gratiā*, follows gerundive construction, 346

## H

*hic*, 141, 443

## I

**i-stems**, nouns, 87; verbs, 133

*idem*, 211, 444

*idōneus*, comparison, 194

*ille*, 141, 444

**imperative**, 73, (negative), 309

**imperfect**, distinguished from perfect, 62; formation 38; use of, 39

**impersonal verbs**, 325

*in*, with ablative, 15; with accusative, 28

**indefinite adjectives**, 340

**indefinite pronouns**, 340

**indirect commands**, 263, 319

**indirect discourse** (statement), 223, 314, 319

**indirect object**, 44

**indirect questions**, 273, 319

**indirect statements**, 223, 314, 319

**infinitive**, complementary, 180, forms, 179–180, 217–218, in indirect discourse, 223; with subject accusative, 180; subjective and objective, 218; tenses, 217, 223

*inquam*, 179

**instrument**, ablative of, 53

**interrogative adjective**, 156, 445

**interrogative particles**, 56

**interrogative pronoun**, 156, 445

**-io** verbs of the third conjugation, 133–134, 457

*ipse*, 211, 444

**irregular adjectives**, 212; comparison, 199, 440

*is*, 141, 444; used as a pronoun, 146

*iste*, 444



## L

**Latin Expressions**, 425  
*licet*, 325  
**locative case**, 289

## M

*magis*, used in comparison, 194  
*magnus*, comparison, 199, 440  
*mālō*, 309, 461  
*malus*, 33, 437; comparison, 199, 440  
**manner**, ablative of, 82  
**means**, ablative of, 53  
*melior*, 199, 440  
**mile**, how expressed, 170  
*mille*, 119, 171  
*miser*, 43, 437  
**moods**, 73  
*noneō*, 95, 109, 245–247, 449  
*multus*, comparison, 199, 440

## N

*-ne*, enclitic, 15–16  
*nōlō*, 309, 461  
**nominative case**, predicate nominative, 2, subject 2  
*nōnne*, 56  
*nōs*, 146, 443  
**nouns**, first declension, 2, 433; second declension, 20, 28, 433; third declension, 78, 82, 87–88, 434; fourth declension, 168, 435; fifth declension, 175, 435; irregular, 435–436  
*num*, 56  
**numerals**, list of, 119, 273, 441–442

## O

**object**, direct, 10; indirect, 44  
**objective genitive**, 129  
**objective infinitive**, 218  
*oportet*, 325  
**order of words**, 13  
**ordinals**, 119, 441–442

## P

**participles**, 238–240; future passive, 346; future with *sum* to form periphrastic, 347; of deponents, 289, 346; perfect, 296  
**partitive genitive**, 164  
**passive**, 104, 105  
**passive periphrastic**, 347, 352  
**perfect participles**, 296  
**perfect passive**, agreement, 105  
**perfect tense**, 60–62  
**personal pronouns**, 146, 443  
**place constructions**, 290  
**pluperfect tense**, 66  
**possession**, genitive of, 20  
**possessive adjectives**, 147  
**possessor**, dative of, 310  
*possum*, 179, 459  
**predicate accusative**, 111  
**predicate nominative**, 2  
**prepositions**, 29, 45–46, 290  
**present tense**, 9–10, 38  
**principal parts of verbs**, 56  
**pronouns**, agreement, 146; demonstrative, 141, 443–444; indefinite, 340, 445–446; intensive, 211, 443; interrogative, 156, 445; personal, 146, 443; reflexive, 229, 443; relative, 151, 445  
**purpose**, clauses, 255; dative of, 230; gerundive constructions, 347

## Q

**quality**, genitive or ablative of, 296  
*quam*, with comparatives, 190, with superlatives, 204  
**questions**, direct, 15–16; indirect, 273, 319  
*qui*, relative pronoun, 151, 445; interrogative adjective, 156, 445  
*quidam*, 297, 340, 446  
*quis*, 156, 445  
*quisque*, 341, 446

## R

**reflexive adjectives**, 229–230  
**reflexive pronouns**, 229, 443; in indirect commands, 263

*regō*, 123, 128, 245–247, 452

**relative clause**, of characteristic, 342; of purpose, 255–256

**relative pronoun**, 151, 445

**result**, clauses of, 277

## S

*sacer*, 43, 437

**separation**, ablative of, 134

**sequence of tenses**, 267–268

**space**, extent of, 170

**specification**, ablative of, 212

**stem of verbs**, 56

**sub**, with accusative and ablative, 28, 29

**subjunctive**, formation of, 245–247; hortatory, 251; in causal clauses, 285; in circumstantial clauses, 284; in concessive clauses, 285; fearing, 267; in indirect commands, 263, 319; in indirect discourse (statement), 223, 319; in indirect questions, 273, 319; in purpose clauses, 255; in result clauses, 277; in temporal clauses, 284, with *cum*, 284

*sui*, 229, 443

*sum*, 15, 52, 56, 238, 245, 459

**summary of cases**, 183–184, 361–362

**summary of constructions with verbs**, 363

**superlative**, 189–190, 194, 203

**supine**, 56, 353

*suus*, 229

## T

**temporal clauses**, 204, 284

**tenses**, sequence of, 267–268

**time**, when, 141, within which, 142; duration of, 170

**towns**, construction with names of, 289

*trēs*, 118, 440

*tū*, 146, 443

## U

*unus*, 118, 439

*ut*, with purpose clauses, 255; with result clauses, 277

## V

**verbs**, agreement of, 10; personal endings, 9; first conjugation, 9, 38–39, 56, 61, 66, 70, 104–105, 245–247, 447; second conjugation, 95, 109, 245–247, 449; third conjugation, regular, 123, 128, 245–247, 452; and verbs in *-io*, 133–134, 245–247, 457; fourth conjugation, 169–170, 245–247, 454; deponent, 289; impersonal, 325; irregular, 459–465; principal parts of, 56

*vis*, 268, 435–436

**vocative case**, 73

*vocō*, 9, 38–39, 56, 61, 66, 70, 104–105, 245–247, 447

*volō*, 309, 461



*"Rident  
stolidi verba  
Latina."*